POPULAR CYCLOPÆDIA OF NATURAL
SCIENCE.

MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY

AND

ITS APPLICATION TO THE ARTS.

BY

Benjamin
WILLIAM B. CARPENTER, M.D.

AUTHOR OF "PRINCIPLES OF GENERAL AND COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY," AND
"PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY."

LONDON:
WM. S. ORR AND Co., PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCXLIII.

Phys 297.1.3

1857. May. 7.
Gift of
James [illegible] E.
of Cambridge.

LONDON:
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

1353

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

OF MATTER AND ITS ESSENTIAL PROPERTIES 1

CHAPTER II.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER NOT UNIVERSAL — ELASTICITY, DUCTILITY, MALLEABILITY—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS 47

CHAPTER III.

ATTRACTION OF GRAVITATION 70

CHAPTER IV.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY—STABILITY OF SOLID MASSES 81

CHAPTER V.

STABILITY OF STRUCTURES COMPOSED OF MOVABLE PARTS—FRAMEWORK—ARCH 96

CHAPTER VI.

OF INERTIA AS A PROPERTY OF MATTER—LAWS OF MOTION, COMPOSITION AND RESOLUTION OF FORCES, EFFECTS OF IMPACT . . 110

CHAPTER VII.

PAG

OF CIRCULAR MOTION—CENTRIFUGAL FORCE—RADIUS OF GYRATION—CENTRE OF PERCUSSION 160

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE MOTION OF FALLING BODIES 186

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE PENDULUM 201

CHAPTER X.

OF THE SIMPLE MACHINES, OR MECHANICAL POWERS—THE LEVER, WHEEL AND AXLE, AND PULLEY 224

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE MECHANICAL POWERS (CONTINUED)—THE INCLINED PLANE, WEDGE, AND SCREW 284

CHAPTER XII.

OF FRICTION 305

PREFATORY NOTICE.

The following little work is intended to occupy a place somewhat intermediate between the simpler elementary treatises on mechanical science, and the more elaborate works of a professedly philosophical character. With the former, it has this in common—that the Author has aimed to render it adapted to those who have no preliminary knowledge of the subject; and to carry on his readers, step by step, from the known to the unknown, without requiring from them more than an accurate acquaintance with the ground over which they have already passed. To the latter, the Author ventures to hope it may be compared in this—that the highest principles of the science are introduced, and exhibited in their connexion with each other, and with the phenomena they govern. He has thus endeavoured to give to his little work the character of a philosophical treatise; whilst, by the number of examples and illustrations which he has introduced, he has aimed at preventing what might have otherwise been its dry and abstruse appearance. In this attempt, he has merely followed out the plan which has proved successful in the former volume of the present Series.

The only preliminary knowledge required for the comprehension of the whole of this treatise, is an acquaintance with ordinary Arithmetic, and with the rudiments of Geometry. It is intended to give, however, as an Appendix to the second part, explanations of such geometrical terms as may be perplexing to those who are entirely ignorant of Mathematics.

The mere beginner is recommended not to attempt to read the work straight through; but to omit Chapters V., VII., IX., and XII., until an accurate acquaintance has been formed with the rest.

The Author is well aware, that some parts of this treatise may be deemed verbose and diffuse; and that the numerical illustrations may be thought to be too frequently introduced. To this he would simply reply, that some experience as a teacher has convinced him, of the necessity of explanations much more ample, and of illustrations much more complete, than those ordinarily given in elementary works; and that he has endeavoured to commit to paper the instructions which, when delivered verbally, were successful in impressing the minds of his pupils.

In conclusion he would state, that, although a large part of the contents of this treatise is the common property of all writers on the subject, many statements and illustrations may claim some degree of novelty. He thinks it right to add, that he is under particular obligation to the works of Professors Moseley and Daniell, of King's College, London.

CHAPTER I.

OF MATTER AND ITS PROPERTIES.

1. THE universe in which we are placed, and the changes which are continually taking place in it, offer to the inquiring mind of Man unlimited scope for the exercise of the faculties with which he has been endowed. And, by the wise ordination of the Creator, the minds of different men are so constituted, that they have a natural taste for different objects of pursuit; so that there is scarcely a subject of inquiry, in the eager pursuit of which there are not many engaged. Thus one devotes himself to observing the appearances and the motions of those heavenly bodies, whose constant but regular changes have, from the remotest ages, been sources of wondering interest; and the observations thus collected serve as the basis, on which the philosopher is enabled to found a beautiful system of reasoning that explains all their complex movements (although these seem more irregular, the more closely they are observed,) upon a few simple principles. Another considers the changes which have taken place in the mass of our own globe: he seeks for observations respecting these changes,—whether they result from the action of heat, as in the case of volcanoes and earthquakes,—or from that of water, as when new islands are formed at the mouths of rivers by the sediment brought down in their streams,—or from the agency of living beings, as when islands of large extent are raised above the surface of the ocean by the labours of innumerable coral-polypes; and from these he reasons as to the causes of those past changes in the condition of the earth's surface, which, there is abundant reason to know, must have been very numerous and important. Another directs his attention to the living inhabitants of our globe, seeks to become acquainted with

their almost countless forms, and examines their internal structure; or he observes their mode of life, watches their habits, and studies the changes which they are continually undergoing; and from the information thus obtained, he endeavours to ascertain the principles which have governed their construction, or (in other words) to find out the plan upon which the Creator has been pleased to form and arrange their parts, so as to produce the wonderful variety which we behold, whilst each is adapted with equal perfectness to the objects it has to fulfil.

2. In all these studies, and in many more that might be enumerated, we are occupied with *matter* under some of its forms. By *matter* we understand the *material* of which the universe is built up; and with this we become acquainted through our senses, which inform us of its properties; and as we find these to vary in different cases, we say that there are different forms of matter. We know just as much of any form, or state of matter, as our senses can communicate to us; and no more. A person deficient in one or more of the senses, is shut out from any exact knowledge of the properties, of which those senses inform us. Thus a blind man, who has been blind from birth, can form no proper idea of colour, nor a deaf man of sound. There are some bodies, of whose existence we are informed by numerous senses; whilst others are known to us through one only. Thus we receive information respecting the properties of a piece of cinnamon by the sight, the touch, the taste, and the smell; whilst those of a piece of flint are known to us only through the sight and the touch: we are aware of the existence of the planets and stars (which do not impress us with any perceptible warmth) only by the sense of sight; and there are many gases which are perfectly transparent, and do not possess colour, so that they cannot be distinguished by the eye, yet are at once recognized by the smell. Hence our knowledge of the peculiarities of different kinds of matter is limited by the nature of our senses; but the information which these communicate to us respecting it is so abundant, as to serve all the purposes for which we can require such knowledge. It is wonderful how many ideas may be obtained respecting the world around, even by the sense of touch alone. Instances have

occurred of children who were at the same time blind and deaf, and who possessed but little smell or taste; who yet, under the instruction of intelligent persons, have gained a large amount of information, and have been able even to comprehend the meaning of language.

3. This is the less surprising, however, when it is remembered that our first knowledge of *matter* is derived from the *touch.* It is through this sense that we gain the idea of that property which is common to every form of matter, and which gives us, in fact, our notion of it,—namely, its *resistance.* The child strikes its head against the table; it feels a hard blow, because the table is a solid body, and the resistance it makes is complete. We press backwards our hands against the water in swimming; and feel an amount of resistance which is sufficient to urge forwards our body. We run quickly in a dress which presents a large surface to the air; and we feel that its resistance makes our movement less rapid. This resistance, then, is common to all bodies,—whether solid, liquid, or aeriform;* but it is greater in the solid than in the liquid, and greater in the liquid than in air or gas. The cause is this. It is the fundamental property of matter, that no two particles, whatever may be their nature, can occupy the same space at the same time; we cannot, therefore, cause one particle or one body to occupy the place of another, without moving or displacing it. Now in solid bodies, the particles are so firmly held together, that we cannot move one alone without separating it from the rest; and an impulse given to one, if it be sufficiently strong, will move the whole mass. In liquids and gases, on the contrary, the particles have a free movement upon one another; so that we can displace any part, leaving the rest as it was; and we cannot move the whole by a force applied to a part only.

4. These truths are made evident by simple illustrations. If we desire to make a hole in a piece of hard iron, we cannot do it by driving an awl into it; for the awl merely pushes the particles to one side and the other, to make its own way; and the particles of iron hold together so firmly that they cannot be

---

* Having the condition of air or gas.

POPULAR CYCLOPÆDIA OF NATURAL SCIENCE.

MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY

AND

ITS APPLICATION TO THE ARTS.

BY

Benjamin

WILLIAM B. CARPENTER, M.D.

AUTHOR OF "PRINCIPLES OF GENERAL AND COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY," AND
"PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY."

C LONDON:
WM. S. ORR AND Co., PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCCXLIII.

Phys 297.1.3

1857. May 7.
Gift of
James Walker D.D.
of Cambridge.

LONDON:
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

1353

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE
OF MATTER AND ITS ESSENTIAL PROPERTIES 1

CHAPTER II.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER NOT UNIVERSAL — ELASTICITY, DUCTILITY, MALLEABILITY—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS 47

CHAPTER III.

ATTRACTION OF GRAVITATION 70

CHAPTER IV.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY—STABILITY OF SOLID MASSES 81

CHAPTER V.

STABILITY OF STRUCTURES COMPOSED OF MOVABLE PARTS—FRAMEWORK—ARCH 96

CHAPTER VI.

OF INERTIA AS A PROPERTY OF MATTER—LAWS OF MOTION, COMPOSITION AND RESOLUTION OF FORCES, EFFECTS OF IMPACT . . 110

975 lbs. on each square inch of its surface. All other gases can be compressed in the same proportion. The gas, for instance, which serves to light our streets and houses may be so compressed, that a quantity sufficient to burn for a whole night may be contained within a vessel of the size of a large ordinary jar. In the making of soda-water, again, a gas of a different kind is very much compressed; and when in this state, water may be made to take in a large quantity of it; but when the pressure is removed, by the loosening of the cork, the greater part of the gas escapes rapidly from the water, causing the effervescence which renders this beverage so refreshing.

9. Although the bulk of solids and liquids can be but little changed by pressure, yet even the most incompressible are made to contract in size by cold, and to expand by heat. This change, however, is much greater in aeriform fluids than in solids and liquids; and whilst the degree of change in the latter is different for almost every substance, it is the same for all gases. These expand or increase in bulk, to the amount of 1-480th of the whole, for every degree of Fahrenheit's thermometer (the one in ordinary use in this country). The most remarkable effect of heat upon bodies, however, is its tendency to make them change their form, from the solid to the liquid, and from the liquid to the gaseous. The change of a solid into a liquid is usually termed its *melting*, *fusion*, or *liquefaction*; whilst the change from the liquid to the gaseous state is called *vaporization*,—when made rapidly, *boiling*,—or if made slowly, *evaporation*. Each substance requires a peculiar amount of heat, for such change of form; and although this is sometimes the greatest that we can employ, yet in other instances it is so little as to be below the ordinary temperature of the air, or of our bodies, and is therefore commonly regarded by us as cold. Thus we are accustomed to regard the liquid state as the natural condition of *water*; because it is only when there is a much less degree of heat in the air than usual, that water passes into the solid form by freezing. But in the Arctic regions, and on the tops of high mountains, even in the torrid zone, the frost is perpetual, and water is never found but in the state of ice, except when the summer's sun

slightly thaws the surface. Hence water cannot be said to differ in this respect from bodies which are solid at *our* common temperature, except that its melting point is lower than theirs.

10. There are very few liquids which may not become solid by a sufficient degree of cold; thus mercury, which retains its liquid state under a degree of cold far more intense than that which freezes water, is congealed at last into a solid mass, the characters of which are in all respects analogous to those of the metals in general. Hence mercury, though fluid at the ordinary temperatures at which the other metals are solid, has, like them, a true melting or fusing point; and there are parts of the globe, where the cold of the ordinary winter is so extreme, that mercury is kept by it in the solid form. We might imagine that a person living all the year round in a temperature low enough to keep mercury frozen (if such a case were possible), would think the liquefaction or fusing of mercury as great a curiosity as *we* are accustomed to regard its freezing. There are some liquids which have hitherto resisted all attempts to change them to the solid form; but there is much argument from analogy for the belief, that they all might be so changed, if we could produce a sufficient degree of cold, or rather withdraw a sufficient amount of heat.

11. There is not usually much change of bulk in the liquefaction of bodies; nor in their freezing or congelation. Generally speaking, the bulk of a body in the liquid form is greater than that of the same weight in the solid; for the solid body goes on expanding (or increasing in bulk), under the influence of heat, until it is just about to become fluid, and then a further expansion takes place. But there is a remarkable exception in the case of water, which takes up more room in the solid state than in the liquid; so that an equal bulk of it is lighter. It is a very familiar fact, that water in freezing expands, so as to burst any pipe or vessel within which it may be at all closely confined; and it is to the same cause, that we owe the floating of ice upon water, since its formation would otherwise take place at the bottom.

12. The expansion of liquids under the influence of heat increases very rapidly as the temperature is raised; and is

particularly great when the liquid is heated nearly to its boiling point. The change of bulk is then very great and sudden; for all vapours have many times the bulk of the liquids from which they rose. Thus a pint of water would produce 1694 pints of steam at the ordinary pressure. Though the vaporization of fluids takes place chiefly under the influence of heat, yet the quantity of heat required to produce it is very different under different degrees of pressure. Thus, if we take water at the ordinary pressure as the standard, we should find that any additional pressure (such as would be produced if the vessel were kept tightly closed) would render an additional quantity of heat necessary to convert it into steam; whilst, on the other hand, the removal of the ordinary pressure of the air, will cause water to boil at a much lower temperature, as happens on the top of high mountains, or as may be easily shown by the air-pump. Under pressure of the most powerful kind, water has been heated to such a degree, that the iron vessel which contained it was red-hot throughout; and if the pressure had been withdrawn in a very slight degree, the water would have immediately passed into the condition of steam, which, by its very great elasticity at high temperatures, would have blown the vessel to pieces. On the other hand, when the pressure of the air has been entirely removed, water boils at a temperature not above that which it naturally has on a hot day. This fact is one of great practical importance; for the boiling of many fluids which are injured by too high a temperature, is now successfully conducted in vessels from which the air has been partly exhausted*.

13. Our knowledge of the combined influence of temperature and pressure on the condition of certain bodies, has received many important additions within the last few years. It was formerly the custom to divide aeriform bodies into two classes,—vapours, and gases: the former were regarded as liquids in an aeriform state; whilst to the latter this state was supposed to be natural, it not being imagined that *they* could ever exist in the liquid form. Many kinds of gas, however, are capable of being reduced to the fluid form by pressure only; and others by cold

---

* The particulars will be given when HEAT comes to be treated of in detail.

and pressure combined; and there is one,—carbonic acid gas, (the fixed air of soda-water, champagne, &c.)—which has even been converted into the solid form. It is probable, then, that all gases might be made to assume the liquid or even the solid condition, if they could be subjected to the united influence of cold and pressure to a sufficient degree; and that they differ in nothing from those aeriform fluids which are ordinarily termed vapours, except in the very low temperature at which the liquids are vaporized.

14. Thus we have strong reason to believe, that the solid, liquid, and gaseous states may be common to all bodies; and that the reason why there is so great a variety in the conditions in which we usually find them, is simply,—that every kind of substance changes its state at certain fixed temperatures. So that whilst some (as metals in general) are solid at ordinary temperatures, they become liquid at higher, and gaseous at higher still; others, which are liquid at ordinary temperatures (as mercury and water), may become solid at lower temperatures, and pass into vapour at higher; and lastly, others (as carbonic acid) which have a gaseous condition at ordinary temperatures, may be turned into liquids or even solids, by an increase of pressure, or by a diminution of heat.

15. We see, in these different conditions, the influence of two different forces acting on the particles of matter;—a force which draws or attracts them together, and a force which tends to separate them. The former, which is termed the *attraction of cohesion*, operates only at very small distances; so that, if the particles be very widely separated, they have no cohesion whatever. On the other hand, the force which tends to separate them is one by which the particles *repel* each other; and this repulsive force seems to be *heat*, or at any rate to be produced by the action of heat. For, as we have just seen, heat causes the particles of bodies to undergo a gradual separation from one another, before their form is entirely changed. This is peculiarly shown in the case of glass, and many of the metals, which become very soft and easily moulded into any shape, before they actually melt. The action of the cohesive force is best seen in solid

bodies, of which the particles are so close together, that this force can have its full influence. It is weakened in the liquid, by the increase of the repulsive force, which has in some degree separated the particles; but still it is strong enough to prevent the repulsive force from carrying these particles wide apart from each other. In aeriform bodies, the repulsive force has been so much increased, as to carry the particles beyond the influence of each other's attraction, and, consequently, they have no cohesion whatever, but tend to separate as widely as they are allowed to do.

16. The knowledge of these principles, then, enables us to understand the influence of heat and cold, and of diminished or increased pressure, in changing the form of bodies. When a solid body is heated, the repulsion of its particles is increased,—they are separated from one another to such a degree, that their cohesive attraction is greatly weakened, so that they can move freely upon one another; but this is not destroyed, for it keeps them from flying asunder. But when the temperature is raised still further, the repulsive force is increased by the added heat, and the particles become separated so widely, that their cohesion is altogether destroyed; and the same effect may be produced by the simple removal of the external pressure, which has an obvious influence in keeping together the particles of the liquid. On the other hand, an increase of pressure applied to a gas, may, without any withdrawal of heat, bring the particles so closely together, that they come within the influence of each other's cohesive attraction, and thus they may be made to assume the fluid form; but the same effect is produced with a much less amount of pressure, when the repulsion of the particles has been diminished by lowering the temperature.

17. When the change from the liquid to the solid form occurs slowly, and other circumstances are favourable, the particles have a tendency to arrange themselves in certain very regular modes; producing those forms, bounded by straight lines and angles, which are termed crystals. These are most familiar to us in the spangles of hoar-frost or the flakes of snow; but water is not the only substance that produces them in the act of congealing. Thus, if we melt a mass of sulphur (brimstone), or of

the metal bismuth, in an earthen pot or crucible, carefully watching it whilst it *slowly* cools, until a crust has formed on its surface, and then pierce this crust, and allow the liquid portion remaining within to flow out,—we shall find the cavity studded with beautiful crystals, those of the bismuth being exact cubes, and those of the sulphur being needle-shaped, with six sides.

18. But crystallization may be made to take place in a very beautiful and regular mode, in many substances which could not be thus made to exhibit it; still the same principle governs it,—the *gradual* change from the liquid to the solid state, which gives the particles time to arrange themselves with regularity. This happens when substances that have been dissolved in water or other liquids are set at liberty by the cooling or the evaporation of the liquid. Thus, if we put a quantity of common salt into boiling water, continually adding until it will take up no more, (this is called a *saturated solution,*) and then allow it to cool, we shall find a large part of the salt deposited in small crystals at the bottom; for water when cold cannot dissolve so much of the salt as when warm, and cannot therefore retain what *has been* dissolved. The same effect is produced by dissolving in cold water as much salt as it can take up, and then letting the water gradually evaporate or dry away; as the salt does not go off in vapour, it must be left behind in the solid form, and this form is crystalline. A very simple experiment enables any one to see crystallization in the very act of going on. Let a Florence flask (such as olive oil is usually sold in) be nearly filled with water, and let as much Glauber-salt be then added as the water will dissolve when heated to boiling. If the flask be corked whilst the water is hot, and be not disturbed in cooling, the salt will remain dissolved; but as soon as the cork is taken out, crystallization will begin, and will rapidly spread through the whole mass. If (as sometimes occurs) it should not at once take place, it may be produced by shaking the flask, or by dropping into it any small body that is capable of being wetted by the fluid; the best for the purpose seems to be a crystal of the salt itself.

19. It generally happens, however, that crystallization which

takes place very rapidly has a confused character; whilst the same substance, when more slowly consolidated, may present large and very regular crystals. This difference is well seen in the case of loaf-sugar and sugar-candy. The process of crystallization is also favoured by the presence of any centre, or *nucleus*, round which the particles may arrange themselves; thus, in the manufacture of sugar-candy, verdigrise, blue vitriol, and other crystalline substances, strings, wires, or strips of wood are placed across the vessels holding the fluid, and may very commonly be found in the centre of large groups of the crystals. The best kind of nucleus consists of a crystal of the body itself, which seems to attract other particles of the same kind; and it is remarkable that it will choose (as it were) out of two substances dissolved in the fluid, the particles of its own kind. Thus, if we dissolve in the same water Glauber-salt and nitre, and then divide the fluid into two portions, suspending a crystal of nitre in the one and a crystal of Glauber-salt in the other, the nitre only will crystallize in the former part, and the Glauber-salt in the latter. This tendency enables us to obtain very large, regular crystals from smaller ones, by proper management. If we take the largest and most regular that can be obtained by the ordinary process, and place them in a saturated solution of the same salt, a gradual deposite of new particles will take place on their surfaces; but as this addition does not take place to the surface that is in contact with the bottom of the vessel, the crystal must be turned every day to preserve its regularity of form. It has been remarked that if a solution, containing crystals of different sizes, be exposed to changes of temperature, the large crystals will grow at the expense of the small ones. This takes place in the following manner: when the temperature of the liquid rises, it dissolves a portion of the salt, and diminishes the size of all the crystals in a like proportion; but when the temperature falls, it must part with this addition, and the newly deposited matter settles upon the large crystals in much greater proportion than upon the small; so that the matter of which these last are composed is gradually taken up and deposited upon the larger.

20. It has long been known that particular forms of crystallization are peculiar to certain kinds of substances; and these forms often enable the Mineralogist to distinguish them by the eye alone.* Some minerals occur in several different forms, but these may be shown to have a certain connexion with each other. As to the cause which governs this regular arrangement of particles, philosophers are still in doubt; and it is undesirable to discuss, in this place, the speculations which they have put forth. There can be no doubt, however, that it results from a certain regular operation of the cohesive attraction; since we find that all bodies which slowly pass from the liquid to the solid form, have a tendency to assume it. Many substances are found in beautiful crystalline forms, which the chemist has not until recently been able to imitate; since he cannot either melt these substances and allow them to crystallize in cooling, or dissolve them in water and cause them to crystallize from the solution. Of this kind is silex, the substance of which flint is composed; the large and beautiful crystals of silex, which are known under the name of *quartz*, or rock-crystal, are inferior in hardness only to diamond. Now silex cannot be crystallized in the ordinary way; for it obstinately resists being melted by itself, and it cannot be dissolved in water in any but the minutest proportion. But it may be dissolved in water containing a strong alkali, with which it enters into combination; and from this solution it may be separated in a crystalline form, by the prolonged action of a very feeble current of electricity. There are still many crystals, however, which cannot yet be imitated by art; amongst these is the diamond, which is nothing else than crystallized carbon,—the substance of which charcoal and coke are almost entirely composed.

21. The slow and undisturbed action of the cohesive force, not only produces the regularity of the external forms of crystals, but also an internal structure which is equally regular. This is evident from the fact, that they may be split in certain directions, whilst they will resist almost any force applied to them in others; this has been long known to diamond-cutters,

---

* See Treatise on MINERALOGY.

but the fact has been more recently applied in the science of Mineralogy, and has given to it an entirely new character. The directions in which crystals are readily split, are termed the planes of its *cleavage.* This tendency is very important in a practical view; for it is owing to it that crystalline substances, however dense they may be, are so brittle; and that substances which are more or less perfectly crystalline are usually brittle in proportion as they possess this structure. Thus, cast-iron is very hard, presenting a strong resistance to any forces that would separate its particles; but it is at the same time very brittle, on account of its partly crystalline character. On the other hand, wrought or malleable iron, which has had its character completely changed by exposure to the air when melted, and by being hammered when softened by heat, has a fibrous texture; and whilst it is more easily cut, or bored, or worn down by continual rubbing, it is much less brittle. This difference in the characters of these two well-known forms of iron has given rise to much discussion, as to which kind was preferable for the *rails* of rail-roads. Cast-iron, from its superior hardness, is less rapidly worn down, but it is liable to be broken by any sudden jar; whilst wrought-iron, being much more tough, can withstand such action better, but is more rapidly worn away. The injury that would result, however, from the breaking of a rail under a train in rapid motion, is so great, that wrought-iron rails are now in almost universal use, in spite of their additional costliness and more rapid wear.

22. The fibrous structure on which depends the toughness of malleable or wrought iron, is liable to disappear under peculiar circumstances; and to give place to a crystalline structure, which will (like that of cast-iron) be accompanied with great brittleness.* This change depends upon a new internal arrangement of the particles; and may take place without any alteration in the external form of the substance. Thus, a wrought-iron furnace-bar, of whatever quality it may have originally been, is invariably converted, within a short time, into crystallized iron, by the alternate heating and cooling to which it is exposed; and

---

* See a Paper on this subject by Mr. C. Hood, in the *Philosophical Magazine* for August 1842.

the effect may be still more speedily produced, by heating and *rapidly* cooling (as by quenching a few times in water) any piece of wrought-iron. The same brittleness is produced by continually hammering a bar of iron at a low temperature. If it be hammered at welding heat, the very contrary result is obtained; but it is often found, in the manufacture of wrought-iron bars, that one portion has became quite brittle from being hammered too long after it has partly cooled, whilst the rest possesses the highest degree of toughness. The effect appears to depend upon a peculiar state of vibration into which the particles are thrown by the blows: and this vibration does not take place when the iron is softened by heat. If a small bar of good tough iron be suspended, and struck continually with small hand-hammers, so that a constant vibration is kept up, it becomes so extremely brittle, after the experiment has been continued for some considerable time, as to fall to pieces under the light blows of the hand-hammer, presenting throughout its structure a highly crystalline appearance. Any continual *jarring* will produce the same effect. A piston-rod has been known to undergo this change, in consequence of a ceaseless jarring to which it was subject, from not being fixed tightly into the piston; it broke short off, close to the piston, and presented at its fracture a highly crystalline appearance, whilst at a short distance it possessed the tough fibrous character, which (there was good reason to believe) originally belonged to the whole rod. It is, probably, to this cause that we are not unfrequently to attribute the breaking of the iron axles of carriages, carts, railroad carriages, &c. That some such change must have taken place in their interior structure seems evident from the fact, that, in many instances, they have been used for years with much heavier loads; and that they have at last broken without any apparent cause, under lighter burdens and less strain than they have formerly borne. In these cases, the crystalline structure does not prevail equally through the whole axle, but is found in the highest degree in the part where the jar is most felt by it. The causes of this change are not yet properly understood. It takes place much more rapidly in the axles of railway-carriages, than in those of common road-vehicles; and there is reason to believe that the electricity and magnetism which are produced in the working of the former have a share in the effect. However this may be, the knowledge of the possibility of this important change should cause great attention to the strength of the axles, in order to avoid such lamentable accidents as those which recently occurred from this cause on the Versailles and Birmingham Railways.

23. A crystalline arrangement may be shown to exist in many substances, when the external form has no regularity, by some means which shall remove the particles that surround the crystals, without injuring them. The simplest of these means is the action of a fluid in which the substance can be dissolved; for the attraction of the particles of the crystals for each other seems to direct the mode in which the fluid acts upon the substance; so that the irregularities are removed, and their forms become apparent. Thus, if we take a mass of alum, of sufficient size, having no regular external form, but made up within of a confused mass of crystals of various shapes, and place this in water, the fluid will act upon it at first in all directions alike; but as soon as the solution is nearly saturated, its dissolving power is diminished, and it acts only in the directions where the substance most readily yields to it. Under these circumstances, its surface will become embossed with crystals, presenting an immense variety of geometrical figures, stamped or carved, as it were, upon its substance. Many other substances may be acted upon in a similar way by fluids that will dissolve them; thus, beautiful crystalline forms may be produced upon metallic surfaces by the action of weak acids; and these may be applied to ornamental purposes. An aspect of this kind, given to common tin-plate, is known under the name of *moirée métallique*; this at one time excited much attention and admiration; but the manufacture has been brought into disrepute, by the very cheapness arising from the simplicity of the operation.

24. Having now considered the operation of attraction between particles of the same kind, in producing their *cohesion* to each other, we have next to speak of the action of the same force in producing the *adhesion* of particles of different kinds. In

scientific language, the former is said to be *homogeneous* (from two Greek words, signifying *same kind*), whilst the latter is said to be *heterogeneous* (*other* or *different kinds*). This kind of attraction is scarcely less important than the former; since, whilst cohesive attraction gives to masses of particles their form and density, and causes them to remain in the same condition as long as they are undisturbed by any other influence, the attraction which they have for the particles of other substances is the frequent occasion of an entire change in their form and arrangement. Thus the homogeneous attraction of the particles of sugar, when free to act by itself, causes them to arrange themselves in a crystalline form; but when we bring that sugar into contact with water, the heterogeneous attraction of the particles of sugar and water is so strong, as to overcome the former; and the particles of sugar are consequently separated from each other, and diffused through the whole mass of the water. The first stage of the process consists in the *wetting* of the surface by the fluid; this is caused by the feebler action of the same force. Thus we can readily wet with water a surface of glass; and less readily, a surface of polished iron; but neither of these surfaces can be wetted with mercury. No *adhesion* exists between mercury and polished iron or glass; and it has not the least power of dissolving either of these substances. When mercury is spread over the ordinary surface of the metal platinum, it does not wet it; but it may be made to do so completely, by carefully cleaning the surface. If, for a plate of platinum, we substitute tin or lead, either metal will be immediately and completely wetted by the mercury; and if the quantity of the fluid be sufficient, it will dissolve the solid in a short time. It seems, then, that the adhesion of the surfaces is the first operation of heterogeneous attraction; and that, where this occurs, there is generally a power on the part of the fluid to dissolve the solid, though sometimes in very small amount. The case of glass and water is not an exception to this rule; for though we do not usually regard glass as at all soluble in water, yet we may show it to be so, by placing very finely-powdered glass upon turmeric drawn, by the force of gravity, rather into the tub again, than down the part of the string that is hanging over. In like manner, when we place a fresh cotton-wick in a lamp, the oil is speedily drawn up to its top, but it does not run over; it then ceases to move, until the lighting of the lamp exhausts the oil at the top of the wick, and this is continually supplied by fresh absorption below. The fibres of cotton may be replaced by a bundle of small wires, which will answer the same purpose, so long as they are kept clean. The natural tubes of plants are well adapted to raise fluid by their capillary action; this may be experimentally shown by dipping one end of a piece of the ordinary cane, into spirits of turpentine, which will rise to the other end, so that the vapour will take fire there.

28. The action of endosmose,* which takes place with such power through animal and vegetable membranes, and even through porous mineral substances, seems capable of being explained on the same principles. It is essential to its performances, that the two fluids should have a strong tendency to mix; and that one of them should rise more readily through capillary tubes than the other. Thus, when syrup is put into a bag of animal membrane, and this is dipped in water, the latter passes more readily than the syrup through the pores of the membrane, and is thus carried to the inner side; when it comes in contact with the syrup, it is drawn off by the attraction which that liquid has for it; and as the portion thus drawn off is being continually supplied from the water on the outer side, by the capillary action of the membrane, a large quantity of water is thus introduced into the bladder and mingled with the syrup. There is a similar current, however, in the opposite direction,—the syrup being conveyed through the pores of the membrane, and being drawn off by admixture with the water on the outer side; but this is weaker than the other, in proportion to the thickness of the syrup, which impedes its passage through the minute capillary tubes of the membrane.

29. Another instance in which capillary action is made serviceable, is in filtration. When we desire to separate fluids

---

* See VEGETABLE PHYSIOLOGY, § 117.

from impurities which are diffused through them, or to obtain the finely-divided particles of a solid which may be suspended in fluids, we make use of a filter of some porous substance, through which the fluid is caused to pass, leaving the solid particles behind. In ordinary filtration, the particles of the fluid, when transmitted to the under-surface of the filter, cohere together and form drops; over which the force of gravity has then sufficient power to cause them to fall. The action is much assisted, however, by any pressure which shall give the liquid an increased tendency to pass through the pores, which it may be otherwise slow in doing. This may be often conveniently accomplished by the force of gravity, as in the plan represented in the adjoining cut. The tube *a b c* being filled with sand, and receiving water at the higher end *a*, discharges it filtered at *c;* and, as the pressure of the water on the side *a b* would have carried it up on the other side, *b c*, to a height as great as that of *a*, the pressure of that part of the column in *a b* which is above the level of *c*, is overbalanced, and is therefore employed in forcing the liquid downwards through the filter. The filters used by druggists are now frequently constructed upon such a plan, that a high column of the liquid is continually pressing downwards, so as to hasten its passage through the filter; this is frequently of great importance; for the substance from which the liquid has to be cleared has often a tendency to *clog* the pores of the filter, and thus to obstruct its passage; and where the liquid easily evaporates (as

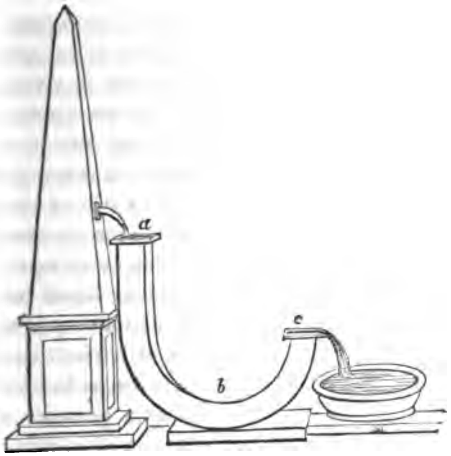


Fig. 3.

is the case with the *spirit* of tinctures), the long exposure of its surface to the air occasions a considerable loss. The filter may not only be used to separate fluids from solids, but to separate fluids that mix imperfectly from one another. To do this, it is only necessary to wet the filter in the first instance with the fluid we wish to draw off; that alone will be transmitted by it, the other remaining behind. In this manner, spirits of turpentine and water may be parted from each other.

30. The *force* which is capable of being produced by capillary attraction is much greater than would be generally supposed. It may be estimated by the opposition which it is capable of overcoming. Thus, a vessel of wire-gauze will hold a certain depth of water, if the meshes are sufficiently small; for each mesh will keep a drop of the fluid adhering to it by capillary attraction, so long as the weight of the water above is not sufficient to overcome this adhesion. For the same reason, a vessel of this kind will float in water, so long as it is not made to descend below a certain depth, depending on the size of the mesh. When endosmose takes place under the most favourable circumstances, it will raise a column of mercury to two or three times the height at which it stands in the barometer, and may thus sustain a weight of from 30 to 45 lbs. upon every square inch of surface. If a dry plug of wood be tightly fitted into one end of a stout tube of glass or porcelain, and a projecting portion be allowed to dip into water, the wood will swell with such force, by the entrance of the fluids into its pores, as to burst the tube, though it may be capable of resisting a pressure of more than 700 lbs. on the square inch. It is the same power which causes the stones of walls to be loosened by the growth of creeping plants, such as ivy; for the delicate fibrils of their roots being inserted into minute chinks between the stones, gradually become distended by capillary action, so as to separate these from their attachments. This power is turned to useful account in some parts of France and Germany, for separating large masses of stone from the solid rock, when this cleaves readily in particular directions. Holes are bored in its substance, into which wedges of dry wood are tightly driven; and when

these are exposed to moisture, they swell by capillary action with such force as to split the solid mass. The same plan is used for dividing a long piece thus obtained into shorter pieces, which are to be used as mill-stones.

31. A different set of phenomena occur when the liquid and solid have little or no attraction for each other, or when the force of *adhesion* is inferior to that of *cohesion*. A glass tube of small bore, when dipped into mercury, will not raise its level in the least degree, but will depress the column within it; and this in proportion to the smallness of the tube. The surface of the mercury, instead of being concave (or hollow), is convex (or bulging); that part nearest the side of the tube being lower than that in the centre. This is well seen in a barometer, especially if its tube be small. In a tube of 1-10th of an inch in diameter, the mercury is kept down as much as 1-7th of an inch. It is consequently necessary, in calculating the height of mountains, from the place at which the mercury stands in the barometer*, to make a correction for this depression, by adding to the observed height a small amount which shall express the influence of the glass in lowering its surface. This want of adhesion between the mercury and the glass produces another result, which may in time greatly injure the action of the barometer. The perfection of this action requires that the space between the mercury and the top of the tube should be completely void of air; but, owing to the want of complete contact between the glass of the tube and the mercury contained in it, and surrounding its lower end, the air gradually steals in, dipping down below the end of the tube, and slowly rising up through the column. This is prevented, in the best barometers, by welding a ring of platinum to the bottom of the tube; for, as mercury *wets* platinum, no air can pass between them. The effect of plunging into water a capillary tube, whose interior surface has been covered with a thin coat of oil, so that the water will not wet it, is exactly the same as that of plunging a glass tube into mercury; the fluid being depressed in the former case, as in the latter.

---

* See Treatise on PNEUMATICS.

32. Hitherto the effects of heterogeneous attraction have been considered only in reference to its most common form,—the action of solids and liquids on each other. But they are by no means confined to this. Solids may have a considerable attraction for each other; but this is best seen when one of them has been changed from the fluid state, whilst in contact with the other, so that the two surfaces are exactly adapted to each other. Upon this principle depends the action of cements of all kinds,—mortar for stones, glue for wood, resinous and other substances for glass. It is in part through the same adhesion, that solid surfaces cannot be slid over one another without a certain amount of resistance, even when the surfaces are very smooth. Other things being equal, however, it is generally found that the loss of force by this rubbing, or *friction*, is less when the two surfaces are composed of different substances, than when they are of the same; thus the resistance of iron moving upon iron is nearly double that of iron moving upon copper. However injurious this friction may become in the operation of machinery, it is of great importance in our ordinary actions; of this we shall become well aware, if we compare the ease with which we walk on a stone pavement, on which we can plant our feet firmly, with the difficulty we have in walking across ice, on which, from the absence of friction, our feet are continually slipping. If it were not for friction, too, we should slide from our chairs, when our bodies slope in any direction; and the pens with which we write would slip through our fingers. When *both* surfaces are made very even, the friction is very much increased, so that it is difficult to slide one over the other. This is particularly the case with two surfaces of the same kind, such as plate-glass. After the plates have received their final polish, it is usual to place them in an upright position in the warehouse, like books in the shelves of a library. In this position they not unfrequently acquire, in the course of time, an adhesion which renders it very difficult and sometimes impossible to separate them. Instances have been recorded, in which three or four pieces were thus absolutely incorporated with each other, so that they might be treated in all respects as one piece, and even cut

with the diamond as one, adhering almost as perfectly as if they had been melted. When an exceedingly great mechanical force was applied in the proper direction, they were caused to slip one on another; and when at last they came asunder, it was found that they had not separated at their common surfaces, but that the thickness of the glass had yielded, so that the surface of one carried off with it a thin layer of another. In this and similar cases, such as the fixture of a ground-glass stopper in the neck of a bottle, the particles of the two surfaces are brought so close together, as to *cohere* instead of simply *adhering*.

33. Solid bodies not unfrequently exercise the same kind of attraction over gaseous particles, as over those of a solid or liquid substance. This is shown by the floating on water of bodies which are really heavier than itself, but which are buoyed up by a layer of air that adheres to them. Thus with a little care we may lay a fine sewing-needle on the surface of water, in such a manner that it shall not sink; but if the needle be too thick, its weight will bear a larger proportion to the quantity of air that surrounds it, so that it cannot be made to float. It seems that iron surfaces have a peculiar adhesion to air, as the following experiment shows. If we take some iron filings, and sift them upon the surface of water in a tall glass jar, they will float upon the top, until a stratum (or layer) of considerable thickness has thus been laid upon the water. At length this stratum will break up into masses which will sink; and it will then be seen that they had been previously buoyed up by the adhesion of particles of air, which their accumulated weight will even carry to the bottom with them. If we sift powdered magnesia upon water in the same manner, its particles will sink almost immediately; for as they do not possess the same property of causing air to adhére to them, they become wetted by the close contact of the liquid; and being heavier than water, there is nothing whatever to buoy them up. There is a considerable adhesion, also, between glass and air, which is shown in the making of barometers. If we fill a clean glass tube with mercury, we shall find a quantity of small glass bubbles adhering pertinaciously

to its sides; many of these may be swept away, by causing a large bubble to pass several times from top to bottom by inclining the tube towards each end alternately; but it will still remain coated throughout with a film, which can only be removed by boiling the mercury in it. Even this, however, does not produce that close contact between the mercury and the glass, which is necessary for the complete exclusion of the air; since, as already stated (§ 31), the air will creep in, if not prevented by giving to the glass tube a termination of platinum, which is wetted by the mercury.

34. This attraction of solid bodies for gases produces several important results in the economy of Nature. There are many insects, which, although they breathe air, are inhabitants of the water; and they are enabled to surround themselves with a film of air, by its adhesion to their hairy bodies, which they can carry down with them for use at a considerable distance beneath the surface. In the same manner, the diving spider* carries down successive quantities, by which it gradually fills its delicate little bell with a quantity sufficient for its supply during the whole winter; the amount of adherent air is so considerable, that the spider cannot descend by its own weight, but is obliged to creep, with considerable muscular exertion, down any stems or leaves that may conduct it from the surface of the water to its destination. There is another most important practical result, that arises from the attraction exercised over gases by many porous substances, which will absorb and retain quantities of gaseous matter equal to many times their own bulk. Thus newly-burned charcoal will absorb 90 times its bulk of ammonia (the pungent gas contained in spirits of hartshorn), and 35 times its bulk of carbonic acid (the foul air of wells, caverns, &c., also produced by the breathing of animals, the burning of charcoal, &c.). It will also take in watery vapour; the weight of the charcoal being in some cases increased nearly one-fifth by a week's exposure to air. Other porous substances possess the same property, though usually in a less degree; and it is by the exercise of this attraction by our soil, for the ammonia and car-

---

* See Treatise on ZOOLOGY.

bonic acid of the atmosphere, that a large proportion of the nourishment obtained by plants is derived*. So large a quantity of common air is sometimes condensed by powdered charcoal, that a great amount of heat is given out by it, according to principles which will be explained in the treatise on Heat; and in one instance which has come under the author's knowledge, a cask of animal charcoal in powder had actually become red-hot in the interior, from no other cause.

35. Various animal and vegetable substances have a considerable power of attracting watery vapour; and of readily yielding it again. The changes in their size and form which are produced by such alterations, make them present tolerably good indications of the amount of dampness in the atmosphere. Thus every lady knows that it is more difficult to keep her hair in curl in damp weather than in dry. The catgut strings of a harp shorten with damp, and will not unfrequently break if they be not slackened. Various instruments have been devised for measuring the quantity of dampness in the air on this principle. Thus, a piece of sponge (prepared by steeping it in pearl-ash and water) will change its weight by the absorption or the loss of water, according to the dampness or the dryness of the atmosphere; and if it be suspended from a balance, the alterations in its weight may be indicated by a scale to which the arm of the balance is made to point. Another instrument, for a long time the most accurate in use, was constructed to measure the alterations in length

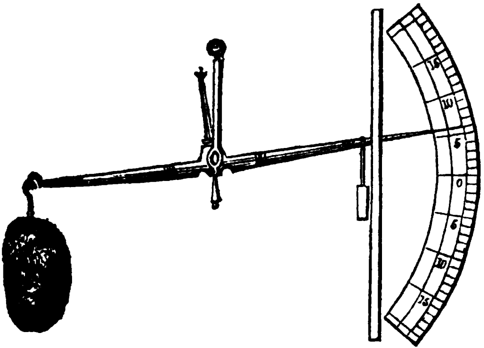


Fig. 4.

---

* See Treatise on VEGETABLE PHYSIOLOGY, Chapter VI.

produced by the dryness and dampness of the atmosphere, in a human hair. The hair (prepared in the same manner as the sponge) is held at each end by a pair of small nippers, of which the lower one is attached to the frame of the instrument, whilst the upper one hangs from a thread or fine wire that winds round the axis on which the index is placed. The hair is kept on the stretch by means of a small weight suspended from the axis in the contrary direction. When the atmosphere is dry, the hair has a tendency to twist and contract itself in length, so that the axis is turned round by its strain; and when the air is damp, the hair lengthens, so that the index is turned in a contrary direction by the weight, as far as it is permitted. The index moves over a scale, on which are marked the points of extreme dryness and dampness; which are ascertained by placing the instrument first in air rendered as dry as possible, and then in air loaded with moisture. The indications given by such an instrument (which is termed a Hygrometer or measurer of moisture) are much less correct, however, than those of an instrument invented by Professor Daniell, which enables us to ascertain the exact amount of moisture contained in the air.*

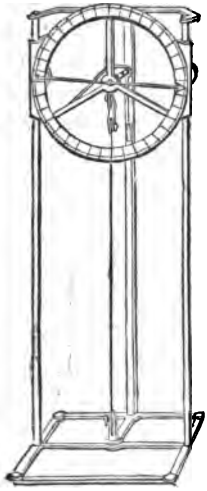


Fig. 5.

36. Liquids, also, have an attraction for gases; and this is shown every time that we pour water from one vessel to another. Large quantities of air, strongly attached to the surface, are carried down by the falling mass below the surface of the liquid in the lower vessel; but as they become elastic from the additional compression they undergo, they detach themselves from the particles of water to which they adhered, and rise again in a stream of bubbles. This process takes place on a large scale in natural falls of water; the foam and dashing spray of which are produced

---

* This will be described in the Treatise on Heat; as a knowledge of the laws of that agent is necessary to the comprehension of its action.

by the escape of the air, rebounding from a considerable depth to which it has been carried by the downward impulse, and in its turn carrying with it a quantity of watery particles. There are waterfalls at which advantage has been taken of this perpetual supply, by receiving the air, whilst in a state of compression, into vessels, from which it is conveyed to blast-furnaces for the smelting of metals. Were it not for this tendency of water to absorb air, no living being could continue to exist below its surface; for both aquatic plants and animals derive the air which (like plants and animals living on land) they perpetually require, from that contained in the liquid medium they inhabit. Thus gold-fish, kept in a small quantity of water, gradually exhaust it, by the action of their gills, of the air which it contains; and unless they receive a fresh supply in some way or other, they die. Where they are living in a pond which is continually exposing a large surface to the air, and the water of which, therefore, is continually absorbing a fresh supply, no further attention on this point is required. But when they are confined in a glass globe, such as is commonly employed for the purpose, it is necessary that the water should be frequently changed. The form of these vessels is the worst possible; since, the more nearly they are filled with water, the smaller is the surface it presents to the air; and the less, therefore, is the renewal of the air, as it is exhausted by the fish, through absorption from the atmosphere.

37. We may easily prove the presence of air in ordinary water, by placing some of the latter in a glass vessel under the receiver of the air-pump. As soon as the pressure is partly removed from the surface of the liquid, we shall see a large quantity of minute bubbles in the water; the greater part of these are attracted to the surface of the glass, to which they adhere; but in proportion as the pressure is removed, they increase in size, and at last rise to the surface and make their escape. If we apply the same means, however, to water which has been recently boiled, we shall obtain no disengagement of air-bubbles; but if we allow the same water to remain exposed to the air for a few hours, we shall find that it will contain

nearly as much air as if none had been expelled from it by the boiling. The process by which the air is driven off by heat is still more easily watched, but we cannot always readily distinguish between bubbles of air and of steam. If we place a glass vessel, containing spring water, over a lamp, we shall very soon see a number of minute bubbles, at first adhering to its sides and bottoms, and then rising to the surface; these are formed by the air which the water contained, and which is made to show itself thus, not by the removal of pressure from the surface of the water (as in the last case), but by the increase of its own elasticity. But as the water becomes hotter, other bubbles are formed, which consist of watery vapour; and by the time it is brought to the boiling point all the air is expelled. It is to the loss of the air which it contains, that the flatness of water that has been recently boiled is due.

38. Water is capable of dissolving much larger quantities of many gases, than it can of common air. Thus, it may be made to take up many times its own bulk of carbonic acid gas, provided a sufficient pressure be kept upon its surface. This is the case with brisk, fermented liquors, which have been bottled before the process of fermentation (by which this gas is given off in large quantities) is complete; the gas afterwards produced remains dissolved through the liquid, until the pressure is taken off by the opening of the bottle, when it comes forth with effervescence, as in the case of champagne, porter, cider, &c. In bottled soda-water, the carbonic acid is forced into the water by great pressure, and escapes in the same manner when that pressure is removed; but in the common effervescing draughts, the gas is given off at the time of the mixture of the acid and the soda, by the action of one upon the other. By heating any of these fluids, the whole carbonic acid they contain is set free; and it is thus shown that the attraction of the carbonic acid for the water is readily overcome.

39. But there are other gases for which water has a much greater attraction,—taking them up with great eagerness, and not easily parting with them. This is the case with ammonia, and with muriatic acid gas. That these naturally exist in the

state of gas or vapour, we may satisfy ourselves by a simple experiment. If we hold the open mouth of a bottle containing hartshorn near another containing spirit of salt, we shall see the air between them filled with white fumes, which are produced by the action of the vapour of one upon the vapour of the other, forming, in a very finely-divided state, the substance which is known as sal-ammoniac. Now hartshorn is little else than water which has been caused to absorb a large quantity of ammonia in the state of vapour; and spirit of salt is water which has been caused to take up muriatic acid gas (which is given off when we pour sulphuric acid—oil of vitriol—upon common table-salt) in the same manner. For a certain quantity of these gases, water has so strong an attraction, that when a tube or bottle filled with either of them is opened under water, the liquid will rush up the tube as if it were perfectly empty,* absorbing the gas as it ascends. From this quantity, no amount of heat, or withdrawal of pressure, can set it free; but when the liquid has been caused to take up a large quantity of the gas, a part of this readily passes off, when pressure is withdrawn (by the removal of the stopper or cork), in the same manner as carbonic acid from soda-water.

40. We have lastly to consider the heterogeneous attraction of the particles of gases and vapours for each other; which gives rise to several curious and important results. Aeriform bodies are capable of mixing with each other with perfect freedom; since they have no *cohesion* nearly sufficient to resist the force of *adhesion*. They are all, consequently, able to diffuse themselves, without any limit or obstacle, through each other's masses; and this in spite of the greatest differences in their weight. Thus, if we confine a portion of hydrogen (a gas which forms a large part of what we burn in gas-lights, lamps, candles, &c.) in a strong phial, and a portion of oxygen (a gas which forms one-fifth of the atmosphere) in another, and connect the two by a narrow tube three or four feet long, placing the hydrogen-phial at the highest end, we shall find, in a short time, that a complete mixture will have taken place between the two,

---

* See Treatise on PNEUMATICS.

—as shown by the explosive power which the gas in both phials will now have acquired, the hydrogen from mixture with the oxygen, and the oxygen from mixture with the hydrogen. In this case, the weights of equal bulks of the two gases are as 1 to 16; and the oxygen, which is the heavier, is thus drawn by the attraction up to the very highest point in the upper vessel; whilst the hydrogen, which is only one-sixteenth part of its weight, descends to the bottom of the lower phial: when properly considered, this change of place is as striking as if it took place with two liquids, having the densities of water and mercury. It is to this tendency in the particles of gases to mutual adhesion, that the equal admixture of those composing atmospheric air, is due. It has been found by experiment that there is no marked difference in the proportions of oxygen and nitrogen, in air taken from the most different situations, such as the tops of high mountains, the heart of the most crowded cities, the surface of the ocean within the polar circle and at the equator; yet there is about as much difference in their respective weights as there is between oil and water. Again, the tendency of the atmosphere to dissolve watery vapour is another instance of the same attraction; it is never free from moisture, and sometimes it is completely loaded with it.

41. The tendency of gases to mingle shows itself not only when they are left quite free to do so, but also when a porous partition exists between them. Thus, if we confine a portion of common air in a membranous bag, such as that formed by the stomach of a rabbit or other small animal, and suspend this in a vessel filled with carbonic acid gas, the latter will penetrate the bag, and will at last burst it. Here an endosmose and exosmose occur, as in the case of liquids; but the tendency of the carbonic acid to pass in is greater than that of the air to pass out, so that an increase in the contents of the bag necessarily takes place. By the slow action of the same forces, hydrogen gas, confined in a bell-jar which has a crack in its side, gradually makes its escape, and is replaced by a certain quantity of air. If a portion of common air be confined in a jar, by tying tightly over it a piece of sheet India-rubber, and this be placed in a larger jar

filled with hydrogen, the latter gas will pass through the India-rubber partition faster than the air passes from the other side; and thus the partition will be made to bulge out, and will at last burst. The amount of each gas that will tend thus to diffuse itself through any other, has been determined by a very simple experiment. If a tube, closed at one end by a plug of dry plaster-of-Paris, about half an inch long, be filled with any gas lighter than air, and be placed over water, there will be a gradual interchange between the outer air and the contained gas, through the porous plug. The quantity of air which enters will be less than that of the gas which passes out; and the water into which the tube dips at its lower end will consequently rise in it. When the tube is filled with hydrogen gas, the rise of the water is very rapid; and it will fill, at last, a large proportion of the tube. Now it has been ascertained that the quantity of air which will replace any particular gas, is in the opposite or inverse proportion to the square-root of the density of that gas, as compared with air. Thus common air is nearly 16 times heavier than hydrogen; and the square-root of 16 being 4, the quantity of air which will replace any given amount of hydrogen is *inversely* as nearly 4 to 1, or in ordinary language as 1 to nearly 4,—that is, something more than one-fourth. The remainder of the tube—nearly three-fourths of its length—becomes filled with water, which is drawn up to fill the vacuum or empty space thus left. If, on the other hand, the tube be filled with a gas heavier than air, the latter will enter more quickly than the former will pass out; and the water will be pushed down instead of being drawn up*.

42. Not only does this force of heterogeneous attraction tend to bring together particles of bodies which were previously in a separate state, but it may, when very powerful, remove them from the influence of a similar force which had caused them to adhere less powerfully to other substances. Thus between water

---

* There is not the same regularity of result when animal membranes are employed instead of plaster-of-Paris; thus carbonic acid will pass towards common air, or even coal-gas (which is much lighter), and will distend a bladder filled with it, even to bursting; although according to the rule just given, the air or coal-gas, being much the lighter, should pass towards the denser carbonic acid, as in the endosmose of fluids.

and spirit-of-wine there is considerable attraction; the two liquids may be mixed in any proportions, and they cannot easily be separated. Between spirit and resin of any kind, again, there is a strong attraction, so that the latter is dissolved in the former. But between resin and water there is very little attraction; the solid may have its surface just wetted with the liquid; but it cannot be dissolved in it in the least degree. Now if we add water to a solution of resin in spirit, the tendency of the spirit to adhere to the water, will be sufficiently strong to detach it from the resin, which was previously diffused through it by its attractive force; and the resin is thrown down or *precipitated* in the solid form. In the same manner, if we shake well-burned charcoal in water with which the gas named sulphuretted hydrogen (that which is principally concerned in giving the fœtid smell to rotten eggs, cess-pools, &c.,) is united, the charcoal will completely absorb the gas, detaching it from the liquid, and will deprive the latter of the very disagreeable qualities it previously possessed. In this manner, water which has in any way become foul may be completely purified; those of its impurities which cannot be removed by ordinary filtering, being completely withdrawn by charcoal.

43. It is often necessary to separate bodies which are more or less closely united by heterogeneous adhesion; and various plans are adopted, according to the nature of the substances. Thus if it were desired to purify water which is rendered turbid by finely-divided particles of earth, chalk, &c. *suspended* in it, these may be removed by simply filtering it through a solid substance whose pores are too small to allow these particles to pass. Or if it were desired to collect any substance precipitated from a solution (as the resin from the spirit, in the case just mentioned) the filter is here again employed,—the solid matter remaining upon it being here the product we seek, and not, as in the filtering of impure water, the liquid which has passed through. Another mode is very often employed to clear a fluid from minute particles that injure its transparency. This is to shake it up with some viscid substance that shall attach these particles, and remove them from the liquid. The white of eggs is much used for this

purpose, in clarifying wine, syrup, coffee, melted jelly, &c.; and in the old process of sugar-refining, bullocks' blood was employed in large quantity. But no filtering, or other such process, could separate a liquid and a solid substance *dissolved* in it, as water and salt; and here we call in the aid of heat, which causes the particles that were previously adherent to repel one another. Thus, we might separate salt and water by applying heat to the solution, which would drive off the water in the state of vapour, leaving the salt behind. This process is termed *evaporation*; and it will of course take place the faster, in proportion to the heat applied. If we desire to collect and preserve the liquid, the vapour is conducted into a vessel to which cold is applied, and is there condensed, or brought back to the liquid form. This process is called *distillation*; and it is practised on a very large scale in the separation of alcohol (spirit-of-wine) from water. The alcohol is caused to pass off in vapour, by the application of heat, much more readily than water, its boiling point being low; and the latter, therefore, remains behind until nearly all the spirit has been driven off. The same process is applied in concentrating sulphuric acid (oil-of-vitriol), which, as first made, contains a large quantity of water; but in this instance the water is the most readily evaporated, and the strong sulphuric acid remains behind.

Divisibility of Matter.

44. There appears no limit to the degree of minuteness to which various forms of matter may be subdivided. Various interesting examples of this kind are presented to us by Nature, being revealed for the most part by the aid of the microscope; and others are furnished by Art. The former class will be first considered.—We not unfrequently speak of things as being "as fine as a hair." Now the human hair varies in thickness from the 1-250th to the 1-600th part of an inch; and it is a massive cable in comparison with the fibres produced by other animals. The thread of the silk-worm is many times finer, being from the 1-1700th to the 1-2000th of an inch. This, however, is nothing to the slenderness of the spider's thread, which has been found

in some instances to be no more than 1-30,000th of an inch in diameter. It is difficult even to imagine quantities so small; and the best way to realize them to the mind is to consider that 30,000 such threads laid side by side would make a riband only one inch broad. But this is by no means the entire wonder of the spider's thread. Each of these slender cords is composed of four or six twisted together; and every one of these is formed by the pressing out of a viscid fluid through a sort of teat or spinneret at the hinder part of the animal, the point of which, instead of having a single orifice, is perforated by not less than 1000 very minute apertures. The thread of each spinneret must be formed, therefore, by the union of not less than 1000 fibrils; and four or six of these threads go to form the cord of 1-30,000th of an inch in diameter, of which the spider's web is constructed. It has been calculated that two drachms (120 grains) of such thread would reach from Edinburgh to London. The fibres yielded by the vegetable kingdom are not so fine as these; yet their minuteness is most astonishing. Every fibre of flax is composed of a bundle of other fibrils, which have been found to be about 1-2500th of an inch in diameter. Similar fibres, obtained from the pine-apple plant, have been ascertained to be no more than 1-5000th or even 1-7000th of an inch in diameter; these when twisted into threads, and woven, are said to form cloth of very beautiful silky texture. The glistening spiral fibrils which are drawn out when the leaf-stalk of a geranium or a strawberry is snapped by drawing the ends apart, are not more than 1-12,000th of an inch in diameter.

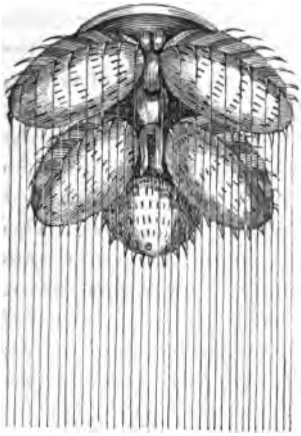


FIG. 6.

Spinnerets of the Spider.

45. Not only fibres, however, but rounded particles of extreme minuteness, are distinguishable by the microscope, in

the structures of animals and plants. Thus the red blood of the higher animals derives its colour from the presence of multitudes of flattened discs (resembling pieces of money in shape), which float in the fluid. These discs are round in the blood of quadrupeds; but are oval in that of birds, reptiles and fishes. They are largest in the blood of certain species of the frog tribe, in which their length is as much as 1-337th of an inch. In the common frog, however, it is no more than about 1-1000th of an inch. In man, their diameter varies from 1-3000th to 1-4000th of an inch; and it may be estimated that, in such a drop of blood as would hang from the point of a needle, there would be a million of such particles. In the musk-deer, their diameter is not more than 1-12,000th of an inch; these are the smallest blood-particles at present known.

46. Yet there are animalcules possessing a complex internal structure, having the power of imbibing and digesting food, of moving with great rapidity, and (as it would seem from their actions), of enjoying life during the brief span allotted to them, which are far smaller than the minutest particles of blood. The minutest kind of these are termed Monads; they present the appearance of little points of jelly, in active movement; and no distinct structure can be traced in them. When they are put into water, however, in which a little indigo or carmine has been rubbed, coloured spots are soon distinguishable in their bodies, arising from the filling of interior cavities with the minutest particles of the colouring substance. Now the whole monad is from 1-18,000th to 1-24,000th of an inch in diameter. In the smaller ones as many as four, and in the larger ones as many as six, of these spots could be seen, not occupying above half the diameter of the animal; the diameter of each spot, therefore, could not be more than 1-144,000th part of an inch. From the roundness of these spots there must be several particles in each; if we only assume three, we obtain proof that there must be particles of the colouring substance diffused through the water of no more than 1-432,000th part of an inch in diameter. Further, in the larger animals of similar structure, it is seen that the spots are separated by membraneous partitions of not greater

thickness than one-twentieth of the diameter of the spot; and this would make the thickness of the partitions no more than 1-2,880,000th of an inch, in the monads of smaller size. Again, in the larger species, the active movements may be distinctly seen to be due to the vibration of delicate hair-like filaments, termed *cilia;* though these cilia cannot be distinguished in the smallest monads, yet, as the movements are evidently the same, they must doubtless exist in them; and they cannot have a greater diameter than 1-450,000th of an inch. If the same calculations were extended to the young animals, or to species too small to be discerned, except under the most favourable circumstances, the minuteness of the particles of whose existence we should then have evidence would be found to be still more inconceivable.

47. Again, there is found at Bilin in Germany, a deposit of siliceous (flinty) character, which occupies a surface of great extent (probably the site of an ancient lake,) and forms slaty layers of fourteen feet in thickness. This bed supplies the *tripoli* used by artisans in metal for polishing their work, and also the fine sand employed to form moulds for casting small articles in Berlin iron*. For these purposes its consumption in Berlin alone is not less than from 50 to 60 cwt. yearly. It is almost entirely composed of the sheaths or coverings of a kind of animalcule, which has the power of separating flinty matter from the water in which it dwells, and of producing out of this a sort of case analogous to the shell of a crab or lobster. The length of one of these is about the 1-3500th of an inch; and it is hence calculated, that about 23 *millions* of them are contained in a cubic line of the sand, and 41,000 *millions* in a cubic inch. As a cubic inch weighs 220 grains, about 187 millions would be contained in a grain weight of this sand.

48. The minuteness of these is yet surpassed by that of the animalcules of the iron-ochre, a yellowish-brown substance found in certain marshes. These are only about 1-12,000th of an inch in diameter; so that a cubic line would thus contain 1000

It is partly on the fineness of this sand, that the beauty and finish of these articles depends.

millions of them, and a cubic inch nearly *two million millions.* Yet these animalcules must have each had a fabric composed of a number of parts, whose size would be small in comparison to that of its whole body. There seems, therefore, no limit whatever to the subdivision of material particles in the natural growth of animal bodies.

49. The Vegetable world has not been found to afford any examples of such wonderful minuteness. There is one instance, however, which it may be well to mention, on account of its frequent occurrence. The common puff-ball fungus, when it bursts, sends out a kind of smoke, or very fine dust. This consists of particles of extreme minuteness, each of which is capable of producing a new plant; their diameter is about 1-20,000th or 1-30,000th of an inch; and we can thus readily comprehend what it is otherwise very difficult to understand,—the universal diffusion of the germs of the fungi, so that they are ready to spring up wherever there is a soil adapted to them, as we see in the case of the various kinds of mould, blight, &c.*

50. The thickness of transparent films may be sometimes determined by the colours † they transmit. In this way, it has been ascertained that the wings of certain insects are not more than the 1-100,000th of an inch in thickness; that is, a hundred thousand such wings laid on one another would form a pile not more than an inch in height. A thinness as excessive as this may be given to glass, by blowing it into bubbles (like those of soap and water), until they burst. In the same way it was determined by Newton, that the part of a soap-bubble in which colours are seen is less than 1-25,000th of an inch thick; and that, in the situation of the black spot which is seen just before the bubble bursts, it is no more than the 4-*millionth* of an inch in thickness. There are various other modes of proving, by calculation, the extreme divisibility of the particles of matter in a fluid form; and some of these give results surpassing any that have been mentioned. Thus, a grain of copper, being dissolved in nitric acid (*aqua-fortis*), will give a blue colour to the fluid; and if this be

---

* See VEGETABLE PHYSIOLOGY, § 61—64.

† See *Colours* in Treatise on OPTICS.

mixed with three pints of water, the whole will be sensibly coloured. Now three pints contain 104 cubic inches; and as a line of an inch in length may be divided into at least 100 parts distinguishable by the naked eye, a cube of an inch each way may be divided into a million such parts; hence, every millionth of a cubic inch of such a solution will contain no more than 1-104 *millionth* of a grain of metallic copper. The presence of copper in it might be proved by chemical tests, which would separate it in the metallic state. In the same manner it may be calculated that, if a grain of gold be dissolved in a mixture of nitric and muriatic acids, and a piece of ivory or white satin be dipped in it, the film of metal with which this is covered (which may be brought back to the metallic state by placing the substance in hydrogen gas), is no more than 1-10 *millionth* part in thickness. Chemistry furnishes us with a great abundance of such examples.

51. Even in ordinary mechanical processes, the division of certain metals, especially gold, silver, and platinum, is carried to an extent which we should by no means have guessed, but which may be positively determined by a little simple calculation. Thus, an ounce of gold would form a cube of something less than half an inch each way (5-12ths); so that, when placed on a table, it would cover less than a quarter of a square inch, and would stand not quite half an inch high. Now, by continual hammering, the gold-beater extends this cube until it covers a surface of 146 square feet, or 21,024 square inches. It is thus extended to more than 121,000 times its original surface; and it will consequently be only 1-121,000th part of its original thickness, or about 1-290,000th of an inch. Fifteen hundred such leaves placed upon one another would not equal in thickness a single leaf of ordinary writing-paper.—In the ordinary process of gilding, the gold is mixed up with quicksilver, forming a soft amalgam; this is spread over the surface to be gilded; and the mercury being then driven off by heat, a very thin film of gold is left. Now, though it can be easily proved that this film is no more than 1-233,000th of an inch in thickness, it forms a complete surface, in which there are no pores or deficiencies; as is

shown by its power of protecting the brass, silver, &c. that it may cover, from the action of aqua-fortis poured upon it.

52. In the manufacture of embroidery, it is necessary to obtain very fine gilt silver threads. To accomplish this, a cylindrical bar of silver, weighing 360 ounces, is covered with about 2 ounces of gold. This gilt bar is then drawn into wire so fine, that 3400 feet of it weigh less than an ounce. The wire is then flattened by passing it between rollers under a severe pressure; by which process its length is increased, so that about 4000 feet weigh an ounce. Hence, one foot will weigh 1-4000th of an ounce. Now the original proportion of the gold to the silver was 2 parts to 360, or 1 to 180; so that the quantity of gold on a foot of the wire is only the 1-180th of 1-4000th of an ounce, or 1-720,000th. Now if we divide this foot of wire into 12 parts of an inch long, and then again divide an inch into 100 equal parts, every one of which will be visible to the naked eye, we shall obtain particles on which a quantity of gold exists equal only to the 1-1200th part of 1-720,000th of an ounce, or 1-864 *millionth.* But we might proceed even further; for we might magnify one of these particles in a microscope 500 times each way, or 250,000 times in area; so that we should be able to distinguish clearly portions of its surface, each of which shall seem equal to the magnified particle, and yet be really no more than 1-250,000th part of it. Hence the quantity of gold (which is seen by the microscope to be uniformly distributed over the whole) covering such a portion of the surface, will weigh only 1-250,000th part of 1-864 *millionth* of an ounce, or 1-216 *million-millionth* of an ounce,—an amount of which it is utterly impossible to form a true conception. So completely does the film of gold upon the wire retain all its properties, that, if a small piece be cut off and placed in nitric acid, this fluid will dissolve the silver within the coating, by attacking its unprotected ends, and will leave the gold, forming a tube.

Indestructibility of Matter.

53. Few errors are more common, than the idea that there can be a waste or destruction of matter, or at least of some kinds

of it. Such an idea would seem to be abundantly confirmed by daily experience. We see the wood or the coal of our fires, the wax or tallow of our candles, the oil of our lamps, gradually burning away; the materials seem entirely to vanish, and to leave little or no trace behind them. But they only change their form. In all cases of ordinary combustion, two elements, carbon* and hydrogen—of which most of our combustible substances are chiefly composed—unite with the oxygen of the atmosphere, and give off light and heat in their union; and as the result of this union, it may be shown that water, and a gas termed carbonic acid, are produced. Precisely the same change is effected by the breathing of animals; which process is a kind of slow combustion, serving to keep up the heat of the body. It is because carbonic acid gas (which is the gas that is often found at the bottom of wells and pits that have been closed for some time, and in brewers' vats) is a poison to animals, that the continuance of a number of persons in an ill-ventilated room makes its air unwholesome; the injurious change being further aided by the combustion of lamps or candles.

54. Both of the substances which are thus given off to the atmosphere are again taken from it by Plants; and are by them made subservient to the purposes of the growth of Animals. Vegetables have a wonderful power of *decomposing* the carbonic acid of the air;—that is, of separating it into its two elements, of which they take the carbon, giving back the oxygen to the atmosphere. In this manner the carbon is again reduced to the solid state; and it may either enter into the formation of wood, or may become part of the wax and oil, &c. which many plants produce in abundance. By the combustion of wood, either in its ordinary state or that altered form which we know as coal, the carbon is again given off to the atmosphere, again to be withdrawn from it by the agency of another generation of plants; and the same occurs with regard to vegetable oil and wax. But Vegetables also employ the carbon which they withdraw from the air, as one of the materials of the substances which they produce

---

* Carbon is nearly the same with very pure charcoal. Hydrogen forms a considerable part of coal-gas.

for the benefit of the Animal creation; and these substances, taken in as food, partly enter into the construction of the solid framework of their bodies, but chiefly serve as the fuel for the slow combustion, just now mentioned as adapted to keep up the temperature of the system. Thus, of the carbon which is taken from the atmosphere by plants, a large part is restored by the breathing of animals, or by the uses to which man puts the materials he obtains from them; and the remainder is given back by the decay of the vegetable and animal fabrics not so employed. This decay is but another change of the same kind with those already mentioned. There is no more absolute loss of material in this case than in the others. The elements of the substances which we observe to disappear by slow or rapid degrees, do but change their state by entering into new combinations; and they are separated from these in turn, that they may become the elements of new fabrics, which again restore them to the atmosphere by their own death. What has been said of the carbonic acid given off in combustion may be said of the water also; for this unites with the vapour that rises from the surface of the sea, the lakes, and the rivers of our globe, to descend in fertilizing showers on the ground, that would otherwise be parched and arid; and being taken up by the roots of plants, it supplies the elements which, combined with the carbon obtained by the atmosphere, make up the great bulk of the vegetable fabric.

55. Thus we see that, in the most familiar of all cases,—in which the idea of the *destruction* of the substance most strongly occurs to our minds,—there is really no loss of material, but only an alteration of its condition; and that this constantly-occurring alteration is a part of the grand scheme of Providence. For if there were not thus a constant renewal,—by the process of combustion, decay, and animal respiration,—of the carbonic acid in the air, it would be entirely withdrawn, in process of time, by the growth of plants, and vegetation must cease for want of a supply of materials. Or if, on the other hand, these processes were to continue to impart carbonic acid to the air, and there were no corresponding withdrawal of it by the growth of

plants, the atmosphere would in time become unfit for the maintenance of the lives of animals.*

56. There are many instances in which there is a gradual disappearance of solid material, by the wearing away of the surface of a mass; and in which, therefore, it would seem as if there was an actual loss of substance. Thus, according to the old proverb, "a continual dropping will wear away the hardest rock." There are many relics, preserved with religious veneration, which, although composed of hard stone, exhibit deep impressions produced by the kisses of the devotees, who have been anxious thus to signify their faith and love. Thus, the friction, even of the softest substances, leaves its mark upon the hardest, when the act is often repeated. That of hard substances upon each other operates much more rapidly; and a *wear* of their surfaces takes place, especially if they are not rendered smooth by oil or grease interposed between them; as in the case of a hard road, over which many carriages pass. The *wear* of our clothes into holes is another example of the gradual disappearance of material, from the same cause. In all these instances, and many more, there is no *loss* of particles, but only a *separation* of some of those on the surface from the rest; thus, at every contact of another substance, some few are carried off; and the loss is the more rapid in proportion as the friction is greater. The particles thus separated form the greatest part of the *dust* which is continually floating about in the air, and is deposited on bodies at rest.

---

* See, on the subject of this and the two preceding paragraphs, the Treatise on VEGETABLE PHYSIOLOGY, chapters vi. and viii.

CHAPTER II.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER NOT UNIVERSAL.—ELASTICITY, DUCTILITY, MALLEABILITY.—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

57. The property by which certain forms of matter admit of being compressed, and return to their original condition after the compressing force is removed, has been hitherto described only as it is possessed by aeriform bodies (§ 8). These, indeed, are the only bodies in nature which are *perfectly elastic*,—that is, which exert a force in returning to their previous state, equal to that which compressed or displaced them. This property is easily shown to exist in air or in other gases, by means of a tube bent at the bottom like the letter U, but having one of the legs greatly prolonged and open, whilst the short one is closed at the top. If mercury be poured into the long leg, it will not rise in the short leg to the same height; since there is a certain quantity of air in it which has no means of escape. If more and more mercury be poured into the long leg of the tube, its increasing weight will compress the air pent up in the short leg; so that, if the column of mercury stand 30 inches higher on one side than on the other, the air will be compressed into half its previous dimensions. Now, if, under these circumstances, the tube be laid down sideways upon a horizontal table, the whole compressing force of the mercury will be taken off, since the column then rests entirely on the sides of the tube; and it will be found that the air will then occupy precisely the same space within the tube, as it did when the quantity of mercury in the tube was such as to occupy only the bend of the U, and when the height of the column was the same on each side, so that no pressure was being exerted by it on the air. By such a simple apparatus as this, the law of the

constant inverse proportion between the bulk of elastic fluids, and the amount of pressure on them, is determined. For, not only may one of the legs of the tube be so much prolonged, as to admit a column of mercury of 2, 3, or even 4 times 30 inches in height, so as to add 2, 3, or 4 times the usual pressure,—but, by inverting the tube, the pressure may be diminished in the same proportion: and it will be found that the same law still holds good; the space occupied by the gas increasing just as the pressure is diminished, and being diminished to exactly the same amount as before, as soon as the original pressure is restored. This is called the law of Marriotte, from the name of its discoverer.

58. The elasticity of liquids can only be shown to exist, by their return to their original bulk after undergoing compression. This they do as perfectly as aeriform bodies; but, as already stated, the amount of compressibility is so small, that their elasticity is but little called into operation.

59. Nearly all solid substances possess some degree of elasticity. There are none whose particles are altogether incapable of separation or displacement; and, in general, when the displacement does not extend beyond a certain distance, each particle tends to return to the place it before occupied in the mass of which it forms a part, and with a force exactly proportional to the distance through which it has been displaced. So far, then, the elasticity is perfect, or nearly so. But if the displacement be carried beyond a certain distance, there is no tendency in the particles to regain their former positions; and they remain passively in the new positions they have been made to take up; or take up some other positions different from those which they had at first. It is in the *limit* to the operation of elasticity that we find the greatest difference among various bodies. Thus, a ball of steel or of ivory shall be as elastic up to a certain point as a ball of India-rubber; this may be proved by letting the three drop down upon a hard surface, from the same height, and then marking the heights to which they rebound. But the particles of the steel or ivory could not be displaced from each other, as can those of the India-rubber, without a total separation; and thus, whilst the elasticity of the latter

extends to almost any degree, that of the former is very limited. The elasticity of metals is most perfect when they are drawn out into wires; and it may be shown in several modes. If a wire be tightly stretched between two fixed points, and it be then pulled ever so little aside from the straight line, it must undergo a certain increase in length, the amount of which can be calculated from the angle to which the wire is drawn; and if this is done by means of a scale-pan suspended from the middle of the wire, in which known weights are placed, it may be shown that the strain exerted on the wire is exactly proportional to its increase in length.

60. Another proof of the perfect elasticity of metal wires, up to a certain point, is to be found in the results of their *torsion* or twisting. Let a wire be suspended by a fixed point at its upper end, and carry at the bottom a light cross bar, the movement of which may be exactly observed by a circular scale. Now if the place of this bar, when it is hanging at perfect rest, be accurately noted, and it be then made to turn, by a force applied to it, in such a manner as to twist the wire a whole revolution or a portion of it, the elasticity of the wire will cause the bar to resume its former position, after it has oscillated forwards and backwards for some time. Moreover, if a certain force move the bar through a given angle, twice the force will cause it to move through twice the angle,—the torsion of the wire being thus in direct proportion to the force applied, and the elasticity produced by that torsion having a tendency to untwist the wire to its original condition, as soon as the force is withdrawn. Indeed, it will at first cause it to twist in the opposite direction, just as a pendulum swings up on one side as far as it descended on the other; and though it may be some time before the bar entirely settles itself, it will at last come to the line in which it originally pointed.

61. This *elasticity of torsion*, as it is termed, may be shown to exist, not only in wires of steel, or in thin rods of wood, but in those metals which seem most destitute of the property. Thus, if we take a *leaden* wire, 1-15th of an inch in diameter, and 10 feet long, and fix one end of it firmly to the ceiling,

whilst the other carries the cross-wire or index,—when the latter has been twisted round twice and let go, it will be observed to make almost four revolutions in the contrary direction, two being produced by the untwisting of the wire, and two by its twisting in the opposite way, in consequence of the continuance of the movement it had acquired. The index will then be observed to move round towards the side from which it commenced its revolutions, and will nearly attain the point from which it started; and it will continue to make a series of oscillations, backwards and forwards, each less in amount than the last, until it finally comes to rest in the position it had before it was at first twisted. Thus the elasticity is equally perfect in this leaden wire, up to the point yet mentioned, as it could be in any case; since in no instance can the oscillations continue long, on account of the resistance of the air. And, moreover, it would be found in a lead wire, as in any other, that the forces with which the cross-bar or index, when twisted through different angles, tends to return to its first position, are accurately proportional to the angles through which it has been moved.

62. But if we twist the wire four times instead of two, it will not unwind itself completely; for when the index has come to a state of rest, it will be found not to have returned to its first position, but to be short of that position by nearly two revolutions. Thus, then, the particles of the lead could be displaced to such an extent, as to allow a wire of this length and thickness to be twisted twice round, without the occurrence of any such change as should prevent their return to their original places. But the additional displacement, requisite to give the wire four turns, is more than its particles can bear; and they remain, therefore, permanently displaced, the wire having taken what is technically termed a *set*. Examined in this manner, there are probably very few bodies which will not manifest elasticity. Thus a thin cylinder of pipe-clay (which is generally considered as destitute of elasticity as almost any substance can be) shows the existence of an elasticity as perfect as can be found in the best tempered steel. It is in the *limits* of this elasticity that the chief difference lies; for a steel wire similarly circumstanced might be twisted

a great many times, before its particles receive such a *set* as to prevent it from completely untwisting again.

63. From the facility with which threads or wires may thus be twisted by slight forces, and the regularity of the proportion between the amount of force and the degree of torsion in each case, the change in the place of an index suspended by such a wire has been employed to measure degrees of force too minute to be estimated in ordinary ways; and particularly forces of attraction,—such as that of all bodies amongst each other (as in Cavendish's experiment, § 100), or the peculiar attractions produced by electric or magnetic influences. The instrument constructed for this purpose is termed the *torsion balance;* in its simplest form it consists merely of a stand having a clip at its top, for tightly holding the wire, and a circle below, divided like a dial-plate, for marking the oscillations of the needle or index suspended by the wire. It is found advantageous, however, to enclose the whole in a glass cylinder, that the oscillations may not be influenced by currents of air, or other such disturbing causes.

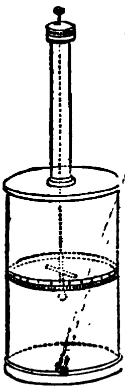


FIG. 7.
Torsion Balance.

64. It is remarkable that, even when the relative positions of the particles have been so much altered as to take a permanent *set*, the elasticity of the whole mass remains exactly the same as before. Thus, when a wire has been permanently lengthened by a great strain, it shows itself to be as perfectly elastic as before, by recovering from the effects of smaller degrees of extension. Suppose, for instance, that a wire of 3 feet in length, stretched tightly between two pins, requires a weight of 1 lb. to be suspended from the middle of its length, to draw it a quarter of an inch out of the straight line; and that, when this weight is removed, it returns completely to its former state and position;—its elasticity is, therefore, so far, perfect. But let us further suppose, that a weight of 20 lbs. suspended from the same point, draws it so far out of the straight line as permanently to increase its length a quarter of an inch; the wire will

then remain slack when the weight is removed, since it has not the power of recovering its previous condition. Now, if the wire be again tightened to the same degree as before, it will be found that its elasticity remains precisely the same in this new *set* or position of its particles, as it was previously; for that, by hanging a weight of 1 lb. from the middle of its length, it will be drawn a quarter of an inch out of the straight line, and will recover its state and position when the weight is removed. Experiments on the torsion of wires give just the same results. Thus it was found by Coulomb, that, after he had given a *set* to lead wire by twisting it *four* times round (the limit of its elasticity being *twice*, § 62), the wire was as elastic in its new condition as before; requiring the same force to give it a further twist, and recovering itself as completely when that force was withdrawn.

65. *Ductility.* Now the making of a wire from a bar of metal, or, as it is termed, the *drawing* of wire, is nothing else than giving a new *set* to the particles composing the bar; that is, they are thrown into new positions in regard to each other, but have the same relation towards the particles which now surround them, as they had for those in the neighbourhood of which they previously were. Different metals possess the property of submitting to this new arrangement without giving way—which is termed *ductility*—in different degrees. Gold is the most ductile, next silver and platinum, and then iron, copper, zinc, tin, and lead. Some remarkable instances have already been given (§ 52) of the extreme fineness of the metallic threads which human art can produce; and it is unnecessary, therefore, now to do more than refer to them. This change of form produces a very curious and unexpected result. Although the particles of the wire are really less close together after the operation of *drawing* than they were before, yet they hold together more firmly; so that the *tenacity* of the wire, or its power of sustaining a powerful strain without breaking, is greater. The increase in the distance of the particles from each other resulting from extension, is shown by the increased bulk of the wire, which is of course accompanied by diminished density; and it is very

remarkable that in this condition it should have more tenacity than before. The cohesion of lead may thus be *tripled* in drawing; and that of iron is increased in a degree so remarkable, as to make thin iron wire the most tenacious of all materials,—that is, the one which requires the greatest strain to tear it asunder, when its size is taken into account. Thus, a bar 1 inch square of the best *cast* iron, may be extended by a weight of 9$\frac{3}{4}$ tons per square inch; a bar of the same size, of the best *wrought* iron, will sustain a weight of 30 tons; a bundle of wires 1-10th of an inch in diameter, of such a size as to have the same quantity of material (which, as the wires do not lie in perfectly close contact, must be more than an inch square) will sustain a weight of from 36 to 43 tons; and if the wire be drawn more finely, so as to have a diameter of only 1-20th or 1-30th of an inch, a bundle containing the same quantity of material will sustain a weight of from 60 to 90 tons. For the sake of comparison it may be mentioned that a mass of hemp fibres glued together will sustain a weight of 41 tons per square inch; whilst copper wire will not sustain more than 27$\frac{1}{3}$ tons, silver wire only 17 tons, gold wire only 14 tons, and lead wire only 1-$\frac{1}{10}$ tons per square inch.

66. Hence cables made of fine iron wire twisted together will sustain a far greater weight than chains having the same weight; and they are now coming extensively into use. Many of the suspension-bridges on the Continent are constructed with wire ropes, and there is one at Fribourg, which is 700 feet between the points of support, being 100 feet wider than the Menai Bridge. The diminished weight of iron wire which is required to support an equal strain with the more massive chains, is, however, attended with certain disadvantages, so far as the construction of bridges is concerned. For in consequence of their lightness, wire bridges are much more liable to be thrown into vibration by winds, the passing of vehicles, and other causes; and there is no doubt that the continuance of such vibrations has a tendency to diminish the tenacity of the iron (§ 22). It is probably from this circumstance that the bridge at Fribourg is becoming unsafe. Wire ropes are now much employed in this country in mines and coal-pits; and there is one of 6$\frac{1}{2}$ miles

in length, in continual operation on the London and Blackwall Railway, the trains on which are drawn by means of a stationary engine. It is found, however, that after they have been in use for some time, they are liable to break, without the employment of any extra force, although not perceptibly worn; and this change is probably due to the same cause as that which acts upon solid bars of iron.

67. There is a limit, however, to the tenacity of particles that have undergone a displacement; not merely because a certain force completely overcomes it, but because a far less force will produce such a permanent change in the internal structure of the material, that it is thenceforwards greatly weakened. Thus if a cannon be fired with a charge of powder, producing a *strain* above that which the elastic force of certain parts of its material can bear, a permanent alteration of its internal structure will take place, so that a second discharge will burst it. Yet the first force may have been not much more than a quarter of that which would have been necessary to burst the cannon at once. It has been stated that a cannon of large dimensions, so overstrained by an excessive charge, may be broken in pieces by a single blow from a sledge-hammer. On the same principle, a wire may be broken by frequently bending it backwards and forwards. At each bending there is a change in the place of certain of the particles, which separate from each other; and this separation is made to extend gradually across the wire, by repeatedly bending it.

68. *Malleability.*—It is not alone by the *extension* of the material, as in wire-drawing, that the new *set* may be given to its particles, without any diminution of their elasticity or tenacity; for the same result may be produced by force applied in other ways. Thus, masses of metal may be pressed out between powerful rollers into bars, rods, or plates; or they may be extended into thin leaves by means of the hammer; or they may be made to assume, by the same means, that great variety of forms on which their utility to man so much depends. The property of receiving a new *set* by the blow of a hammer, or by *impact*, as it is properly termed, is called *malleability*. As there

is a great difference in the ductility of different metals, so also there is in their malleability. In general, the most ductile metals are also the most malleable; but there is a remarkable exception in the case of platinum and iron. Platinum and iron are more *ductile* than copper, zinc, tin, and lead; but copper and tin are more *malleable* than platinum; and even lead and zinc are more malleable than iron,—that is, they can be extended into thinner leaves, without breaking. There are certain metals which are only malleable in particular states; thus common zinc (which is somewhat impure) is brittle at low temperatures, but acquires a considerable degree of malleability at a heat a little above that of boiling water, and in this condition it is rolled into sheets, which are much used for various purposes; yet if heated to 400°, it becomes so brittle that it may be reduced to powder in a mortar. In general, the malleability of metals is increased by heat; and this is most the case with iron and platinum, which are highly malleable at a white heat, but are very little so when cold.

69. The capability of receiving impressions from blows, which the malleable metals possess, is continually made use of in various processes of the arts and manufactures, besides those which have been already alluded to. Thus, the *stamping* of coins, and the embossing of figures on surfaces of various kinds, are accomplished in this mode. The impression is made by means of a *die*, in which it is *sunk;* just as the raised impression which the wax is to present is sunk in the seal. The die, which is made of the hardest steel, is forced down upon the blank coin by means of a powerful screw; and the metal of the coin, being comparatively soft, is driven with great force into the cavities of the die, takes there a set, and retains the impression. Very similar to this, is the process by which thin plates of metal are made to take the projecting figures with which plated goods are ornamented. The die, in which is cut a hollow corresponding to the figure, is laid under the plate; and a heavy weight, with a piece of lead at the bottom of it, is allowed to drop repeatedly upon the plate; the force which it acquires in falling, drives the soft substance of

the lead, and with it the thin plate of metal, into the cavities of the die; so that, after repeated blows, the surfaces are brought into complete contact with each other, and a perfect impression is produced.

70. The mode in which these dies are themselves produced is only a variation of the same process. Numerous copies of the same die are required; since, in order to coin with sufficient rapidity, several presses are at work; and moreover the dies are continually breaking or cracking, and need to be replaced by others. The artist, who originally makes the figure which the coin is to bear, does not *sink* it, but carves the surface of a piece of soft steel into a projecting impression, exactly like that which is to be made on the surface of the coin. This steel block is then hardened (§ 73); and it is forced by a powerful press against another piece of steel which has been made as soft as possible; in this manner a sunk impression is made on the latter, exactly corresponding to the projection which was borne by the block. The same impression may be made, without injuring the first block, on a considerable number of pieces of soft steel; and when these are hardened, they become so many dies, from which coins may be struck. A very similar process is employed in repeating a small engraving over a large extent of surface; which it is often very advantageous to do in calico-printing, and also in producing highly-finished borders. The pattern is engraved on a piece of soft steel, which is then hardened; and a roller of soft steel is then passed along this hardened plate, under an extremely heavy pressure. This pressure causes the comparatively soft metal of the roller to be pressed into all the lines of the engraving; so that a perfect impression *in relief* (or projecting from the surface), is thus obtained from it. As in the case of dies, many such duplicates may thus be obtained from the first plate; and every one of them may be made to produce a considerable surface of engraving. For the steel roller being hardened, and being made to pass over another plate of soft steel, the latter is indented with all the lines and markings which the roller had received from the

first plate; and as the roller may be made to turn not only once, but any number of times, the impression may be repeated over as large a surface as may be desired.

71. The facility with which impressions are thus communicated to metals greatly depends upon their being softened as much as possible, by the process which is termed *annealing*. This consists in heating the substance to a high temperature, and then allowing it to cool very gradually. On the other hand, if the substance, when so heated, be cooled rapidly, as by plunging it into cold water, it is rendered extremely hard, but at the same time very brittle. The difference is well seen in glass. When a glass vessel is first blown, it cools rapidly and irregularly; and the varying hardness of its different parts gives to it such a degree of brittleness, that the slightest shock, or a small change of temperature, would break it. In order to prevent this, it is placed in a long furnace, of which the heat is very great at one end, whilst it gradually diminishes towards the other. Through this furnace it is slowly drawn, the time which it remains there being usually from two to four days; and it is thus cooled so gradually and equably, that its particles can take the most uniform position with regard to each other, so as to be affected alike by any shock or change of temperature. An unannealed glass flask may be made strong enough to resist the blow of a pistol-bullet dropped into it; yet the fall of a small angular substance that can give it the slightest scratch, will make it burst into minute fragments; and this may not occur until some minutes after the scratch.

72. The same kind of effect is shown by the pieces of glass which are known under the name of Prince Rupert's drops; these are made by dropping melted glass into water, which of course cools them suddenly; and they have a long oval form, tapering to a point at one end. The large part or body is so hard that it will bear a smart stroke; but if a small portion be broken off from the small end or tail, the whole immediately flies into minute particles with a loud snap. The exact explanation of this curious circumstance is not yet known; but it appears due to the following cause. When the melted drop falls

into water, the outside is, of course, hardened first, and the inside is cooled more slowly. The outside, being first cooled, contracts upon the interior (§ 9), and thus binds its particles together in a condition unnatural to them. On the other hand, the particles of the interior, being more slowly cooled, retain their elasticity, and are prepared to set themselves free, when anything impairs the firmness of the coating in which they are bound together. Many of these drops burst in the water, in the act of cooling; the elastic force of the interior being sufficient to overcome the compression of the exterior. But in those which do not, a very slight disturbance of the outside coat, especially at the tail-end, is enough to give the superiority to the interior, so as to occasion the sudden separation of its particles. It would seem as if the *suddenness* of this disturbance were an essential condition of its effect; for the tail may be slowly ground away on a wheel, without the breaking of the drop. By careful annealing, a very high degree of elasticity may be given to glass; and it has lately been introduced as the material of the balance-springs of chronometers, for which it seems to have some advantages above steel.

73. The effects of change of temperature, in varying the degree of hardness and elasticity, are most important in regard to steel; since to this influence we owe the power of applying steel to so great a variety of useful purposes. The greatest hardness is given to steel, by heating it to a white heat, and then suddenly cooling it, by plunging it into mercury. Although water is commonly employed for this purpose, the hardness which the steel receives from being plunged into it is not so great as it derives from being immersed in mercury; probably because, owing to the less power which water possesses of conducting heat, the cooling of the steel is less rapid in it. In its state of greatest hardness, steel is scarcely fit for any purpose in the arts and manufactures; since it is so brittle that its points or edges are broken by a very slight resistance. But by heating it to a lower temperature, and then gradually cooling it, this extreme hardness may be reduced, and a greater amount of elasticity substituted for it. Thus, if it were heated to a red

heat, and allowed to cool very gradually, it would be rendered soft again. If heated to a less degree, and cooled gradually, it would retain more of its hardness, and would be less elastic; and various degrees of these properties may be communicated to it at will, by varying the degree of heat to which it is raised, after having been completely hardened at first.

74. This process is termed *letting down* or *tempering;* and the workman is guided in the effects he wishes to produce, by the changes of colour which the surface of the steel exhibits (if first brightened) at different temperatures. The first tint which it shows, when gradually heated, is a light straw colour; this deepens as the heat increases, and presents a shade of red; the red increases, so that the colour first becomes orange, and then a reddish purple—a blue tint making its appearance; the blue increases with the heat, and the colour changes first into a violet blue, next to a bright blue, then into a full blue, and lastly into a deep blue verging on black, after which the next change is into the glow of red heat. These colours guide the workman as to the point at which he shall stop for the purpose he designs. Thus the hardest steel is used for little else than the making of dies for coining; and, as already explained, these are hardened after the impression is made in them. The steel of the hardest files is but slightly let down. The first shade of yellow indicates that the second heating has been carried sufficiently far for lancets, and other small surgeons' instruments, in which the keenest possible edge is required; the straw-colour is the guide to the tempering of razors and penknives; the first red tint for scissors, shears, and chisels, in which greater tenacity is required; the violet for table-knives, in which a certain amount of elasticity is more desirable than the hardness which would give a very fine but brittle edge; the full blue for watch-springs and small fine saws; and the deeper blue for large saws and coach-springs. When heated beyond this point, steel is scarcely harder than iron, and it loses its elasticity; this is well known to every one who has heated a piece of watch-spring, or the point of a penknife, in a lamp or candle. In many manufactories of steel instruments, the *temper* is given by immersing the articles in a bath of mer-

cury or oil, the heat of which is regulated by a thermometer. As it is known what degree of heat corresponds with each tint on the surface of steel, the operation can be performed with more certainty and convenience in this way, than by heating each article separately over a charcoal fire, as was formerly done; for the workman has only to heat the bath and its contents up to the required point, and allow it to cool gradually; by which any number of articles, that are to receive the same temper, are equably heated and gradually cooled.

75. Most other metals are acted on by heat and cold in somewhat the same manner, though in a less degree. Copper, however, forms a remarkable exception; for its properties are just the reverse of those of steel and glass. When it is cooled *slowly*, it becomes hard and brittle; but when cooled *rapidly*, soft and malleable. This curious property is possessed in a yet more remarkable degree by an alloy, composed of 4 parts of copper and 1 of tin, which has been long used by the Chinese (under the name of tam-tam) in the construction of gongs and other musical instruments. The mode of rendering it malleable has been known in Europe of late years only.

76. *Strength of Materials.*—Closely connected with these subjects are the inquiries into the strength of the different materials used for constructing buildings, ships, machines, &c., which are of such great practical importance. Many details in regard to them, however, would be out of place in a work of this description; but the general principles, which should be the guides in the selection and arrangement of materials, may be advantageously explained.

77. We have already considered the property of cohesion, as it acts in producing *tenacity*, or resistance to an *extending* force; but we must now advert to the power which different bodies possess, in various degrees, of resisting a *compressing* or crushing force. This does not at all correspond with the amount of tenacity; for in metals the degree of resistance to a compressing force is much greater than the tenacity; whilst in wood it is much less. A cube of that kind of cast-iron which is known as gun-metal, a quarter of an inch each way, requires a weight of

10 tons to crush it; from which it may be calculated that, as each side of the cube is 1-16th of a square inch, the compressing force required to crush a cube of an inch every way must be 160 tons. No other material, on which experiments have been made, exhibits a power of resistance equal to this. The ordinary kinds of iron, however, have a much less resisting power; but still it is many times greater than the tenacity. Thus, the same cast-iron, of which a bar an inch square will resist an extending force of from 6 to 8 tons, will resist a compressing force of from 37 to 48 tons. The power of resistance varies much, however, in proportion to the *length* of the portion experimented on. The cube is the form which best resists crushing in every direction; but if a square pillar be compressed in the same manner, by a force applied to its ends, it yields to a much inferior crushing force. Thus, whilst a cube of cast-iron 1-4th of an inch every way, will sustain a force of 72 tons per square inch, a pillar an inch high, and 1-4th of an inch square (such as would be made by piling four of the cubes together), will only resist 45 tons per square inch. In all cases where a certain height is passed, the rupture takes place by the *sliding* of one part upon another, and not by the breaking up of the whole mass, which occurs when it is completely crushed. In stone, the power of resisting pressure is greater than its tenacity or power of resisting extension; Aberdeen granite is the strongest yet experimented on, as it bears 5 tons per square inch (or about 1-8th of the pressure which good cast-iron will sustain), whilst compact limestone bears 4 tons, Portland stone only 1½ ton, and brick from 1¾ to ¾ of a ton. But wood offers a far less resistance to a crushing force acting in the direction of its fibre or grain, than it does to an extending force. Experiments on this subject are somewhat uncertain; but it seems to be the result of those which have been made, that a bar of oak an inch square, which will bear an extension of 5 tons (nearly that of ordinary cast-iron), will not bear a compression of $1\frac{7}{10}$ ton; and that elm and deal, which will bear an extending force of 6 tons, will not bear a compressing force of more than from ½ to ⅘ of a ton. These results vary, however, according to the length of the piece to which

the pressure is applied; as the parts of a piece of wood have even more tendency to separate by sliding over each other, than have those of a piece of iron.

78. Hence we see that, for resisting *extension*, wood would be much preferable to iron, provided it were equally durable, on account of the far inferior weight of a beam required to possess a certain tenacity. Thus, deal has only 1-15th the weight of *cast*-iron, though it has considerably more than half the tenacity; and 16 bars of it would weigh only the same as one bar of *wrought*-iron, although they would have together more than the tenacity of three. Now it is evident that a structure may be composed of parts which are in themselves of great strength; and yet it may be so heavy, that it may not be able to bear its own weight. Several iron roofs have fallen in from this cause; accidents of this kind, at the Brunswick Theatre and the Conservatory at Brighton, attracted much attention at the time of their occurrence. It would be impossible to construct such roofs and bridges of iron, as have been built of timber; since the downward pressure of the fabric goes on increasing in greater proportion than its power of resistance, when it passes a certain size; so that no additional strength given to its parts can make up for this. The danger of decay in timber is of course a great obstacle to its employment in bridge-building; but if it should prove that this is prevented by the Kyanizing* process now employed, wood will probably come into more general use for this purpose. It has been much employed in America, where timber is plentiful and cheap; and also in Germany. The longest bridge of one arch in the world is probably that over the river Schuylkill at Philadelphia, the span of which is 340 feet. There are other timber bridges in the United States, of 250, 200, and 194 feet; and some fine bridges of similar dimensions have been recently constructed in Germany. The longest bridge of one arch ever built was probably that constructed in 1778, over the river Limmat, near the Abbey of Wettengen; it was above 390 feet in span. This wonderful bridge was destroyed

---

* This process, so named after its inventor, consists in steeping the wood for some time in a solution of corrosive sublimate.

in the campaign of 1799. The widest arch that has yet been constructed of iron is the one at Bishop's Wearmouth, near Sunderland, the span of which is 250 feet; the span of the centre arch of Southwark bridge is 240 feet. These very nearly approach the limit at which iron can be advantageously applied.

79. In the actual *practice* of construction, it is not at all safe to calculate upon the amount of pressure or strain which certain materials have been found by experiment to be capable of sustaining; and this for several reasons. It has been already stated that a strain of a less violent kind than that which is necessary to produce rupture by extension, will often make such a change in the internal arrangement of the particles, as very greatly to weaken the resistance of the body; and the same is true of compressing force. Thus one half the pressure which will crush stone renders it liable to chip, so that a slight blow will break it; and the tendency of overloaded stone to yield increases with time. It is not considered safe, therefore, to load stone with more than 1-6th of the pressure that crushes it. Moreover, allowance must always be made for the probability that, from some accidental cause, some one part will be weaker than the rest; and if this give way, the whole structure may be destroyed. Again, the structure may be liable to an occasional or accidental increase of pressure, which, if it were already loaded too nearly to its limit, would produce its downfall; and allowance must therefore be made for this: as also for the probability that some slight giving way, or *settlement*, of the parts that have to sustain the greatest pressure (as the walls or foundations in the case of a roof, or the abutments of a bridge), may diminish the stability of the whole. For the same reasons, fire-arms of any description should always be *proved*, before they are taken into use, by being subjected to a much greater force than that which they are intended to sustain in being discharged.

80. The strength of a fabric depends, however, not only upon its materials, but upon the mode in which they are arranged; as may be easily shown. Let us suppose a beam of wood, resting on a solid base at each end, to have a weight placed in its middle,

sufficiently great to bend it downwards. Now it is obvious that, in thus bending, the upper side must be compressed, whilst the lower side is extended; and it is further obvious that there must be a portion of the thickness of the beam which is neither compressed nor extended,—all *below* it being *extended*, and all *above* it being *compressed*. The part of the beam where it is neither extended nor compressed, is termed its *neutral* line; and this will obviously afford no resistance to its bend, so that it might be removed without weakening the beam. On the other hand, the amount to which each portion above or below the neutral line is compressed or extended by a certain bend of the beam, is greater in proportion to its distance from it; hence the most distant portions, or those forming the upper and lower edges of the beam, exert the greatest resistance.

81. This principle is illustrated by the well-known fact, that an ordinary plank of timber will bear a much greater weight, when placed with its edge beneath it, than when the weight bears on its broad side. Hence the joists on which the floor of a house rests, and which have to sustain its downward pressure, are set with their edges upwards. Suppose a joist to be 10 inches broad and 2 inches thick;—then if the weight rest on its broad side, it would support just the same pressure that would be sustained by 5 separate bars, each 2 inches square. Supposing the neutral line to run through the middle of its thickness (which it does very nearly), then the parts where the greatest resistance is required are nowhere more than 1 inch from that line. But when placed so that the weight shall bear upon one of its edges, the joist will sustain a much greater pressure than that which would be borne by 5 separate joists of 2 inches square; for supposing 5 such bars to be laid one upon the other, and firmly fastened together, so as to represent one beam;—then the middle one of the five would have just the same strength that it would possess if separate from the rest, since its surfaces would be each at the distance of an inch from the neutral line of the whole mass; whilst the bars next above and below would have one of *their* surfaces at the distance of 1 inch, but the other at 3 inches from this neutral line; and the bars forming the upper and lower

edges of this compound beam would have their two surfaces at 3 and 5 inches distance from it;—hence the resistance to strain or pressure, which the middle bar would exercise, being the same as if it were alone, each of the bars next above and below it would exercise about twice the resistance, and each of those forming the edges of the beam about four times the resistance; so that the whole beam would bear a pressure equal to that which about $(4+4+2+2+1)$ 13 separate bars would sustain.

82. We see, further, that as the power of resistance is greater in proportion to the distance of each part from the centre or neutral line of the beam, the beam will be strongest when the greatest part of its material is disposed at the greatest distance from that line. Thus let the central bar, in the compound beam just referred to, be removed, the loss will only be that of the support given by a single bar; but let the same amount of material be employed in increasing the thickness of the edges, it will then have more than four times the effect; and thus the more we withdraw from the centre and add to the edges, the stronger will the beam become, provided that the parts of it are still sufficiently connected together.

83. In this and other similar cases, the beam is adapted to sustain a pressure in two directions only; but it is easily seen that it is the same principle, which gives the great advantage in strength to *hollow* cylinders (such as those which form the stems of grasses, or the bones of most animals,) over *solid* cylinders containing the same quantity of matter. For the central axis of such a cylinder will be nearly its neutral line; so that, in whatever direction force be applied, it will meet with an equal resistance; and this resistance is greater, the further removed the resisting points are from the centre. By the cylindrical form of such stems, their parts are all firmly bound together, so that no one can yield without the rest being also affected; and thus they have all the advantage that results from the distance of their walls from the centre, without any of the weakening that would be perceptible in a beam, of which the upper and lower parts should be separated by a considerable space, in consequence of the pressure on the upper part causing it to yield without affecting

the lower. Supposing that the wall of the hollow cylinder were made thicker on one side than on the other;—the resisting power would be greatest in the direction of this increase; and it will be more increased by making this addition on the outside than in the interior. This is exactly the principle which is followed in the construction of bones: where the strain is likely to be equal in all directions, they are uniformly thick all round the central hollow; and their diameter is such as to give a strength equal to about three times that, which the same material would possess if disposed in a solid cylinder: but we frequently find a ridge running along the bone in one direction, which serves for the attachment of muscles, and also gives the bone increased power of resistance in the direction of the strain which these muscles will exert upon it. Of such a bone, the accompanying figure represents a cross section; and its power of resisting a force applied above or below is greater than its power of resisting a force applied sideways, in proportion as the distance *a b* exceeds the distance *b c*. But had this ridge occupied part of the hollow interior of the bone, it would have been comparatively useless.

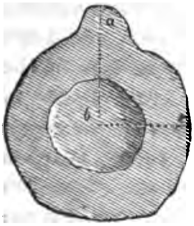


Fig. 8.

84. From what has been said of the relative actions of the upper and lower portions of a wooden beam, on which a weight is placed, in resisting pressure and extension respectively, it follows that, if we cut the beam half through from above downwards, with a thin saw which shall not remove any of its material, we do not diminish its power of resistance in that direction; for the action of this part of the beam, being that of resisting compression, may be performed as well if it were composed of several pieces lying close together, as if the resistance were made by one continuous piece. The contrary is, of course, the case in regard to a similar cut made on the under side; for the whole efficacy of that part of the beam, which entirely consists of its tenacity, is thus destroyed. It has been found by experimen that a beam may be cut from its upper side to about 5-8ths of its depth, without its strength being impaired; this depth, there-

fore, may be regarded as the exact position of the neutral portion of the beam; all above it being compressed, and all below it extended, by pressure on its upper surface. It has also been found that, if the saw-cut be filled up with harder wood, which resists compression better than that which it replaces, the strength of the beam is increased rather than diminished.

85. The arrangement of a certain quantity of material in such a mode as to give the greatest strength, is a problem of even more importance in the construction of iron beams than in regard to those of timber; for we cannot, in the latter, conveniently take away material from one part, and add it in another where it may be more efficacious; and as the increase in weight produced by what may be comparatively superfluous is small, it is not worth while to remove it. In the casting of iron beams, the form is entirely at the pleasure of the maker; and thus, according to the kind and direction of the strain which the beam is to receive, he may, by the knowledge of the comparative powers of tenacity and of resistance to compression which his material possesses, adapt the form of his beam so as to give the greatest strength with the least material; and thus there is not only a saving of material, but of weight, which is a matter of equal importance. This has been lately proved by the experiments of Mr. Hodgkinson of Manchester, the results of which are of great importance. The neutral line is not, in an ordinary iron beam, as it is in a wooden, a little below the middle; for, as the metals resist compression much better than extension, a much smaller quantity of material will be required above the neutral line than below it. Hence the most advantageous form of beam is one which, when cut across, shows this figure. It may be described as consisting below of a flat portion, or flanch, from which rises an upright rib; and at the top of this there is a flanch much smaller than the first. An iron beam thus shaped, w

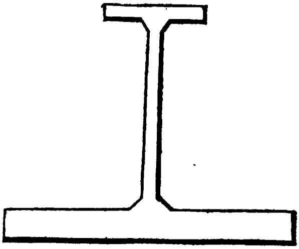


FIG. 9.

have several advantages over one shaped like an ordinary timber joist.

86. In the first place, the greatest part of its material is disposed at a distance from the neutral point; and therefore it will afford a much greater resistance than if it were nearer the centre, as it would be if the flanches were smaller and the rib thicker. But if these flanches were equal, we should not have a beam of the greatest strength which the material can produce; for such a beam would break, by the extension of its lower side, under a far less degree of pressure than would be required to break it by compression of the upper. It is obvious, therefore, that a large part of the upper flanch might be removed without the least injury to the strength of the beam; and if the same amount be added to the lower flanch, its resistance will be greatly increased. The strongest form is obtained when the arrangement is such, that at the instant the beam is about to break by extension on one side, it is about to break by compression on the other. So long as this is *not* the case, the strongest form is not attained; since, on the side which is least disposed to break, there is superfluous material, which may be advantageously transferred to the other. It appears from Mr. Hodgkinson's experiments, that a beam of cast iron, shaped as in the figure,—in which the section of the upper flanch (or surface of compression) is to the section of the lower flanch (or surface of extension) as 1 to 6,—has nearly twice the strength of a beam containing the same amount of material, but having two flanches of equal size. The large iron beams or *girders*, which are much used in cotton-factories and similar buildings, are now usually cast upon this principle; and it is found that, to gain the same strength, one-fourth less iron is now required, than was employed in the best forms of girders before Mr. Hodgkinson's experiments.

87. There is another principle, however, to be attended to, in devising the best shape for a cast-iron beam. The strength of a beam of uniform shape from end to end, estimated by the load it will carry without breaking, is different in different parts of its length. A load which will break it, if placed upon its

middle point, may be very well borne by it near its extremities. It may be shown by mathematical investigation, that the effect of a load is exactly proportional to the product of its distances from the two ends of the beam. Thus, let a beam be 12 feet long; a load placed at the distance of 1 foot from one end will be 11 feet from the other; if it be at 2 feet from one end, it will be at 10 feet from the other; if at 3 feet from one end, it will be at 9 feet from the other; if at 4 feet from one end, it will be at 8 feet from the other; if at 5 feet from one end, it will be at 7 feet from the other; and if in the middle, it will be at 6 feet from each end. Hence the relative pressures of the load in these different positions will be expressed by the numbers 11, 20, 27, 32, 35, and 36; and in order that the beam may be equally able to bear a load in every part, it should have its flanches made much broader at the middle than at the two ends, so that the quantity of material at each part may bear an exact proportion to the resistance it has to afford. The form of the flanch which fulfils this condition, is given in the subjoined figure. Its border on each side is a parabola; which curve will make its breadth at the several distances just mentioned, exactly proportional to the series of numbers which represent the pressure at each point. Both the upper and lower flanches should have this form; the lower one being made six times as large as the upper.

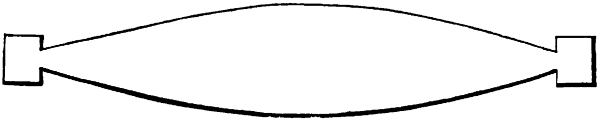


FIG. 10.

CHAPTER III.

ATTRACTION OF GRAVITATION.

88. We have hitherto spoken only of the attraction which exists at very minute distances among the particles of matter, causing those of the same mass to cohere, and causing those of different substances to adhere. We have now to consider the attraction which exists among the masses themselves, and which gives rise to a force that is constantly and universally operating throughout nature. We are best acquainted with this force as it acts on the surface of the earth, causing all bodies which are not supported to fall to the ground; and also causing them to exert that downward pressure, when they are not in motion, which we term their *weight*. But it is the very same force, acting on a scale which becomes sublime from its stupendous greatness, which keeps the moon from leaving its regular course round the earth, which causes the earth to maintain its regular distance from the sun whilst moving onwards through space, and which acts in like manner, not only upon all the other planets and their satellites belonging to the solar system, but upon those bodies placed at an almost infinite distance from this globe of ours, which we commonly term the fixed stars.

89. The concise statement of the mode in which this attraction acts, constitutes what is known as the *law of gravitation;* and this is expressed in the following terms. *All masses of matter attract one another, with forces directly proportional to the quantity of matter contained in each, and inversely proportional to the squares of their distances from each other.* This rule is very easily comprehended and remembered, when it has been once sufficiently explained; and a few illustrations of it will be

given for that purpose. We will suppose that there were two masses of matter, A and B, of equal bulk, and placed at any distance from each other; and that these masses were not influenced by any other force than that of their mutual attraction. This, then, would draw them towards each other; and as the two bodies are equal in size, they will produce equal effects upon each other, so that they will move towards each other with equal quickness, until they meet in a point midway between their original situations. But supposing their bulks to be unequal, as if A were 3 and B 2, then the attraction which A has for B will be expressed by the number 3, whilst that of B for A will be only 2; and this unequal attraction will show itself in the respective distances which each will travel towards the point of meeting; for B will be drawn by A's force through a distance of 3, whilst A will be moved by B's force only 2. Or if A were 100 and B only 1, then the attraction of A for B would be a hundred times that of B for A; and B would move towards A a hundred feet, yards, or miles, whilst A only moved one towards B. The first part of the law of gravitation,—that the attraction acts with a force directly proportional to the quantity of matter contained in the bodies, is not, therefore, by any means difficult of comprehension; nor is the second part more so.

90. If two masses of matter be very near each other, their mutual attraction is much stronger than if they were at a distance; and it diminishes in a certain proportion as the distance increases. This diminution follows a regular law,—being exactly proportionate to the square of the distance. Thus, supposing A and B are at the distance of 1 foot, and we represent their mutual attraction by the number 1, the attraction between A and B, when removed to a distance of 2 feet, will be only 1-4th of the previous amount; for, since 4 is the square of 2, the distance having been doubled, the attraction is diminished in the proportion of 4 to 1. Or, supposing them to be separated to 10 times their original distance, the force of attraction would be diminished to 1-100th. The term "inverse proportion" is a simple method of expressing, that one quantity increases as another diminishes, or diminishes as another increases. A

thus it may be said, that the force of attraction diminishes as the square of the distance increases; which is only a less concise mode of expressing the general fact set forth in the second part of the law of gravitation, just stated.

91. A little consideration will make it evident why not only the attraction of gravitation, but likewise all other influences—such as light, sound, electricity, &c.—emanating in like manner from a centre, should diminish in their intensity in proportion as the squares of the distances increase. Suppose a candle to be in the place A, and to send its light through a square hole, B P O *v* at the distance A B from the candle: then that light will cover the space C F L *x* upon a paper held at the distance of A C, or twice A B; and will spread itself over D G K *b* at the distance of A D or three times A B; and over E H I *r* at the distance A E or four times A B. Now it is evident that the space C P L *x* is four times B P O *v*; that D G K *b* is nine times the same amount; and that E H I *r* is sixteen times. Thus the distances being as 1,2,3,4, the spaces covered by the same amount of light issuing from A, are, at these distances respectively, 1, 4, 9, 16,—the squares of the preceding numbers. But it is evident that if the amount of light which passes through the opening 1 at the distance 1, be spread over the surface 4 at the distance 2, it will be only one-fourth as strong or intense; when spread over the surface 9 at the distance 3, it can only be one-ninth as intense; and when spread over the surface 16 at the distance 4, it will be only one-sixteenth as intense. Therefore, the light diminishes in intensity as the squares of the distances increase

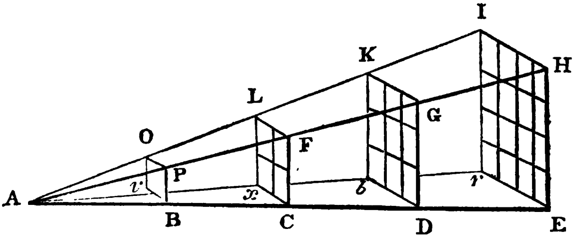


Fig. 11.

and it is easy to see, that the same explanation will apply to the attraction of gravitation, or to any other influence emanating like it from a particular centre.

92. We are most familiar with this force in its action between the earth and bodies upon or near its surface. The bulk of the earth is so great, in respect to that of any mass of matter which comes within its immediate influence, that, although they really have a mutual attraction for each other, the effect of the earth's attraction in producing the motion of the body towards it, is alone visible to us (§. 238). It will be shown, however, that the earth itself is influenced by the sun, very much in the same manner that any small body on the earth's surface is influenced by it;—that is, if left completely to itself, it would fall towards the sun, whilst the movement of the sun towards it would be extremely trifling, so much greater is his bulk than that of the earth. In all instances of attraction exercised between spherical bodies, that attraction operates to draw their *centres* together; and thus, the earth being a sphere (or nearly so) the small bodies on its surface are attracted towards its centre. Let us suppose that the centre of the earth were hollow,—then a body placed exactly *in* the central point would remain there without support: it would, in fact, have no *weight* or downward pressure; for it would be equally attracted on all sides by the hollow sphere around it, and would remain in the same point so long as it might be allowed to do so. But if drawn out of its position, it would immediately tend to return towards it, and would thus exercise pressure, or have a degree of weight; since, when removed from the centre, the attraction of the different parts of the hollow sphere around it would no longer be equal, and it would be drawn towards the direction in which it is acted upon by the greatest mass.

93. All bodies which fall towards the surface of the earth, move (if influenced by the force of gravitation alone) in lines which would meet in its centre; and therefore two bodies, let fall at a short distance from each other, do not really descend in parallel lines, as they appear to do. This will be made evident in the accompanying diagram. Let A B C be a part of the earth's

circumference, and *a* and *b* be the points from which the bodies commence their descent; then, by the attraction of these towards the centre O they will fall in the lines *a* A and *b* B, which are not parallel, but, if prolonged, would meet in the centre; and a body let fall at the distance of a quarter of the earth's circumference, as from *c*, will fall in the line *c* C, which is precisely at right angles to *a* A. But the smaller the space A B in proportion to the distance of the point O, the more nearly parallel will be the lines *a* A and *b* B; and, in fact, the spaces between bodies on which we can make such observations are so small in proportion to the distance of the earth's centre, that we may, for all practical purposes, speak of the earth's attraction as exercised in parallel lines over bodies upon or near its surface. (§. 168.)

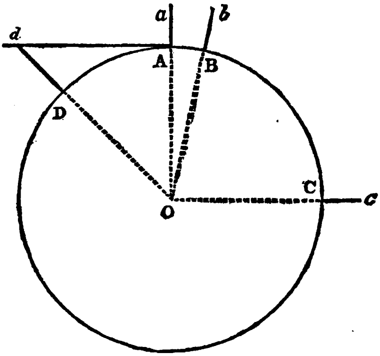


FIG. 12:

94. It is by the equal attraction of the earth for all the particles of a liquid, and the parallel direction of the lines of this attraction, that the surfaces of small collections of liquid are always *level;* but when the surface of the liquid is sufficiently large, we see by its curvature that the attraction is *not* exercised in lines exactly parallel. Thus, in Fig. 12, let A *d* represent a straight or level surface of liquid; it is obvious that the attraction of the earth for different parts of it would not be the same; since at A it is exercised at the distance O A; whilst at *d* it operates through the much greater distance O *d*. As the attraction for the different parts of the liquid, therefore, is unequal, and as the particles of the liquid are free to move upon each other, they cannot retain their perfect level, but will change their position until all of them are at an equal distance from the earth's centre, so that the earth's attraction for all of them will

be equal. When this is the case, the curve of the liquid will follow that of its surface A D; and this we know, in fact, to be the nature of the surface of any large collection of water—such as a lake—still more evidently that of the sea; although in a small surface, such as that of a vessel of water, or a pond, the curvature is too small to be seen. It is on account of this curvature, that the masts of vessels which are approaching the shore are first seen, and their hulls last; and that the hulls first disappear as the vessel is receding, the masts being seen for some time afterwards. The curvature of the earth's surface must be allowed for in cutting a canal; for if the bottom of the canal were cut to an exact level, the water would be deep in one part and shallow at the other, owing to the curvature of its surface. In order that the water may be of the same depth everywhere, it is necessary that the bottom of the canal have the same curvature; and for this, it is necessary to depart from the dead level about eight inches for every mile.

95. It has been already stated, that the attraction of gravitation diminishes as the square of the distance increases; and consequently the downward pressure of a body—that is, its weight—would be less if it were removed to a height above the earth's surface, sufficient to make the difference perceptible. This can scarcely be proved by ascent in a balloon, or up a mountain, as a height of 3 or 4 miles is not sufficient; but it is clearly shown to be the case, by experiments made on different parts of the earth's surface, whose distance from the centre varies considerably. The earth is not perfectly spherical in form, but is flattened at the poles, like an orange; and the distance of its surface from the centre is only 3950 miles at the poles, whilst it is 3963 at the equator. This difference of 13 miles is quite sufficient to produce a marked effect upon the attraction of bodies towards the earth. It has been found by accurate experiments, that the motion of a pendulum, which is entirely dependent on the force of gravity, is much slower over the equator, where the attraction is less, than it is in temperate regions, or near the poles, where the attraction is greater, in consequence of the shorter distance from the centre. And from experiments of this kind it

may be calculated that *at* the poles, a body which would be drawn downwards (or towards the earth's centre) at the equator, with a force of 590 lbs., will be drawn down with a force of 591 lbs.

96. It is obvious that, if we balance a body in a pair of scales, with weights equivalent to 590 lbs., the scales will remain balanced in whatever part of the earth's surface we try the experiment; because the variation in the earth's attraction, and in the downward pressure it produces, would be the same for that which each scale contains. But if the experiment could be tried with a spring-dial weighing machine, we should find that the same weight, which would cause the hand to point to 590 lbs. at the equator, would cause it to point to 591 lbs. at the poles; since the downward pressure of the body is increased without any change being made in the resisting power of the spring. The same fact may be illustrated in another way. Let us conceive a weight E suspended at the equator by a string, which should pass over a pulley A, and be conducted over the other pulleys, such as B, C, along the earth's surface, till the other end hang down at the pole, where a weight P is suspended by it. Now if the weights E and P were such as would balance each other when placed in an ordinary pair of scales, they will not pull equally upon the string under these circumstances; for the weight E will be more powerfully drawn by the earth's attraction at the poles, than the weight E will be at the equator; and, in fact, a mass of 590 cubic inches at P will balance a mass of 591 cubic inches at E. The difference is greatly increased by the action of centrifugal force, as will be explained hereafter (§. 220).

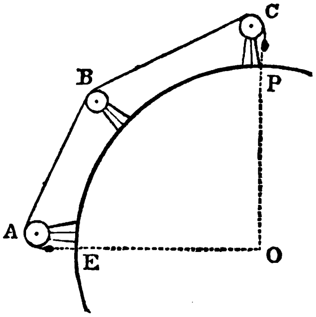


Fig. 13.

97. The law of attraction might seem to be contradicted by the fact, that there are bodies which have a tendency to rise from the surface of the earth instead of descending towards it; thus we see the smoke, on a fine calm day, gently

ascending to a considerable distance from the earth's surface; and a balloon rises with force enough to carry up two or three human bodies of full weight. This, however, does not prove that the earth has no attraction for these bodies, but merely that it has more attraction for another body, the atmosphere. The pressure or weight of the atmosphere over any part of the earth is continually varying, being sometimes 15 lbs. on every square inch, and sometimes only 14 lbs.; this variation produces the different heights of the barometer, on which we rely as indications of the weather. Now when the weight of the atmosphere is great, which it is in fair weather, its lower part is more pressed together, and thus becomes denser; and in this state it is attracted by the earth with greater force than smoke is, so that the latter rises through it, for precisely the same reason that a cork will rise from the bottom of a vessel of water to its surface. But when the density of the atmosphere is less, which it usually is in rainy weather, the smoke is as heavy as the air, and thus has no tendency to rise through it. A balloon when filled with hydrogen gas, or even with heated air, weighs far less (that is, presses far less towards the earth) than the same bulk of cold air; and thus it will not only rise through it, but will even carry up any heavy bodies which do not make the whole weight equal to that of the same bulk of air. Its ascent is limited, however, by the gradual decrease in the weight of the air, arising from its diminished density; for any measure of air on the top of a mountain, weighs much less than the same bulk of air at a level surface; as the latter, being more closely pressed together, contains a much greater number of particles. The balloon will rise, therefore, until the weight of the same bulk of air is so much diminished, as to be no greater than its own; and it will then rise no more, the attraction of the earth for the balloon, and for the mass of air which must be displaced for the balloon to rise, being equal.

98. Hence we see that there are no bodies which can be properly regarded as having no tendency to approach the earth; all the instances in which bodies are disposed to rise from its surface, being due to the inferior attraction which the earth has for them, when compared with that which it has for the same bulk of

the fluid through which they rise. Thus a balloon filled with hydrogen gas rises through the atmosphere; but a balloon filled with common air would rise through heavier gases; these gases would rise through water; a vessel filled with water would rise through strong sulphuric acid (oil of vitriol); and a vessel filled with this would rise through mercury, which is the heaviest fluid we know. It will be shown hereafter (§. 253) that the different rates at which different bodies fall to the ground, are due to the *resistance* of the air against their surfaces; and that, if the air be removed, *heavy* and *light* bodies (as they are commonly termed) will fall in the same time.

99. The powerful attraction which the earth, in consequence of its vast bulk, has for all bodies upon its surface, prevents us from perceiving, under ordinary circumstances at least, the attraction which they have for each other; and yet this exists in a degree exactly proportionate to their respective bulks. If two balls of lead were placed at a little distance on a smooth surface, they would have exactly the same tendency to move towards each other, as if they were not attracted by the earth; but this tendency is prevented by the friction which would be produced if they were to begin to roll, and which their mutual attraction is not sufficient to overcome. Or if they were suspended by strings from the ceiling of a room, they could not approach each other without moving out of the line in which the earth's attraction causes them to hang; and this attraction their mutual attraction is not powerful enough to overcome. But when two bodies are floating on a liquid, there is no obstacle but the resistance of the liquid to prevent their mutual attraction from bringing them together; and accordingly we see two floating bodies attracted into contact with each other, when they have been brought sufficiently near for their mutual attraction to overcome that resistance. It has been determined by accurate observation, that a plumb-line suspended in the neighbourhood of a lofty mountain, does not hang in a direction quite perpendicular, but is drawn a little to one side by the attraction of the mountain. But as the greatest mountain upon the earth's surface is little more than the *sixty-millionth* part of its bulk, its attraction for the lead ball must

evidently be very trifling, compared with that which the earth has for the same solid; and consequently the deviation of the plummet will be *very* small.

100. The attraction of solid bodies for each other may be shown, however, by balancing a small mass in such a manner that it may be moved by the slightest influence; and then bringing another mass into its neighbourhood. Thus, if we suspend two equal balls of lead from the opposite extremities of a slender bar of wood, and suspend this at its centre by a very fine wire, the only force required to move the balls will be that which suffices to produce a slight twisting of the wire that suspends the rod (§. 63). Now if a large mass of lead be brought into the neighbourhood of each ball, (the rod having been previously hanging at rest,) its attraction will cause the rod to turn round, until the small balls have come into the same line with the large masses. If the masses be now moved a little further, the balls will follow them; twisting the wire, from which the rod is suspended, still more. Now, as the force which is required to produce any amount of alteration in the position of the rod can be ascertained in another way, the actual amount of the attraction which the masses exercise over the balls may be determined; and this may be compared with the attractive influence which the earth has over them. From the knowledge of these facts, the *quantity of matter* in the earth may be compared with that in the masses of lead; for the weight of the earth is just as much greater than that of the masses of lead, as the force with which it attracts the balls exceeds that with which the masses attract them,—proper allowance being made for their difference in distance. When the actual weight of the earth is known, we may estimate its density as compared with water; since we may easily calculate the weight of a globe of water of equal size. And from the weight and density of the earth, that of other planets and of the sun may be ascertained.

101. This experiment is known as that of Cavendish, by whom it was first devised. In order to perform it accurately, very great care is necessary to prevent various sources of error. Thus, the rod and balls must be inclosed in a case, so contriv-

as to prevent their motions from being affected by currents of air; and the whole apparatus must be inclosed in a room which has a uniform temperature, and in which there are no other openings than those absolutely necessary for making the observations. The necessity for these precautions is evident from the fact mentioned by Mr. Baily (under whose direction the experiment has lately been repeated), that the slightest change of temperature on one side of the case in which the rod and balls were suspended, would produce an immediate effect upon them. The average result of 2004 experiments lately made, is that the weight of the earth is about $5\frac{2}{3}$ times as great as that of a globe of water of the same bulk*. Thus, we may regard the apparatus of Cavendish as a scale in which the earth, sun, moon, and planets have been weighed.

---

* Philosophical Magazine, August 1842.

CHAPTER IV.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY.—STABILITY OF SOLID MASSES.

102. It has been shown that, by the attraction of the earth for bodies near its surface, all their particles are drawn downwards, in lines which, at short distances from each other, may be regarded as having exactly the same direction. We have also seen that, in liquids, this attraction is exerted over the different particles *separately;* so that they arrange themselves in conformity with it. But in solid bodies, the particles are so coherent, that the combined attraction of the earth for them all is diffused over the whole mass. Now it is very desirable that we should be able, in some easy and simple manner, to discover the whole effect of this force;—or, which is the same thing, to find out whether any single force, acting from any one part of the body, would produce the same result. It is in this manner only that we can determine (except by a very tedious process) a great variety of questions, in which the influence of gravity, or the earth's attraction, upon bodies of various forms and sizes is concerned. That such a method *may* be followed, will be evident from a few simple considerations; by which also we shall be led to the mode of arriving at it.

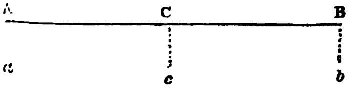


Fig. 14.

103. Let us first consider the attraction of the earth for a body, whose particles are arranged in a simple regular line, A C B. The earth's attraction for all those particles separately will draw them downwards in the directions A *a*, B *b*, C *c* and in other lines between these and parallel to them. If

conceive the particles to be divided into two equal parts at the point C, then it is obvious that the earth's attraction for those on the side A C will be equal to its attraction for those on the side B C; and that thus the whole line will remain at rest, if it is suspended at the point C; like the beam of a balance in whose scales there are equal weights. It is also evident that we may represent the whole of the forces acting on A B, by a single force acting directly downwards from C,—that is, in the line C *c*. But if the line be supported at any other point, it will not remain at rest; because the weight of its two sides will then be unequal. Next, let us consider the case of a solid body of regular form, such as the parallelogram A B C D, whose downward pressure is exerted in the directions A C, E F, and B D; this body we can readily divide into two equal halves by the line E F. The weights, or downward pressures on each side of this line, will then be equal; so that, if we support the body by a prop placed under the point F, or hang it from the point E, it will have no tendency to change its position; whilst, if it be supported on either side of E F, the weights of the two divisions must be unequal, and the body will sink, therefore, on the heavier side. We learn from this, that the force which represents the combined attraction of the earth for all the particles of the body, acts in the line E F.

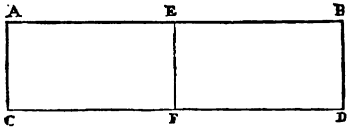


FIG. 15.

104. But we wish to ascertain the exact point in that line, round which the weight of *all* sides of the body is balanced. Let the position of the body be changed, so that its downward pressure comes to be in the direction of the lines A B, G H, and C D; then, in the same manner, we see that it will remain at rest if supported in the line G H, and in no other; so that the point O, which is common to both the lines E F and G H, is one

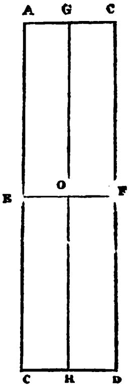


FIG. 16.

round which the weights are balanced, whether the body is supported in the direction E F or G H. It would not be difficult to show, that in whatever other direction such a body is supported, the direction of its pressure will always be in a line passing through O, in consequence of the division of its weight into two equal parts acting on each side of O; and thus the point O is one round which the weight of *all* sides of the body is equally distributed; so that, if this point be supported, the body will remain at rest.

105. The case appears different in regard to a body of irregular form, such as that represented in Fig. 17; but it is in reality precisely the same. Let A B, be a solid body placed within the influence of the earth's attraction, which will be exercised upon its particles in the downward direction. It is easy to understand that, in spite of its irregularity of form, we might divide it, by a line C D, into two parts whose weights should be equal; so that if a prop were placed under D, or the body were suspended at C, the two parts, C A and C F, would balance each other, and the body would remain at rest in its present position. This will only be the case, however, when the body is so placed that C D is perpendicular; so that the pressure of the body at C or D may be directly downwards. For supposing the body to be so placed that D C were somewhat inclined, and D E were the perpendicular drawn upwards from the point of support; then D C, being out of the perpendicular, would no longer represent the combined action of the weights on each side of it; and, as D E does not equally divide the body, it would sink on the heavier side E B. But we may find mar

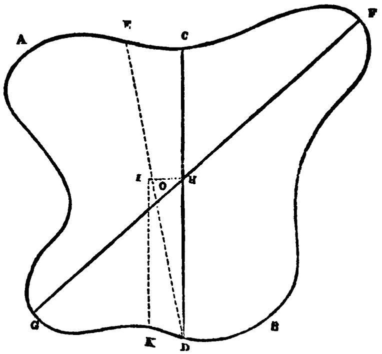


FIG. 17.

other lines, on each side of which the weights are equal,—for instance, F G; and when the body is so supported that F G is perpendicular, it will remain at rest, as in the former case. Hence the point H, where C D and F G cross each other, is that round which the weights of the several particles, composing the two sides of the body in each case, are equally balanced; and it can be shown that, in *any* other position of the body, the line which divides it into two portions of equal weight will pass through the same point H. Hence the weight of the body is equally distributed in all directions about this point; so that, if *it* be supported, the whole body will remain at rest in any position in which it may be. This point is called the *centre of gravity.*

106. It will be evident, from what has been stated, that the centre of gravity of any body may be found by a very simple process. For if we suspend the body freely by any point, it will take such a position that its centre of gravity will be somewhere in a line drawn perpendicularly downwards from that point; since into that line the centre of gravity has just the same tendency to come, as a weight at the end of a line has to cause that line to hang perpendicularly. The simplest mode of finding the place of such a line, is to let drop a plumb-line from the point from which the body is suspended; and to mark the direction of the line upon the surface of the body. If the body be suspended from another point, and the same thing be again done, the second line will be found to cross the first; and the point of intersection is the centre of gravity.

107. In all our reasoning respecting the attraction of the earth for bodies of any form whatever, we may regard its whole influence as being exercised towards this point of the body,—its centre of gravity; and it is obvious that the tendency of this point will always be, to assume the lowest position that the mode in which the body is supported will admit of. Thus, if the body A B (Fig. 17) be suspended from C, the centre of gravity H will hang immediately below it; since in any other position it must be higher. If the body be supported upon a prop placed beneath D, and the centre of gravity be in the perpendicular

D C, the body will be at rest; because its weight, concentrated in the point H, presses directly downwards upon the point of support. But suppose the body to be a little thrown to one side, so that the centre of gravity is moved out of the point H into the position I; then, since its pressure will still be exerted directly downwards, or in the line I K, the body cannot remain in such a position, since there is no support beneath K; and it will move round, until the centre of gravity hangs in the perpendicular line *below* D. Where the point of support is very small, there will be considerable difficulty in placing the body so as to remain at rest upon it; since the slightest change of the centre of gravity from that position in which it is directly above the point of support, will cause it to upset. Thus we may endeavour for a long time to cause a pencil to stand upright upon its point, without being able to succeed; because the slightest shake or breath of air will disturb it, even if for a moment we should have succeeded in poising it. A taller and heavier body, such as a walking-stick, is more easily poised; since its centre of gravity will not be so easily disturbed by slight causes. It is much easier to keep such a body poised upon the hand, than to balance it upon a fixed point; because, if we see it inclining towards one side or the other, by slightly moving the point of support in the same direction, we again bring it under the centre of gravity.

108. When the point of support is extended into a surface or base, the body is more stable; because the centre of gravity must be made to move through a much larger space, to cause the perpendicular let fall from it (which, expressing the direction of the earth's attraction for the whole body, is called the *line of direction*) to fall beyond the point of support. Thus the solid A B C D (Fig. 18) stan

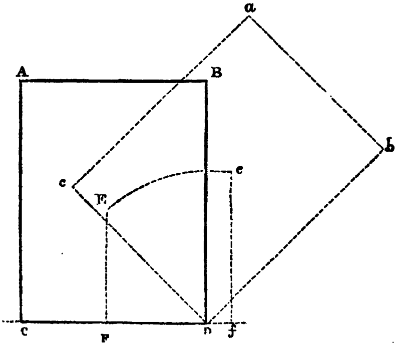


FIG. 18.

securely upon the base C D, because it must be moved into the position *a b c* D, before the centre of gravity E is thrown into such a position *e*, that its perpendicular *e f* falls beyond the point D, so as to give it a tendency to upset; any less degree of disturbance, that does not move the centre of gravity so far as *e*, will not upset the body; since it will tend to return to its original position, so long as the line of direction falls anywhere upon C D. If the body were so inclined that the perpendicular from *e* were to fall exactly upon the corner D on which it would then be resting, it might remain poised there, but would be upset to one side or the other, by the slightest touch. It is a general rule, then, that so long as the line of direction (or perpendicular let fall from the centre of gravity) falls within the base or surface of support, so long will the body stand at rest, because the centre of gravity will be supported; but that, if the line of direction fall without the base, the body must fall, because its centre of gravity is not supported. Thus, let ABCD (Fig. 19) be a building which has very much sunk in at one side, and let E be its centre of gravity; the building will yet stand, because the line of direction falls within the base. But suppose that an addition were made to the top of such a building, so as to carry it up to F G; it would then necessarily fall, since by the change in the place of the centre of gravity from E to *e*, the line of direction is now made to fall outside the base.

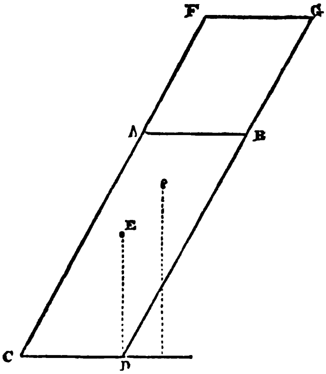


Fig. 19.

109. It is obvious that the broader the base in proportion to the height, the more steadiness will the body have; since the further must its centre of gravity be moved by any disturbing force, for the line of direction to be carried beyond it. Thus, a thick book will stand more firmly than a thin one; and any

book will be overturned with much less difficulty when standing on either of its edges, than when lying on its side. A body may be high and yet it may be very steady, on account of the lowness of its centre of gravity resulting from its form; thus the centre of gravity of a pyramid, twice as high as it is broad at the base, will be at only one-fourth of its whole height from the ground; for the part below this line contains as much matter as the lofty portion above; and it will therefore be as steady as a cube having the same base, and only half the height of the pyramid.

110. It is not necessary that the body should rest on the whole surface of its base; thus a table standing upon four legs is just as steady as if it stood upon a basement covering the whole space between the legs, because its centre of gravity must, in either case, move through the same space before the table can be upset. The difference in the degree of resistance afforded by bases of different forms to forces tending to displace the body, is well illustrated by the various degrees of steadiness with which we stand erect, in different positions of the feet. The base on which we may really be considered as resting, is included by lines joining the points of the toes and the backs of the heels; since, as in the case of the table, the line of direction must fall beyond that space, before an upset can occur. If a man stand with one foot exactly in front of the other, so that the toes and heels of both shall be in the same straight line, he will have a long base, but a very narrow one; so that, although he might not be easily pushed forwards or backwards, he would be very readily overset by a force acting on one side. On the other hand, if he were to stand with his heels touching one another, and the toes of each foot directed outwards,—so that the two feet should again be in the same line, but this line run from side to side instead of forwards and backwards,—the base would be wide, but would be so short from back to front, that the body would be very easily upset by a push either in front or behind. If a person stand upright against a wall, touching it with his heels, and then turn his toes out until the whole line of each foot is against the wall, he will not be able to remain upright;

for if the back be not allowed to project behind the base, the front of the body will project in front of it, so as to throw the centre of gravity so far forwards, that the line of direction will fall in front of the feet; hence, unless one foot is planted a little forwards, or the toes be turned towards the front, the body must fall. The position of the feet in which the body will most firmly resist forces coming in any direction, is that in which they are planted at about a foot distant from one another, with the toes pointed slightly outwards; but if it be desired to resist a force acting from the front, one of the feet should be advanced before the other, so as to extend the base in that direction; whilst if the force comes from the side, the feet may be more widely separated, so as to increase the breadth of the base. It is from the habit of walking on the decks of ships whilst these are continually rolling from side to side, that sailors acquire their peculiar gait; for they are well aware by experience, that the wider the space between their feet, the greater resistance they will be enabled to make to the force, by which they would otherwise be upset to one side.

111. Many familiar illustrations might be given of the fact, that the steadiness of different bodies having the same base depends upon the height of their centre of gravity. Thus, on a highway, level in the middle, but sloping towards the sides, let there be a coach on the level, and a waggon on each slope at the side, one loaded with hay and the other with stones; their centres of gravity *a*, *a*, *a*, and lines of direction *ab*, *ab*, *ab*, will be as shown in the figures. It is obvious that the hay-waggon must upset, because the line of direction falls without the base; the coach is very secure, because the line of direction falls in the very middle of its base; and the stone-cart, though the centre of pressure is low

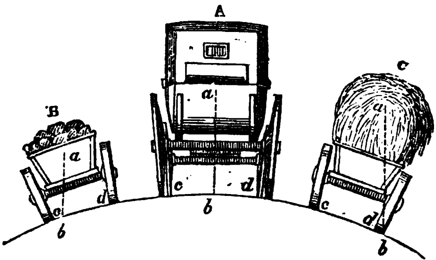


Fig. 20.

down, is not very secure, because the line of direction falls very near the outside of the base. For the same reason that the hay-cart here represented must upset, a stage-coach without inside passengers, but heavily loaded with passengers and luggage on the roof, is very insecure; because its centre of gravity is high, so that the line of direction is thrown beyond the base with a less inclination of the road; and it will be rendered much more secure by causing some of the outside passengers to take the inside places, which will lower the centre of gravity considerably.

112. The attitudes of men and animals are the result of the instinctive efforts, which cause them so to alter the position of different parts of their bodies, as to bring the centre of gravity immediately above the point of support. These efforts result involuntarily from the feeling of loss of balance and of tendency to fall, which affects us disagreeably whenever the position of the body has been so changed as to render it insecure. Thus a porter bearing a heavy load on his back so inclines himself forward, as to bring the common centre of gravity of his body and load within the space bounded by his feet. If he stood upright, even though the weight of his load were small in proportion to that of his body, the line of direction must come to the ground behind his heels, and he must fall backwards. On the other hand, a woman carrying a heavy basket in front, by a strap passing over her shoulders, throws the upper part of her person back, in order to prevent the centre of gravity from being brought so far forwards, that the line of direction shall fall in front of the toes. In stooping to place a weight upon the ground or to lift it up, we necessarily throw forwards the head and shoulders; but to compensate this, the rest of the body is bent backwards beyond the line of the heels; and the greater the weight in the hands, the more curved will the body be. But as in stooping, even with this compensation, the centre of gravity is necessarily brought much forwards, the body is more easily overthrown than it is in the upright position; and a person standing with his back to a wall, will be unable to pick up a piece of money placed between his feet, and will infallibly fall forwards if he attempt to do so.

113. For the same reason, persons with a great accumulation of fat in the front of their bodies, walk with the spine erect, and the shoulders even thrown backwards, that the centre of gravity may be kept above the middle of the base. A man carrying a bucket of water in one hand, inclines his head and shoulders to the other side; and may even derive still further assistance in maintaining his balance, by throwing out the other arm sideways to its full extent. But if he carry an equally heavy bucket in each hand, the position of the centre of gravity is not changed towards one side or the other, and he stands firmly when quite upright. Or when a load is carried *on* the head, the centre of pressure being still in the middle line of the body, there is no tendency to bend it over towards either side. When a person stands upon one foot, his base is so small that he is easily pushed down; and he finds it difficult to keep the different parts of his body so completely at rest, as to maintain his balance for any length of time. If he find himself falling towards one side, he stretches out his hand or his leg towards the other in such a manner, as to bring the centre of gravity again over the base, and thus to restore his balance. A rope-dancer is supported upon a much narrower base, and has consequently much more difficulty in keeping the body balanced; but he is provided with a long pole loaded with lead at each end, and this he moves to either side, according as he finds that he has a tendency to fall towards the other. It will be easily understood, when the principle of the lever is comprehended, that the weights at the end of the pole will act much more readily and advantageously in restoring the balance, than if they were attached to the sides of the body, or were simply carried in the hands.

114. The fact that a body stands more firmly, the wider its points of support lie apart from one another, enables us to understand the advantage which is often gained by arranging the same materials in a hollow rather than in a solid structure. Thus, let us suppose a table to be resting upon a square column placed beneath its centre; if this column be not enlarged at the base, the table will be very easily upset; but if it were separated into four pieces which should spread out at the bottom, whilst they

still meet at the top, the table would be rendered secure in proportion to the distance of its feet from each other. It is just on this principle that a lofty column may be made to stand much more securely, by arranging the materials for its pedestal in a large hollow base, rather than in a solid one of much smaller dimensions; as is well exemplified in the accompanying figure of Lord Nelson's monument on the Denes at Yarmouth.

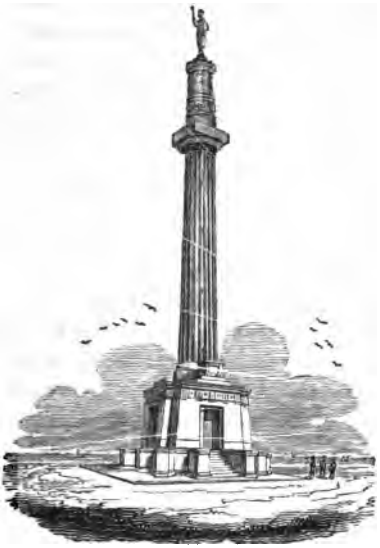


FIG. 21.

115. It is not always that the centre of gravity of a body is in some part of its substance. Thus, in a ring, the centre of gravity is the centre of the circle, and not in any part of the ring itself; but this point has the characteristic property of the centre of gravity,—the tendency to settle itself at the lowest possible point. For from whatever point we hang the ring, its centre will always be in the perpendicular line from that point; and we can only poise the ring upon a support when its centre is perpendicularly above the point of support. If we could imagine the central point to be connected with the different parts of the ring, by threads so fine, that their weight need not be taken into account, the ring would be balanced in any position upon a point supporting the central knot in which the threads meet.

116. A body which remains in a state of rest, in consequence of its centre of gravity being supported, is said to be in *equilibrium*—a term derived from the Latin, and denoting equality of weight; because in that position, the weight or pressure which tends to upset it, is balanced by that which causes it to maintain

its place. But its equilibrium may be such that it is easily disturbed,—a greater or less amount of force so changing the place of its centre of gravity, that the line of direction shall fall without the base, so that it must turn over. This equilibrium is said to be *unstable*. On the other hand, a body may be so placed that it may be disturbed by a very small amount of force; and yet it shall always have a tendency to recover its state of equilibrium, because its centre of gravity, when the disturbing cause is withdrawn, constantly has a tendency to return to the same situation. Its equilibrium is then said to be *stable*. Now the conditions of the two are very easily understood. A body is in stable equilibrium when its centre of gravity is in such a position, that it cannot be made lower by any change in the place of the body; and consequently it will always tend to return to its original place, when it has been disturbed in such a manner as to raise the centre of gravity. But a body is in unstable equilibrium, when its position may be changed, though with some difficulty, into another in which its centre of gravity is lower. Thus, a book placed upright on either of its edges, is in unstable equilibrium; because we can push it over upon its side, thus causing it to take a position in which its centre of gravity shall be much nearer the surface which supports it; and when in this last position, its equilibrium is stable, because there is no other in which its centre of gravity can be still further lowered.

117. A globe, whose centre of gravity is its centre, can be made to rest in any position upon a level surface; because no change of position can bring the centre of gravity nearer to the point of support: but it can be displaced by the slightest force, because, being always in equilibrium, it has no more tendency to remain in one position than in another. On the other hand, an egg placed upon either of its ends will not stand; because the centre of gravity is brought much lower by the rolling-over of the egg until it lies upon some part of its middle, which therefore is the position it will seek, and in which alone it will rest. The equilibrium of a body which may be readily disturbed,—as that of a sphere, a cylinder, or an egg-shaped body,—without any more stable position being gained, is said to be *neutral*. When

any such body is rolled upon a level surface, its centre of gravity moves forwards at a rate exactly the same with that, at which the point of support is changed; and the line of direction let fall perpendicularly from the former always drops upon the latter. But if the surface be not plane, the body will roll down it; because the point of support is *not* below the line of direction; and the centre of gravity, not being supported, has a tendency to descend.

118. If the globe or cylinder, however, be not of the same kind of substance throughout, but be heavier in one part than in another, it will not remain at rest in any position, but will always seek to take that, in which its centre of gravity—now thrown out of its former position—may find its lowest point. In this manner, bodies may be made to seem to run *up* an inclined plane. Thus, suppose a solid wheel of wood to have a mass of lead imbedded in one part of its edge; that part will tend to take the lowest place, since the centre of gravity is much nearer to it than to any other; and in order that it may do so, the wheel will even roll up a hill, the centre of gravity being really lowered whilst the centre of the wheel rises. In the same manner, if two equal cones be fixed together by their bases, and this double cone be laid upon two edges inclined towards each other like those of the letter V, it will have a tendency to run from the narrow end towards the broad one; since, in doing so, the centre of gravity of the double cone, being in the middle of their united bases, will be lowered by the change of the points of support from the large part of the cone towards the small, as it runs from the part where the edges approach one another to that at which they are separated. And if these edges be somewhat raised at the wide end, the cone will still roll towards it, appearing to run up hill, but really descending.

119. It is often necessary to ascertain the position of the common centre of gravity of two or more bodies connected together; and this is not difficult, when we know the centres of gravity of the several bodies themselves. For let A and B be two globes connected by a rod (which we shall suppose, for the sake of simplifying the explanation) to have no weight in itself:

the centres of these globes are their centres of gravity; and, as we may regard all their weight as acting from those points, the same reasoning, which enabled us to understand that the forces acting upon the different parts of any one body may balance each other round a certain point, leads to the belief that a point may exist in which we may regard the actions of A and B as jointly and equally exercised. This point is evidently somewhere in the line A B, which joins their centres; and it is easily determined (as will be shown when the principle of the lever is explained) by dividing the line A B into two such parts, that the distance of each body from the point C shall be proportional to the weight of the other. Thus, suppose A to weigh 6 lbs. and B 1 lb., then A's distance from C must be to B's distance as 1 to 6; for the weight 6 at the distance 1 will have an action equal to that of the weight 1 at the distance 6. Hence, as the weights A and B bear directly downwards, and as they balance one another at C, it is evident that a support placed at C will sustain them both at rest, and will be pressed upon with the weight of both combined. It would be in this manner that we should ascertain the centre of gravity of a compound body, such as that of a man with a loaded basket on his back, when that of each of the parts,—the body and the basket,—is known; for the common centre will be in a line joining the two single centres, and will be found by dividing it in the proportion of the two weights, as in the last instance.

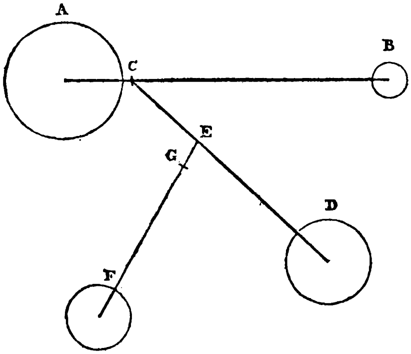


FIG. 22.

120. Supposing that a third body, D, were connected with A and B, by a rod proceeding from the point C; then the common centre of gravity of all three bodies will be in the line C D,

since the weights of A and B may be regarded as concentrated at C, and act as if a single body of their total weight were placed there; and it will be determined in the same manner as before. In like manner, if another body F be connected with the system, by a rod uniting it with the rest at their common centre of gravity, E, the centre of gravity of the four will be in the line between E and F; and will be at such a distance from F, that its weight multiplied by the distance F G, shall be equal to the combined weights of the other bodies acting at the distance G E. In this manner, any number of bodies may be connected with the system; or, in a system already existing, we may ascertain the common centre of gravity by a similar process. It will be hereafter shown that the moon does not, strictly speaking, move round the earth; but that, as the moon attracts the earth whilst the earth attracts the moon, both of them move round their common centre of gravity; and that, in like manner, the sun and the whole solar system have a common centre of gravity, round which they all perform certain motions. As the bulk of the sun so enormously exceeds that of all the planets and their moons put together, the centre of gravity of the whole system (even supposing that all the planets were arranged in one direction,) would be within the mass of the sun; and as the place of the planets is constantly varying, this centre is continually shifting its position, so that the sun is drawn a little in one direction or another, according to the situation of the planets which have most influence over it. But these changes have all a tendency to counteract each other; so that the place of the sun would be found to be the same at any period, as it was when the planets last had the same position with respect to him and to each other.

CHAPTER V.

STABILITY OF STRUCTURES COMPOSED OF MOVABLE PARTS.—FRAME-WORK.—ARCH.

121. We have hitherto considered the stability of bodies of determined forms; and have examined the circumstances in which they will stand or fall. We have now to inquire into the conditions that are requisite for the stability of bodies, of which the form is liable to change; and to examine how those parts may be best connected together, so as to render them stable. It is upon such principles only that arches can be securely built, or that any kind of framing which is to support a heavy pressure can be constructed.

122. The two most important classes of bodies of variable form are:

I. Those which are composed of rods or cords, the parts of which are connected together at their angles, but movable about them. Of this kind are all sorts of frame-work; whether supported on a solid base, like that of a roof; or suspended from fixed points, as in the case of the suspension-bridge; or intended to resist pressure in every direction, as that of a ship.

II. Those which are composed of solid bodies in contact, whose surfaces are not held together in any other way than by their mutual pressures, or by imperfect adhesion. Of this kind are all buildings in which the arch is employed, especially bridges, domes, &c.

123. The principle which should govern the construction of frame-work, in order to insure its stability, is a very simple one. If we take three strips of wood, and pin them together at their ends in such a manner as to form a triangle, we shall

find that the shape of that triangle cannot be altered by pressure in any direction. But this is not true of any other figure. For let four rods be pinned together in the same manner, so as to make a four-sided or quadrilateral figure of any shape, the form of this figure may be altered by pressure in any direction. If the opposite sides were originally parallel, they will always remain so; but their inclination to the other sides may be made to vary in any degree, if the joints are movable. Still greater changes may be made in figures having a larger number of sides. Hence we see that, in the construction of framing of all kinds, this simple principle is to be followed;—the parts of the framing are to be so united together, as to form a series of triangles, so that, as every one of these is immovable, the whole shall be also. Hence a framing so made will be able to resist any amount of pressure consistent with the strength of its materials. A very familiar illustration of this principle may be seen in the construction of the common gate. If made of upright and horizontal pieces only, it would have been liable to change its form, provided the framing were at all movable at the points where the pieces unite; and the addition of any number of pieces in either of these directions would only have rendered it stronger by increasing the number of joints. But a single piece fixed *diagonally* will prevent any alteration in shape from taking place, even though the joints are by no means firm; for this converts the framing, from a set of movable parallelograms, into a series of triangles, every one of which is immovable. The shape of the gate cannot be altered without altering the length of the diagonal; and this change is prevented by the additional piece.

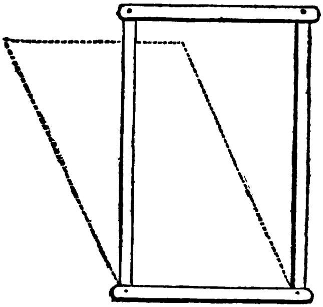


Fig. 23.

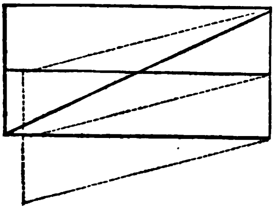


Fig. 24.

124. This principle is very extensively adopted in framing of all kinds. Thus in frames for wooden houses, such as are now frequently constructed in this country to be sent out to newly-settled colonies, or in those of oil-cloth factories (which are usually constructed on the same plan, as great size is required for them, without the strength which is necessary in mills), these diagonal pieces may always be seen, crossing the parallelograms which would be left between the upright and horizontal timbers. Although such parallel framing rests on a solid and extensive base, and would be able to resist a vast amount of pressure acting directly downwards, it would not be able to stand against a force acting sideways, as that of the wind; and however great the mass of timber employed, the building would have no security against such a change of form as that represented in Fig. 24, without the employment of diagonal braces. This principle has only been applied to ship-building, within a comparatively recent period; it was introduced by Sir R. Seppings, to whom we owe several other important improvements in Naval Architecture.

125. Frame-work may be very securely made upon the same plan, even when the centre of pressure is not directly supported. Thus, the large frames that form the *centering* on which stone arches are to be built, are constructed upon this principle, when the arch is of great size. Various plans may be employed for this purpose; but in all of them the frame-work is so arranged, as to form a series of triangles. In the accompanying figure is represented one mode of so constructing the centering of a large arch, that it shall not require any support but that given by the piers on which the arch is to rest. Up to the time when the arch is completed, its whole weight rests upon the centering; and as any alteration

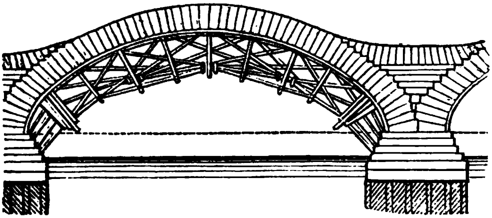


FIG. 25.

in the form of the latter will displace the stones of which the arch is to be composed, and as every such displacement will greatly weaken the arch, it is of the utmost importance that the whole should be a perfectly immovable structure. The same plan of framing is adopted in the construction of wooden and iron bridges and roofs. The accompanying figure shows the kind of framing adopted in a timber-bridge erected over the Thames at Walton. A much simpler plan may be adopted, however, when the main beams of timber are so connected as to have the properties of the arch; for the triangular framing is then required only to keep these in their proper position. It is on this plan that the largest timber-bridges have been constructed, such as that which crosses the Schuylkill, at Philadelphia (§. 78).

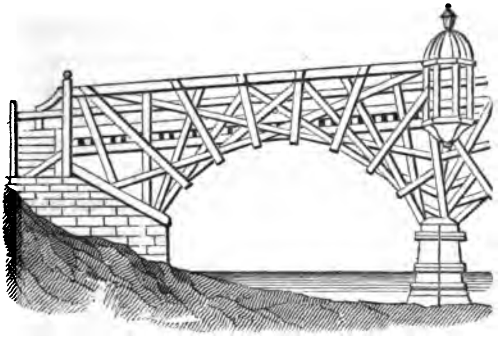


Fig. 26.

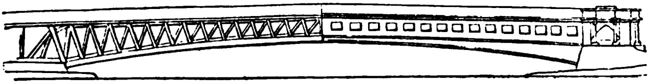


Fig. 27.

Such an arch may be made so flat as to have no inconvenient rise in the centre; that of the Schuylkill bridge is only 20 feet in a length of 340 feet.

126. The same kind of frame-work is employed in smal domes, in which neither masonry nor brick-work is required; and as every part is connected not only with those above and below it, but with those on each side, the pressure is so distributed over the whole, that the top need not be closed in, but may be left open for the purpose of affording light (Fig. 28). There is a tendency, however, at the lower part, as in the arch (§. 137), to

the separation of the points of support; since the pressure will cause them to fall asunder, if they are not properly kept together.

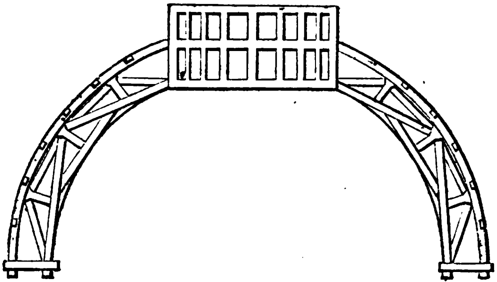


FIG. 28.

In order to give security enough, therefore, especially in the construction of large domes, it is found requisite either greatly to increase the thickness of the lower portion, or to bind it round with a strong hoop or chain. The former plan is that which

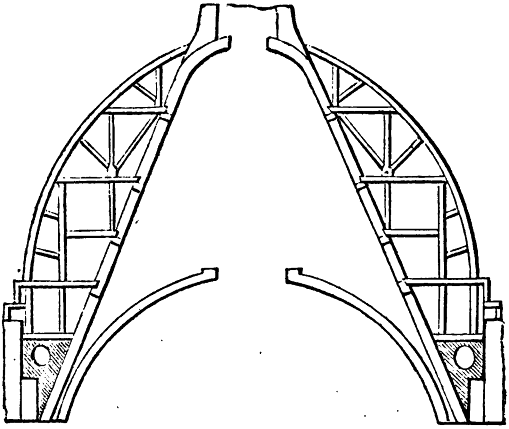


FIG. 29.

was employed in the ancient dome of the Pantheon at Rome; the latter in St. Peter's at Rome,* and St. Paul's in London.

---

* Owing to this dome having been too hastily built, various parts of it subsided in an unequal degree; and the iron bands placed around it were thus broken. New ones of much larger size have been since placed round the dome; but there are even now some large cracks in it.

The construction of the dome of St. Paul's, however, differs from that of most others: the external dome is of timber, the framing of which rests upon a conical tower of brick; and upon the top of this also, the lantern, with its ball and cross, is supported. It is between this brick cone and the external dome, that the visitor ascends to the top; and the framing which is represented in the preceding figure may be thus seen by any one. There is an interior dome below the cone, having little connection with it; but its outward pressure, as well as the weight of the external dome, has a tendency to force out the bottom of the brick cone; and this is prevented by a strong chain, which encircles it near its base.

127. When a system of rods or bars, freely jointed together, is hung from fixed points, it will naturally assume the position in which its own equilibrium is stable,—that, namely, to which it will return if disturbed. Thus we see that a chain composed of a number of short links, or a simple cord, supported at both ends, hangs in a regular curve, which is termed the *catenary* (from the Latin *catena*, a chain); and that, if disturbed, it will return to this curve again. The mode in which this curve is occasioned by the downward force acting equally upon the parts of the chain or cord, can only be shown by a complex mathematical process; and it is sufficient, therefore, here to state, that the property of the curve is such, that the tension or strain is the least at its middle point, and the greatest near the points of suspension, where it is equal to the whole weight of the cord. Hence, in order to be of equal strength throughout, the chain or cord should be made thicker near the points of suspension than elsewhere.

128. A good illustration of the operation of the catenary curve, is seen when a ship is at anchor. The cable or chain which connects the ship and the anchor takes this curve; and the force which acts upon the ship is not only the same, as if the resistance which the anchor gives were directly applied at the spot from which the cable issues, but is increased by as much of the weight of the cable itself as is not sustained by the water. Hence there is a great advantage in the use of iron chain-cables over he

cords; for the latter, being nearly of the same weight with the water, are buoyed up by it, so that their action on the ship is very small; and if it be impelled by the wind or waves, it drags directly upon the anchor. But, from the much greater density of the iron chain, it is but little supported by the water; and nearly its whole weight is exerted in drawing the ship nearer to the anchor, so that the chain usually hangs in a deep curve. Hence when the ship is driven by the wind or waves in such a manner as to put an increased strain upon the cable, the large resistance produced by the weight of the chain has to be gradually overcome, before the ship can pull directly at the anchor. The advantage, therefore, in substituting iron for hempen cables, consists in this,—that the latter have little tendency to prevent those sudden jerks, which occur when the ship is *brought up* by the tightening of the cable, and which not only strain the ship, but endanger the firmness of the anchor; whilst the former gradually check its motion by their own weight, so that it often ceases before the chain is tightened so much as to permit such a strain. Another illustration may be found in the action of a horse in towing a barge; the cord which connects them is a catenary; and the effective force by which the barge is moved forward, is that which the horse exerts, with the weight of the cord added to it.

129. The properties of the catenary have acquired much additional importance of late years, from the general use of that curve in the construction of suspension-bridges. These consist of massive chains, raised near each end on firm supports, and strongly fixed into the ground at their extremities. At equal distances from each other, along the whole length of these chains, there are fixed to them vertical rods, to which the roadway is hung. The weight of the bridge itself is so great in proportion to that of any load which would be likely to pass over it, that the curve which depends on the former, will not be altered in any perceivable degree by the latter; and thus the structure may, for all practical purposes, be regarded as perfectly stable (that is, up to the limit of the tenacity of its materials), although it is really capable of being disturbed by a very slight force. There

is one kind of force, however, which would seriously affect any suspension-bridge; this is, the heavy and measured tread of a large body of men. When it is remembered that their steps are so many *impacts* all acting together, and that the impact even of a light body produces greater disturbance than the simple pressure of a heavy one (§. 206), the danger of serious consequences, from the passage of a comparatively small number of soldiers over a suspension-bridge, is easily understood to be much greater than that which would result from the crowding of the whole surface of the bridge with persons standing still. But such a curve may be easily disturbed by a force acting from below, or on the sides; and in this manner suspension-bridges may be greatly injured by the wind, if it should be violent, or if it should blow for some time in the same direction. The Menai bridge is sometimes disturbed by the wind in such a manner, that the road-way is lifted at some part into an elevation, which travels like a wave from one end to the other. The length of this bridge, between the points of suspension, is 560 feet; and the height of the roadway above the water is 100 feet. The total weight suspended by the chains (including their own) is about 489 tons. This bridge will be surpassed by the one in progress of erection over the Avon at Clifton. Its length between the points of suspension will be about 700 feet; and its height above the river about 180 feet. The total length of this bridge, however, will not equal that of the Menai bridge, which is carried on arches for some distance.

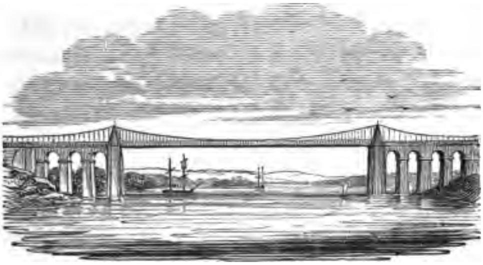


FIG. 30.

130. The principle of the suspension-bridge has been long employed in India and in South America. Many remarka rope-bridges are described by the celebrated traveller Hum

as establishing communications across the mountain torrents of the Andes. These are of the simplest possible construction; being made of ropes (twisted from the fibres of the *Agave Americana* or American Aloe) stretched across from point to point as tightly as possible; and upon these ropes is laid a flooring or roadway of bamboos. There is some danger incurred in passing these bridges, in consequence of their tendency to swing to one side or the other, according as the weight is distributed upon them; this may be partly prevented by ropes attached to the middle of the bridge, and stretching diagonally towards the shore. It is by means of a bridge of ropes of extraordinary length, which may be traversed by loaded mules, that the South Americans have succeeded (within these few years) in establishing a permanent communication between the towns of Quito and Lima; after having failed in constructing a stone bridge over a torrent that descends between them. In India similar bridges have been lately constructed of canes, which grow to a length of above 200 feet, and serve as admirable ropes; their durability, however, is yet to be tested.

131. It has been recently proposed to adapt the principle of the suspension-bridge to the *roofing* of very large buildings; and there is much to be said in favour of the plan.

132. *Arch.* The stability of the arch depends upon the proper arrangement of the pressures on its several parts, so that they may all resist and counteract each other. The subject is of so complex a nature, however, that a full account of it would be quite unsuitable to the present work; and all which it seems desirable to embrace here, are some of the general principles which have been obtained by mathematical investigation. To understand these, it is necessary to be acquainted with the parts of which an arch consists. In the accompanying figure,

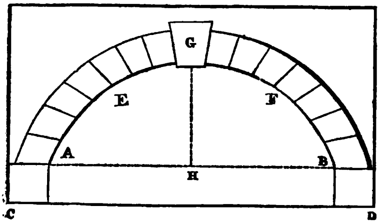


FIG. 31.

A C and B D, are the supports or *piers* of the arch, which is said to *spring* from A and B; A E and G F are the *flanks;* and G the crown. The wedge-shaped stones forming the arch are termed *voussoirs;* the highest of these at G is the *key-stone;* the lower line of the arch is called the *intrados*, and the upper the *extrados*. The line A B is the *span* of the arch; and G H is its *height*.

133. The first question to be considered in the theory of the arch, is, how it may be so built, that all its parts shall remain in equilibrium, even though unconnected by cement, and not held together by the friction of their surfaces. It is not difficult to understand the general principle on which this must be done. Let us first suppose a number of flat stones or of books to be piled one upon another, and a heavy weight to be pressing vertically on the highest; this pile will be perfectly secure, so long as no force acts upon it in any other direction; since the weight of its several parts, and the pressure acting on the highest, unite to force each of them directly downwards on the one below,—that is, in a line exactly perpendicular to the surfaces in contact, so that neither will have any tendency to slide upon that below it. But if the surface of one or more of the stones be inclined, the perpendicular force, together with the weight of the stones themselves, will give this stone a tendency to slide upon the one below it; and the pile will thus yield, if the steepness of that surface be sufficient to cause the pressure to overcome the friction, produced by the sliding of one upon the other. Or let the pressure upon the highest stone *not* be in a direction exactly downwards; it will then give the stones of the pile a tendency either to slip or to turn upon one another, according to the direction of the force; but this tendency will be partly neutralized by the weight of the stones themselves, which will tend to keep them in their places.

134. We have seen that, when the direction of the pressure produced by the earth's attraction is such that it falls within the base or surface on which the body is resting, the body will be stable; and the same is true of any other pressure. Thus, if we lay a box upon the table, and press it with the hand in such a direction, that the line of pressure still falls within the

on which it rests, this new pressure will not tend to upset it, but will only cause it to slide along the table, if the surfaces are smooth enough. But if the direction of the force be such that it does *not* pass through the base or surface of support, then the box will have a tendency to turn over, unless kept down by its own weight. In order to ascertain the combined effect of these two forces, we have only to find their *resultant*, according to the principles to be explained in the next chapter (§. 163); if this resultant falls within the base or surface of pressure, the box retains its position; but if not, it is overturned. It is further to be remembered that, the nearer the line of pressure falls towards the *centre* of the base or surface of pressure, the more secure will be the body from being upset.

135. The same principles apply to pressure in *any* direction. Thus we might place a pile of books, or of flat stones, in a slanting or even a horizontal position, and retain them there by pressure applied against their surfaces; provided this pressure be sufficient to overcome the effect of their weight. The most advantageous direction of such pressure would be that, in which the resultant of this and of the downward pressure (or weight of the pile,) should be perpendicular to the surfaces in contact.

136. This principle embodies the whole theory of the simple arch; and it is only in the application of it to practice that a difficulty exists. It may be shown that, in an arch shaped like that in Fig. 32, the *line of pressure* (which is the *resultant* of the different forces acting on the arch) will follow the curve S R R′ S′. Thus at the top, the pressure will be sideways and partly downwards; and will be nearly perpendicular to the surfaces of the key-stone and the voussoirs on each side of it, so that they have no tendency to become displaced. The line of pressure then bends downwards, but still falls upon some part of the surface of each voussoir, until it comes to R, where it touches

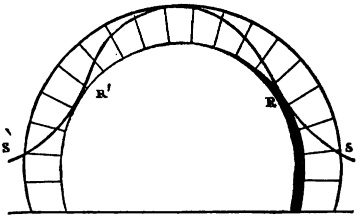


FIG. 32.

the intrados, and falls therefore on the edge of the surface of support. At this point, then, the voussoirs have no stability, and may be easily displaced by pressure applied there. From R, the line again bends outwards towards S; and at S it cuts the extrados, so as to fall completely without the surface of pressure. If such an arch were constructed of uncemented stones, therefore, it would fall by the turning outwards of the voussoirs at S and S′; the voussoirs between R and S would continue to rest upon them; but those above R and R′ would fall inwards. If this were prevented by additional pressure at S and S′, there would be no tendency to a falling-in at the crown; since with whatever force the two parts above R and R′ tend to fall inwards, the two are balanced against each other. By increasing the weight of the stones at the lower part of the arch, and by giving a proper direction to their surfaces, it is possible so to construct an arch, that it shall retain its form without cement between the voussoirs, and without any assistance from the friction of their surfaces; but such an arch, though the forces produced by its own pressure would be in equilibrium, would not be able to resist a force applied to it in any particular direction, such as that produced by a load passing over it. The shifting of the surfaces of the voussoirs would be resisted, however, by their friction; and this increases with the load that is laid upon them. It is further resisted in practice by the cement interposed between them; which, if it held them perfectly together, would render the whole as one mass.

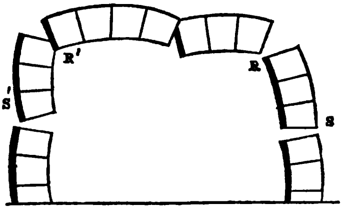


FIG. 33.

137. It is obvious that, the flatter the arch, the greater will be its outward pressure. This may be easily shown by a simple experiment. Let a thin lath of wood be bent into a curve, and placed upright like an arch, with its ends kept at a certain distance from each other by two heavy weights; it will then be found that, if the weights do not move, the lath will sustain

very heavy pressure on the top of its curve. If the curve be *high*, the principal part of this pressure goes *downwards* through the ends of the lath, to the surface on which they rest; and the pressure against the weights is not considerable. But if the arch be nearly flat, the greater part of the pressure is exerted against the weights at the side, which may be moved from their places by a comparatively small pressure on the crown of the arch. Hence we see the necessity of great firmness in the *abutments* against which an arch rests at its sides; and this is the case whether the arch be of stone, wood, or iron. Where a bridge is composed of several arches, the outward pressure of each of the middle arches is counterbalanced by the antagonist pressure of those on either side of it; so that the pressure upon the piers on which they rest is downwards only,—the lateral pressure or *thrust* being sustained by the abutments at the extremities. Hence the piers must be so built as to support a considerable weight; and in rivers in which there is a rapid current, or in which masses of floating ice are liable to be carried down by the stream, these piers must have great solidity, in order to maintain the stability of the bridge. In general they are built with their greatest length in the direction of the stream; and with the surfaces facing the current pointed like a wedge, in order to present as little resistance as possible. Great care should always be taken in the construction of a bridge or any other arch, to procure abutments which shall remain perfectly immovable; since a very slight yielding on their parts will greatly alter the form of the arch, and may destroy its stability. In general it is so managed, that the abutment shall be part of the solid bank of the stream; but it is occasionally necessary to substitute for this, either in part or entirely, masses of solid masonry.

138. In the building of a bridge, it is requisite to consider not merely the weight of the arch itself, and the load which may have to pass over it, but also the weight of the materials laid upon the arch for the purpose of rendering the roadway as little inclined as possible. To a certain extent, this weight will be advantageous, in preventing the flanks of the arch from turning outwards (as in Fig. 33); and the greatest thickness is at the

point where the pressure may be advantageously exerted. But if the flanks be overloaded, they will be pressed inwards, and the crown of the arch will be forced up. This occurrence has more than once taken place. It happened to a bridge formerly built over the Taff in Glamorganshire, the arch of which was purposely made high, in order to avoid its destruction by the masses of timber &c., brought down by the stream when swollen by floods, which had caused the fall of a previous bridge. The persevering architect (who was an ordinary working mason) then devised a most ingenious bridge, a view of which is here given. He made the arch high as before; but lightened the weight bearing on the flanks, by leaving large open spaces in the stone-work. The span of this curious bridge, which notwithstanding its flimsy appearance, is perfectly secure, is rather more than 140 feet, and its height is 35 feet.

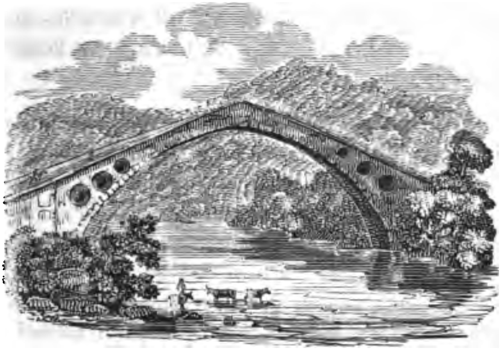


FIG. 34.

139. Arches may be constructed with stones of irregular form, or even with bricks; in these, however, the cement performs an essential part, since there is no provision for stability in the portions of the arch itself. The more completely the cement unites the whole into a solid mass, the more firm will be the structure. Many very large bridges and viaducts of brick have been erected in the several lines of railway recently constructed; and in many of these, the passage beneath the arch is not directly across its length, but is more or less inclined towards it, so as sometimes to form but a small angle with it. Such are termed *skew* arches.

CHAPTER VI

OF INERTIA AS A PROPERTY OF MATTER.—LAWS OF MOTION, COMPOSITION AND RESOLUTION OF FORCES, EFFECTS OF IMPACT.

140. THERE are few errors more common, than that of supposing that the movement of a body, once set in motion, ceases because its force is worn out or spent. The state of motion is as natural to a body as that of rest; and no change can be made in its state, whether the setting it in motion when at rest, or the bringing it to rest when in motion, without the application of a force. This is taught us by common experience. Thus if we put a carriage into motion by a push behind it, and a person standing in front checks its movement by pushing in the opposite direction,—the force the latter will be obliged to exert in order to check it, will be just the same as that which the former employed to put it in motion. Or suppose we cause a wheel to revolve quickly on its axle by the impulse of the hand, and presently apply the hand to check it, the hand will be struck with a force equal to that which it applied to the wheel. Or if a carriage be put in motion by horses, and they be made to stop it suddenly; as much exertion is required from them to do this, as to *back* it when at rest. A body in motion, then, has no more power of bringing itself to rest, than a body at rest has of setting itself in motion.

141. The idea that matter has a greater tendency to the state of rest than to that of motion, results from the fact, that all the motions of which we see the commencement, gradually become weaker and weaker, and at last cease altogether. Thus, when a pendulum is set swinging, the space through which it moves gradually becomes less and less, and at last it stops, if it be not

connected with any machinery to give it continual impulses. Or we set a top spinning; and this revolves gradually more and more slowly, and at last ceases. Or we roll a ball over a smooth road, and this too has but a limited movement. But in all these, as in other instances of bodies moving on the surface of our earth, there are causes which are continually acting against the movement, and are therefore constantly diminishing its force. These causes are *friction*, and the *resistance of the air*.

142. By friction is meant the loss of force which is produced by the rubbing together of two surfaces, of which one is moving over the other; it is influenced in its amount by the roughness or smoothness of the surfaces, the pressure that brings them together, the rapidity of movement, &c. Thus, if two pieces of rough board be rubbed together, the friction will be considerable, the projections of one being caught in the hollows of the other; on the other hand, if two pieces of ice be rubbed together, the amount of friction will be comparatively small. Again, if one of the surfaces of the rough boards were fixed, and the other were moved over it under a heavy load, the force necessary to make the one slide over the other would be very much increased. Or, lastly, if the motion of the two surfaces against each other be very rapid, the friction is greatly increased in amount; as is shown by the quantity of heat which is then produced, which may be even sufficient to set the wood on fire. The precise laws regulating the amount of friction, and the influence of different kinds of surface upon it, will be considered hereafter. (Chap. XII.) Now, as all bodies upon this globe have a tendency to press downwards towards its centre, it is evident that none can remain without a support of some kind; and that there must be friction between the bodies and their supports, whenever either are moved without the other. The only case that appears an exception to this, is the motion of bodies through water; but this, too, is accompanied with a considerable amount of friction. When a heavy body is moving through the air, it is continually being drawn downwards by the earth's attraction, and cannot, therefore, be said to be moving on a support.

143. The resistance of the air is another cause by which all

motion on the earth's surface is retarded. Of this we may easily become sensible by waving the hand rapidly through the air, with the palm or back of the hand opposed to the direction in which we strike; we then *feel* the resistance of the air, which is much diminished when we move the hand edgeways, so that a much smaller surface is opposed to it. We feel it still more strongly, when we hold an open umbrella against the wind; or when we draw one, with its concave side forwards, through the calm air of a room. This resistance, being a constantly-acting force, must continually retard the velocity of any body which is moving through the air, and must gradually check it. Its influence is well seen by causing two wheels, of the same dimensions and weight, and supported in the same manner,—but one having vanes opposed to the direction in which the wheel revolves, whilst those of the latter are in the same plane with it,—to be set in action by the same force. The wheel with the vanes opposed to the air will be soonest brought to a stand by its resistance; but if the two be placed in a vessel exhausted of its air, and be then set in action as before, the times during which they will continue to revolve will be equal. The greatest amount of the air's resistance is exerted, therefore, against bodies with the largest surface: and it does not operate at all against a perfectly circular body, such as a top, which is made to revolve upon one point without moving onwards. The resistance of the air is peculiarly seen in the slowness it produces in the fall of bodies which expose to it a large surface in proportion to their weight, —such as leaves, feathers, shreds of paper, &c. These we are consequently in the habit of calling *light* bodies; yet the earth's attraction, if it were not resisted by the air, would bring them down to its surface as fast as the heaviest masses (§. 253).

144. That the motion of a body, when not retarded by these or any other opposing causes, will continue for an indefinite period, there is the most satisfactory evidence, derived from those cases in which they are reduced to their smallest possible amount. Every reduction in the amount of friction, and of the air's resistance, is attended with a proportional increase in the continuance of the motion. Thus, when the body is made to

bear upon a single hard point, which has itself but a slow revolution, the friction is greatly diminished; and if it be quite circular, and keep spinning like a top upon the same point, the *resistance* of the air will not operate against it,—though there will be a certain degree of *friction* between the surface of the body and the air in contact with it, which would still cause the revolution to cease sooner in the air than in a vacuum. The heavier the body thus put in motion, the longer it will continue; since its force will be in direct proportion to its weight (its velocity remaining the same), whilst the retarding causes do not increase in the same proportion. Mr. Roberts of Manchester is said to have constructed a body, presenting as little resistance as possible to the air, and truly balanced upon a fine point; so that, when it is put in motion upon this point, it will not lose the force of its motion, but will continue to spin for 43 minutes. If this were made to revolve in a vacuum, its revolution would continue for several hours. A pendulum, suspended in such a manner as to have as little friction as possible, has been known to continue its vibrations for more than a day.

145. In order to have absolute proof, however, of the permanence of motion, when there is no retarding force applied to check it, we must look towards a class of bodies, which are not influenced in their movements either by friction or the resistance of air. These we shall find among the heavenly bodies: they are the planets and their satellites,—the comets,—and, as there is now good reason to believe, many of the (so-called) fixed stars. Their movements have continued for ages, without the slightest tendency to diminution;—they commenced, when they were first impelled by the hand of the Creator, to traverse the paths they still describe; and these they will continue to traverse, with the same undiminished force, so long as it shall be His will to permit them. All force is but the direct or indirect operation of the Creator's power; and it would be totally wrong to say that He does not continue to exert this, in sustaining the movements of the planets, as in providing for the well-being of the living inhabitants of their surface. Without His energy nothing could continue to exist; for all the properties of matter are the result of

His ordinations. When we say, therefore, that it is the property of any mass of matter to attract another,—or that it is the property of matter to continue in the state of rest or motion in which it may be, so long as no new force acts upon it,—we mean no more than that the Creator is continually acting in these methods, which, for wise and good purposes He has prescribed to Himself. As the sacred poet has beautifully sung:—

"His piercing eye at once surveys
Where thousand suns and systems blaze,
And where the sparrow falls;
While seraphs tune their harps on high,
His ear attends the softest cry,
When human misery calls."

146. The Divine energy is exerted as much in sustaining the commonest movements on the surface of the globe, as it is in upholding the planets in their majestic orbits; and when we say that these continue to revolve with the force impressed upon them at the creation of the system, nothing else is meant than that they have received no new impulse, but that their revolutions have continued in the same perfectly uniform and equable manner, because they are not affected by any forces, either retarding or accelerating. Such proof would not be satisfactory, if it could not be shown (as it will hereafter be, §. 173), that the movements of the planets are perfectly analogous to the movements of bodies on the surface of the earth, being produced by the combined effects of two causes, the tendency to move forwards in a straight line, and the attraction of the sun; and that we have a right, therefore, to extend that principle to one class of bodies, which can only show itself in full action in the other.

First Law of Motion.

147. We are now, therefore, prepared to understand and to admit the first of the three laws of motion, which was stated by Newton in the following terms:—"*Every body must persevere in its state of rest, or of uniform motion in a straight line, unless it be compelled to change that state by forces impressed upon it.*" That bodies have a tendency to remain in a state of rest, unless they

are acted on by some force external to themselves,[*]—or, in other words, that they have not the power of *spontaneously* putting themselves in motion,—is a fact with which every one is familiar. But it has now been shown, that bodies have in themselves no greater tendency or power to come to a state of rest whilst in motion, than to put themselves in motion when at rest; since that gradual diminution of their movement, which we commonly witness, is due to the influence of forces external to them. Hence we are led to understand, that it is one of the fundamental properties of matter, that it tends always to remain in the same state, whatever that state may be. This property is termed *inertia.* The meaning of the term, in the Latin language (from which it is taken), is strictly *inactivity;* and the term was applied, when it was imagined that the state of rest is that which is natural to the body, and that the state of motion is forced,—an idea which was not altogether dropped until Newton proved its falsity. The English word which most nearly expresses the meaning that philosophers now attach to the term inertia, is *passiveness;* by which we understand the tendency of matter to continue in its previous state, whatever that may be, and the power of being influenced by any force brought to bear upon it. As the term *inertia* is in constant use, however, it will be much better to employ it here; and it cannot be misunderstood, if due attention be given to a few examples of its application.

148. When a railway-train is first put in motion by its locomotive engine, its movement is very slow; its speed is gradually increased, however; and at last it is raised to the full amount that the engine is capable of producing. When it is necessary to stop the train, the action of the engine is checked whilst the train is still at a long distance from its stopping-place; and the movement of the train gradually becomes slower, until it is at last brought to rest. Now let us examine the nature of this simple and familiar operation. The loaded railway-train is a heavy mass of matter, which, by its *inertia,* would remain at rest for any length of time, unless some power were applied for the purpose of moving it. But the engine is attached, the steam

---

[*] Of course we are here speaking of inanimate bodies only.

put on, its power applied, and the train begins to move very slowly. The engine pulls with exactly the same amount of force at first that it does afterwards; and therefore the first slow movement of the train is a measure of the amount of that force. But the motion of the train gradually becomes faster; why is this? It is due to the spontaneous continuance of the motion first communicated to the train; and to the continued addition of new force exerted by the engine. Suppose that, after having put the train into very slow movement, the engine-power were shut off; the motion of the train at the same rate would continue for some time, in consequence of its inertia. During every instant, therefore, the train is carried on by its own tendency to keep moving, at the rate which it had acquired the instant before; and it is also constantly receiving a constant addition of new force from the engine. Its rate of motion, therefore, gradually increases; and the train continues to move faster and faster, until its full speed is attained.

149. Thus, then, we see that the *inertia* of the train is the force which has to be overcome by the action of the engine, in setting the train in motion; and that it is the same inertia which tends to keep the train at the rate of motion, which shall have been communicated to it at any particular period. This inertia, then, resists the action of any new force, when the train is in motion, just as much as when the train is at rest; so that the same engine-power will be required, to increase the velocity of the train from 15 to 20 miles per hour, as to put the train in motion at first, at the rate of 5 miles per hour.* If it were not for the inertia, or tendency to permanence of motion, there would be no increase in the speed of the train; for the engine could only drag it along at a very slow rate, if the power which it applied at one minute were quite lost at the next.

150. We might be led to imagine from this reasoning, that the speed of a train ought to be continually increasing without

---

* This is not strictly correct in practice; but the variation is caused by friction and the resistance of the air: since there is more difference between the friction and resistance which oppose the change from a state of rest to a speed of five miles per hour, than there is between the amounts that would operate at a speed of fifteen and twenty miles. (See §. 386.)

limit; since the previous force is constantly acting, and a new force being continually applied. But this is not the case; for there is a certain amount of speed which cannot be increased, unless the engine-power be augmented. The reason is this. By no means the whole of the engine-power is expended in overcoming the inertia of the train; for a large part of it goes to counterbalance the opposing effects of friction, and the resistance of the air. Now these opposing forces continue to increase with the velocity acquired; and at last they become so great, as to equal the power of the engine; so that, when a certain speed has been attained, the steam-power is entirely expended in keeping up that speed by overcoming these obstacles, and there is consequently no force left to produce an increase in it. But suppose an additional power to be applied;—there would then be a further increase to the speed; but friction and the resistance of the air would also increase in a very large proportion; so that these will soon counterbalance the engine-power, and any further increase, therefore, will be prevented.

151. The operation of these causes in preventing the increase of speed beyond a certain point, is well seen in some experiments which were made a few years since on the Liverpool and Manchester Railway, for the purpose of determining their effects. There is an incline on that railway, in which the road rises 1 foot for every 89 feet of its length. When a loaded carriage is let to run down this incline by its own force, its motion is at first slow, but it continues to increase at a rapid rate, under the continued influence of the earth's attraction, just as it would under the application of engine-power. If this increase continued uniformly, the carriage would have an immense velocity by the time it reached the bottom of the incline, (§. 260); but it is found by experiment that it does not continue to increase beyond a certain point,—about 35 miles per hour; since at that point the friction and resistance of the air are so great, as to counterbalance the continued influence of gravity, so that the carriage moves on only at the rate it had previously acquired.

152. The *inertia* of the train is further seen, to great advantage, when the steam is shut off, for the purpose of bringing it t

a stand. If a heavily loaded train, moving at the rate of 40 miles an hour, were thus left to itself, it would probably not come to rest until it had run two or three miles along the railway; the gradual diminution of its motion being due to the retarding causes just mentioned, which are now unbalanced by any forward impulse. But if this were the only mode of stopping the train, there would be great loss of time; since it would be necessary to shut off the steam two or three miles from the stopping-place, and to let the velocity of the train be gradually diminished during the whole of that distance. This difficulty is easily got over, however, by the application of increased friction to the wheels of the carriages, which causes their motion to be much more rapidly retarded; so that the full velocity may be kept up, and the steam-power continually applied, until the train has arrived at a distance of perhaps only half a mile from the station. This increased friction is applied by means of a screw turned by a handle; which, by means of a system of levers, brings blocks of wood to bear against the wheels of each carriage. The power thus gained gives a very complete control over the movement of the train; so that, by a more or less forcible application of the friction-blocks, the train may be brought to a stand more or less rapidly, and may be made to stop at any desired point.

153. The preceding example has been fully entered into; because it affords a very good illustration of the principle of inertia. There are many others, equally familiar, which need now be only slightly noticed. The flying of the dust out of a carpet on one side, when it is struck on the other, is a very good illustration of the tendency to permanence in motion once communicated; the blow gives motion to the carpet and to the dust which it contains; but whilst the former can yield but little, the latter can move freely, and is thus driven out of the carpet. When a man rides in a carriage or on horseback, he feels, at first suddenly starting, a tendency to fall backwards; this is produced by his *inertia* (which *then* tends to keep him at rest), at the moment that the forward motion is being communicated to him. But if, when in rapid motion, the carriage or the horse is suddenly checked, the man feels a tendency to be thrown forwards,

which he can scarcely resist if he be not prepared for it. A ludicrous instance of this occurred some years ago, shortly after the general peace. A troop of yeomanry which was raised about that time, was supplied with horses from one of the cavalry regiments then disbanded; and these horses were well trained to obey the word of command. On the first day of exercise, the whole line was advancing at a brisk trot, when the word "halt" was given, the horses immediately obeyed it, and stood still; whilst the riders, who had been accustomed to use some little exertion in pulling in their steeds when they desired them to stand still, were thrown, almost to a man, over their horses' heads,—fortunately without any serious injury, the ground being soft. Here the *inertia* acted by its tendency to keep their bodies in that state of motion, in which they were at the moment of the horses' halting.

154. If a man stand upright in a boat, as it approaches the shore, he will be in great danger of falling forwards, if the boat should suddenly strike the ground; for, its motion being checked, his own inertia will tend to carry forwards his body, especially the upper part of it which is most distant from the point of support. The best way of avoiding such an accident, is to stand facing the shore, with one foot planted a good deal in front of the other, so as to resist the forward tendency of the body at the moment of the boat's grounding. Again, when a man jumps from a carriage in rapid motion, he is likely to receive severe injury; since the motion he possessed, in the act of quitting the carriage, will tend to throw him prostrate as soon as he reaches the ground,—his feet being there arrested, whilst the tendency to movement still continues to act on the upper part of his body. His only way of avoiding this, is to jump with his face in the direction of the movement, and to commence running forwards immediately that he touches the ground. The best way of doing this, is to descend from the back of the carriage, rather than from its side; since the force of the leap backwards will partly counterbalance the forward movement. It is from the same action of *inertia* in producing a tendency to continued movement, that a race-horse, whatever efforts he make to check himself, cannot

come to a stand-still until he has long past the winning-post ;—or, again, that a man can leap further, when he has been able to take a previous run sufficiently long to get up his full speed.

155. The mode commonly adopted by workmen, of fixing tools into handles, or handles into tools, is founded on the same principle ; although *they* know nothing but that it is successful in practice. Thus, in fixing a handle into the hole in the head of the hammer, the latter is put loosely upon its top, and the lower end of the handle is then struck smartly upon the work-bench ; this has the effect of suddenly arresting the handle, whilst both it and the hammer-head are in rapid movement ; and the latter is thrown upon the former, and fixed firmly upon it, by the action of its inertia. The same happens, if a chisel or file is to be fixed into a handle ; for, if the lower end of the handle be struck in the same manner, the chisel will tend to bury *its* lower end in its top, by the continuance of its own movement. On the other hand, if we desire to loosen the wedge that holds in the iron of the common plane, we strike the back of the plane rather smartly with the hammer ; the body of the plane is thus thrown suddenly forwards, but the wedge has a tendency, by its own inertia, to be left behind ; and as its direction is partly backwards, it springs from its place.

156. These illustrations are quite sufficient to bring home to the mind the general principle, that motion once communicated to a body has a tendency to continue ; and that it can only be increased or diminished, by a force applied to the body in the direction of its movement or opposed to it. Hence we see the truth of that part of the law, which states that bodies will persevere in a state of *uniform* motion, unless affected by some external force. By *uniform* motion is meant a movement continued always at the same rate,—that is, the same amount of space passed over in the same time. If a body in a state of uniform motion, have a new force applied to it *for a moment*, it will have its motion increased by the same amount which the force would have produced had the body been at rest ; but its motion will then continue at a uniform rate, though faster than before. Every successive impulse it may receive will act thus

upon it. We may conceive, for example, a heavy, smooth iron ball to be rolling along a surface of ice (in which case its friction will be very small); and to pass, in its course, a number of persons provided with bats, each of whom gives it a stroke equal to that by which it was at first impelled. The rate of its motion, therefore, will be progressively increased to twice, three times, four times, &c. the rate with which it started, in proportion to the number of additional impulses it has received; but its rate of movement between each impulse will be uniform, and its increase will be sudden. An increasing motion of this kind is said to be *accelerated*. Now when the new force is *continually* operating, instead of being applied at intervals, it will be continually increasing the velocity with which the body moves; and this increase will be equal in equal times, since the force applied is equal. Such a regular increase would take place in the application of steam-power to propel a railway-train, as already explained (§. 148), or in the motion of a carriage down an inclined plane (§. 151); were it not for the obstacles occasioned by friction and the resistance of the air. It is best seen in the descent of falling bodies, in which there is no friction but that of the air (Chap. VIII). Motion, whose rate is thus being constantly and regularly increased, is said to be *uniformly accelerated*.

157. On the other hand, an opposing force will produce results exactly analogous, in *retarding* the velocity of a body which is being carried on by its inertia in a uniform motion. For if a body in rapid movement meet with an obstacle which is not powerful enough to check its motion altogether, and which does not alter its course, it will continue with a motion diminished in a degree proportional to the force thus acting against it. Thus suppose, as in the former case, the ball rolling on the ice with a certain velocity, produced by the combined impulses of a certain number of bats; and let it then pass by another set of bats, of which every one gives it the same amount of impulse in a direction contrary to that of its movement:—then (leaving the loss by friction and resistance of the air out of consideration) just so many of these retarding impulses would

be required, to check its motion and bring it altogether to a stand, as there were propelling impulses to produce that motion. This may perhaps be made plainer by the following arrangement of figures—

Accelerating *Retarding.*

A 1—2—3—4—5—6——6′—5′—4′—3′—2′—1′B.

Suppose the ball to be impelled at A with a force that carries it onward towards B, with a velocity of 1 yard per second; it continues to move with that uniform velocity, until it receives another equal impulse at 2, which causes it to move onwards with a uniform speed of 2 yards per second; at 3, 4, 5, and 6 it receives successive impulses, each equal to the first; and its velocity is thus increased to 6 yards per second, with which it moves at an uniform rate from 6 to 6′. At 6′, however, it receives an impulse to the same amount, but in a direction that would carry it towards A; this destroys the effect of its forward impulse at 6, and reduces its velocity to 5 yards per second. At 5′ it receives another backward impulse, which reduces its velocity to 4 yards; and the same takes place at 4′, 3′, and 2′; so that after passing 2′, it has a velocity of only 1 yard per second. This is destroyed by the last backward impulse it receives at 1′; which neutralizes the effect of the forward impulse it had received at 1, and brings the body to rest at B. Now if the retarding force be acting constantly, instead of at intervals, it will produce a *uniformly retarded* motion: this is the kind of movement, which the retarding influences of friction and the resistance of the air would produce, in a railway-train left to itself by shutting off the steam when it is in rapid movement, or in a wheel rapidly whirled round on its axle; and it is the same which happens, under the retarding influence of the earth's attraction, when a stone is flung directly upwards into the air.

158. The continued motion of a body left to itself after being propelled, will not only be uniform in its rate (provided that it be not acted on by any new accelerating or retarding forces), but it will go on *in the same straight line.* This seems to require no

explanation, since the fact is familiar to every one. In the rolling of a ball along the ground, the sliding of a boy upon the ice, the trundling of a hoop, and many other such common actions, we see examples of this principle. If the tendency to continued movement *in a straight line*, indeed, were not a part of this simple law of motion, all that has been said in regard to accelerated motion would be worthless and untrue; since, if the body should have a tendency to go off in any other direction, the new impulses would not act upon it in the same line with the old, and great irregularity would be the result. The effects of a new force applied in a different direction to that in which a body is moving, —or of two forces acting on a body at the same time, in different directions,—will come to be considered under the next head; and it will be there seen, that all movements which are not in a straight line (like those of the planets in their orbits) are owing to the combined action of two or more forces.

159. The continued uniform motion of a body in a straight line is, in fact, merely the result of the tendency of its motion to permanence, not only in degree but also in direction. No one can doubt this tendency, who has ever noticed a loaded carriage ascending the first part of a hill, with scarcely any effort on the part of the horses, solely by the force it had acquired during its preceding descent down another hill; or who has noticed the swinging of the pendulum as far in the upward direction, as it has just descended; or who has seen, in the "Russian Mountains," as they are termed, a carriage passing up and down over a long series of double inclined planes, by the force it had acquired in descending the first; or who has witnessed that still more remarkable manifestation of acquired force which is shown in the action of the "Centrifugal Railway" (§. 222). In the *coursing* of a hare by a greyhound, the movements of the hare seem to be instinctively directed by the same principle; for the *doubling* of the hare—that is, her sudden change of direction to the one almost opposite to that at which she had been running —enables her to gain upon the greyhound; since his comparatively heavy body, in rapid motion, is carried by its inertia much beyond the spot at which the hare had doubled, before he

can change his direction in pursuit of the hare, who has gained ground in the mean time. There would be no difficulty in multiplying illustrations of this first law of motion; since there is scarcely an action that takes place around us, in which it does not operate.

Second Law of Motion.—Composition of Forces.

160. The second of the laws of motion expresses certain general facts relative to the action of new forces upon bodies already in motion, or in the act of being set in motion. "*Every change of motion must be proportional to the impressed force, and its direction will depend upon that of the straight line in which the force is impressed.*" Thus, if a ball be rolling along the ground with a force that would carry it to a point A, and it be struck on one side with a blow which, had it been at rest, would have sent it to B, it will not go either to A or B, but to a point between them. This principle is very readily understood; but the precise rule which governs the motion of a body, thus acted on by two or more forces at the same time, requires some explanation.

161. We will first suppose two forces to be pulling the same body in directions exactly contrary (as if we were to fasten two horses of equal power, one to the front, and the other to the back of a carriage); it is evident that the body will not be moved in either direction. But if one force were greater than the other, it would be pulled in the direction of that one, with an amount of force equal to the difference between the two. Thus if one of the forces, A, be pulling with a power of 16 lbs., and the other, B, be pulling against it with a power of 15 lbs., the body will be moved in the direction of A, with a force of 1 pound. On the other hand, if they were both pulling in the same direction, the body would be moved towards them with a force of 31 lbs. Now it is obvious that, if they be made to pull neither exactly against each other, nor in the same direction, they will neutralize each other in a greater or less degree, and the body will not be moved in the direction of either. The law by which the direction and amount of the body's motion is determined under such

circumstances, is termed that of the *composition of forces;* because it enables us to ascertain the combined action of any two forces; acting in any direction. It is simply this.

162. If a body at A be acted on at the same moment, by one force which would have driven it to B, and by another which would have carried it to C, it moves in the direction AD, the diagonal of a parallelogram, of which A B and A C form two sides; and its amount is determined by the length of the diagonal, compared with that of either of the sides. Thus if the force acting in the direction A B would have carried the ball over a length of 5 parts, and the force acting in the direction A C, would have carried it over a length of 3 parts, the diagonal AD contains 6 such parts, and shows that the body would have moved with a force sufficient to carry it to that distance. Hence, if we desire to know the direction taken by a body, acted on at the same time by two forces of different amounts and in different directions, we draw the two lines, A B and A C, expressing the direction and amount of them; we then draw C D parallel to AB, and BD parallel to AD, so as to complete the parallelogram; and by drawing the diagonal B D, we obtain the direction and amount of the force, which results from the union of the two. This force is called the *resultant.* It is not difficult to understand the reason of this. The change of place which the body will undergo becomes ultimately the same, whether the two forces act upon it at the same moment, or one of them does not act until after the other has finished. Thus, if the force A B had carried the body to B, and a force equivalent to A C were *then* to act upon it, it would be carried by this to D; since B D is equal to A C, and in the same direction with it. If, therefore, the two forces act at the same time, the body will be carried by them to D, but along the direct line A D.

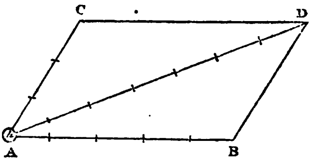


FIG. 35.

163. Not only may we thus express the combined action of *two* forces by a single line; but that of any number of forces may be determined in a similar manner. For suppose a body at O to

be pulled by five different forces in the directions O A, O B, O C, O D, and O E, we might determine the combined result of all, by first finding, according to the method just described, the *resultant* of any two, say O A and O B, which will be a line between them. This resultant may next be combined with a third force, O C; and *their* resultant with O D; so that the resultant of these last, being combined with O E, would give a line that would represent the whole of the acting forces, and would express their combined direction and amount. But this may be ascertained in a shorter mode, by following out the idea that the result will be the same, if the forces act one after the other and not at one moment. For if we draw a line from A, parallel and equal to O B, it will bring us to the point *b*, at which the body would arrive by the combined action of O A and O B. From *b* we

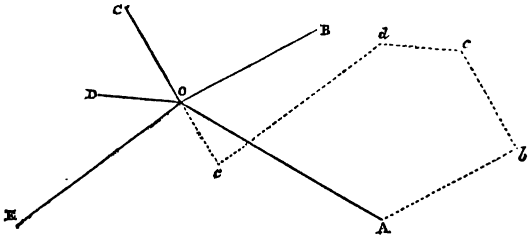


FIG. 36.

draw a similar line in the direction of O C and equal to it; this line brings us to *c*, the point at which the body would arrive by the additional action of O C; and by drawing the similar lines *c d* and *d e*, in the direction of O D and O E respectively, and equal to them, we shall find the point *e*, at which the body will arrive by the combined action of all the five forces. By joining O *e*, we shall obtain the direction in which the body will really move, under the combined influence of all of them acting together; and the amount of this general resulting force is determined, as before, by comparing the length of this line, with the lengths of the lines that represent the several forces.

164. A number of familiar examples might be mentioned, to

show how continually this principle is in operation around us. If a boat be rowed across a river where there is no current, it will reach the point opposite to that from which it started, if rowed in a direct line towards it. But if there be a current, it will be necessary, in order to prevent being carried to another point, to direct the head of the boat in some degree towards the current. For, suppose that the boat requires a quarter of an hour to cross a river, and that a current is setting down the stream at the rate of four miles an hour; the boat, if rowed in the direction of the opposite point, would be carried a mile down the stream, during the time required to cross it. Hence it will be necessary to direct it towards a point higher by a mile than the opposite one; and the force expended by the rower in urging it forwards in this direction, combined with the force of the current, will cause the boat to move across the river in the direction required. A similar effect will be produced by the combined action of wind and tide acting upon a vessel in different directions. Thus, if the wind be driving it forwards in the line of the keel, and the tide be drifting it sideways, the real movement will be in a diagonal to a parallelogram, of which the sides represent the direction and force of these two propelling powers.

165. The fall of a body from the top of the mast of a vessel that is moving rapidly through the water, is another instance of the composition of motion. It might have been expected that, as the vessel sails forwards a certain space during the descent of the stone, this would fall so much behind the foot of the mast. But such is not the case; for, if the vessel be in regular motion, the stone will fall in exactly the same place as if the vessel were not moving at all. The reason is this. The stone, at the moment at which it is let go from the hand, partakes of the onward motion of the vessel; and it does not really fall, therefore, in a perpendicular line, but exactly in that curve which it would describe, if thrown from the top of a house with a force which would carry it to the distance from its bottom, that the vessel would traverse in the same time. Thus, suppose the height of the mast to be 144 feet,—the stone would fall through this space in 3 seconds (§. 242). The vessel moves onwards during this time at

the rate of 8 miles an hour, which is at about 35 feet in three seconds. The stone having, when it is let fall, an onward motion of 8 miles an hour, will fall at a point 30 feet distant from the perpendicular through which it would otherwise have descended; but if the vessel have been moving on regularly during that time, this will be exactly at the foot of the mast.

166. In the same manner are produced some of those feats of horsemanship, which, when thus explained, are found to be less wonderful than they seem to be at first sight. Thus a man, standing on the saddle of a horse at full gallop, jumps from it, and alights again at some distance, the horse having passed over a space of many yards in the time between his leaving the saddle and returning to it; but he does not really jump forwards; for, as he partakes of the motion of the horse at the time of leaving it, this carries him on at the rate necessary to bring him down upon the saddle again, after having jumped upwards as if he were leaping from the floor. In this manner he may be carried through a hoop, without any other than an upward jump. But if he were to jump from the saddle of a horse at rest, and the horse were to be put in motion at that instant, he would be left behind by just the amount that the horse had moved in the interval. Or let it be supposed that the horse had been in rapid movement at the time of his upward leap, and had then been suddenly checked or retarded, he would be thrown forwards, as in the first instance, and would descend again just where the saddle would have been, if the horse's rate of motion had continued.

167. There is a very interesting example of the composition of motion, from which direct proof may be drawn that the Earth really turns round upon its own axis. A stone let fall from the top of a high tower, does not fall exactly at its foot, but at a certain distance to the eastward. The reason is simply this. The top of the tower and its base are not moving round the earth's centre at the same rate; for the top moves through a larger circle than the bottom, and will, therefore, pass over a longer space in the same time. This will be seen by reference to Fig. 12 (§. 93); for, if A *a* be the tower, and it be carried by the earth's revolution into the position B *b*, the top will pass over

a larger space than the bottom. The stone, when let fall from the top, partakes of *its* movement; and as, during the time of its descent, the bottom of the tower has not passed on quite so far as it has itself done, it will fall a little in front of this,—that is, in the direction of the earth's movement, or eastwards.

168. The most constantly-acting example of the composition of force, is that in which the motion of a body in a curve is produced by the combined action of two forces. It has been seen that, by the first law of motion, the action of a single force can never cause a body to move in any thing else than a straight line. And when two or more forces, each of such a nature as to produce a uniform motion, act together upon a body, an intermediate straight path is the result. But if one of these forces be of such a kind as to produce a uniform motion, and the other a uniformly accelerated motion (like that of a falling body, Chap. VIII.), a curved line will be the result. Thus, suppose a ball fired by a cannon from the top of a high tower, exactly in the horizontal direction;—from the moment it has left the mouth of the gun, the force of gravity begins to act upon it, and draws it towards the ground. This force produces exactly the same effect upon it, as if it were falling perpendicularly from the tower, so that it will reach the ground in the same time; but it will have moved to a greater or less distance from the tower, according to the force with which it was projected from the gun. In its descent it will describe a peculiar curve, termed the *parabola*.

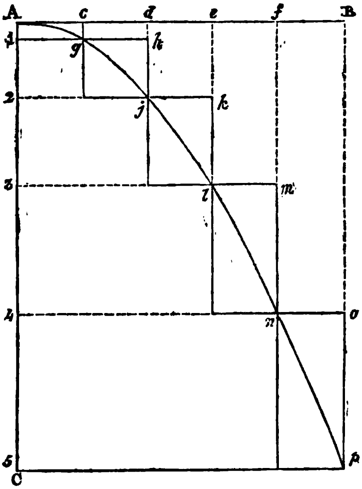


FIG. 37.

169. This will be made evident by the preceding diagram. Let the line A B express the distance to which the body will have moved in 5 seconds, if influenced only by the force of the gun, at a uniform velocity indicated by the equal divisions *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*. And let A C represent the line through which the body would have fallen in 5 seconds, if influenced only by the attraction of the earth; this movement is not uniform, being at the rate of 16 feet the first second, 48 the second, 80 the third, 112 the fourth, and 144 the fifth (§. 241). Now in order to determine the course of the body, when acted on by both forces, we draw a line from *c*, parallel and equal to A 1; then, according to the law already stated, the point *g* will be that reached by the body in the first second, under the combined influence of the forces A *c*, and A 1. In order to determine its course in the next second, we draw a line, *g h*, in the same direction with *c d*, and equal to it; this line, therefore, represents the action of the force *c d* upon the body when its position has been changed from *c* to *g*. In like manner, a line, *h j*, parallel and equal to 1 2, will represent *its* action on the body; and the point *i* will be that which it will have reached at the end of the 2nd second. In the same manner, by making *j k* and *k l* parallel and equal to *d e* and 2 3 respectively, we shall find *l* the position of the body at the end of the 3rd second; and continuing the same process, we shall get *n* the position of the body at the end of the 4th second, and *p* its place at the end of the 5th second.

170. Thus we see that by the combined action of these two forces, the body will pass from A to *p* in 5 seconds; and the same point would have been attained, if both the forces had been uniform. In that case, however, the body would have moved in a straight line; in the present case it does not, but passes through the points *g*, *i*, *l*, and *n*. For exactly the same reason, it does not move in a straight line from A to *g*, or from *g* to *i*; because the force of gravity is producing a continually-accelerated motion downwards, during any single second, as during the whole five. The line which is actually traversed is the curve which has been drawn through the points A, *g*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *p*;

and this curve, known in geometry by the name of the parabola, is that through which a falling body will always move, when it has received a horizontal impulse at the same time. The same curve is described by a ball fired from a gun directed partly upwards; for in this case, according to the law of retarded motion (§. 250), the upward direction will be gradually, and at last completely, neutralized by the action of the earth; and it will then begin to descend, its onward motion being continued during the whole time.

171. Another most important case of movement in a curved line, results from the combined action of two forces, one of which constantly draws the body towards a given centre, round which it is thus made to revolve. Thus let a body have received an impulse which would carry it in the direction A B; and at the same time be subject to an attraction which would constantly draw it towards the centre C. If this attraction be such as would cause the body to fall through the space A *f* in the same time that it would have moved through A *e*, it will in reality reach the point *g*. But at that time the direction of its movement is so changed, that, if left to itself, it would pass on in the line *g h*; the direction of the attraction is also changed, so that if the body were influenced by *it* alone, it would fall in the line *g i*. But the two forces being balanced against each other as before, its real movement will be to *k*; and in this manner it will describe a circle round the point C

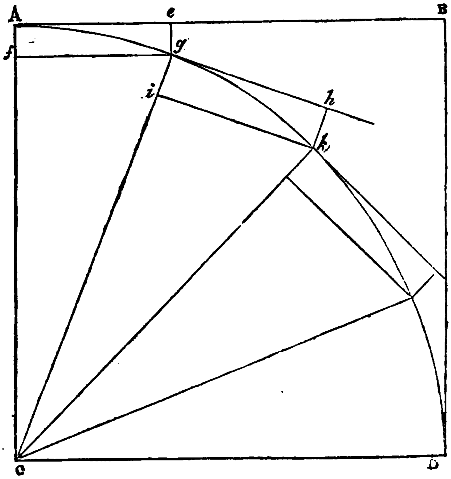


FIG. 38.

172. But in order that a *circle* may be the curve in which the body will move, there must be a fixed proportion between the force by which it was first projected, and the force of attraction; and if this proportion do not exist, or any cause alter it after it has once existed, a different curve will be the result. For suppose the attraction towards the centre to be greater in proportion to the projectile force than it was in the former case, then the body, instead of moving through a space equal to A *f*, whilst it is traversing A *e*, would fall through A *l*; and, consequently, instead of moving through the curve A *g*, which is part of a circle, it will traverse A *m*, which is part of an ellipse or oval. By the time it has got to *m*, it will have approached nearer to the centre of attraction; and the force with which it is drawn towards that centre, instead of continuing the same, as in the former case, is increased, according to the law already stated (§. 90). This increased attraction will cause it, in its next period, to perform such a curved movement that it will approach the centre still more; and the same result will continue, until it reaches the point D, on the opposite side of the centre of attraction to that from which it started, by passing through a curve which will form half of an ellipse or oval. But when it reaches that point, its motion towards the centre will cease, and it will begin to recede from it again; and this results from the following cause. Whilst the body has been moving from A to D, its velocity has been continually increasing, in consequence of its having been influenced by a constantly increasing attractive force, just as if it were falling directly towards the centre; hence

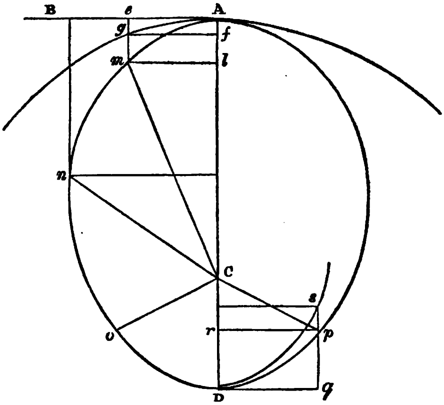


Fig. 39.

it will pass through, in equal times, the portions of the curve A *m*, *m n*, and *n o*. If its distance from the centre have diminished to one-half A C, the velocity will be doubled; so that the body would only occupy half the time to go through the space D *p* that it formerly would have required to traverse A *m*. This increased velocity will tend to balance the increased attraction; so that instead of still further approaching C, or moving in a circle to *s*, the body will continue to move in an elliptical curve, and will recede to *p*, by the combined operation of the projectile force that would have carried it to *q*, and the force of attraction which would have drawn it to *r*. By the continuance of the same mutual action, the body will be carried through the remainder of the ellipse, and will arrive again at A, ready to go through the same rotation.

173. The *ellipse* is the curve which the planets traverse in their rotation round the sun. The orbits (or paths through which they move) of none of them are quite circular; and they depart more or less from that form, in proportion as there was a want of the original balance between the two forces. In some instances, the length of the oval is very much greater than its breadth; and the orbit is then said to be very eccentric. This is the case especially with the comets. In these instances, the movement of the body in the portion of the ellipse nearest the sun is accomplished with enormous rapidity; whilst in the most distant part of the orbit, it is proportionally slow. When a body moves round another in an ellipse, the place of the latter is not in the centre, but in one of the two points termed by mathematicians the *foci* of the ellipse; the situation of which is such, that if a line be drawn from each of them to any point of the curve, the sum of these two lines shall be constantly equal. (The point C, in Fig. 39, is the situation of one of these foci.) In proportion as the eccentricity of an ellipse diminishes, the foci approach each other; and at last they meet, so that the figure becomes a circle. The application of these statements to the movements of the heavenly bodies will be explained in a subsequent part of the volume.

174. *Resolution of Forces.*—It has been shown that we may

represent the combined action of any two uniformly-acting forces, by a straight line drawn diagonally in an intermediate direction (§. 162). But we may also represent a known force equivalent to A D (Fig. 35) as resulting from the combined action of two supposed forces, acting in the directions A C and A B, and equal to them in amount. This it is often necessary to do, in order to ascertain the really acting portion of a force, of which a part is resisted; and the process, being the reverse of that which has been explained as the *composition* of forces, is termed their *resolution.* A good illustration of it is derived from the action of a side wind upon a vessel in propelling it forwards. In order to take advantage of such a wind, the sails are set in such a way that their hinder surface shall be obliquely directed towards it.

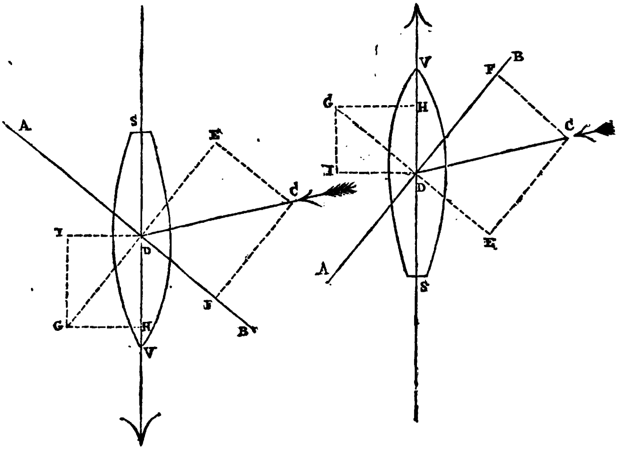


FIG. 40.

Let V S be the line of the vessel's length, C D the direction of the wind, and A B the direction in which the sail is set. Now the line C D, which represents in amount and direction the force of the wind, may be considered as the diagonal of a parallelogram, of which one side is formed by the surface of the sail, and another by the line E D perpendicular to the sail; and the force of the wind may thus be resolved into the two forces E D and D F.

The latter has obviously no influence on the sail, so that the former represents the real action of the wind upon it. If the vessel were so formed as to move through the water with equal readiness in any direction, it would thus be propelled by the wind in the direction D G; but this is not the case, since the vessel will move much more readily in the line D H than in the line D I. In order to ascertain the real action of the force D G, therefore, we must construct a parallelogram of which this shall be the diagonal, and D H and D I the two sides; D H will then represent the force with which the wind propels the vessel forwards; and D I the amount to which it would be drifted sideways, if not resisted by the water. This drift is termed *leeway*; and the amount of it will depend greatly upon the build and rigging of the vessel. By a comparison of the adjoining figures, the mode in which the same wind will propel two vessels in opposite directions, with the same or different amounts of force, will be readily understood.

Third Law of Motion.

175. The laws of motion which have been illustrated in the preceding cases, apply to every single mass of matter; and if one alone existed in the universe, they would still hold good. But the third law relates to the action of different bodies upon each other; and for its operation, therefore, two bodies at least are necessary. It is expressed in the following terms:—*Action must always be equal and contrary to reaction; or the actions of two bodies upon each other must be equal, and directed against contrary sides.*

176. The simplest case of the action of one body upon another, is where a body in motion, which we may call A, strikes upon another equal body at rest, which may be termed B; if there is nothing to resist B's movement, it will be put in motion by the force impressed upon it by A, and the two bodies will move onwards together. But their motion will be only half as rapid as that of A was previously; for its force has now to be distributed over twice the quantity of matter, and will therefore

only move it with half the velocity. The force with which A and B respectively move, is the same, since they have the same weight and the same velocity; and thus it is evident that B has received from A an amount of force equal to that which A has lost. Hence B's *reaction* on A is equal to A's *action* on B. In all such cases, the rate of motion after the *impact* (or *blow* of one body upon the other) is the same for both bodies, whatever be their relative size; and hence the moving body must be retarded by the loss of the amount of force, which has been expended in putting in motion the body that was previously at rest. Thus supposing that A were only half as heavy as B, and its rate of motion, previously to the impact, were 12 feet per second, it is obvious that the force with which A was previously moving, will have to be distributed over the combined masses of A and B, an amount equal to 3 times its own; and the velocity of the two, after impact, will, therefore, be only one-third of A's previous velocity, or 4 feet per second. Or supposing that A be equal to twice B, the conjoined weight of the two will be to A's original weight as 3 to 2; and their united velocity after impact will be to A's previous velocity as 2 to 3, or 8 feet per second. In any case, then, the re-action of B in retarding A's motion is precisely equal to the action of A in communicating motion to B.

177. The amount of force with which a body in motion will strike against a *fixed* obstacle, or against another body in motion, depends upon two conditions,—its weight, and its velocity or rate of movement. This must be evident to every one. If two bodies of the same weight are moving with different velocities, *that* one will strike the hardest which is moving the fastest; or if two bodies of different sizes be moving with the same velocity, the larger will strike the hardest. Thus we see that the force depends upon both the weight and the velocity; so that a small body, moving very fast, may strike with more force than a very large body, moving at a comparatively slow rate; or a very large body, though moving slowly, may have more force than a much smaller one having many times the speed. The force of a body in motion, thus compounded of its weight and velocity, is termed its *momentum;* and it is estimated by multi-

plying these two quantities together. In this manner, we may always compare, without difficulty, the momenta of bodies having very different weights and rates of motion; and may ascertain which will be most effectual for a given purpose.

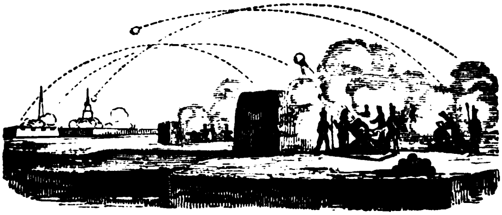


FIG. 41.

Thus if the velocity of a cannon-ball, weighing 20 lbs., be 1200 feet per second, its momentum will be represented by the number 24,000. Now suppose a battering-ram, such as that employed by the ancients, to weigh 2000 lbs., and to have a motion of 8 feet per second; its momentum will be only 16,000; and it is therefore a much less effectual instrument than the cannon-ball for demolishing a wall. But, on the other hand, let a large ship, weighing 2000 tons, be moving though the water at a rate of 1½ foot per second (about 1 mile per hour); and it runs foul of a small vessel moving in the opposite direction at the rate of 10 feet per second, but only weighing 200 tons; the momentum of the large vessel will be very much the greater of the two, since 2000 × 1½ = 3000, and 200 × 10 = 2000. It is from the amount of motion distributed through its vast bulk, that a large ship, whose advance is so slow as to be scarcely perceptible, crushes, in an instant, a strong boat

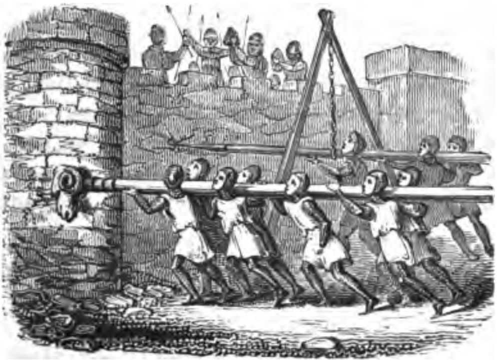


FIG. 42.

which may happen to intervene between itself and a pier which it is nearing; and it is from the action of a similar amount of force, which shows itself in giving a much more rapid movement to a smaller body, that the cannon-ball derives its destructive power.

178. The same amount of force, expended in putting in motion a heavy and a light body, will always produce the same amount of momentum; and thus the velocity communicated will be in the contrary proportion to its size. Thus a force which will move a weight of 20 lbs. through 100 feet per second, will move 100 lbs. through only 20 feet per second; for it will have the same effect, in the latter case, as if it was exerted on five bodies weighing 20 lbs. each; and it is easy to understand that a given amount of force will have only one-fifth of the effect upon each of five balls, that it would have on one. It is through this cause, that a man having a heavy anvil laid upon his chest, can allow it to be struck with a sledge-hammer; the same blow from which, if struck directly upon his chest, or upon a thin plate of metal lying upon it, would be fatal. For the sledge-hammer is a small body which derives its force from its velocity; and when it strikes upon the anvil, it cannot communicate to it the same amount of velocity, but an amount proportionally less as the weight of the anvil is greater than its own.

179. It is on account of the momentum which the particles of bodies acquire by rapid motion, that even the hardest substances may be cut or perforated by substances much softer than themselves; or large solid masses by minute separate particles, if they are made to move fast enough. Thus a piece of hard steel, such as a file, may be cut with great ease by the edge of a circular plate of soft iron, made to revolve in a lathe with great rapidity; and the lapidary cuts the hardest stones (except the diamond) by means of emery powder, the particles of which are carried round by a plate of soft iron, or lead, made to turn in a similar manner. It is on the same principle, that a deal-board may be perforated by a tallow-candle fired from a musket. This curious effect partly depends upon the principle, that, in all cases in which one body acts upon another, a certain *time* is required

for the communication of the action through the several particles of the latter; that is, in the case of the impact of one body upon another, a certain time elapses before the parts in the immediate neighbourhood of the part struck are affected by it.

180. Hence, even soft bodies may offer a considerable resistance, though only for a moment; since the surface struck cannot yield, until the parts beneath or around are displaced; and for this a certain time is required. If we strike the palm of the hand flat upon the surface of water, the blow is resisted at the first instant almost as though by a solid body; and many persons, who have jumped into water, head foremost, from a great height, have been killed by the impact of the head upon the water, the reaction of the liquid being, for the moment, almost as great as that of a solid would have been. The method of avoiding such an injury, is to bring the two hands together above the head; so that the hands and arms form a kind of wedge, which cleaves the water, and prepares the way for the head. The resisting power momentarily exerted by water, is well seen in the common boy's sport of "ducks and drakes;" which consists in throwing a flat stone, or pebble, along the surface of water, in such a manner that, whilst it has a rapid onward movement, it shall be caused by the force of gravity to descend, so as to impinge or strike upon the liquid; the *momentary* reaction of the water upon it is almost the same as if the surface had been solid, and the stone glances upwards again, continuing its onward movement; it is presently again brought downwards by the force of gravity, and again glances upwards; and the same kind of movement continues until the onward force is nearly spent. The same thing happens even with a round cannon-ball (to which the water offers less resistance than to a flat surface), in consequence of its great velocity; and it is said that a leaden bullet has even been flattened by water, from the like cause.

181. The same explanation applies to many other curious effects produced by bodies in rapid motion. A musket-ball will pass through a pane of glass without cracking it; for the impression produced on the surface by the first impact, has not time to propagate itself so as to crack the pane, before the ball has passed

through. The same ball moving more slowly, as when thrown by the hand, would shatter the whole pane; because its force is not sufficiently great to enable it to pass through the glass, before the effect of its impact has been distributed. In like manner, a sheet of paper placed edgeways, may be perforated by a pistol-ball, without being knocked down; and a door half open, may be pierced by a cannon-ball without being shut. A cannon-ball has been known to carry off the extremity of a musket, without the stroke being felt by the soldier who carried it; as the head of a thistle may be struck off by a rapid blow, without the stalk being bent. It is for this reason that the effects of cannon-balls are so different, according as they strike the object soon after they have quitted the gun, or are *spent*—that is, have lost the greater part of their velocity, by the resistance which has been opposed to their movement. A ball moving with great velocity, passes through a thick mass of wood, as the side of a ship, leaving a clear aperture; whilst a spent ball splinters it. The military or naval surgeon is well aware of the difference between the effects of the two; for whilst a ball moving with great velocity may take off a limb with almost as regular and clean a wound as if it had been cut with a sharp instrument, the blow of a spent ball shatters the limb without separating it, splintering the bone, and bruising the soft parts in a way that makes the injury really more severe than the former. The fact should be borne in mind, that even sharp clean wounds may be produced by a blunt instrument, if moved sufficiently fast; for cases of suspected murder have arisen, in which much depended upon the determination of the instrument with which the wounds were inflicted; and a difficulty has been sometimes felt, in consequence of a want of apparent correspondence between the wound and the suspected instrument, which a knowledge of this principle would have removed.

182. Impact occurs, however, not only when a body in motion strikes another which was previously at rest; but when a body in motion overtakes another in less rapid motion in the same or a similar direction, or meets another which is moving towards it. When a body in motion overtakes and impinges on

another moving less rapidly in the same direction, the two will move onwards after impact at an equal rate; and this rate will be such, that the combined momentum (§. 177) of the two bodies will be equal to the sum of the momenta which they previously had. Thus, if a body, A, of 10 lbs. weight be moving at the rate of 12 feet per second, and it *overtake* another body, B, of 15 lbs. weight, moving at the rate of 7 feet in a second, the two will move onwards together at a rate of 9 feet per second. For the momentum of A is (10 × 12) 120, whilst that of B is (15 × 7) 105; the sum of the momenta is, therefore, 225; and this is equally distributed through the combined weights A and B (25 lbs.), giving to each of them, therefore, a velocity of 9 feet per second.

183. On the other hand, if a body moving in one direction *meet* another moving in the opposite direction, their momenta, if previously equal, will neutralize or destroy one another, so that both bodies (if not elastic) will remain at rest. But if one have a greater momentum than the other, this will neutralize or destroy the less momentum of the other, and will itself be neutralized or destroyed to the same amount; whilst the force that remains will be expended in giving to both bodies a movement in the direction in which it acts. Thus if A have a weight of 10 lbs., and it be moving with a velocity of 12, and it meet B having a weight of 15lbs. and a velocity of 8, they will both come to rest; since their momenta, exerted in opposite directions, are equal, being both expressed by the number 120. But if A have a weight of 10lbs., and be moving at the velocity of 12, whilst B, having a weight of 15, has a velocity of only 3, the momentum of A will be to that of B as 120 is to 45. Of A's momentum, therefore, a quantity equal to B's will be expended in checking its motion; whilst the remainder, 75, will be distributed equally through A and B, as if B had been at rest; and, since their combined weight is 25, it will give them a velocity of 3. In these, as in the previous instances, therefore, the reaction of B upon A is precisely the same as the action of A upon B.

184. In the case of two non-elastic bodies, therefore, there

is an absolute loss of motion, when the impinging bodies move in opposite directions. The results which will occur, if the bodies are not moving in directions exactly opposite or exactly the same, may be easily calculated according to the law of composition and resolution of forces. Thus, let the body A, moving in the direction A C, meet the equal mass B, moving in the direction B D. Now if these lines, A C and B D, represent their respective velocities before impact, their velocities and directions after impact must be thus determined. A line, M G, must be drawn through their centres and the point of contact; and the force of each body must be resolved into two forces, one moving in the direction of that line, and the other at right angles to it. Hence A C will be represented by the two sides, A M and A L, or M C and L C, of the parallelogram of which it is the diagonal; whilst B D will be represented in like manner by B K and B N, or K D and N D. Now it is obvious that the forces L C and K D can have no action on each other; whilst N D and M C are directly opposed to one another, and their effect must be determined by the rules already given. Let it be supposed that the masses A and B, and their previous velocities M C and N D, are such, that, after the stroke, the body A, if previously moving in the direction M C, would have been retarded so much as only to reach O, whilst the body B is driven back to G. Then the motion of A after the impact will be compounded of C I, the line in which it would have moved if operated on by L C alone, and C O, the amount it would have traversed if carried on by what remained of M C; and this combined force is represented by the diagonal C E. In like manner, the motion of B after the impact is expressed by D G and D H combined into the diagonal,

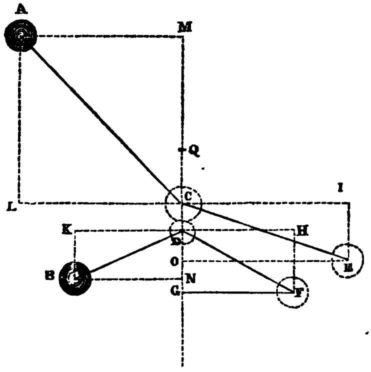


Fig. 43.

D F. The results will be very different if the bodies are elastic. (§. 193.)

185. Many examples of the operation of this law of motion are to be found in occurrences daily taking place around us. One of the most familiar is the *recoil* of fire-arms when discharged. The motion of the ball is given to it, by the sudden and enormous expansion of a small quantity of solid gunpowder, into gases whose bulk is very great in proportion. This expansion exerts an equal force in all directions; and the tendency of the gun to move backwards is exactly the same as that of the ball to move forwards; but as it has to act upon a much larger mass of matter in the one case than in the other, the velocity given to the cannon is not so great as that imparted to the ball, though its momentum is precisely the same. A light gun, therefore, will recoil more than a heavy one. If the recoil be prevented by the fixture of the gun, its force is exerted upon the fastenings, and the mass to which they connect it. When the whole broadside of a ship of war is fired at once, the combined force of the recoil of the several guns is enough to make her *heel* towards the opposite side; and if guns be discharged from her stern alone, they will accelerate her forward movement through the water, whilst if fired from her bows they will retard it. So decided is the effect thus produced, that it has been proposed to propel a ship in a calm, by firing guns from the stern at short intervals; but it has been found that the advantage gained does not compensate for the quantity of powder employed.

186. Another kind of illustration may be drawn from the effects of impact on our own bodies. If a man, walking or running, encounter another man standing still, each suffers equally from the collision; and this will be more severe, in proportion as the movement is quicker. On the other hand, if two persons, walking or running in opposite directions, encounter one another, they will suffer as much as if one had been at rest and the other had been moving with the combined velocity of both. When the fist of the pugilist strikes the body of his antagonist, it sustains as great a shock as it gives; but the proportion of pain and injury experienced by each will depend on

the nature of the part struck. When fist meets fist, however, each part is alike sensitive; and the effect is doubled by the motion of the two, being the same as that which the fist of each would experience, if it were struck by the other moving with the combined velocity of both. In the same manner, when two ships run foul of each other at sea, the injury is as much greater than that which either would sustain by running against a fixed obstacle, as the conjoined momentum of both ships is greater than that of either singly. Thus, if a ship of 500 tons burthen be sailing in one direction at the rate of eight knots an hour, and a ship of 400 tons be sailing in the other direction at the rate of ten knots an hour, the momentum of each will be 4000; and the injury sustained will be the same, as if either had run with twice its velocity on the other whilst remaining at rest. It is quite a mistake to suppose that, when a small and a large body encounter, the small body suffers a greater shock than the large one: the shock which they sustain must be the same, but the large body may not show its effects so obviously. Thus, when a large vessel *runs down* a smaller one at sea, it does so in virtue of its greater momentum, which prevails over the less momentum of the small vessel, forcing it to a sudden change of direction, in which change it is upset and sinks. The velocity of the large vessel is retarded just in proportion to the momentum of the vessel which it has struck; but it does not manifest any other injury from the collision, because its stronger construction enables it better to sustain its effects. In the case of the pugilist, however, the effect of the blow may be felt much more by the large body struck, than by the fist that strikes; on account of the greater sensitiveness of the part.

187. The effects of impact are modified in a considerable degree by the nature of the substances which come into collision. In the rules which have been given for determining these effects, they have been hitherto considered as unpossessed of elasticity (§. 57),—that is, as being incapable of recovering their original state, after this has been altered by some external force. But most bodies possess a certain degree of elasticity; and the effects of this will modify considerably the results of

impact. We shall first consider these results, in the case of bodies that are perfectly elastic; but it will be desirable to give a previous example of the operation of elasticity. Suppose a string to be stretched between two fixed points, and extended with a great force applied to its ends. Now a moderate force applied to its side, especially at the middle of its length, will draw it out of its straight position, the elasticity of the string permitting a certain amount of extension of its length. The greater the force used, the more will the string be drawn out of the straight line. Now if let go, the string will not only return to its original situation, but will go far beyond it on the other side; nearly as far, in fact, as it had been at first. It will then again return to the centre, and pass it; and will reach a point near that from which it had been at first let go. The same action will then take place again and again; and a series of vibrations will thus take place, resembling those of the pendulum, each less than the preceding, until the string comes at last to rest. It is by these vibrations, communicated to the air, that sound is produced.*

188. If the string were perfectly elastic, and its vibrations took place in a vacuum, they would have no tendency to come to an end; but would continue for ever, like the vibrations of a pendulum in a vacuum and without friction (§. 144). The reason is this. When the string has been drawn out of the straight line, it has a certain tendency, in virtue of its elasticity, to return to it; and this tendency is the greater, in proportion to the alteration in form which the string has sustained. Its particles are thus all put in motion; and by the time that the string has reached the straight line (at which point the original moving force ceases) they have acquired momentum sufficient to overcome the resistance of the string, to an amount equal to the force which caused their return to the centre; and thus the string will vibrate on the other side (if its elasticity be perfect, and there be no resisting force) to a point as distant as that from which it set off, and will continue the same succession of movements.

189. Now let it be supposed that the string, instead of being

---

* See Treatise on SOUND.

drawn to one side by the finger, is struck by a hard body in motion, with a certain amount of force. The further the string is carried out of the straight line, the greater will be its resistance; and at a certain point this resistance will be sufficiently great, to neutralize and destroy the force with which the body was moving; so that the string, when carried to that point, does not move beyond it, and the onward motion of the body is itself completely checked. The elasticity of the string will then tend to carry it towards the straight line, with a force equal to the resistance it was previously exercising; and it will communicate this motion to the body which struck it, so as to send it back again towards the point from which it came, with a force equal to that which it originally possessed.

190. This illustration is applicable, not to strings only, but to all kinds of elastic bodies; for every one of them suffers some change of form by a stroke or pressure, and afterwards recovers its original form by reacting in the contrary way, with a force which, in perfectly elastic bodies, is equal to the pressure or stroke received. Hence, if two such bodies of equal size, and moving at the same rate in contrary directions, impinge on one another, they will not remain at rest as they would do if perfectly inelastic (§. 183), but will recede from each other with a force equal to that by which they previously approached.

191. Hence we see that, in the impact of perfectly elastic bodies in opposite directions, no force is ever lost; and that, at any given time after the impact, their distance from each other will be precisely that which they had at the same time before the impact. But this results from a remarkable interchange which will occur between them, if their weights be equal, but their previous velocities unequal; for each will possess after impact the velocity of the other. If A in motion strike B at rest, it will communicate its motion to B, which will go forwards with the velocity that A previously had; whilst B will remain at rest. But if A have a velocity of 5, and it strike B moving in the opposite direction with a velocity of 3, their velocities will be interchanged after impact, so that A will move back with a velocity of 3, and B with a velocity of 5.

192. When the masses as well as the velocities are unequal, the principle becomes more complex. It may be that both bodies move after impact in the same direction; but the rule still holds good, that they will recede from one another to the same amount in any given time. Thus, suppose a very large mass A to be moving slowly onwards, and to meet a small mass B moving more rapidly in the opposite direction; the momentum of B will not be sufficient to check the motion of A, though it will retard it; but the direction of its own motion will be reversed; and its velocity will be so much increased, that, at any period after the impact (say a minute), B shall have receded from A, though both now move in the same direction, to the same distance as they had at a minute before impact, when they were moving in opposite directions. If the two bodies be moving in the same direction before impact, they separate afterwards, so as to regain, in the same period, their previous distance from each other. The velocity of the foremost is augmented, whilst that of the hindmost is either retarded, altogether destroyed, or made to change its direction, according to the relative momenta of the two bodies before impact.

193. It would be impossible to explain in more detail, without the aid of mathematics, the principles regulating the impact of elastic bodies; and we shall therefore go on to show, by the aid of the subjoined figure, the mode in which we find, by the laws of the composition and resolution of forces, the results of the impact of two elastic bodies moving obliquely towards each other. Let A be one body, moving in the direction and with the velocity A C; and B the other body, moving in the direction and with the velocity B D. In order to ascertain their action on one another, a line M R must be drawn through their centres and the point of contact; and the force of each must be resolved into two forces, the one acting in the direction of that line, and the other at right angles to it. Thus A C is the diagonal of a parallelogram of which A L and A M are two of the sides; and the force with which A moves towards C may be considered, therefore, as made up of A L or M C, and A M or L C. In the same manner, the force B D is represented

by B K or N D, and B N or K D. Now it is obvious that two bodies moving along the parallel lines K D and L C would have no action on one another; and that the effects of the impact must be determined by the forces M C and N D. Supposing it to be determined, by the laws already explained, that the body A moving in the direction M C, and meeting B moving in the direction N D, will recoil to Q, whilst B recoils to R; then the subsequent motion of A will be compounded of the force C Q, and of the force C I, the continuation of L C, which will give the diagonal C Z; and in the same manner the subsequent motion of B will be compounded of D R, and of D Y, the continuation of K D, which will give the diagonal D X. If this figure be compared with that illustrating §. 184, the difference in the results of the collision of elastic and non-elastic bodies will be obvious.

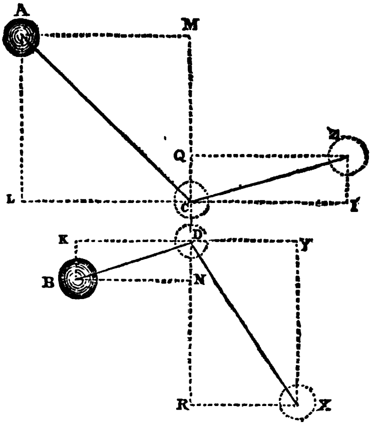


Fig. 44.

194. Our attention has been hitherto chiefly directed to those cases, in which two bodies in motion come into collision; or in which one body in motion strikes a movable body at rest, and communicates motion to it. But the case is different when one of the bodies is not only at rest, but is also

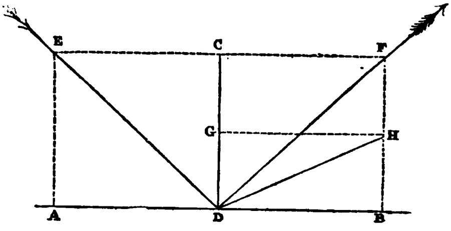


Fig. 45.

immovable. Thus, let A B be a flat surface, and C a body moving towards it in the direction C D. Then if C D be perpendicular to A B, the whole force of C D will be resisted by A B; and, if the surface A B and the body C be perfectly inelastic, the whole of C's motion will be destroyed at D, and it will remain at rest. But if either or both be perfectly elastic, the body C will be thrown back in the direction, and with the force, which it had when approaching A B. But suppose that the inelastic body E, moving in the direction E D, strike upon the inelastic surface A B at D, the result of this impact must be determined by the law of resolution of forces. For the force E D is equivalent to the two forces E A and E C, the one perpendicular to the plane, the other acting along its surface: the former is completely opposed and neutralized by the plane, as in the last case; and the latter would carry on the body in a direction parallel to E C, namely D B. A perfectly inelastic body impinging at any oblique angle upon an inelastic plane, therefore, will move after impact along the surface of the plane.

195. But the case is entirely different if the body or the plane be elastic. For the force E D being resolved as before into the two forces E A and E C, the perpendicular force E A, or C D is returned to the body in the contrary direction; so that, if acted on by it alone, the body would be carried from D to C. But as it is acted on by the continuation of the force E C or A D at the same time, it will move in the resultant of these two, that is, in the diagonal D F. Since, when the body is perfectly elastic, the force C D which it would have after impact, is the same as that which it had before, and since D B is equal to D A, the whole parallelogram C D B F is equal to the whole parallelogram E A D C; and the diagonal D F is equal to E D. The angle C D F, which is termed the angle of reflexion, will thus be invariably equal to the angle E D C, which is termed the angle of incidence; and this law holds good with respect to the reflexion of light, sound, &c., as well as with regard to solid elastic substances. But if neither the body nor the plane be perfectly elastic, the force with which the body returns in the perpendicular direction will be less than that with which it im-

pinged; and the angle of reflexion will always be greater than the angle of incidence, so that the direction of the body is nearer that of the plane surface after impact than it was before. Thus, let the elasticity be such, that the body C falling upon A B at D is only thrown back as far as G; then, if a body move from E to D with the combined forces E C and E A, it will be reflected in the direction D H. For the force A D acts as before, in producing a motion parallel to A B, and equal in amount to E C; and this alone would carry it to B, whilst the force produced by the elasticity would of itself carry it to G; the diagonal D H, therefore, expresses their combined action.

196. Illustrations of these laws of impact may be found in the game of billiards; which, in fact, can only be played well, when a thorough practical knowledge of them has been acquired. This game not only requires that the ball should be struck in a particular direction with the stick moved by the hand, but that it should strike another ball in such a manner, that one or both of them may roll into pockets at the corners and sides of the table. Very great skill in the calculation, and dexterity in the execution, are required to effect this in the various positions of the balls. Very much depends upon the precise point at which the second ball is struck; since, if the moving ball impinge on that part of its face which is opposite the line of its own motion, the stationary ball will be moved onwards in the same line; but, if the point of impact be ever so little on one side or the other of this, the motion of the stationary ball will be oblique. The skilful billiard-player, therefore, adapts the direction of his stroke, so as not merely to hit the second ball, but to drive it towards either one side or the other, as he desires. The material used for these balls is ivory, which, though hard, is also very elastic. The elasticity of this material is shown by the simple experiment of letting a ball strike upon a hard surface which is covered with a thin layer of oil; if neither the ball nor the surface were altered in form by the impact, the oil would not come in contact with more than a very minute portion of the ball; but the fact is, that the ball exhibits a considerable spot of ·l, larger according to the force of the blow, indicating that it

has undergone a momentary flattening, though its elasticity has caused it to recover its shape.

197. The elasticity is imperfect, however; and the results of the impact are therefore not exactly what they have been shown by theory to be. Thus we have seen that, when an elastic ball in motion strikes another at rest, the latter is set in motion in the same direction, whilst the former remains stationary. This is not generally the case with ivory balls, however; for we may usually notice that both balls move after the impact; but it sometimes occurs that, when the stroke is a very sharp one, the result just mentioned does occur. This is probably due to the fact, that the friction of the balls on the cloth-covered table, the imperfection of the elasticity, and other causes of disturbance, have less influence when the body is acted on with a powerful stroke, than when it is moving with an inferior force. The equality between the angles of incidence and reflexion, is another general principle which the billiard-player keeps in mind; for it often happens that he cannot produce by a direct stroke the effect he desires, but that he can accomplish it by a slight manœuvre. For if he strike the first ball obliquely towards the elastic cushion that runs along the side of the table, it will rebound in such a direction as to strike the second ball in the manner he wishes, if he have properly calculated the angle at which his first stroke was made. These are the general principles of the game; but several of the most curious effects are produced by strokes, that give a tendency to the ball to rotate on its own axis, as well as to roll forwards in the direction of the stroke. One of these will be noticed hereafter (§. 231).

198. There is an effect of the impact of elastic bodies, which is, at first sight, not a little surprising. If we place 2, 3, 4 or more ivory balls in a straight row on a smooth flat surface, nearly or quite in contact with each other, and then cause another ball moving in the same line to strike one end of the row, it will not cause the whole row to move forwards, but will appear to act only on the ball at the farthest extremity from it, causing this to separate from the rest, and to roll on in the direction in which the first ball was moving. Thus, if we designate

the ball at first in motion by the letter A, and it strike against another ball B, which is the first of a row B C D E placed in the same direction, the balls B, C, and D will remain stationary, and E only will be moved. However strange this result may appear, it is at once understood, when we try it by the law regulating the impact of elastic bodies of equal size, of which one is at rest and the other in motion. For, according to this law, the moving ball A communicates the whole of its motion to B, itself remaining at rest. But B cannot move onwards without impinging on C; and, according to the same law, C communicates to D the whole of its movement, itself remaining at rest; and, in like manner, D transfers the same force to E, which moves onwards, there being no other ball to receive its impulse. The same thing would happen with any number of balls, provided they were perfectly elastic; but as the compression of each mass and its return to its former shape ocupies a certain time, the motion of the last ball will not follow instantaneously the impact upon the first; and the interval will be longer in proportion to the number of balls.

199. The experiment may be varied by suspending the balls by threads, in such a manner that they shall hang side by side, and then causing one of the balls, A, to swing like a pendulum against the rest; the ball at the other end of the row, E, will be driven from it in the same degree, if the material is perfectly elastic, and on its return-swing will produce an impact that will send A off again to A′. In this manner the balls A and E will be kept in continual oscillation, without B, C, or D being perceptibly displaced; but the oscillation will soon cease, being checked not only by the resistance of the air and by the friction

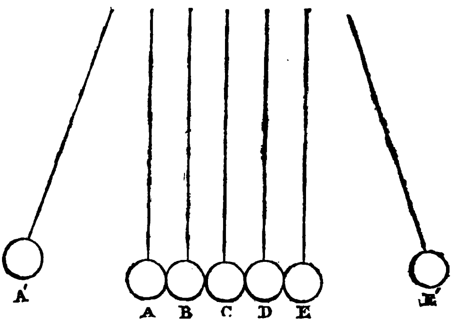


Fig. 46.

of the strings on their points of suspension, but also by the imperfect elasticity of any material we possess, which will prevent the whole force of A's stroke from being communicated to C. We shall presently find that the interposition of elastic substances amongst hard materials, is a means often very usefully employed to diminish the jar or shock which would otherwise occur, when one part of a dense structure receives a severe blow.

200. Although we have spoken of the motion of bodies as altogether neutralized or destroyed, under certain circumstances, this never happens instantaneously; because there are no bodies which are so perfectly hard, that their particles cannot be in some degree displaced upon one another. The less elastic a body is, the more likely it will be to break, when it impinges violently on another which opposes its progress; and for this reason. The particles in that portion of the impinging body, which comes into immediate contact with the immoveable obstacle, are those first brought to rest; those immediately behind them retain for a time the force of *their* movement, and press directly on the first,—those behind these on *them*, and so on; until the momentum of each in succession is destroyed by the resistance of those before it. This action is illustrated, on a large scale, by the terrible accidents which have several times occurred to railway-trains, in consequence of the sudden and complete stoppage of the engine in front, by a fall of earth, by running against a bank, or by other causes. The whole train may be regarded as a single mass, of which the cohesion among the separate parts is not sufficiently strong to resist the force created by the momentum of the hinder parts, when in rapid motion; for this momentum of the hinder part of the train causes the carriages immediately behind the engine to be so pressed on by them, as to be crushed to pieces. In the late terrible accident on the Versailles Railway (May, 1842), it is stated that the crushed carriages formed a pile of 30 feet high; so great was the force created by the continued tendency to onward motion in the long train behind them.

201. There is another cause, however, of the fracture of bodies by impact, which is not illustrated by such occurrences.

We have hitherto spoken only of the parts which lie immediately behind the point or points of impact; but as these points frequently bear but a small proportion to the whole surface of the body, it is obvious that the motion of a large part of its mass will not be *directly* resisted by the collision; and that it is, in fact, only by the cohesion of its particles among themselves, that their motion is checked at all. We see what takes place when this cohesion does not operate, in the spreading of the particles of liquids, as they drop upon a resisting surface. Let us suppose that three railway-carriages fastened together *side by side* were moving rapidly onwards, and that the central one met with an obstacle which suddenly and completely checked its motion: the carriages on either side would exert a violent strain upon the fastenings by which they were united with it; and, if this strain were strong enough to break them, would move onwards by their own momentum; whilst if the fastenings were strong enough to resist the strain, the side carriages would be brought to rest with the central one. Just so it is with a solid body, the cohesion amongst the particles of which is capable of exercising only a certain amount of resistance; if the momentum of the particles, which are not directly resisted by other particles before them, is superior to this cohesive force, the body will break; but if the cohesion is strong enough, the body will all be brought to rest together.

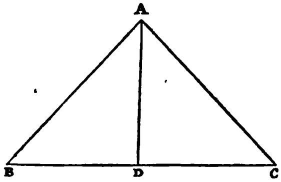


Fig. 47.

202. It is obvious, therefore, that much depends on the form of the impinging surface. For instance, let a mass of a triangular form be in rapid motion with the point A foremost; when A impinges on a fixed obstacle, only those particles which are in the line AD are directly resisted by it; and the forward impulse of all the particles situated on either side of that line will cause the body to split, if its cohesion be not sufficiently great to resist it. But if the same body were moving with the same rapidity, but with the flat side B C foremost, when this impinges on an obstacle also having a flat surface, all the

particles along the line B C are brought to rest by it; and as all those behind it are directly resisted by these, the body will have no other tendency to break than that which is produced by the pressure of one part of it on another. But suppose that the obstacle, instead of having a flat surface which meets B C, has a projecting edge, against which B C strikes at D; the effect will then be much the same as when the point A struck the obstacle; for of all the particles in the body, none will be directly resisted but those in the line D A; and those on each side will have such a tendency to continued onward movement, as very probably to break away from these, unless their cohesion is extremely strong.

203. The more elastic the body,—that is, the more its particles are capable of motion amongst each other, without losing their cohesion or their tendency to return to their original situations,—the less liable it will be to be broken by impact. Thus we can scarcely conceive of a force that should break a piece of India-rubber. And yet such a rapidity of motion *might* be given to it, that it should not have time to exercise its elasticity, its particles being detached by their separate momenta, without yielding. Or let us suppose a piece of whalebone to be moving onwards, not endways, but in the direction of one of its sides: if it came against a projecting obstacle which checks the motion of its centre, the ends would be carried forward by their separate momentum, and the whalebone would thus be bent, until the resistance afforded by the elasticity had destroyed that momentum. But we might here also imagine, that such a rapidity of motion might be given to the whalebone, as to cause it to divide at the point where it is met by the obstacle. The case may be reversed by supposing the whalebone to be supported at its two ends on fixed points, the backs of two chairs for instance; and that a stroke be given by a sharp instrument across its centre: the question whether or not the instrument would sever it, or whether the whalebone would sink before it, would be decided by the degree of resistance offered by the whalebone (which would vary according to its thickness, the distance between its ends, &c.), and by the rapidity of movement of the cutting

instrument, at the moment of impact, which might be such as not to give time for the part immediately in front of it to yield. The contrast between mere brute force and dexterity, as to the effects of blows with sharp instruments, has been well set forth by Sir Walter Scott in his novel of the Talisman. He represents Richard Cœur-de-Lion and Saladin as competing with each other in the use of their swords; and whilst Richard, with his giant strength and ponderous weapon, severs the handle of a massive iron mace, Saladin, with a light but keen-edged scymitar, and a rapid stroke, cleaves an elastic cushion, which had been placed upright before him, and even divides into numerous pieces a veil floating in the air.

204. The same tendency to permanence of motion, which breaks asunder the parts of bodies whose cohesion is not sufficiently strong to resist it, may produce that violent agitation among them, which is known as a *jar*, even when they hold together firmly. This we ourselves experience, when the body receives a shock in a direction upwards from the heels or from the bottom of the spine. The arch of the foot is admirably contrived to prevent such a shock, by the elasticity of the ligaments which hold together the bones; and in ordinary walking or running, when we place the toes on the ground first, or the whole sole at once, the force of the collision is taken off by the *spring* of the foot. But if the heels come first in contact with the ground, especially when it is descending from any height, we experience a painful sensation through our nervous system, which makes us conscious that this jar has been communicated through the body. From the bones of the legs it is propagated to the lower part of the spine; and, if this were composed of one bone, or of a set of bones piled on one another in a straight line with little or no elastic substance between them, the jar would be communicated to the head, and would produce a very injurious effect on the brain. The spine, however, is composed of a number of bones, with a thick piece of elastic substance interposed between each pair; and they are not arranged in a straight line but in a curve, so that the shock is not transmitted directly upwards, but has a tendency rather to bend the spine. Still it

may happen that the momentum of the upper part of the body is so great, that after all the elasticity of the spinal column has operated, the resistance is transmitted with sufficient suddenness from the feet to the head, to cause the brain to be severely affected; and thus a man, who falls upon his legs from a great height, may be stunned or even crushed to pieces. The same kind of shock is experienced in a less degree, when a person falls backwards in consequence of his seat being suddenly taken from under him.

205. A familiar example of the effect of elasticity in modifying the results of impact, is seen in the operation of carriage-springs. In an ordinary cart, the body is fixed upon the framework with which the wheels are connected; and every time that the wheels pass over the slightest obstacle, the body must be raised accordingly. From the unevenness even of the best ordinary roads, a continual *jarring* is thus produced, which is very disagreeable to those unaccustomed to it. But when the body of a vehicle is hung on good springs, it is not nearly so much affected by the unevenness of the road; for, if the wheels are raised by a small obstacle, their first action is to compress the springs, since these yield to a considerable degree, before the body (in consequence of its inertia) is much raised. If the carriage were to be checked, just at the time that the wheels are passing over the obstacle, the body would be lifted by the reaction of the spring; but, in general, the spring does not begin to react until the wheel has come down to its former level; and then the reaction only serves to keep the body at its proper height. For the same purpose, springs are applied between the carriages of a railway-train, to deaden the influence of slight shocks suffered by one or more of them at a time. If it were not for these, any obstacle that interrupted for an instant the movement of the engine or of any carriage, would be immediately felt as a *jar* through the whole train; but its first effect is to cause a compression of the spring of the carriage behind; and the reaction of this will be chiefly expended in pushing forwards the mass in front, when the resistance has been overcome.

206. It is the tendency to permanence of motion in all the

particles of a moving body, that makes the force of *impact* greater than any force of simple pressure, and that thus creates in the *hammer* a power to which no other is comparable. It must be remembered that no substance in nature is *perfectly hard*,—that is, capable of resisting any force applied to it. There are many which bear enormous pressures, and which yet may be acted on by very minute particles, in sufficiently rapid motion (§. 179). In the same manner, a slight blow from the lightest hammer will make an impression on a surface, which would not yield to the direct pressure of a ton weight. We see, therefore, that there is in reality no such thing as the complete destruction of motion; for when a moving body impinges on a fixed obstacle, the particles of the latter are more or less displaced, in offering resistance to its momentum; and this displacement is greater or less, in proportion as the cohesive force is less or more able to offer resistance to it. It appears that the state of vibration into which the particles of a body are thrown by blows, weakens their cohesion. This vibration is made evident to us, in the case of many bodies, by their sound; and it is well known that a glass vessel may be set in such rapid vibration, by the sounding of its own note close to it, without being itself struck, as to scatter water contained in it, and even to fly into fragments. Again it will be found that a stone, which has been several times struck against another, may afterwards be broken by a blow which would not previously have made any visible impression on it. In this case, as in that of the iron formerly mentioned (§. 22), there seems little doubt that the internal structure of the body must be in some degree changed by the action of the successive blows, so as to weaken its cohesive force, although its external form and appearance are not affected.

207. It is beautiful to observe how the forces of impact, cohesion, and elasticity, are balanced in nature, so as to become subservient to the wants of the living beings inhabiting this earth, and especially to those of man. It has been well remarked that "there is no machine comparable to the hammer. The force of heat, indeed, insinuates itself between the pores and interstices of bodies, and operating there, separately, upon their particles,

breaks them up in detail; but the hammer encounters the *accumulated* force of their cohesion, and overcomes it. The hardest rocks and the most unyielding metals submit to it. If man reigns over inanimate matter, shapes out the face of the earth to his use or to his humour, and puts the impress of his skill and his labour upon the whole face of nature, it is chiefly with the aid which this mighty force of impact gives him. It is this that clears away for him the trees of the forest, that shapes for him the materials of his dwelling, that beats out for him the instruments of tillage, that digs and hoes up the earth, that after having cut for him his corn, threshes it and crushes it into flour, that tames for him his cattle, shapes and bends together his wagons and carts, and makes his roads; in short there is no use of society for which this force of impact does not labour, and there is no operation of it which does not manifest this tendency of communicated motion to permanence."* We have seen the importance of elasticity, in obviating the injurious effects of impact; but if all bodies had been elastic, we should have had none firm enough to afford that resistance, which we are continually requiring in the construction of our dwellings, our ships, our machines, our furniture. And if all bodies had been hard and destitute of elasticity, we could not have taken a step, or moved in a carriage, or even touched anything with our hands, without a *jar* that would have made each action painful. The shocks continually produced by movement of any kind, would then be propagated without interruption in every direction; and the slightest impact would leave permanent effects. But by the arrangements of an all-wise Providence, the qualities of hardness and elasticity are so distributed among the bodies which surround us, that there are few, however dense, which have not some power of yielding to an impact, and afterwards recovering themselves; whilst there are none possessing the solid form, which are so completely elastic as not to be able to offer some resistance. By this admixture of properties in the same substances, the wants of man are supplied far more perfectly, than if they were possessed in a higher degree by distinct bodies.

---

* Moseley's "Illustrations of Mechanics," p. 239.

CHAPTER VII.

OF CIRCULAR MOTION.—CENTRIFUGAL FORCE.—RADIUS OF GYRATION.—CENTRE OF PERCUSSION.

208. It has been shown in the preceding chapter, that bodies, when set in motion by a single force, continue to move in a straight line; but that, when acted upon by two forces, of one of which either the direction or the intensity is continually changing, the motion takes place in a curved line. The nature of this curve depends on the mode in which the forces act. Thus it was shown that, when a body receives an impulse which of itself would carry it in a horizontal direction, and is at the same time subjected to the force of gravity, which draws it perpendicularly downwards with a continually-increasing velocity, the curve is a parabola (§. 169). But when the body receives an impulse which would of itself carry it in a straight line, and is at the same time acted on by another force, which tends to draw it towards a given centre, it will move round that centre (if the two forces are properly balanced against each other) either in an ellipse or in a circle (§. 171). The motion of bodies in a circle is one of such frequent occurrence, and is connected with so many points of interest, that it is desirable to give it a separate consideration.

209. It is necessary, in the first place, to recal the principle, that motion has not, in itself, any tendency to cease (§. 140); and that, if two forces be acting upon a body, and the influence of one of them be suspended, the movement will go on under the influence of the other alone. It has been shown, that the movement of a body round a centre, is due to the combined action of two forces, both acting in straight lines; one of these

being an impulse which urges it directly onwards, and the other, an attraction drawing it out of that straight line towards the centre. Now, if the attraction towards the centre were to be suspended at any part of the revolution, the body would continue to move in the direction it had at that moment; and it may be shown, from the properties of the circle, that this direction will be that of the line known as a *tangent*, which touches the circle at that point, and which is at right angles with the radius drawn to it. Thus in Fig. 47, A B, *g h*, and *k l*, are tangents to the circle at the points A, *g*, and *k*. The body originally received an impulse in the direction A B; but it was drawn out of that straight line into the circular curve A *g k* D, by the central attraction, which, if it acted alone, would carry it to C. By the time it reaches *g*, the direction of its movement has been so far changed, that, if the central attraction ceased to act at that moment, the original impulse would carry it on in the line *g h*, which may be regarded as the continuation of that in which it was moving at the particular instant when the central attraction ceased to act. Or, if it proceed to *k* before it is liberated, the direction of the first impulse will have been further changed, so that it will fly off in the tangent *k l*; and the same law governs its course, if set free at any part of its revolution.

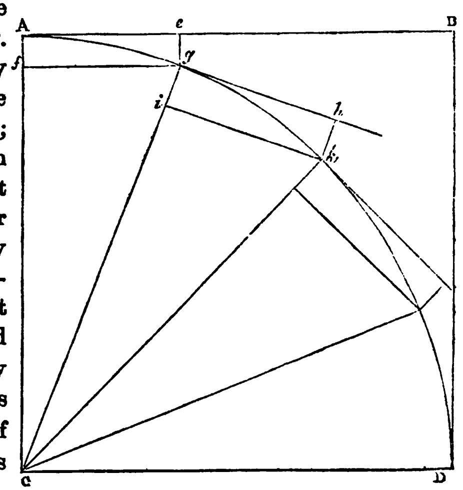


FIG. 47.

210. Many familiar illustrations of this fact may be adduced. If we tie a weight to the end of a string, and whirl it round,

holding the other end in the hand, we shall feel a considerable strain upon the string, which increases with the rate of the movement. If we let go the string at any moment, or it breaks in consequence of the increased strain upon it, the weight will fly off in a straight line, or rather in a line which would be straight, if it were not for the force of gravity, which converts it into a parabola (§. 168), drawn as a tangent to the circle at the point at which the body was at that instant. Upon the same principle depends the action of the sling and stone, which, in practised hands, is so efficient a weapon. The sling, holding the stone at its end, is made to move through a part of a circle with great rapidity; and the stone is let go at such a point, that it shall have an onward movement in the required direction. The islands which we know under the names of Majorca, Minorca, and Iviza, were termed Balearic* Islands by the Greeks and Romans, from the expertness of their inhabitants in the art of slinging, to which they were trained from their infancy. Their dexterity as slingers, while serving in the Carthaginian and Roman armies is often noticed by ancient authors; and it is recorded, as an instance of their early training to this practice, that it was customary to place the breakfast of a young person on the top of a high pole, that he might bring it down by the use of the sling. We see, then, in these instances, that the body does not fly off by means of any new force impressed on it at the moment of its departure, but merely by the continued action of that which was previously causing it to revolve round the centre, under the influence of the restraining power of the string.

211. It is commonly said, that a body revolving round a centre is kept in its path under the influence of two forces balanced against each other,—a *centripetal*, or centre-seeking,—and a *centrifugal*, or centre-flying force. The centripetal force may be the attraction of a large mass, such as that which the sun has for the earth, or the earth for the moon; but we may substitute for it the restraining power of a cord, as in the examples just adverted to. There is this important distinction in the two cases.

---

* From the Greek word *ballo*, to throw.

Supposing that, during the earth's revolution round the sun, or the moon's round the earth, its onward movement were suddenly checked at any period,—the centripetal force would then act alone, and would draw the revolving body towards the central mass in a straight line. But when a weight is whirled round at the end of a string, there is no real centripetal force; for if its revolution be checked, it has no tendency to move towards the centre, but rather falls to the earth. Again, the term centrifugal force is very liable to be misunderstood; since it would seem to imply a force which, acting alone, would cause the body to fly directly away from the centre, which we have seen to be very far from the truth. We must constantly bear in mind that its only proper use is to express the tendency, which the continued action of the force at first impressed upon the body has, to carry it on in the straight line that touches the circle, at the point at which the centripetal force ceases to draw it from that line. The body will, it is true, then recede from the centre; but it will only do so by passing along the tangent, the distance of which from the centre is continually increasing, and not by flying in a direction opposite to that of the central attraction. Its action will be, however, to cause the particles of a body in rapid revolution, to take their places at the greatest possible distance from the centre; of this, several examples will be presently given.

212. The simplest mode of showing by experiment the real action of these two forces is the following. Let a hole be made through a very flat board; and let the edge of this hole be made very smooth. A smooth ball of hard wood or ivory is to be fastened to one end of a string; and this string being passed through the hole in the board, a small weight is to be hung to the other end of it. The action of this weight will of course be to draw the ball towards the hole, if no other force be operating. Now let the ball receive an impulse which would of itself carry it in a direction at right angles to that of the string; its course will be so far modified by the centripetal force exercised by the weight, that it will move in a curve; and the nature of that curve will depend upon the proportion between the weight and

the force with which the ball is set in motion. These may be so balanced against one another, that the ball will move (for a time at least) in a circle; but if the impulse be too great, the ball will be less turned aside from its straight course by the action of the weight, and its superior centrifugal force will cause it to recede from the centre, and thus to draw up the weight; whilst, on the other hand, if the impulse have not been strong enough, the centripetal force will prevail, so that the ball will not describe a circle, but a spiral, being drawn nearer and nearer the centre at each revolution, by the descent of the weight, until at last it reaches the centre itself. In any case this will be the ultimate result; for the friction of the ball will gradually retard its motion, and destroy the force of the impulse it received; whilst the centripetal force remains the same as at first. Now if, whilst the ball is revolving in a circle, the string to which the weight is attached be cut, the centripetal force will cease to act, and the ball will change the direction of its motion from a circular curve to a straight line. On the other hand, if it meet with an obstacle which suddenly checks its revolution, it will be drawn towards the centre by the action of the weight.

213. With an instrument constructed upon a plan of this kind, and known under the name of the whirling-table, the laws which govern the action of the centrifugal force may be shown by experiment. Thus, if two equal weights, one at double the distance of the other, are whirled round with the same angular velocity (so as to pass through their whole circles, or any similar portions of them, in equal times), the one which is farthest from the centre will raise twice as great a weight as the nearer one. But if two equal weights be whirled at equal distances, and the one have double the angular velocity of the other (that is, makes its whole revolution, or any similar portion of it, in half the time), the former will raise four times the weight which the latter will raise,—or, which is the same thing, will exercise four times as great a strain upon the string. Hence we perceive that, if other things are equal, the centrifugal force, (measured by the weight that will be drawn up at the centre,) which causes a body to exercise a strain upon the cord that keeps

it in its circular revolution, increases with the simple distance of the body, when the time of its revolution remains the same; but increases with the square of the velocity when the distance remains the same. If the weights of the moving bodies be different, whilst their distances and velocities be the same, the centrifugal force will be proportional to the respective weights.

214. The tendency of the centrifugal force to cause the bodies on which it acts to recede from the centre, as far as they are permitted to do by other restraining forces, may be shown in a great variety of different modes. The simple apparatus represented in the accompanying figure, gives an illustration of it, which is the more interesting, as it makes perfectly obvious the cause that has changed the form of the earth from a perfect sphere to that of a spheroid (§. 95). The two hoops are made of an elastic material, such as thin brass or steel; they are fixed at the bottom to the spindle, but are left loose at the top, so that they can slide up or down, as far as their elasticity permits. If they be rapidly whirled round, the tendency of their particles to recede from the centre causes them to bulge out midway between the upper and lower ends of the spindle; the portions through which the spindle passes are flattened in a corresponding degree; and the upper part of the hoops is drawn down towards the lower. The greater the velocity given to them, the greater will be the change of form; and it will go on, until the resistance offered by the material of the hoops to any further alteration, counterbalances the influence of the centrifugal force.

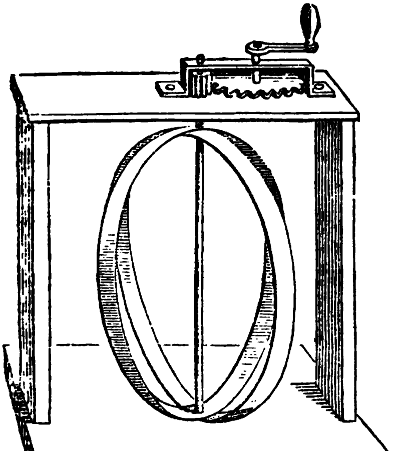


FIG. 49.

215. In the case of the earth and other planets, there is reason to believe that the matter of which they are composed once had a condition sufficiently fluid to permit a similar change of form; and in this case, the limit to the change would be the attraction of all the particles towards the centre of the mass, which would prevent any of them from greatly increasing their distance from it, unless the centrifugal force were very much increased. Now the planet Jupiter turns upon its axis more than twice as fast as the earth; and the centrifugal force that acted upon it, whilst its form could be changed, has therefore produced a much greater effect. This planet is so much flattened at the poles, that a difference between the two diameters can be seen by the eye alone (when aided by the telescope), though it it is more precisely determined by measurement. It has been ascertained by calculation, that the form which both Jupiter and our Earth actually possess, is precisely that which would be the result of the balance between the centrifugal force and the mutual attraction of their particles, supposing them to have been allowed, by the liquid condition of their masses, to take any form which these forces would produce.

216. The effect of centrifugal force is further shown by the very simple and familiar fact of the sprinkling of water from a mop that is being trundled; or the flying-off of dirt from a carriage-wheel in motion. Supposing that the axle of the wheel were at rest, and the wheel were made to turn rapidly upon it, the dirt would fly off, as soon as the centrifugal force produced by its rotation should be strong enough to overcome its adhesion to the wheel. It would at first be thrown off in the tangent *a b*; t the attraction of the earth causes it to descend towards it, and

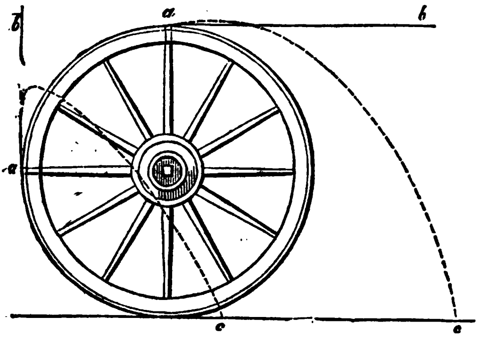


FIG. 50.

to describe the curve *a c*, like any other body similarly circumstanced (§. 168). When the wheel has an onward motion, however, as well has a rotation on its axle, the course of the substances thrown off from it will be somewhat different; since they partake of the motion of the wheel at the moment of quitting it.

217. Again, if we suspend a cup of water by a string, it is possible to whirl it round so dexterously, that none of the water shall fall out, though the mouth of the glass is downwards in part of every revolution. This is due to the tendency, which the particles of the water derive from the centrifugal force, to recede as far as possible from the centre. The chief difficulty lies in commencing and terminating the movement; since the velocity is not then sufficient to give the required centrifugal force. The action of the centrifugal force upon liquids is further shown in a very interesting manner, by hanging a bucket by a long cord, and then twisting the cord; so that the bucket, when set free, shall have a rapid revolution. The tendency of the water to recede from the centre will cause it to rise up within the sides of the bucket, and to sink down in the middle; and if the revolution be sufficiently rapid, the water will flow over and be sprinkled all around. If the sides of the bucket be inclined, so that the water is further from the centre at the top than at the bottom, it would be possible to get rid in this manner of the whole of the water which the bucket originally contained; but, if the sides are upright, the last portions of the water will not rise to the top or flow over. This principle has been employed in a very ingenious and simple contrivance for raising water through small heights. It consists of a vessel shaped like a bucket with slanting sides, open at the top and bottom, and having three or four pieces projecting inwards. Now when the vessel is made to revolve rapidly, and its lower end be immersed in water, the portion of the water within its sides will be carried round with it by these projections; and it will thus acquire a centrifugal force, which will cause it to rise along the inclined sides of the vessel, and at last to flow over its edge into a circular trough adapted to receive it. By continuing the motion of the vessel, a continual sup

may thus be obtained; since a fresh quantity of water will be constantly taken in by it below, and will receive the same motion.

218. There is another contrivance for raising water, acting on the same principle, which is known under the name of the centrifugal pump. This is represented in the accompanying figure. It consists of an upright pipe *a a*, which is inserted into the vessel of water, *e*; into the top of this pipe are fitted two cross pipes, *a b*, and *a c*; and the whole is put into rapid motion by the handle *g*. Now, supposing that the pipes are full of water at the moment when they begin to turn, the centrifugal force communicated to the water in the cross tubes will cause it to be discharged, by holes at their extremities, into the cistern *d*; and a void or vacuum will be created in the pipe, which will be supplied by water pressed up by the air from below, through the pipe *a a*. So long as the motion is continued, so long will the cross pipes deliver water, and the upright pipe draw it up. When the motion ceases, the water would flow down again into the lower cistern, were it not for valves in the pipes, opening upwards only, which prevent its return. Thus, when the pipes have been once filled with water, the apparatus is always ready for action. This first filling is necessary in order that the water may rise through the pipe *a a*; for it has no tendency to do so by the mere revolution of the pipe; and it only takes place when a vacuum has been created by the emptying of the cross arms. The aperture at *f* serves to discharge the water from the reservoir *d*, into which it is raised by the pump.

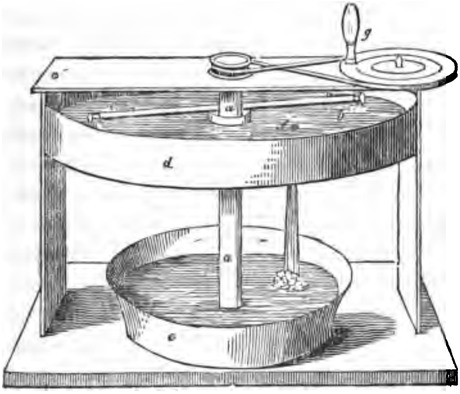


Fig. 51.

219. Another illustration of the action of centrifugal force upon liquids, is to be found in the mode in which an eddy or whirlpool is produced. When a rapid stream of water meets with an obstruction which causes it to take a considerable bend, it is thrown from its straight line into a curved direction; and, as a consequence of this, the surface of the water takes a form resembling that which it presents when whirled round in a bucket; being deeply hollowed in the centre and raised towards the outside. Any floating substance, which has been brought within this vortex, will be drawn down towards the centre of it, that being the point to which the stream is directed; and hence arises the danger to swimmers from eddies in rivers; or to ships and boats from the larger whirlpools which are sometimes to be met with on the sea-coast. The whirlpool of Charybdis in the straits of Messina has been celebrated from ancient times; there is also one on the coast of Norway, termed the Maelstrom; this is caused by the rapid flow of water, during the strongest part of the tide-stream, between two rocky islands; and it is impossible to navigate this channel when the tide is strong, without great risk, many vessels having been drawn in by the Maelstrom. The same occurrence may be seen, on a small scale, whenever a circular vessel, especially one of a funnel-shape, is being emptied by a hole in its bottom; a circular motion of the water takes place, and there is consequently a depression or even a hollow in the centre, and a rise all around; this is best seen when the water has been nearly all discharged, or when we pour a stream of water obliquely into a funnel.

220. Of the influence of centrifugal force upon solid bodies, it would be easy to multiply examples, in addition to those which have been already given. Its agency is very important in the common operation of grinding corn. The corn is placed in a kind of funnel, termed the hopper, which lets it pass gradually through a hole in the centre of the upper mill-stone; the revolving motion causes the grain to fly off towards the outer part of the space between the mill-stones, where they are closer together; and thus it is ground finer and finer, until at last it is thrown out beyond their edges, in the form of flour. Just

the same manner would the centrifugal force act upon bodies placed on the earth's surface, if it were not for the attraction of its mass, which keeps them in their places. A body situated *exactly* on either of the poles, being at the centre of the circle, would have no tendency to fly off; but if placed anywhere else, it would, of course, move in a circle of greater or less size, in proportion to its distance from the pole, and would acquire a corresponding amount of centrifugal force, which would cause it to increase its distance. But though this force is much more than counterbalanced by the attraction of gravitation, it still operates; and at the equator, where it is greatest, it tends to oppose the pressure of bodies towards the centre of the earth, and is one cause of the diminished weight which they have there, as compared with their weight at or near the poles.*

221. It has been calculated, that if the rotation of our earth were seventeen times faster than it is, the bodies at the equator would have a centrifugal force equal to their gravity, so that they would exert no downward pressure; and a little more velocity would cause them to fly off altogether, or to rise and form a ring round the earth like that of Saturn. An occurrence of this kind sometimes takes place, when the velocity of the large grinding-stones used in the manufacture of various articles of iron and steel, is so much increased as to create a centrifugal force, greater in amount than the cohesive attraction of the particles of the stone; large fragments of the stone have been known to be carried through the roof of a building, and hurled to a considerable distance from the spot where it was worked, carrying death and destruction in their course. It has been remarked, that the wreck produced by the *disruption* (or breaking asunder) of one of these stones, resembles nothing so much as that occasioned by the bursting of a steam-engine boiler.

---

* A body that presses towards the earth's centre, at the equator, with a force of 289lbs., will press downwards, at the poles, with a force of 290lbs. When we add this difference to that which results from the flattening of the earth in the polar regions (§. 95, 96), we find the whole difference between the downward pressure of a body at the equator and the poles, to be 1-194th of its entire weight; that is, a body weighing 194lbs. at the equator, will weigh 195lbs. at the poles.

222. The centrifugal railway, which has been recently constructed upon a large scale, is a very ingenious device for exhibiting the effect of centrifugal force. The roadway, on which the carriage moves, first passes down a steep incline, A B; it then rises rapidly in a curve, B C, which completes by its descent a circle in the air; and lastly, it ascends in an incline, B D, which brings it to a point nearly as high as that from which it started. The carriage descending the first incline, acquires, by the time it reaches the bottom, a velocity which would carry it up another incline of the same height, if friction, and the resistance of the air, did not in some degree diminish it. But its motion is altered, by the direction of the roadway, from a straight line to a curve; and in rising through the circle which it is then made to describe in the air, a sufficient amount of centrifugal force is produced to counteract the earth's attraction; so that the carriage and the persons it contains are enabled to pass along the highest part of the circle, in which they are completely unsupported, just as water remains in the cup that is being whirled round (§. 226). In the passage of the carriage down the descending part of the curve, it acquires enough velocity to carry it up the second incline, when the direction of the roadway again changes to a straight line. It is essential, to the successful use of this contrivance, that the highest part of the circle should be considerably lower than the point from which the carriage first starts; since the velocity it acquires in its descent will not otherwise create a sufficient amount of centrifugal force to keep the carriage against the roadway at the part C, where it is completely unsupported. Any accidental cause that retards the descent of the carriage will prevent its traversing the circle with safety; and, as several accidents have occurred from this cause, it cannot be right to put human lives in peril

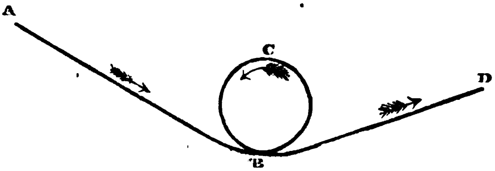


FIG. 52

for exhibiting what is at best but a philosophical toy, since it can never be applied to any beneficial purpose. A centrifugal railway, on a small scale, may be constructed by simply bending a bar of iron into the form represented in Fig. 52; and making a small heavy carriage run upon it, by means of flanches or projections upon its wheels, which shall keep it from rolling off.

223. The apparatus termed the *governor*, which has been long used for the regulation of mill-work, and which was very ingeniously applied by Mr. Watt to the steam-engine, acts upon the principle of centrifugal force. The mode in which this is brought into operation may be understood from a very simple experiment. Let the fire-tongs be suspended by a string fastened at the top, and be made to turn by the twisting or untwisting of the cord; the legs will separate from each other with a force proportioned to the speed of the rotation, and will fall together again as the motion slackens. If the legs had heavy balls at their extremities, the force with which they would separate would be much greater. Such an apparatus forms the essential part of the *governor*, which is made to revolve by the action of the steam-engine or other moving power. The purpose of it is this. In almost any kind of mill, the quantity of work to be done is continually varying; so that, if the same power were always applied, it would be sometimes too great, driving the machinery too fast, and sometimes too small, scarcely propelling it at all. Again, there may be irregularity in the moving power; as by variation in the heating of the boiler, in the case of the steam-engine; or by inequality in the force of the wind, or in the amount of water, in the case of a wind-mill or water-wheel. The governor affords the means of constantly keeping the power accurately proportioned to the work to be done; and this is accomplished as follows. By a system of levers, its legs are so connected with the apparatus by which the power is regulated, that, when the balls fly asunder, they diminish the power, and when they close together they increase it. In the steam-engine, the governor opens and closes a valve, which regulates the quantity of steam admitted from the boiler. In the

wind-mill, it acts upon the sails in such a manner as to make them present a greater or less amount of surface to the wind. And in the water-mill, it opens or closes the sluice that regulates the quantity of water which acts upon the wheel. Now if, by a diminution of the labour to be performed, or an increase of power, the machinery begins to turn too rapidly, the balls fly out and partly close the valve of the steam-engine, or the sluice of the water-wheel, so as to diminish the power. But if more work is to be done, or the power is unequal to it, so that the machinery moves too slowly, the balls fall together, and the power is increased by the contrary action.

224. One more illustration of the action of centrifugal force may be given, and that of a very familiar kind. When a carriage, a horseman, or a pedestrian, moves rapidly in a curve of small diameter (as when suddenly turning a corner), a considerable amount of centrifugal force is experienced, which gives the body a tendency to fall outwards. This the rider or pedestrian counteracts by inclining his body inwards, or towards the centre of the curve; but the carriage cannot make this adjustment; and, if the centrifugal force be sufficiently great (either in consequence of the rapidity of its movement, or the smallness of the circle in which it is turning), the carriage will be upset *from* the centre, or, in other words, away from the corner round which it is turning. The centrifugal force produced in this manner, is of great assistance to the riders who perform feats of horsemanship; since they can do many things, when moving in a small circle, which they could not accomplish if they moved in a large circle or in a straight line. A man who would ride in a straight line, standing upon his saddle, would find it almost impossible to keep himself balanced upon it. But, when he rides with great rapidity in a small circle, a new and very considerable force comes into operation, which gives him great assistance. This is the centrifugal force. It gives both to his body and to that of the horse an outward tendency, which they counteract by bending inwards, or towards the centre of the circle. Hence a less portion of his weight is supported by the saddle; and it is much easier for him to keep his balance, which

is done by simply regulating his speed. For if he should find himself likely to fall inwards, he has merely to quicken his speed, and thus to increase the centrifugal force, which will carry his body outwards, and thus restore his equilibrium. If, on the other hand, he be in danger of falling outwards, he slackens his speed, and thus diminishes his outward tendency.

225. When a body revolves about a fixed axis, each of its particles receives an amount of centrifugal force, which is proportional to its respective distance from the centre (§. 213). Hence there will be a number of different forces acting on different sides of the axis; and these will or will not balance one another, according to the form of the body, and the position of its axis. If the particles be so arranged, that equal weights exist at equal distances on every side of the axis, the centrifugal forces will be exactly balanced against each other, so that they will exert no pressure on the axis. This is the case when a globe, composed of the same material throughout, is made to rotate on any axis that passes through its centre; or when a cylinder or drum is made to rotate on an axis that passes through the centres of its two circular ends; or when a square or circular plate is made to revolve about any of its diameters, as in the common act of spinning a coin or counter. But if the particles are not arranged about the axis of rotation with this uniformity, the centrifugal forces created by the movement of the different portions will not balance each other; and there will consequently be a strain upon the axis, which will tend to pull it towards the side on which the centrifugal force is the greatest. This may be illustrated by a very simple experiment. If we whirl round a ball at the end of a string, the centrifugal force is all on one side; and we feel its tendency to draw the hand out of its place, which it requires some force to resist. But if we fix two balls of the same weight to the two ends of a stick, and whirl these round upon an axis held in the hand, and passing through the middle of the stick, we feel that there is no more strain upon the axis than that which is created by the weight of the stick and balls. Let us further suppose that the axis does not pass through the middle of the stick, but that one end

of it has twice the length of the other; then a weight, A, of 1 lb., at a distance of 2 feet from the centre, will counterpoise a weight, B, of 2 lbs., at a distance of 1 foot from the centre, as will be explained in Chapter X. If the stick be then whirled round, the centrifugal forces of the two weights will be still equal; for, according to the laws of centrifugal action (§. 213), the weight A will have twice the centrifugal force which would be possessed by an equal weight at the distance of B; whilst the weight B, being double of A, has twice the centrifugal force which A would have at B's distance. Hence the axis will still be free from any strain produced by the centrifugal forces. But if the axis pass through any other point of the stick, the centrifugal forces of A and B will no longer be equal; and there will be a strain upon the axis towards one body or the other, according as the situation of that axis is more distant from it than in the case just mentioned.

226. In any mass of matter, however irregular may be its form, there are at least three lines round which its parts are so arranged, that, if it be made to revolve upon either of them as an axis, the centrifugal forces are so balanced, as to exert no strain upon the axis, and, consequently, to have no tendency to alter its position. These three axes, which are called the *principal axes*, are at right angles to each other. Their length will be different in almost every instance; and this difference produces an important influence on their respective properties. Where they are all of the same length, the body will rotate equally well on either of them; this is the case, for instance, in a globe, the number of whose principal axes has no limit. But in a body whose principal axes are unequal in length, it will rotate *securely* on the *shortest* of these axes only; that is, if, whilst rotating upon either of its longer axes, it be slightly thrown out of its position, it will have no tendency to recover itself, but will alter its condition altogether, and will revolve round the shortest axis; and for the same reason, if, whilst rotating around the shortest axis, it receive any disturbance, it will recover itself, and thus constantly tend to maintain its position. This principle may be familiarly illustrated by a simple experi

ment, made upon an ordinary sea-shore pebble. We will suppose this to be of a regular oval form, having two surfaces somewhat rounded. The three principal axes of such a pebble will be,—1. The long diameter of the oval side, or the line joining its two furthest points;—2. The short diameter of the oval side, or the line joining its two nearest points;—3. The line joining the centres of the two sides, thus crossing the thickness of the pebble. Now we can spin such a pebble upon one of its ends; that is, around its long diameter as an axis; but it will be very unsteady, and the slightest variation of its position will overturn it altogether. The same will occur when it is spun upon the side-edge; that is, around its short diameter. But when it is spun upon one of its rounded surfaces, it has no tendency to fall over, since it is then revolving around its shortest diameter; and if disturbed, it will return to the same position. Hence the axis around which a body of any form is in rotation, will always tend to change into the direction of its shortest principal axis, and will then remain settled.

227. This experiment must not be regarded as fully illustrating the principle; since, when the axis is supported from below, the tendency of the centre of gravity towards the lowest possible point (Chap. IV.), will naturally cause the body to assume that position. But the same thing happens, when the change of the direction of the axis is such as to leave the centre of gravity where it was; and it will even take place, when it cannot occur without raising the centre of gravity, provided the rotation be sufficiently rapid. Thus if we allow a circular plate to hang freely by a string tied to any part of its edge, its centre of gravity, being in the centre of the plate, will be at the distance of its radius, below the point where it is suspended. Now, if we make the plate revolve with sufficient rapidity, it will not rotate around the axis in which it was hanging (which is one of its diameters, and, therefore, one of its many equal longer axes), but about its shortest axis, which is the line that crosses its thickness, through its centre; and in order to do this, the plate must raise itself up into the horizontal position, so that its centre of gravity becomes as high as the point of suspension. The same

thing will take place, if we hang a ring by a string attached to any part of it, and make it rotate with sufficient rapidity.

228. The reason of this curious property is easily explained, when the principles of centrifugal force are understood. When a body is revolving round its *longest* axis, the parts composing its mass are disposed in such a manner, as to be at the *least* possible distance from the axis. On the other hand, when it is rotating about its *shortest* diameter, the parts are so arranged as to be at the *greatest* possible distance from the axis. Now it has been seen to be a property of centrifugal force, that it causes the parts of a revolving body to dispose themselves at the greatest possible distance from the centre; and this will be the case, therefore, when the rotation is round the shortest axis. The change from one axis to the other, when there is any opposing force, however, (as in the case last mentioned) can only take place when the centrifugal force becomes, in consequence of the quickness of the rotation, sufficiently powerful to overcome it.

229. It is very interesting to remark, that the form actually possessed by the earth and other planets, is the only one at all approaching to that of a globe, in which the axis of rotation is not liable to be disturbed. If they had been exactly globular, and all the axes consequently equal, a very slight amount of force would have changed the direction of the rotation from one axis to another, and there would have been no tendency to the recovery of the first position. If, on the other hand, they had been egg-shaped, they would have had only one longer axis, but an infinite number of short axes; since there is no limit to the number of equal lines which might be drawn through the centre, all of them the shortest that can unite the opposite sides. Hence an egg-shaped body, revolving around its long diameter, will be easily thrown out of its position, and will rotate around one of its shortest axes; but as these are all equal, it will have no tendency to remain in any one of them permanently, and will be disturbed by a very slight force. Lastly, if the body is flattened at the poles, or shaped like an orange, it has but one short diameter,—the line joining the poles; whilst the number of long diameters (crossing the equator) is unlimited. Henc

whilst its rotation round either of these is unstable, it will tend to continue moving around the short axis, and will return to this position when it has been removed from it. The importance of this arrangement will be made evident hereafter; it is enough here to state, that the recurrence of the seasons, the length of day and night, and many other important conditions affecting the welfare of the living inhabitants of the earth, would have been rendered irregular, if the position of the axis of the earth's rotation were liable to undergo change. It is most beautiful to observe how one action of the centrifugal force is thus connected with another;—the same agency that produces the altered form of the earth, taking advantage (as it were) of this alteration, to render its motion stable and uniform.

230. If a body be suspended or supported in such a manner, that any force which affects it can act freely upon it, either in producing an onward motion, or a rotation round its axis, the kind of motion produced will depend upon the precise direction in which the force is applied. If it act equally upon all parts of the body, it will urge every one of them in its own direction with a corresponding force; and the motion of the body will be simply onwards, without any rotation. This is the case with the attraction of gravitation; and consequently, a falling body does not turn on its axis whilst descending. The same takes place when a force acts directly through the centre of gravity of the body; since this is the same thing as acting equally upon all its parts. An illustration of this we may find in the motion of the cricket-ball struck by the bat; or of the billiard-ball, when the line in which the stroke is given passes through its centre. But if the force be applied in any other way, a movement of rotation is produced, as well as an onward motion in the direction of the force; since the different parts of the body will be differently affected by it, and those which receive the greatest impulse will tend to move faster than the rest, which they can only do by imparting a rotatory movement to the body. It is remarkable that in such a case, the onward movement is precisely the same as if there were no rotation; and that the rotation takes place exactly as it would have done had the axis been fixed, and

the whole force expended in producing it. A remarkable example of this compound movement is seen in the action of *chain-shot*. These consist of two cannon-balls, united together by a strong chain, and fired from the same cannon. Now, unless the impulse happens to pass exactly through the common centre of gravity of the two balls and chain (which it can only do by a rare accident) those are not only propelled forwards, but they receive a rotatory motion about each other, which gives them a most destructive power. They fly forwards as far as if they did not revolve; and they revolve as they would do if they did not fly forwards. Chain-shot are now generally superseded by *double-headed-shot*, in which a strong iron bar is substituted for the chain. The latter act on the same principle as the former.

231. The movement of the earth in its orbit, and its rotation around its axis, may thus be accounted for, on the supposition that it was produced by a single impulse, not acting through its centre, but applied at a point about 24 miles on one side of it. The much more rapid rotation of Jupiter might have been in like manner produced, at the same time with his motion in his orbit, by an impulse acting at a distance of about 16,000 miles from his centre. It may happen that the movement of rotation thus communicated to a body may interfere with its onward motion, so as to destroy or even to reverse it. Thus, if a billiard-ball be struck sharply with a cue *below* its centre, it will receive from it at the same time a tendency to onward movement, and a tendency to rotate on its axis, in such a direction as to roll backwards if no other force were in operation. Hence it will not *roll* forwards, but will *slide*; and its friction is so great, that its onward movement is soon destroyed, whilst the tendency to rotation is only partially checked; and the very strange phenomenon is witnessed, of a ball moving forwards, gradually coming to a stop, and then rolling backwards, without receiving any fresh impulse, or meeting with any obstacle. This kind of stroke is used with great advantage by skilful billiard-players.

232. *Centre of Gyration.*—When a body is moving in a straight line, all its particles have the same velocity; and consequently the effect of its stroke or impact upon another b

is the same as if its whole weight were concentrated in the centre of gravity, and were moving with the velocity which it possesses. But when a body is moving round a centre, the motions of its different parts are not equal in velocity; for those which are furthest from the centre pass through a larger circle than those nearer to it, though the whole revolution is performed in the same time. Thus, as already remarked, the equatorial portion of a revolving globe moves much faster than the portion in the neighbourhood of the poles; and, of the different parts of the interior, those move fastest which are at the greatest distance from the axis. Now, since the *momentum* of each particle depends upon its weight multiplied by its velocity (§. 177), it is evident that the momenta of the several portions of the revolving globe will be very different. Nevertheless, it is not difficult to conceive, that the *sum* of all of them may be represented by a *single* force, equivalent to that which would be produced by the whole weight of the body, moving in a circle at a certain distance round the axis. Thus, if a circular plate be put in motion around one of its diameters,—as when we spin a piece of money on its edge,—the whole force of its rotation might be represented by a weight equal to that of the plate (if it were possible to concentrate such a weight in a single point), moving in a circle whose radius is equal to half that of the plate. Or, in other words, supposing the plate to be set in motion by a certain impulse, its velocity will be the same as that with which its whole weight, concentrated in one point, would move in a circle of half its own radius. All bodies moving round a fixed axis have a similar property; that is, there is in each one a certain point, at which, if the whole mass were concentrated, it would receive from the impulse the same velocity round the axis;—or, in other words, there is a point at which, if the whole weight of the mass were concentrated in it, the force of its motion would be precisely the same as that which the whole body actually possesses. This point is called the *centre of gyration*,* and its distance from the axis is called the *radius of gyration*. This distance varies according to the form of the body; but it is, of course, greater, according as the principal mass of the body is disposed at a distance from the centre.

---

* From the Latin *gyro*, which means to move round a centre.

233. It is evident from what has been just stated, that if a body in motion about a fixed axis encounter an obstacle in the position of its centre of gyration, it will expend *all* the force of its motion upon that obstacle. If, on the other hand, the obstacle be not at that distance from the axis, the collected force will be divided between the obstacle and the axis itself, on the principle of a weight supported between two props. Hence we see that a blow with any instrument will be most advantageously given, when it strikes in the situation of its centre of gyration; and that the effect of the blow is not then felt by its axis, as it would be in any other case. Thus, a cricket-bat, and the arm of the player who strikes with it, may be regarded as a mass revolving round an axis in his shoulder-joint. If the ball be struck at the centre of gyration of this mass, the whole effect of the blow is expended upon the ball; and it has no *reaction* upon the shoulder, so that no part of the shock is felt there. Expert players soon learn to know about what point of a bat they thus strike most effectually; and in this consists a great secret of good batting.—In the same manner, a carpenter, when using a mallet, does not strike most effectually with the middle of its principal mass, which would be the position of its centre of gravity; but with a part farther from the handle, where the force of the motion is collected in the centre of gyration. If he strike with any point but this, he will not expend the whole force of the blow upon the object, but a part will return and *sting* his hand. We shall presently see another very important application of the same principle, in the case of the tilt-hammer (§. 237).

234. *Axis of spontaneous Rotation.*—Suppose a beam of wood to be floating at rest upon water, and to receive a blow near one of its extremities; that end will, of course, move forwards, but the other end will move backwards; and we should find a certain part of the beam which does not move at all, but serves as an axis, round which the other parts seem to revolve. This is called the *axis of spontaneous rotation.* Its position will depend upon the form of the body, and upon the place where it

is struck. It has been shown that, if a body at rest, but free to move in any direction, be struck by a force passing through its centre of gravity, there will be no rotation, but an onward movement of the whole mass: whilst, if the blow do *not* pass through the centre of gravity, some portions receive a greater effect from it than others, and consequently the mass is put in rotation about its centre of gravity, at the same time that it is projected forwards (§. 239). Now it is evident, that, in consequence of this double movement, some parts of the body are carried backwards by the rotation, whilst they are moving forards with the mass; and if the velocity of the rotatory movement, carrying any part backwards, *exceed* the forward movement which it shares with the rest of the mass, it is evident that the part so acted on will really be moving backwards; as is seen in the case just mentioned. For the whole beam has an onward movement; but it has also a rotatory motion about its centre; and thus the extremity most distant from the blow moves backwards, by just as much as its rotatory movement exceeds the forward motion of the whole beam. The part of the beam which is really at rest, therefore, is that around which it tends of its own accord to revolve in the first instant of its motion,—when struck in such a manner, that the rotation of its extremities is more rapid than the onward movement of the whole. But if the blow were given nearer to its centre, the onward movement would be more rapid, and the rotation slower; so that the whole beam really moves forwards, though the side which receives the blow moves faster than the other. In such a case, we may conceive the centre of spontaneous rotation to be, not *in* the body, but at a point beyond its farther extremity. Or, we might find a point in the beam, such that a blow struck against it would make the beam revolve round one of its extremities as a centre; the backward rotatory motion of that extremity being exactly equal to the onward movement of the mass.

235. *Centre of Percussion.*—We further see that, since a blow communicates no motion to those parts of a body which lie in the axis of spontaneous rotation, a fixed axis passing through the body in that situation would receive no shock or *percussion*

from the blow. If the place of the blow were altered, however, the centre of spontaneous rotation would no longer be the same; and a shock would be communicated to the axis. The point at which a body supported upon a fixed axis may be struck, without the axis receiving any shock, is termed its centre of percussion; and it is evident that this must be in every respect the most advantageous situation for an impulse to be communicated to it; since the whole force of the blow will be expended in putting the body in motion, and none will be left to communicate a shock to the axis. There is an instrument termed the Ballistic Pendulum, used to determine the velocity of cannon-balls when first fired, which affords a very good exemplification of this principle. It consists simply of a heavy mass of wood, suspended at the end of a long iron bar. The velocity with which it begins to move, when the ball strikes it, is known by observing the height to which it ascends; and from this the force of motion and the velocity of the ball are easily calculated. Now if the ball is fired against the mass of wood, so as to strike it at its centre of percussion, it simply causes the mass to swing like a pendulum; but if the stroke take place at any other point, it will tend to tear away the axis.

236. It is a very curious fact, that, if the centre of percussion of a body moving round a fixed axis be ascertained—and the place of the axis be changed, so as to make it pass through what was before the centre of percussion—the point which was previously the axis becomes the centre of percussion to the new axis. This principle has a very important connection with the doctrine of the pendulum, as will be shown hereafter (§. 280).

237. The importance of attending to these principles in the construction of machinery, will appear from one simple illustration. The Tilt Hammer, used in the forging of iron and steel, is a mass of great weight, fixed to a strong arm (commonly a beam of wood) of considerable length. This is supported upon an axis, which turns in collars, firmly bound down to a solid mass of iron and masonry, and this is deeply imbedded in the earth. The hammer is raised by the action of a wheel, turned by steam or water power; on the circumference of which are

fixed *cogs* or projections, that strike upon the arm of the hammer, behind its axis. The hammer is thus made to rise, immediately after it has fallen (by its own weight) from the point to which it was raised just before. Now the expense of erecting and keeping at work one of these hammers is very considerable; for however securely they are fixed in the first instance, they are very liable to break their axes, and to tear away their collars. This is owing to a want of sufficient attention to

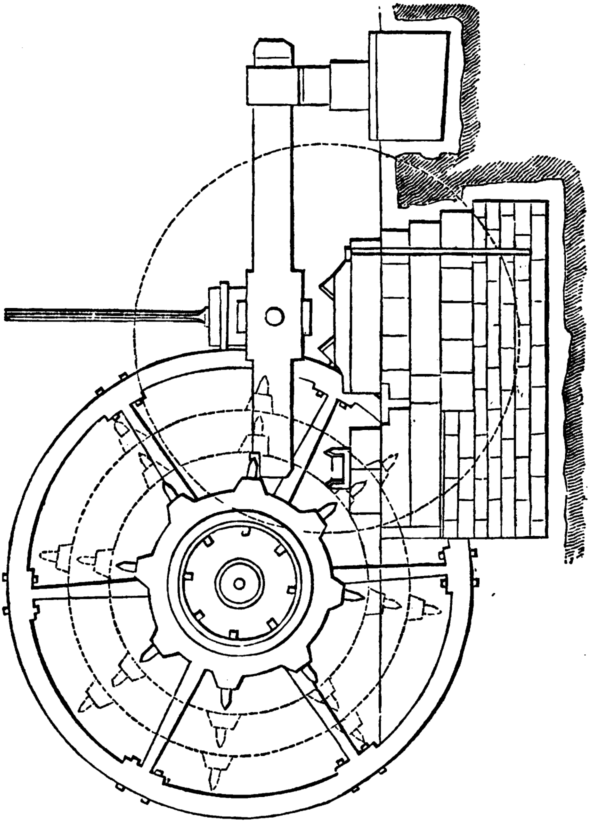


FIG. 53.

scientific principles in its construction. For if the hammer be formed and fixed in such a manner, that the blow which it receives from the wheel strikes its centre of percussion, the whole force of the stroke will be expended in lifting the hammer; and no *jar* will be experienced by the axle. And, again, if the blow given by the hammer be at its centre of gyration, the whole force of the stroke is communicated to the body beneath it; and the axis receives no shock or strain (§. 333). This seems never to be the case with those constructed upon the ordinary plan; since they all appear to expend a large part of the power which raises them, in beating about their axes, and in perpetual efforts to tear away their collars. Some practical knowledge of the kind of arrangement necessary appears to have been arrived at by the workmen employed in erecting these hammers; but this is of a very imperfect kind, and can only be rendered complete by the aid of scientific skill. This is one of the many instances, in which the benefit of science is shown (as the great Bacon long ago expressed it), "in shortening the long turnings and windings of experience."

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE MOTION OF FALLING BODIES.

238. The fall of a body towards the earth is the most familiar and constantly-occurring example of the law of gravitation. But it does not serve as a good illustration of this law; since we *see* only one part of its action,—the descent of the body to the ground. But since the attraction of all bodies is *mutual*, there must be a movement of the earth towards the stone, as well as a motion of the stone towards the earth. This motion, however, is proportional, for each body, to the bulk of the other. Thus, suppose that the stone weighed 1 lb., and the weight of the earth were 1,000,000 lbs.;—for every foot the stone moves towards the earth, the earth would move towards it 1,000,000th of a foot,—a quantity so small as to be quite inappreciable. But the disproportion between the bulk of the earth and the largest bodies that ever fall on its surface, is really far greater than this; so that the space through which the earth moves to meet the stone is so excessively minute, when compared with the space through which the stone falls to the earth, that we may disregard it in all our calculations. But the earth itself, if its movement round the sun were checked, would fall towards *it*, just as a stone drops to the earth; for the bulk of the sun is nearly 1,400,000 times that of the earth; and if these two bodies were free to move towards each other, therefore, the sun would only move 1 mile for every 1,400,000 miles traversed by the earth.

239. The motion of a stone in its fall to the earth is of that kind which is termed *uniformly accelerated* (§. 156); and the reason why it should be so is very obvious, when the nature of

attraction and the laws of motion are considered together. The attraction of the earth for the stone is continually generating a fresh amount of force; but if this were made to cease at any time, the body would continue to move at a uniform rate, with the force it had previously acquired. Hence, when a new amount of force is being constantly added to that previously existing, the motion must necessarily be uniformly accelerated. This principle is illustrated by a familiar comparison. Every school-boy knows that a long pea-shooter will *carry* much farther than a short one. The natives of South America shoot birds with arrows impelled by the breath through a hollow cane of six or eight feet long. A long gun, moreover, will *carry* much farther than a short one; and the ball, therefore, leaves its mouth with a much greater rate of movement, than it has acquired when it leaves the mouth of a short gun. The reason is very obvious. So long as the body to be propelled continues within the tube, it is being acted on,—by the force of the breath, in the case of the pea-shooter,—by that of the powder, in the case of the gun. It is continually receiving, therefore, a fresh amount of force, whilst in motion from that already applied, and its rate of movement within the tube will therefore be constantly increasing. When it quits the tube, however, it ceases to be acted on by any new force; and its rate of motion will entirely depend upon that which it had acquired at that moment. As its subsequent motion is being continually retarded by the friction and resistance of the air, as well as by the attraction of the earth, the distance to which it will be projected will, of course, be proportional to the rate of its movement, or the force it had gained when it left the tube.

240. Now if we consider the nature of the motion of a stone allowed to fall freely towards the earth, we shall at once perceive the influence of the same cause,—the continual application of a fresh amount of force, in producing the same result,—a continually accelerated motion. For at the moment at which the stone is let go, it has no velocity at all; when the earth's attraction first puts it in motion, its rate is very slow: if that attraction, however, could be suspended at any point of time, the stone

would continue to move, by the force it had acquired with a regular velocity; but as this attraction is continually operating, it must, by constantly adding to the force with which the body was previously moving, produce a constant increase in its rate. Thus, a heavy stone, allowed to fall freely to the ground, will move in the 1st second through a little more than 16 feet; but at the end of that time it will have acquired a force which would be enough, if acting alone, to carry it through 32 feet in the next second. In the next second, however, it moves not only through these 32 feet, by the force it had acquired in the first, but through 16 feet additional, on account of the fresh impulse it is continually receiving through the earth's attraction, which is precisely the same during the 2nd second as during the 1st. Moreover, at the end of this 2nd second, it will move with the same continued rate of 32 feet per second, which it had acquired at the end of the 1st second; and with an additional velocity of 32 feet, which it has acquired during the 2nd second; and thus its rate of movement at the end of the 2nd second will be 64 feet per second. It will continue to move with this velocity during the 3rd second; but will also gain, from the constant attraction of the earth, the same increase as in the 1st and 2nd seconds,—namely, an additional *fall* of 16 feet during the second, and an additional *rate* of 32 feet at its end. The space fallen through in each of the 1st three seconds will therefore be, 16, 48, 80 feet; and the velocity acquired at the end of each will be 32, 64, 96 feet.

241. Carrying on the same mode of reckoning, we should find that the *velocity acquired* at the end of any given number of seconds, is twice that number of seconds multiplied by 16 feet, the space fallen through in the 1st second. And as the space fallen through in any given second, is determined by the velocity it had acquired at the end of the preceding second, with the fresh movement it gains in the second itself, the amount is at once ascertained by adding 16 feet to the velocity gained at the end of the preceding second. The following table will show the results of this simple calculation for the first ten seconds:—

VELOCITY ACQUIRED AT THE END OF EACH SECOND.					SPACE FALLEN THROUGH IN EACH SECOND.	
					16 feet	I.
I.	32 feet	+	16 feet	=	48 ...	II.
II.	64 ...	+	16 —	=	80 ...	III.
III.	96 ...	+	16 —	=	112 ...	IV.
IV.	128 ...	+	16 —	=	144 ...	V.
V.	160 ...	+	16 —	=	176 ...	VI.
VI.	192 ...	+	16 —	=	208 ...	VII.
VII.	224 ...	+	16 —	=	240 ...	VIII.
VIII.	256 ...	+	16 —	=	272 ...	IX.
IX.	288 ...	+	16 —	=	304 ...	X.

The column on the left gives the velocity acquired at the end of each second; this added to 16 feet, the additional quantity gained in each second, gives the whole amount through which the body moves in the *succeeding* second, as expressed in the right hand column. Now, when the numbers in this column be examined, they will be found to be multiples of 16 by the series of odd numbers, commencing with 1; and it is a very simple mode of reckoning the space fallen through in any given second, to multiply by 16 the odd number corresponding to that of the second in such a series as the following:

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	VI.	VII.	VIII.	IX.	X.
1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19.

It will be further remarked, that each odd number is *one less than double* the number of the second. Thus, if we wish to know what would be the space fallen through by a stone in the 15th second of its descent, we double 15, and take 1 less, which gives us 29, the odd number corresponding to XV. in this series; on multiplying 29 by 16, we get 464, the number required.

242. We more commonly wish, however, to know the *whole* space fallen through in any given number of seconds. This may, of course, be estimated by adding together the amount fallen through in each. Thus, in the first two seconds, the body falls through (I.) 16 + (II.) 48 = 64. In the first three, it falls through (I.) 16 + (II.) 48 + (III.) 80 = 144. And in the first four, it falls through (I.) 16 + (II.) 48 + (III.) 80 + (IV.) 112 = 256. Now these numbers, 16, 64, 144, 256, which express the total space fallen through in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th seconds respectively, are found to

correspond exactly with the squares of these last numbers, multiplied by 16. Thus, for the 1st second, 1 × 1 × 16 = 16, the number of feet fallen through in it. For the two first seconds, 2 × 2 × 16 = 64, the number of feet fallen through in them. For the 3 first seconds, 3 × 3 × 16 = 144, the number of feet fallen through in them. And, for the 4 first, 4 × 4 × 16 = 256, the number of feet fallen through in them. Hence the rule for ascertaining the whole number of feet fallen through in any given number of seconds is simply this:—Square the number of seconds, and multiply the product by 16, which will give the amount required. Thus, if I let fall a stone from the top of a precipice, and 7 seconds elapse before I hear the sound of its arrival at the bottom, I should know that the height of the precipice would be 7 × 7 × 16 = 784 feet.* The following table will show the results of the foregoing calculation up to the 10th second:—

SPACE FALLEN THROUGH IN EACH SECOND.		TOTAL SPACE FALLEN IN WHOLE TIME.	
I.	16		1 Sec.
II.	48	64	2 „
III.	80	144	3 „
IV.	112	256	4 „
V.	144	400	5 „
VI.	176	576	6 „
VII.	208	784	7 „
VIII.	240	1024	8 „
IX.	272	1296	9 „
X.	304	1600	10 „

243. The whole subject may, perhaps, be more easily comprehended by the aid of a very simple diagram. In the whole triangle, A B C, (Fig. 54) the perpendicular side, A B, expresses the time through which a body is falling; in the present instance, it is divided into 5 parts, which represent 5 seconds. The horizontal side, or base, B C, expresses the force acquired by the body at the end of that period; and the horizontal lines at IV., III., II., and I., in like manner express the force possessed by the falling body at the end of each of the

---

* This estimate would have to be corrected for the loss of time occasioned by the travelling of the sound from the bottom of the precipice to the top; as will be explained in the Treatise on Sound.

preceding seconds. As A represents the point from which the body is let fall, its force is *there* nothing; but it is undergoing continual increase, as represented by the constant tendency of the slanting side A C towards the right, so as to increase the lines at I., II., III., IV., and V., in regular proportion. Now, the body setting off with no force, acquires at the end of the first second, a force expressed by the horizontal line at I., and in so doing, it passes through a space represented by the small triangle 1. The force acquired at the end of the first second would *of itself* carry it, in the next second, through a space represented by the parallelogram, of which one side is represented by the *force*, and the other by the *time*; and this parallelogram contains the two triangles 2, and 3, each equal to 1. But during the 2nd second, there is an additional force gained, equal to that acquired in the first; and this causes the body to traverse the additional space represented by the triangle 4. Hence, the whole space which the body falls through in the 2nd second, is represented by the three triangles, 2, 3, 4; and the force it has acquired at the end of the 2nd second is represented by the horizontal line at II. This force would of itself carry it in the 3rd second through a space represented by the parallelogram that contains the triangles 5, 6, 7, 8; and the additional force gained in that second is represented by the triangle 9. The same principle applies to the representation of the 4th and 5th seconds; and by prolonging the triangle downwards, any number of seconds might be represented in the same manner.

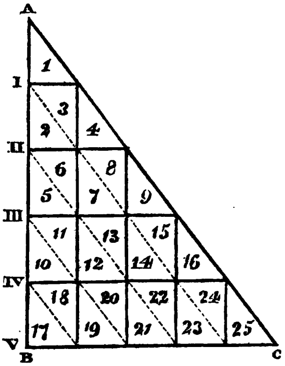


FIG. 54.

244. In this diagram there are set before the eye the rules already laid down. For it is seen that, if we call the space fallen through in the first second 1,—the space fallen through in the next second will be, by the previously acquired velocity 2, and by the additional velocity 1, making in all 3,—and the total

space fallen through in the first two seconds will be 4, the square of 2. In the same manner, the space fallen through in the 3d second is altogether represented by 5 triangles; that of the 4th second by 7 triangles; and that in the 5th second by 9 triangles; —in each case, by one less than double, as already explained. And, lastly, the whole space fallen through in any given number of seconds is represented by the whole number of triangles above its horizontal line;—being, for 1 second, 1,—for 2 seconds, 4,—for 3 seconds, 9,—for 4 seconds, 16,—and for 5 seconds, 25; in each case, the square of the number of seconds.

245. Some simple exercises may be advantageously founded upon these rules; serving to test the student's acquaintance with them. Thus, it is required to know which of two stones, A and B, will arrive first at the ground, A being let fall at a height of 1024 feet from the ground, and B, two seconds afterwards, being let fall at a height of 576 feet. It is evident, then, that B commences its fall from a point 448 feet below A, and that the first second of *its* fall will correspond to the third second of A's. Hence, in order to compare the relative situation of the two at each second, we must make such a table as the following; in which the place of A is given by the number of feet it has passed through from the commencement of its fall; whilst that of B is found by adding to the number of feet through which *it* has fallen at each period, the amount (448) which it was below A when the former began to fall.

	A FALLS.		B FALLS.
I.	16		
II.	64		
III.	144	I.	16 + 448 = 464
IV.	256	II.	64 + 448 = 512
V.	400	III.	144 + 448 = 592
VI.	576	IV.	256 + 448 = 704
VII.	784	V.	400 + 448 = 848
VIII.	1024	VI.	576 + 448 = 1024

Hence it appears that they will both arrive at the ground at the same time; since, although B is 320 feet below A at the end of the first second of its descent, A gradually gains upon B, in consequence of the greater velocity it has acquired through its longer time of falling. In the next second, supposing the fall to continue, A would leave B behind; for this being the 9th second of A's fall, it will have passed through 1296 feet at the end of it; whilst, being only the 7th second of B's, the latter will have only fallen through 784 feet, which, added to 448, makes its distance but 1232 feet from the point at which A started; and this difference would go on increasing with every succeeding second.

246. These laws regulating the descent of falling bodies, hold good not only when the bodies are allowed to fall freely through the air, but also when, by any artificial means, their proper velocity is diminished; and this fact has been very beautifully applied in the construction of a machine by which they may be experimentally illustrated. We will suppose two equal weights, A and B, suspended by a line that passes over a pulley; it is obvious that these weights will remain at rest, provided that they are not made to move by any force applied to them. But, if we add a small weight to one of them, that one will of course descend. It will not move, however, with a velocity of 16 feet during the first second, or a rate at all near it; for though the small weight, if left to itself, would fall at this rate, the attraction of the earth for it, when it is attached to one of the weights, causes it to set in motion both the weights, and also the string and pulley. By far the largest proportion of its force, therefore, is expended in overcoming the *inertia* (§. 147) of these bodies; and the velocity of the movement which it makes in connection with them will be proportionably less. Thus we will suppose the two weights, A and B, each to weigh 7½ oz., making together 15 oz., and the additional weight to be 1 oz. Then the attraction of the earth for this 1 oz. weight will have to put in motion 16 oz. weight;* and thus the force having to do 16 times the work, can only do it 1-16th as fast, so that the weights will move, one down and the other up, at the rate of only 1 foot per second, instead of 16. But supposing the motion to continue, it will take place according to the same laws as those which govern the ordinary descent of falling bodies;—that is, the space fallen through in the 2nd

---

* In this calculation, the inertia of the wheel, for the sake of simplicity, is not includ

second will be 3 times that of the 1st, or 3 feet; and the total space fallen through in the first 2 seconds will therefore be 4 feet. In like manner, the spaces fallen through in the 3rd, 4th, and 5th seconds respectively, will be 5, 7, and 9 feet; and the *total* space fallen through at the end of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th seconds, will be 9, 16, and 25 feet,—that is the square of the number of seconds multiplied into the space fallen through in the first second, which, in the present instance is 1 foot.

247. This is the principle of the very beautiful instrument named Atwood's Machine, after its inventor. It consists of an upright scale of feet and inches, which may be made of any convenient length,—usually 6 or 7 feet. At the top of this is a pulley, the spindle of which turns upon friction-wheels, (§. 237), so that the loss that would be caused by its friction is prevented as much as possible. There is attached to the machine a small piece of clock-work, with a pendulum adjusted to beat seconds. Over the pulley hangs a line with a weight at each end; and the weights are so made, that, by taking off or putting on different pieces, we may give them exactly the proportion to each other which we desire. If they are equal, they will hang stationary, as in the former instance; but if we put them in motion, they will continue to move at the same rate as far as the length of the line permits,—friction being almost entirely removed, and the resistance of the air not making a perceptible difference in so short a space. But if we add a small weight to either of them, that one will descend with a uniformly-accelerated motion, as already stated. By varying the proportion between the additional weight and the sum of the two, we can exactly bring the velocity to any scale we please. The most convenient is one of 3 inches per second; and it is obtained by the following adjustment. This velocity is 1-64th of the velocity of a falling body left to itself (16 feet=192 inches, which, divided by 3, gives 64); and therefore the attrac-

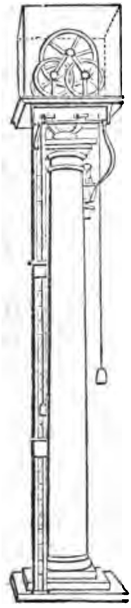


FIG. 55.

tion of the earth for a certain weight must be made to move 64 times that weight, in order to produce a movement of only 1-64th the velocity. Hence (putting out of view the inertia of the pulley, which has also to be considered), each of the weights should be 31½ times the additional weight, so that this may be 1-64th of the whole.

248. The heavier weight, being thus adjusted to descend through 3 inches in the first second, will pass through 3 × 3 = 9 inches in the 2nd second, 5 × 3 = 15 inches in the 3d second, 7 × 3 = 21 inches in the 4th second, 9 × 3 = 27 inches in the 5th, and so on. In like manner, the space fallen through in any number of seconds, will be the square of that number, multiplied by 3 inches, the space fallen through in the first second; thus, the whole space fallen through in 5 seconds will be 5 × 5 × 3 = 75 inches. This is shown on the machine, by fixing a flat stage at the several parts of the scale of inches to which the weight ought to descend in 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 seconds respectively; the heavier weight being then drawn up to the top, and let go exactly at the same time with any beat of the pendulum, it will be heard to strike upon the stage exactly with that one of the succeeding beats for which its place has been adjusted.

249. The machine will not only thus illustrate the laws regulating the space fallen through in each second, and the total amount of the whole; but it will also show, by an ingenious contrivance, the velocity acquired at the end of any particular second, and the rate at which the body would continue to move by it alone, the force of gravity being suspended. This is accomplished by giving to the additional weight the form of a bar, and laying it on one of the weights, in such a manner as to be lifted off by a perforated stage, through which the weight itself can pass. When the additional weight has thus been lifted off, the two weights become equal, and they continue to move, therefore, solely by the force they had acquired. Now it has been shown that the velocity acquired at the end of any number of seconds, is twice that number of seconds multiplied by the space fallen through in the first second. Thus, if the perforated stage be fixed at 12 inches down the scale, and the

solid stage at 12 below this, the heavier weight will descend through the first 12 inches in two seconds; but it will then have acquired a velocity which will enable it to go through the next 12 inches in another second, even when the additional weight is removed. If the solid stage were fixed at 24 inches below the first, that space would be traversed in 2 seconds; if at 36 inches, in 3 seconds, and so on;—the velocity of 12 inches per second, acquired during the first two seconds, having a uniform continuance until it is checked. In like manner, if the perforated stage be placed at 27 inches down the scale, and the solid one be placed at 18 inches below this, the loaded weight will descend to the first in 3 seconds ($3 \times 3 \times 3 = 27$); and it will pass through the next 18 inches, after its additional weight has been removed, in the succeeding second,—since its acquired velocity at the end of the 3d second is 18 inches per second ($2 \times 3 \times 3$), continuing, if allowed to do so, at the same rate, for any number of seconds.

250. The influence of gravitation upon a body which is thrown up from the earth's surface with a certain force, has the effect of progressively *retarding* its movement, until it is at last completely checked; this retardation of a *rising* body is uniform, and is governed by the same law as the *acceleration* of a *falling* body. For it is obvious that the earth's attraction will make a certain diminution, during the first second, in the rate of the body's motion, so that it will commence the next second with a retarded velocity; the continued attraction downwards will make a further diminution during the succeeding second; and thus its rate will be gradually diminished by the end of each second, in exactly the same proportion as it would have increased if the body had been moving towards the earth,—namely, 32 feet for each second. Thus, we will suppose a body projected upwards from the earth's surface at the rate of 160 feet per second; during the first second of its movement, it will be gradually retarded, so that it will only move through 144 ($160 - 16$) feet; and by the beginning of the next second its velocity will have been reduced to 128 feet per second. In the next second it will only move upwards to the amount of 112 feet; and its velocity at the end of that time will only be 96

feet. By the same diminution, in the succeeding seconds, its rate of motion at the beginning of the 5th second will be only 32 feet; and, owing to the constantly-retarding force of the earth's attraction, the whole of this force will be spent in carrying up the body through 16 feet more, after which it will cease to rise, having been altogether carried up to the height of 400 feet. The moment it ceases to rise, it must begin to fall again; and in 5 seconds more it will reach the ground, having fallen 400 feet, and acquired the velocity of 160 feet per second, the very same as that with which it was first projected.

251. Hence the law with reference to *rising* bodies is exactly the converse of that which has been stated in regard to their *falling*; for the movement of the former is uniformly retarded by the earth's attraction, to the same amount that the velocity of the latter is increased by it; and the height which a body thrown up with a given force will reach, is exactly the same as the height through which a body must fall in order to acquire that force, and may therefore be determined by it. Thus if we wish to know how high a body will rise, that is thrown up with a velocity of 224 feet per second, and how many seconds will elapse before it reaches the ground again, we ascertain it by considering how many seconds would be required by a falling body to acquire that velocity; this number is 7, for $2 \times 7 \times 16 = 224$. The body will continue to rise, therefore, for 7 seconds, and will gain a height of 784 feet ($7 \times 7 \times 16$); after which it will occupy 7 seconds in its fall, and will come down with the velocity with which it was projected upwards.*

252. The phenomena of retarded motion may be beautifully shown by Atwood's Machine. For this purpose, the two weights A and B are so adjusted, that one of them, A, shall exceed the other by a certain quantity, say half an ounce; which difference shall cause it to descend at the rate of 4 inches per second. But we lay upon B an additional weight equal to double this difference; so that B is now the heavier by half an ounce. This additional weight, being in the form of a bar, may be removed

---

* In this statement, it is not thought worth while to take into account the retarding influence of the resistance of the air, which will slightly alter the result

by the perforated stage at any point we choose, so that A again becomes the heavier. Now if we fix the perforated stage at 36 inches down the scale, and draw up B, loaded with the bar, to the top, it will fall through this space in 3 seconds (3 × 3 × 4), and will have gained a velocity of 24 inches per second (2 × 3 × 4); but the bar is then removed by the perforated stage, and A becomes the heavier. The velocity which B had gained, however, occasions the continuance of its movement in the same direction, for a certain time; but the movement is continually retarded by the superior weight of A, and will be gradually brought to a close, and B will begin to ascend. This will not happen until B has descended to 36 inches below the perforated stage, the limit to its extent being exactly determined by the space through which it had previously fallen;—and this movement will occupy the same time, namely 3 seconds. The return of B to the perforated stage will occupy 3 seconds more; and it will have acquired, by that time, the same velocity as at first,—namely 24 inches per second. In passing through the perforated stage, it will again take up the bar, and thus be made as much heavier than A, as it before was lighter. It will continue to rise, however, by the velocity it had acquired, and will reach the top of the scale in 3 seconds more, after which it will begin to descend again, and the whole process will be repeated as at first. This alternate rise and fall of the weights would continue forever, like the swinging of a pendulum, if it were not for the friction of the pulley and the resistance of the air; these opposing causes make each movement somewhat less than the preceding one, and at last bring them to a close.

253. It is through the resistance of the air, that the rates of falling are so different in different cases. Thus, a stone or a piece of metal fall at once to the ground; whilst a feather or a shred of thin cloth are comparatively long in reaching it. Both are resisted by the air in proportion to the surface they expose to it; but whilst the surface of the stone or metal is very small in proportion to its weight, that of the feather or cloth is very large. A piece of gold, extended into a thin leaf, is buoyed up by the air just as much as a feather or piece of paper; and if it

were possible to compress a feather into such a small compass, that it should only have the same surface with a stone of equal weight, it would fall just as fast. The truth of this statement may be shown by making a piece of metal and a feather fall together through a tall receiver, from which the air has been exhausted; they will reach the bottom in precisely the same time. This is commonly termed the *guinea and feather* experiment. It was one of the most remarkable errors of ancient philosophers, that they imagined the time occupied by a body in falling, to be in contrary proportion to its weight,—that is, that a stone of ten pounds would fall ten times as fast as a stone of one pound, or in one-tenth part of the time. This error probably originated in the observation of the slow fall of what are commonly termed *light* bodies (§. 97). The attraction of the earth would produce the same effect upon all; and the difference is due only to the varying resistance of the air. Between a stone of one pound, and another of ten pounds, however, the difference of the resistance of the air would be very slight; and it seems wonderful that so easy an experiment, as that of comparing their times of fall

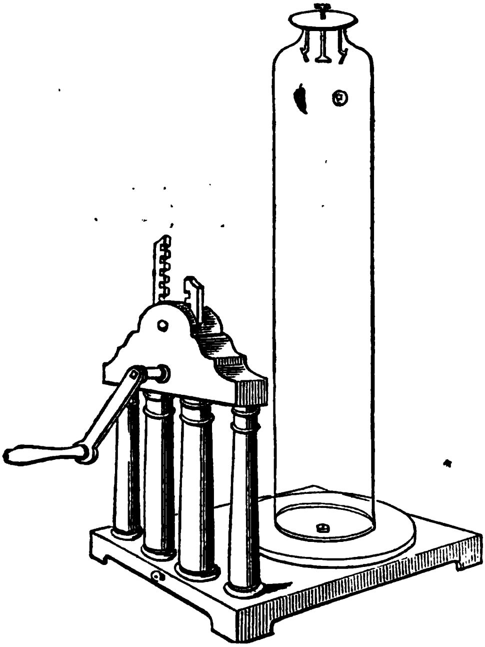


FIG. 56.

through the same height, was never made. This ridiculous error was long kept up by the authority of Aristotle, whose supremacy in matters of philosophy no one dared to question during the middle ages; and it was first overthrown by Galileo at the end of the sixteenth century.—The degree in which the resistance of the air acts on what are ordinarily termed *heavy* bodies, is shown by the fact, that a bullet descending freely through the atmosphere does not ever gain a greater velocity than about 260 feet per second, whatever may be the height through which it falls;—the resistance of the air being then so great as to resist any further acceleration. (See §. 151.)

CHAPTER IX.

THE PENDULUM.

254. By a pendulum we are to understand a heavy body suspended from a fixed point by a rod or cord, and made to swing backwards and forwards by an impulse which draws it out of the perpendicular direction. This simple instrument is of the greatest importance to us in the measurement of time, and therefore in the determination of a vast number of natural phenomena; thus in astronomy, the exact determination of time is necessary for almost every observation of the heavenly bodies; and it was by accurately observing the differences in the number of beats of the same pendulum during a given time, at different parts of the earth's surface, that the difference between the polar and equatorial diameters of our globe was first ascertained (§. 95).

255. There is little difficulty in comprehending certain obvious principles, on which the action of the pendulum depends. We shall in the first instance, for the sake of simplicity, consider the weight or bob as spherical, and the line that suspends it as having itself no weight; so that the centre of gravity of the whole is in the centre of the bob. Let A B be such a pendulum, hanging at rest from the point A; it is obvious, from what has been formerly stated regarding the properties of the centre of gravity, that this will be in a state of rest only when it is in the lowest position that it can assume, which is, of course, when the line A B is perpendicular. But suppose that the ball B is drawn or pushed out of the perpendicular, as to C; then it will tend to return to the point B, precisely as would a rounded body set free to roll down

an inclined plane; since in so doing it will descend through the height E B. But its motion, at first slow, will gradually increase in rapidity, on the principles explained in the preceding chapter; and by the time that it has arrived at B, it has acquired a considerable velocity. This acquired velocity is sufficient to carry the body onward in the same circular line, even though it is no longer descending, but, having passed the lowest point B, it begins to rise again. For it will be evident, from the law of retarded motion (§. 250), that the velocity gradually acquired by the ball in its accelerating descent from C to B, is exactly that which, if applied in the opposite direction to the ball when at B, would move it from B to C with a velocity gradually retarded by the influence of gravity; and which, acting on it in the direction B C, will carry it onwards to the point D at an equal distance on the other side. At D it would come to a stand, the moving power being then expended. Having arrived at D, it recommences its descent towards B, and gathers, as before, enough of force to carry it beyond B, to C, the point from which it started, and from which it will again return in the same manner.

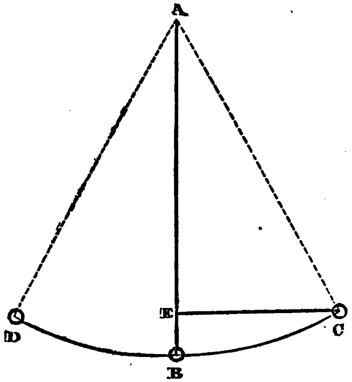


FIG. 57.

256. The vibrations of such a pendulum, even if friction could be done away with at the point of support, must come to an end in no very long time; since the extent of every one is rendered less than that of the last, by the resistance of the air. A pendulum made to vibrate in a perfect vacuum, however, will continue for many hours.

257. The length of time which is required for each vibration is but little influenced by the degree of *swing* which it has; that is, the vibrations occupy nearly the same time whether they are

long or short. Indeed, for all practical purposes, the times of vibrations of different lengths may be regarded as equal, at least while they are not *very* long; as will be presently shown. This property is termed *isochronism*, from two Greek words signifying equal times; and the vibrations are said to be *isochronous*, when long and short vibrations are performed in the same time. The isochronism of the pendulum was not known before the time of Galileo; and is said to have been first observed by him when very young, in the swinging of a lamp hung from the roof of the cathedral at Pisa. He was struck with the equality of the times in which the lamp continued to perform its vibrations as its motion subsided; "and this observation of a *child* became in the mind of the *man* a principle of philosophy, on which some of the greatest discoveries of science have been founded." But the time of the vibrations depends upon the length of the pendulum; and for every measure of *length*, there is a certain determinate *time*. Thus, the length of a pendulum which should occupy one second in each vibration (such as that of a common eight-day clock), would be found to be about 39$\frac{1}{7}$ inches,—if we could measure the distance from the point of suspension to the point in which its whole weight might be regarded as concentrated. Now the length of a pendulum vibrating half-seconds, such as that of a small table-clock, would be about 9$\frac{3}{4}$ inches, or one-fourth of the last, reckoned in the same way; whilst the length of a pendulum whose beat occupies two seconds, is about 156$\frac{1}{2}$ inches, or four times the last. Thus we see that, when the time is doubled, the length is quadrupled; and that, when the time is only half, the length is a quarter. The law expressing the proportion between the time of vibration and the length of the pendulum is, therefore, simply this; —that the time varies in proportion to the square of the length. Thus a pendulum whose vibrations are required to be 3 seconds in length, must be 9 times the length of that vibrating single seconds, or about 352$\frac{1}{4}$ inches, almost the height of a common three-story house; whilst a pendulum to vibrate only thirds of a second, must be only 1-9th the length of a seconds' pendulum, or about 4$\frac{1}{3}$ inches.

258. In order that the laws regulating the action of the pendulum may be properly understood, it will be necessary to consider the mode in which the force of gravity will act upon bodies, in causing their descent along inclined surfaces, whether these surfaces are *plane* or curved.

259. Every one knows that a body left to itself will roll or slide down a hill, provided that its friction be not too great to prevent its being set in motion. We are continually in the habit of trying the level of a table, by putting a marble, a ruler, a pencil-case, or any round body, upon it; and observing if it has a tendency to roll in either direction, or remains at rest in all positions. We are also familiar with the fact, that the rapidity of the movement depends on the degree of steepness or inclination of the surface,—that is, upon the amount of its *fall* in a given length,—being greater as this is increased. And it is further a matter of common observation, that the body commences its movement slowly, and increases in its rate, until it arrives at the bottom. The modification in the law of gravity, which is applicable to this case, is very easily understood. Putting aside the effects of friction and resistance of the air, a body moving down an inclined plane will have acquired, by the time it reaches the bottom, a velocity exactly equal to that which it would have acquired by falling directly through a height equal to that of the plane. Thus, suppose an inclined surface to be 144 feet higher at one end than at the other; a body, in falling directly through that height, will occupy 3 seconds; and at the end of that period, it will be moving with a velocity of 96 feet per second (§. 242). This velocity, then, will be precisely that which the same or any other body would acquire in rolling down an inclined plane having the same height, *whatever be the length of the plane.* Thus, the plane might be so long—a mile for instance—that its inclination would be scarcely perceptible; or it might be so short—200 feet for example—as to be steeper than the steepest accessible hill: in both instances, the velocity acquired at the bottom will be the same, so that the body would move over the same space of level ground in the next second; but the length of time

necessary for the acquirement of that velocity will be very much greater in the former case than in the latter, and the rate of movement will therefore have been much slower.

260. It is evident, then, that we can so proportion the length of an inclined plane to its height, as to make the rate of movement what we please. Thus, if we gradually diminish the height, the descent will be slower and slower, until the plane becomes level, in which case there will be no movement at all; or we may gradually increase it, until the plane becomes perpendicular, and then the body upon it will fall freely, according to the regular law. In any case, there will be precisely the same proportional acceleration of the movement during the descent as when the body is falling freely; but the rate per second will be diminished according to the amount of inclination, just as it is in Atwood's machine (§. 247), by the partial counterpoise of the weight. As the *rate* of movement which the body has acquired at the end of its descent, is always that which it would have gained when falling perpendicularly through the same height, whilst the *time* which is occupied in its fall depends upon the *length* of the plane, it is obvious that the rate per second at which the body commences its movement will depend upon the proportion between the height of the plane and its length. Thus, supposing that the plane be 144 feet high, and 288 feet long; a body would require only 3 seconds to fall through its height perpendicularly, but would occupy 6 seconds in rolling down the incline, commencing with a velocity of only 8 feet per second, instead of 16. Its rate of movement will increase in the regular proportion; thus falling 8 feet in the first second, it will fall (4 × 8) 32 feet in 2 seconds, (9 × 8) 72 feet in 3 seconds, (16 × 8) 128 feet in 4 seconds, (25 × 8) 200 feet in 5 seconds, and (36 × 8) 228 feet or the whole length of the plane in 6 seconds. At the end of this time it will have acquired the velocity of (6 × 2 × 8) 96 feet per second, which would have been acquired by a body falling perpendicularly in 3 seconds. But suppose that the plane had a length equal to 16 times its height; the body would then require 16 times 3 seconds for its descent, and

would only commence at the rate of 1 foot per second. The whole space passed through in 48 seconds is found by multiplying the square of 48 by 1 foot (the space passed through in the 1st second), as in the instances formerly stated (§. 246); and this gives 2304 feet, the length which the plane has been supposed to be (16 × 144). The velocity acquired at the end of the descent is found, by the same rule, to be (48 × 2 × 1) 96 feet, the same as that of a body falling through a steeper plane, or through the perpendicular.

261. Hence we see that, when a body descends along an inclined plane, its rate of motion is diminished in the exact proportion in which its length exceeds its height; but that the law of acceleration, owing to the continual action of the force of gravity, is exactly the same as if the body were falling freely. It is easy to understand why this diminution of rate should take place. For when a body is resting on a level surface, the whole of its weight is resting on that surface, and its gravity cannot, therefore, put it in motion. On the other hand, if the plane be raised into the perpendicular position, none of the weight is supported by it, and the force of gravity acts freely on the body. In all intermediate positions, a larger or smaller part of the weight is supported, in proportion as the plane approaches the horizontal or the perpendicular position. Now the action of the force of gravity upon a part of the body has to put in motion the whole of it, just as in Atwood's machine; and thus the rate of its movement must be diminished, according to the proportion between the moving power and the amount to be moved. How this proportion is to be estimated, will be explained when the Inclined Plane is considered as one of the mechanical powers (§. 352).

262. When a body moves down a *curved* surface, however, the case is materially altered. In the inclined plane, the amount of descent or fall is the same in every part of the plane; and consequently the acceleration of the body's motion is *uniform*. But this is not the case in a curved surface, as will be evident from a little consideration. In the accompanying figure, the straight line A B represents an inclined *plane*, which is

divided into eight portions by horizontal lines drawn at equal distances; these portions are equal, so that the *length* of the plane, everywhere, corresponds with its *height*. But A C B and A D B are two portions of circles, beginning and ending at the same points; and the movement of a body along surfaces having these curvatures will be very different from that of a body descending the plane A B. For it is shown by the figure that, at the beginning of its course, the curve A C B departs but little from the level; so that for a body to descend through 1-8th of its height, it must pass through much more than 1-8th of its length; whilst, in the latter part of its course, its rate of descent is much more rapid, since it approaches more nearly to the perpendicular. Precisely the opposite is the case in regard to the curve A D B. The rate of movement of a body descending through the curve A C B will be at first slow, therefore, but will afterwards increase more rapidly; whilst, if descending in the curve A D B, its rate will be at first much more rapid than on the inclined plane, but it will afterwards be increased in a much less degree. The precise rate of a body descending through either of these curves, or any others, can be determined by mathematical investigations, which would be here out of place; but the curious result is obtained from all,—that, whatever be the nature of the curve, the velocity which the body has acquired at the end of its descent, is exactly that which it would have acquired in its descent along an inclined plane of any length but having the same height, or in its perpendicular fall through a space equal to the height of the plane.

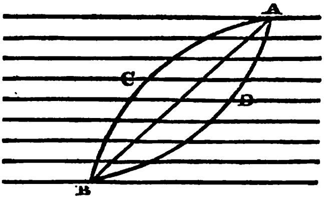


Fig. 58.

263. It is not difficult to understand that a curve might be so formed, that the amount of its inclination at every point shall be in proportion to the distance (along the curve) of that point from the bottom; as for instance that, half way up the ascent, the curve shall rise 1 inch for a foot of its length;

whilst, at twice the distance from the bottom, the curve shall rise 2 inches for a foot of its length. Such a curve will have this remarkable property,—that, from whatever part of it a body be allowed to descend, it will reach the bottom in the same time. This will be easily understood by reference to the subjoined figure. Let A B be the curve; and Q and P two bodies so placed, that the distance P A (measured along the curve) is equal to twice Q A; then, by the nature of the curve, its inclination at the point P is twice as great as at Q, and a body which begins its descent at P will have twice the rate of the body which starts from Q. In the first second, therefore, P will have fallen twice the distance, reaching *p* 1; whilst the body Q reaches only *q* 1: and as the distance P *p* 1 is twice Q *q* 1, the remaining distance A *p* 1 is equal to twice the remaining distance A *q* 1; hence the acceleration during the next second of the motion of the body P, will be twice that of the body Q; and P will move through the space between *p* 1 and *p* 2, whilst Q moves only half the distance, that between *q* 1 and *q* 2. In the same manner, the distances which remain to be traversed by P and Q during the third second are still as 2 to 1; and the rate of P being all along double that of Q, these distances will be performed in equal times, so that the two bodies will arrive at A together.

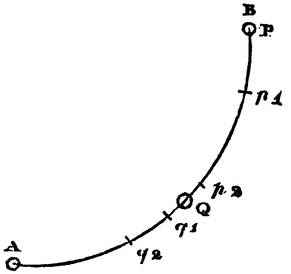


FIG. 59.

264. The same principle holds good in regard to bodies commencing their descent at *any* part of the curve. Thus, suppose Q to commence near the bottom, and P at a distance (measured along the curve) equal to six times that of Q; then the inclination or *fall* of the curve at P being six times that of the curve at Q, the rate of a body starting at P will be six times that of a body starting at Q; and as, from the nature of the curve, the acceleration of motion, during each succeeding second, bears the same proportion in both cases to the rate with which they

started, the body P will in each second move six times as fast as Q in the corresponding second, and will therefore arrive at the bottom at the same time with it. Such a curve is called an *isochronous* curve; and it is that known to mathematicians as the *cycloid*. It is precisely the curve which any point in the circumference of a carriage-wheel describes, when its motion round the axle is combined with its forward movement along the road; and it may be marked along a board, by fixing a pencil or piece of chalk on the circumference of a wheel, and making the latter roll on any straight edge.

265. In all the preceding statements, the effect of *friction* has been left out of the question; it would, however, greatly influence the result; since in the case of two bodies descending along unequal lengths of the cycloid, the one which traverses the longest space is more retarded by friction than the other. The most effectual way of getting rid of this friction, is to support the body by a string hanging from a fixed point, in the manner of a pendulum. But a body thus supported would obviously vibrate in a portion of a circle; and some peculiar means must be taken to make it vibrate in a cycloid. The very simple means to be adopted, depend upon a peculiar property of that curve. If two surfaces be cut out of the form of half cycloids (represented by A B and A C) and they be placed together, so that their extremities join in A whilst their other ends B and C are in the same horizontal line,—a body P suspended from A by a string equal in length to A B or A C, will oscillate from B to C along a curve which is not a circle but a cycloid. From the peculiar nature of this curve it results, that, whether the oscillations be long or short, whether they commence from B, P, or E, they will occupy the same time; since the body will descend along the cycloid in equal times, wherever it commences its descent; and the same law holds good regarding its

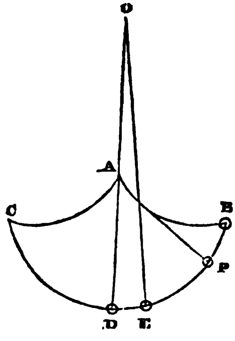


FIG. 60.

ascent on the other side. By such a contrivance, then, we might obtain a pendulum which should be perfectly isochronous, —that is, which should oscillate in precisely the same time, whether its movements be long or short.

266. But though the plan appears so simple, it cannot be accurately put in practice; for it is impossible to find any material fit to support a pendulum, which would not require some force (however small) to bend it against the two cycloidal cheeks, and which would not be in some degree attracted by them when brought into close contact. Hence the operation of such a pendulum would be sufficiently disturbed, for its movements to be less regular, than those of a simple pendulum oscillating through small spaces. For if a circle be drawn from the point O, which is at twice the distance of A from D, this circle will so nearly coincide with the cycloid for a short distance on either side of the point D (say to E) that the movement of a pendulum along that portion of the circle will be isochronous, whether they be longer or shorter. If, however, the oscillations be much longer, they will cease to be isochronous; for they will occupy a longer time, in consequence of the greater space to be passed through; since this greater length is not compensated in the circle, as it is in the cycloid, by a proportionably greater inclination. Hence, in the construction of clocks of the best kind, the simple pendulum is employed; and it is connected with the clock-work in such a manner as to oscillate through small spaces, so that its beats always occupy the same time, whether they are a little longer or a little shorter than the average.

267. But the slightest variation in the length of the pendulum, that is, the distance of the weight from the point of suspension, influences the time of its oscillation; and this may be readily explained according to the law of the descent of bodies along inclined surfaces, already stated. For it is obvious that, since the ball of a short pendulum has to move down a much *steeper* curve than the ball of a long one, it must therefore descend much faster; so that a very slight diminution in the length of the pendulum, by increasing the steepness of the curve even in a very trifling degree, will diminish the time of its oscillations;

and though this diminution may not be perceptible when two or three, or even twenty or thirty are counted, it becomes very evident when a large number are registered, as they are in a clock. In regulating a clock, therefore, we shorten the pendulum (by turning a screw at the bottom, which slightly raises the weight) when we desire it to go faster; and lengthen it, by letting down the weight a little when we desire it to go slower. An alteration of no more than 3-10ths of an inch will make a difference of 5 minutes a day in the going of a clock.

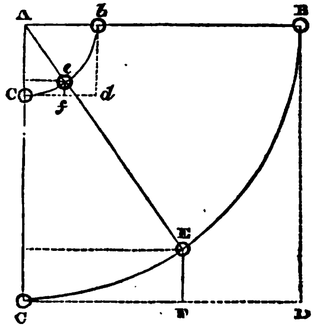


Fig. 61.

268. The proportion already stated (§ 257) to exist between the lengths of pendulums oscillating in different times,—that the lengths vary as the squares of the times,—follows naturally from the law of the descent of falling bodies,—that the heights through which they fall vary as the squares of the times. Thus, let A C be a pendulum of any given length, whose point of suspension is A; if the weight be let go from B, it will descend through the quarter of the circle whose centre is A, until it reaches its lowest point C, after which it will ascend as high as B on the other side, if permitted to do so. In descending to C it falls through the perpendicular height B D, which is equal to A C,—say in two seconds. In one second it will only fall through a quarter of that height (§ 242); and therefore the length of a pendulum A *c*, adapted to describe the curve *b c* in half the time that is required by A C to traverse B C, must be only one fourth of A C. The same thing holds good with respect to smaller portions of the circle. The pendulum A C in moving from E to C, falls through the space E F; and the pendulum A *c*, of one-fourth the length, in moving from *e* to *c* falls through *e f*, which is equal to one-fourth E F, in half the time. In the same manner, a pendulum must be four times the length of A C, to occupy twice the time in describing any portion of its curve, that is

required by A C to describe a corresponding portion of *its* curve.

269. The time of oscillation of a pendulum is liable to be affected by changes of temperature; since almost all substances expand by heat and contract by cold; and, as already remarked, a very slight alteration is sufficient to produce a decided difference in the going of a clock. In order to prevent this, several ingenious contrivances have been devised, in which the effect of a change of temperature on one part is made to counterbalance itself in another. These are termed *compensation pendulums;* and those forms in most general use will be described in the treatise on Heat. The simplest is that which is termed the *mercurial* pendulum; and its construction is very easily understood. Instead of a solid weight, it carries at the bottom a jar containing mercury. The expansion of mercury is much greater, in proportion to the length of the column, than the expansion of the steel or iron rod by which it is suspended; and whilst the latter expands downwards, so as to increase the length of the pendulum, the former expands upwards, from the bottom of the jar towards the point of suspension. In consequence of the greater proportionate expansion of the mercury, the rise of the surface of the short column in the jar is enough to compensate for the lowering of the jar by the expansion of the much longer steel rod which carries it; so that the centre of gravity in the jar is always kept at the same point, and the *acting* length of the pendulum remains the same, therefore, at all temperatures. A piece of dry wood, however, has its length so little affected by heat or cold, that a pendulum whose weight is supported by such a rod, is almost as good as one in which there is a contrivance for compensation; and in many large public clocks this is the plan adopted.

270. We have hitherto considered the action of the pendulum as if its rod were without weight; and as if the whole weight which it carried were concentrated into one point, the centre of gravity. But this is not actually the case; and the difference comes to be of much importance. For if we consider the whole weight to be made up of a great number of separate particles,

and these to be all suspended from the same centre, it is obvious that they will not all oscillate in the same length of time, since some of the particles are much further from the point of suspension than others. Suppose the weight to be a round disc like that usually employed (which is made thin at its edges, in order to be as little obstructed as possible by the resistance of the air); then if that weight were cut across into three parts, and these parts were suspended by strings of such a length that they would hang at the same distance from the point of suspension as before, —the middle piece would oscillate about in the same time with the whole weight, whilst the upper piece would oscillate faster, and the lower piece slower. Thus we see that the connexion of these parts into one whole, makes the particles near the point of suspension oscillate more slowly than they would otherwise do, or retards them; whilst those more remote are urged forward in their oscillations, by the tendency of the nearer particles to more rapid movement. Or suppose that a straight rod were suspended at one end, and set to swing like a pendulum; the oscillation of every separate part of that rod would be performed, if suspended by itself, in a different time, depending upon its distance from the centre of suspension; but by their union into one solid mass, those that would oscillate slowly on account of their distance from the centre are hastened, and those that would oscillate more quickly are retarded, by the rest. It is easy to understand, therefore, that the time of movement of the whole rod will be a kind of average of the times in which its several particles would oscillate, if hung separately at their respective distances from the centre of suspension; and that there is some point of its length in which the several effects will be all balanced, all the particles above it having just the same tendency to move faster, as the particles below it have to move more slowly. This point is termed the *centre of oscillation;* and its distance from the centre of suspension is the virtual or acting length of the pendulum.

271. The place of this centre of oscillation cannot in general be found except by intricate mathematical calculation, or by very careful experiments. It may be very near the centre of

gravity; or it may be at a considerable distance from it,—in fact even far below the extremity of the pendulum. It is very near the centre of gravity, when the weight of the pendulum is heavy, and the rod light; so that the quicker oscillations of the part of the weight above its centre of gravity are nearly counterbalanced by the slower oscillations of the part below. And if the whole of the weight could be *really* brought together in the centre of gravity, this would be also the centre of oscillation. But in the case of a uniform straight rod, whose centre of gravity is in the middle of its length, the centre of oscillation is above this; for if the bar were cut across at this point, and each half were suspended separately at its previous distance from the centre of suspension, the upper half would oscillate considerably faster, whilst the lower half would not oscillate much slower than the entire rod. Hence, when the whole rod is united together, the upper parts have a greater tendency to push on the lower than the lower have to drag behind the latter, and the time of oscillation is shorter than it would be, if the pendulum had the virtual length of half the rod.

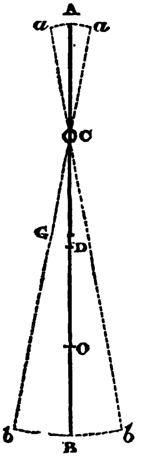


Fig. 62.

272. On the other hand, suppose the rod to be prolonged *above* the centre of suspension, then the centre of gravity is raised, but the centre of oscillation is lowered. For let A B be such a rod, and C its centre of suspension; then the part A C above the centre *descends*, whilst the part C B below the centre *ascends*, and therefore exactly counterbalances the tendency of the portion C D (equal to A C) to move with the rest of the rod. (This is evident, because if A D were the whole length of a rod, supported upon the centre C, it would have no tendency to move either in one direction or the other, its two ends being equal.) The *acting* portion of the pendulum is, therefore, the part D B; and the centre of oscillation O will be that point in it at which the tendency to quicker movement in the particles in the upper portion D O, counterbalances the slower

movement of those in the lower portion O B. Hence the centre of oscillation is much below the centre of gravity G; and if we increase the length A C, of the portion of the rod above the centre of suspension, we shall bring the centre of gravity nearer and nearer to that centre, whilst it throws the centre of oscillation further and further off towards the lower end of the rod.

273. If, instead of a rod, we employ a wire with two weights upon it, the lower one being fixed, and the upper one sliding on the wire, we have a pendulum which, within a very small compass, may be made to represent pendulums of many different lengths. For if the upper weight A be placed at such a height that the centre of gravity is but little below C, then the preponderance of B will be all that there is to put the mass in motion. The case then closely resembles that of Atwood's machine; since the greater part of B's tendency to descend is expended in causing A to ascend; and the remainder, which would oscillate in very short times if left to itself, has to move both A and B along with it; so that its rate of motion is diminished, just in proportion as their united bulk exceeds their difference. The more nearly the two weights are made to balance each other, the less will the difference be, and the slower will be the movement. Thus, if A and B be each at the distance of $9\frac{3}{4}$ inches, and B exceed A by one-eighth of their combined weight, then the tendency of that small quantity to oscillate in half-seconds will have to put in motion eight times its weight, and its rate will be eight times as slow; so that such a pendulum will really be 4 seconds in going through each oscillation, to perform which would require a simple pendulum of $(16 \times 39\frac{1}{7})$ $626\frac{2}{7}$ inches in length. Thus a pendulum not more than a foot from end to end, may be made to oscillate in times equal to those of any simple pendulum from a few inches to many feet in length. Such pendulums are for many reasons not so *certain* in their oscillations as those of the ordinary kind, being more influenced by slight causes, such as a difference in the resistance of the air at different times; and they cannot therefore be advantageously employed for time-pieces. But they are very

usefully employed in instruments termed *metronomes*, which are designed to beat time in the performance of music; and they are extremely convenient for this purpose, since a small case contains the pendulum and the clock-work that keeps it in motion; and this pendulum may be readily adjusted, by altering the place of the upper weight, so as to make any number of beats in a minute; and all modern music has the time, in which the composer intended that it should be played, marked at its commencement.

274. From the laws of the action of the pendulum which have now been explained, it is obvious that the material of which the weight is composed has no other influence on the time of the oscillations, or on the length of time they will continue without assistance, than that which results from the resistance which each experiences in proportion to its weight. Thus, suppose two balls of the same weight, one of lead, and the other of cork, to be suspended by strings of the same length, and to be put in vibration,—the resistance of the air would be experienced by the cork ball in a much greater degree than by the lead, on account of its much greater size: this resistance will slightly diminish the length of each oscillation, and at last it will bring the pendulum to rest. Or suppose that the two balls are equal in size, so that the resistance of the air is the same; then the cork ball will be retarded most, because the force with which it descends is less, and the resistance bears a larger proportion to it. Suppose the weight to be diminished, whilst the surface remains large—as when a feather is hung by a thread and made to vibrate;—the resistance is then so great, in proportion to the tendency of the feather to descend, as almost to overpower it. Yet if a feather suspended by a thread were made to vibrate in a space completely exhausted of air, along with a ball of cork, and a mass of lead of any weight, suspended by strings of the same length, they would all vibrate in the same times, and would continue their movements for as long a period.

275. The vibrations of a pendulum may be made to continue for any length of time, by giving it, at each oscillation, such

a slight additional impulse, as may serve to make up for the loss occasioned by friction and the resistance of the air. The object of the weight and wheel-work of a clock is to communicate such an impulse; and also to register the number of oscillations which the pendulum makes. The pendulum is connected with the wheel-work by a peculiar contrivance termed the *escapement:* this is so arranged with reference to the highest wheel, that each oscillation of the pendulum shall allow the wheel to move onward by a space equal to half of one of its teeth; and that the wheel, which is made to turn by the power of the weight communicated to it through other wheels, shall, at the same time, give a very slight additional impulse to the pendulum. This wheel (termed the scape-wheel) is the one on whose axis the seconds-hand of the clock is placed, each revolution being accomplished in one minute; it is connected with another wheel which is made to occupy 60 times as long in revolving, and this carries the minute-hand; and this is connected with another wheel, which revolves in twelve times the period, and carries the hour-hand. Thus the scape-wheel registers, by the hand which it carries, the oscillations of the pendulum up to 60, or one minute; the minute-hand registers the number of revolutions of the second-hand up to 60, or one hour; and the hour-hand registers the number of revolutions of the minute-hand up to 12, or in some clocks 24. In some clocks, there is an additional index of the days; which makes one revolution in a month.

276. If the pendulum and escapement were removed from the clock, there would be nothing to prevent the train of wheels from being turned round with great rapidity, by the weight or spring acting on it; and the weight would speedily *run down.* On the other hand, if the weight or spring cease to act, the oscillations of the pendulum soon come to an end. The rate of movement of the wheels is entirely controlled by the pendulum; thus to the same clock we might attach a pendulum vibrating seconds, or one vibrating half-seconds; and its rate, the weight being the same, would be twice as great in the latter case as in the former, since the teeth of the scape-wheel are allowed

pass twice as fast. An addition to the weight will not make the clock go faster, but slower; for it will give a slight additional impulse to the pendulum at each oscillation; and this, making its swing greater, will increase the time which it occupies.—The application of the pendulum to clocks, as the regulator of the movement of the wheel-work, was first made by Huyghens, about the year 1657. Previously to that date, the pendulum had been employed in astronomical observations, to measure small periods of time, such as those in which the sun and moon traverse a space equal to their own diameters; but no means had been devised for keeping it in continued and regular action.

277. It is a matter of great importance to determine with perfect accuracy the length of a pendulum vibrating seconds; that is, to ascertain the distance between its centres of suspension and oscillation. This is different, at different parts of the earth's surface, in accordance with their varying distances from its centre (§ 95); and if the length of the pendulum vibrating seconds in each place can be ascertained, it gives very important assistance in the determination of the figure of the earth. Even a comparatively small distance between two places will make a decided difference in the length of the pendulum vibrating seconds at each. Thus, at London, which is in lat. 51½°, the length of the seconds' pendulum is estimated at 39·13929 inches; whilst at Unst, in the Orkneys, in lat. 60¾°, the length (owing to the greater attraction of the earth as we approach the Poles) must be increased to 39·17146 inches, for the vibrations to be performed in the same time. The difference may be more easily understood by comparing the number of vibrations which the same pendulum will make in a given time at the two places; for a pendulum which vibrates 2,390 times within a certain period in London, will vibrate 2,391 times in the same period at Unst, so that it would gain about a second and a half in the 3,600 oscillations which the seconds' pendulum makes in an hour.

278. In fixing our standard of measure, it is of great importance to be able to connect it with some known length; which, if

the standard should be lost or injured, may enable us to replace it. Thus, in Britain, all our measures of length were determined by a standard kept in the Houses of Parliament, which was destroyed when they were burned; and, if an accurate copy of this had not existed elsewhere, the standard would have been altogether lost. The only way of replacing such a loss would be, by having previously ascertained the proportion which the standard bore to some *natural* quantity, which could be accurately measured, and which always remains the same; so that, by a reference to this, the standard might be reconstructed.

279. The French Government have taken, as their *natural standard*, the distance from the pole of the earth to the equator, or a quarter of the whole circumference measured on the meridian line; and of this, the ten-millionth part constitutes the mètre, the standard from which all the French weights and measures are computed. The length of the mètre is 39·37079 inches. The length of the quarter-circumference is determined by astronomical observation; and although it is scarcely to be supposed that this determination is perfectly free from error, yet it is easy to see that an error of some considerable amount in the whole, will be very minute when divided into ten million parts; and also that, supposing it were necessary to replace the standard, the same set of observations, repeated in the same manner, would give a result almost exactly the same.

280. The English Government have taken as their standard the length of the pendulum vibrating seconds in the latitude of London, at the level of the sea, and in a perfect vacuum; and to ascertain this, a series of very ingenious experiments has been made by Captain Kater. By those who had previously endeavoured to determine the length of the pendulum, the place of the centre of oscillation had been calculated from the form of the body employed, and the density of its different parts; but a different method, and one which appears much more accurate, was adopted by Captain Kater. He made use of the curious discovery of Huyghens (who published a work on the theory of the pendulum in 1673, in which the remarkable property of the cycloidal pendulum was explained), that in any pendulum, the centres of

suspension and of oscillation are mutually convertible;—that is, a pendulum being suspended from a certain point, and its centre of oscillation being known, if we then hang it from that centre of oscillation, it will vibrate in the same time as before, and the previous centre of suspension will become the centre of oscillation. Now it is obvious that, supposing the centre of oscillation not to be exactly known, it may be determined from this property of the pendulum. For if the pendulum be suspended from one centre, and its number of beats be observed, we have only to adjust the other centre in such a manner, that the number of beats shall be the same when the pendulum is suspended from it; since in no other point than the centre of oscillation can this equality exist.

281. It is found more convenient in practice, however, to have the centres fixed in the bar, and to make the weight (or a small part of it) movable; so that by a change in its position, the times of oscillation may be made equal for each point. The form of the pendulum employed by Captain Kater is represented in the accompanying figure. It consisted of a bar, into which two axes were fixed at *c* and *o*; and when either of these axes was made to rest upon a hard plane surface, the pendulum would swing from it as from the centre of suspension. In the left-hand figure, the pendulum is represented as suspended from the point *c*; and in the right-hand figure from the point *o*. On the bar is fixed a principal weight *d*; a smaller weight *e* is movable, but may be fixed at any point; and there is a still smaller weight, *f*, which is also movable, but capable of being fixed. By a change in the place of *e*, the oscillations of the pendulum in the two positions may be brought to nearly the same rate; and they may be finally adjusted to an exact equality, by changing the place of the smallest weight *f*. Thus, suppose the number of beats, when the pendulum is suspended from *c*, to be 606 in a given time; and the number, when it is suspended from *o* to be 601;—by slightly

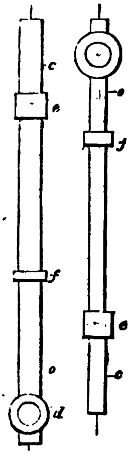


FIG. 63.

moving the weight *f* towards *o*, the time of the vibrations of the pendulum will be increased when the pendulum is suspended from *c*, and their number in a given time consequently diminished. On the other hand, when the pendulum is suspended from *o*, the alteration in the position of *f* which has brought it nearer to *o* renders the vibrations faster, and therefore more numerous in a given time; and thus by the increase of the one, and the diminution of the other, the number of vibrations of the pendulum, when suspended from either centre, is brought to precisely the same number. When this is the case, we know that the point *o* is the centre of oscillation when *c* is the centre of suspension, and that *c* is the centre of oscillation when *o* is the centre of suspension; so that, by measuring the distance between the two centres, we obtain the virtual length of the pendulum, which vibrates at that particular rate.

282. It is not at all necessary that such a pendulum should be adjusted so as to vibrate in seconds; since, the precise length of *any* pendulum being known, and the number of its vibrations in a given time, the length of the seconds' pendulum is ascertained by the simple rule already given. As in such experiments it is not permitted to connect the pendulum with clock-work, by which its motion might be kept up,—since the additional impulses thus communicated would produce a considerable error in the result,—the observation of its vibrations can only be continued for a short time; and they are compared with those of a pendulum of an ordinary clock, accurately adjusted to vibrate in seconds, by the following method. It is advantageous for the two pendulums to be nearly, but not quite, the same length; and one is hung exactly in front of the other, so that it can be seen whether they pass the same parts of their beat together or separately. Let us call the two pendulums A and B, and suppose that A is vibrating seconds, whilst B is oscillating rather faster. If now both pendulums be set in motion at the same instant, and be looked at in front, B will be seen to gain a little upon A at each oscillation, and at last it will be moving one way whilst A is moving the other, having gained half a beat; after as many more beats, it will have gained as

much more, and will re-commence at precisely the same time with A, having performed one more oscillation in that interval. That *coincidence* will be only for a moment; since in the very next beat B will have gained a little upon A: but it will be repeated again and again, after every similar number of beats. It is not requisite to count the number which intervenes, but merely to ascertain how many *coincidences* take place in a given time as shown by the clock. Thus, suppose that 10 coincidences are observed in one hour, during which A (the seconds' pendulum) makes 3600 oscillations; then for every 360 oscillations there will have been one coincidence, indicating that B has performed one oscillation *more* than A in that period. If B be longer than A, and its oscillations be slower, precisely the same principle applies; but the number of its vibrations is then one *less* than that of A, for every coincidence.

283. When the rate of a pendulum and its virtual length have thus been ascertained, the length of the seconds' pendulum is easily calculated by the following proportion:—as the square of the time of the one pendulum is to the square of the time of the seconds' pendulum, so is the ascertained length of the one pendulum to the length of the seconds' pendulum. When the latter has been determined by a common rule-of-three sum, there are still many corrections to be applied to it, in order to rectify it for the purpose of serving as a standard. Thus, the height of the place of observation above the level of the sea may make a sensible difference in the result; and in order that observations made in different places may be compared with each other, it is desirable to reduce them all to an uniform standard,—the sea-level. Again, as the density of the air is so different at different times, and as its resistance acts so differently on pendulums of different forms and materials, a correction must be made for it; and here, too, it is most convenient for the comparison of observations made under different circumstances, that they should be all corrected so as to represent the length of a pendulum oscillating in a perfect vacuum. This correction can be made by calculation, founded on the form and density of the pendulum. The result of these calculations has

been to make the length of the seconds' pendulum, in the latitude of London, 39·13929 inches; and this has been declared by Act of Parliament to be the standard of measure. It was intended that, in case of the standard being lost, destroyed, or injured, the new one should be constructed by the natural standard thus obtained;—that is, if the length of a pendulum vibrating seconds were divided into 3,913,929 parts, the standard yard should be 3,000,000 of those parts. It is doubtful, however, whether this determination of the length of the pendulum is accurate; and it has been stated on high authority, that if a new standard were constructed from it, this would differ sensibly from the old one. It appears that there are sources of error which had not been suspected; and that these should impair our reliance on the perfect accuracy of the experiments hitherto made in this country. The latest, and probably the most accurate, series of such experiments, is that made at Königsberg by the celebrated astronomer Bessel; the result of these gives as the length of the seconds' pendulum, in 54° 13′ north latitude, 440·8179 French lines, which is equivalent to about 39·1593 English inches. There is not much difference, however, between this estimate and that of Captain Kater, for a corresponding latitude.

CHAPTER X.

OF THE SIMPLE MACHINES, OR MECHANICAL POWERS.—THE LEVER, WHEEL AND AXLE, AND PULLEY.

284. In the preceding chapters, we have been occupied with the considerations of *forces* acting *directly* upon bodies, or their particles. Thus we traced, in the first instance, the operation of the forces of cohesive and adhesive attraction, in uniting together the particles of the same or different kinds. We then considered the attraction of masses of matter for each other; and especially that form of it, so important to us, in which it acts on the earth's surface,—the attraction of gravitation. The principal consequences of this attraction were then pointed out; the laws of the centre of gravity, and the mode in which they affect the stability of structures, were explained; and the laws governing the fall of bodies towards the earth were stated, and their application shown. And under the head of the Laws of Motion, the manner in which bodies are affected by forces of other kinds, whether acting together or in different directions, was fully discussed.—There are a great number of instances, however, in which force is *indirectly* applied to the body on which it is to be exercised; some machine or instrument being employed, by which the force may be applied more conveniently as to its amount or direction, or by which its character may be so changed, that it can accomplish what it never could have done in its original form. Thus, to take the simplest possible illustration, we use a poker to stir the fire, because it would not be convenient, but would on the contrary be extremely injurious, to place the coals in the desired position by the direct use of our hands, though we certainly *could* do so; we therefore apply our

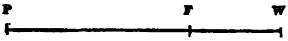
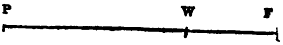
force to the poker, and the poker acts on the coals. Again, in the case of a water-mill, the force of running or falling water is made, through the intervention of machinery, to grind corn, to roll out bars of iron, or to work a massive hammer,—operations which it *could* not perform, except when indirectly applied in such a mode as this.

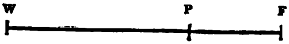
285. Now there is no power, in any machinery, of *creating* force; it can only apply, in a more advantageous manner, the force by which it is itself moved. This will be easily understood, from what has been formerly stated (Chap. VI.) of the tendency of all matter to remain in the state in which it may be at any given time. Thus, a machine at rest remains at rest until it is moved by a power applied to it; and when in motion, it would remain in motion, if it were not for friction and the resistance of the air, until stopped by a force equal or superior to that first applied. Any inferior force will be overcome by it; and thus the power first communicated may be applied to any operations which only require this. A steam-engine, for instance, is a machine contrived for the purpose of advantageously applying to use, the power communicated by the expansive force of steam; but it can itself create no power, and remains inactive until steam is forced into it from the boiler. Now, in machines of some kinds, a great power slowly applied is employed to effect a number of operations which must be performed very quickly; this we see, for example, in a mill for spinning cotton or silk, of which the spinning-reels are turned round many hundred times, whilst the axle worked by the steam-engine turns only once. But we should find that we might stop any one of these reels by the touch of the finger, so little is the power applied to it; whilst no force that we could employ could offer the least resistance to the motion of the steam-engine. Or, to take a more familiar instance, in the movement of a watch, the power communicated by the main-spring is applied to a train of wheels, and produces a much more rapid movement in the balance and the wheel which acts upon it; but we find the power with which they move to be far less than that of the main-spring, since the slightest touch of the finger will check their revolution,

whilst the winding-up of the main-spring requires a far greater force. Hence we see that what is gained in velocity is lost in power. The converse—that what is gained in power is lost in velocity—is also true; and of this we may find numerous instances, in which machines are so constructed as to concentrate (so to speak) the power applied to them, so that it is rendered sufficient to overcome a far greater obstacle than before, but does this much less rapidly. Thus, by a system of pullies or a windlass, we see a man raising a weight many times greater than he could lift without their assistance; but whilst his arms move through a considerable space in pulling the rope of the pullies, or in turning the windlass, the weight rises in a far smaller degree.

285.* All machines, however large and complex, are made up of parts which are very simple in themselves; and these may be termed *simple machines* or *mechanical powers.* They are usually thus enumerated. The Lever, Wheel and Axle, Pulley, Inclined Plane, Wedge, and Screw. The laws governing the action of each will now be separately considered.

The Lever.

286. By a *lever* is understood an inflexible straight bar, supported, at some part of its length by a prop, or *fulcrum;* it is employed to move a *weight*, or overcome a *resistance*, bearing on one point, by a *power* applied to another. In our idea of a lever, therefore, we have simply three things to consider,—the power, weight, and fulcrum; the relative distances and positions of these govern the action of the lever. There are two principal varieties of the lever; in the first, the power is at one end, the weight at the other, and the fulcrum between them, in this mode: ; such a lever is spoken of as belonging to the *first* order. In the other kind, the fulcrum is at one end, so that the weight and power are both on the same side of it. In this case, the weight may be nearest to the fulcrum, and the power at the other end of the lever, the arrangement being thus: ; such a lever is said to be of

the *second* order. Or the power may be nearest to the fulcrum, and the weight at the opposite extremity, so that the arrangement will be 

; this lever is said to be of the *third* order.

287. The fundamental rule governing the action of all these forms of lever is precisely the same. When the lever with its power and weight are in equilibrium, the power and the weight will be to each other in the inverse proportion of their respective distances from the centre; which is the same as saying that the power is to the weight, as the distance of the weight is to the distance of the power. Thus, suppose that we have a piece of meat exactly balanced, when hung from a steel-yard (§ 318), by the weight on the opposite side of the point on which it turns (the fulcrum); now if the weight be 2 lbs., and its distance from the fulcrum be six times that of the point from which the meat is hung, the latter will weigh 12 lbs. Or, to put the same general statement into a different form, the power multiplied by its distance from the centre will always be equal, when the lever is in equilibrium, to the weight multiplied by *its* distance from the centre. Thus, in the case of the steel-yard, suppose the meat hung at a distance of three inches from the fulcrum, the weight must be moved to a distance of 18 inches, in order to balance it; because $3 \times 12 = 18 \times 2$. Hence, by knowing any three of these terms, we may find the fourth, as in a common Rule-of-Three sum. For we have only to multiply the two terms belonging to the same side of the lever, and divide by the term belonging to the other side, to get the fourth term. Thus, we wish to know what power, applied at a distance of 15 inches from the fulcrum, will balance a weight of 18 lbs. at 2½ inches from the fulcrum. By multiplying together 2½ and 18 we have the product 45; and on dividing this by 15, we get 3 lbs., the number required. Or, if it be required to know at what distance a weight of 80 lbs. must be placed, to balance a power of 16 lbs. applied at a distance of 25 inches; by multiplying 16 and 25 we obtain as the product 400; and this, divided by 80, gives 5 inches, the distance required.

288. The preceding statements apply to the state of equilibrium of a lever; when it is used, however, for mechanical purposes, it has to overcome resistance or to put a weight in motion; and the power applied, therefore, must be something more than is exactly equivalent to the weight or resistance. In general, a lever is employed for the purpose of overcoming a greater resistance by a less, or of raising a greater weight by a smaller one; and in such a case, the power must be applied at a greater distance from the fulcrum, than that at which the weight bears. But, being applied at a greater distance from the fulcrum, it will have to move through a proportionally large space, in order to raise the weight to a small amount: this will be at once seen by holding a stick or rod between the finger and thumb, in such a manner that the parts projecting on each side shall be unequal, and then causing it to swing upon the part held, as upon a centre; the two ends will describe unequal spaces, the length of which will be exactly proportional to their respective distances from the centre. Hence, if the power have to move through a space as much greater than that through which the weight is raised, as its own distance from the centre is greater than that of the weight, it follows that the power multiplied by the space through which it moves, will be equal to the weight multiplied by the space through which *it* moves. Hence, *what is gained in power is lost in velocity*, a principle of very extensive application in mechanics. In no instance can we apply power in such a manner, as to raise a weight many times as large as itself, without at the same time being obliged to move the power just so many times faster; or, on the other hand, if we desire to produce a great velocity, by any mechanical contrivances, we must sacrifice power in the very same proportion. By the lever, and the other mechanical powers which are modifications of it, we can only exchange power for velocity, or velocity for power: we cannot create either.

289. As examples of the *first* order of levers, the following may be mentioned among familiar objects. The handle of a pump is a lever of this nature, the fulcrum being the point on which it turns,—the water to be raised, and the friction to be

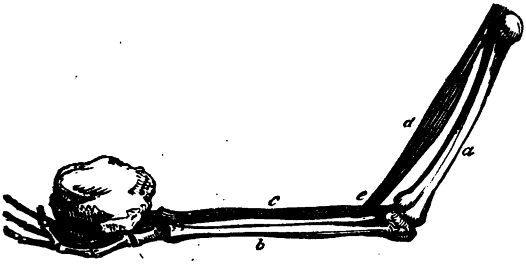
overcome being the resistance,—and the force expended in pumping being the power. Now here, the hand in pumping moves through a much larger space than the sucker of the pump; but the power which it applies is small, in comparison to the resistance to be overcome. A common poker, when used to raise the coals, is another example of a lever of the first order; the point at which it rests on the bars of the grate being the fulcrum, the coals the weight, and the force of the hand the power. All those instruments for cutting or holding, composed of two parts, which cross each other in the middle,—such as scissors, pincers, pliers, garden-shears, &c., are levers of the first order. In the elbow-joint of the human body, there is another example of it. The muscle which straightens the elbow, is a thick mass of flesh, lying on the back of the upper arm; and this is attached to a portion of one of the bones of the fore-arm, which can be felt projecting behind the elbow-joint. When this bony projection is drawn upwards by the action of the muscle, even in a very slight degree, it causes the hand to move through a considerable space; for the point of attachment of the power is so near to the centre on which the fore-arm moves, as to cause this to be acting under great disadvantage in regard to power, whilst velocity is gained by it. For suppose that the fore-arm, from the elbow-joint to the palm of the hand, is 16 inches in length, whilst the projection to which the muscle is attached is only 4-5ths of an inch long on the other side, the relative lengths of the two sides or arms of the lever would be as 1 to 20. Hence, a contraction of the muscle to the amount of 1-20th of an inch, would cause the hand to move backwards an inch; but, in order to push down a pound weight with the hand, by straightening the elbow-joint, a power equivalent to 20 pounds must be exerted by the muscle.

290. Of levers of the *second* kind, also, numerous examples may be found in common things. Thus, when we raise or force forwards a heavy stone by means of a crow-bar, of which one end is made to rest against the ground, whilst the other is moved by the hand, the implement becomes a lever of the second order. In carrying a weight in a wheel-barrow, again, we make use of

the same advantageous application of force; for the axle of the wheel being the fulcrum, the handles at which the power is applied are about twice as far as from it, the hollow part in which the weight is laid; and thus the strain upon the hands is only half the actual weight. A pair of nut-crackers is another instance of the same kind of lever; for the hinge is the fulcrum, the resistance of the shell is the weight, and the hand applied at the extremity is the power. In opening a door, again, we do in reality employ a lever of the second order, although the weight is distributed along the whole space between the fulcrum and the power; for, according to the principle formerly explained (Chap. IV.), we may regard the weight as really concentrated in a point midway between the hinge and the handle; so that the power required to move it will be only half what it would be, if the weight were at the point where the power is applied. The oar urges forwards the boat by its power as a lever of the second kind; for the blade presses against the water in such a manner that the latter serves as its fulcrum; the hand of the rower is the power; and the boat is the resistance or weight, against which the oar acts where it passes through the row-lock.

291. It has been seen that levers of the first kind may or may not act at a mechanical disadvantage; for, either arm—that which bears the power, or that which acts on the resistance—may be the longer. The lever of the second kind, however, must always act a mechanical advantage,—that is, the power required will always be less than the resistance or weight,—because the distance of the power from the fulcrum is always greater than that of the weight. There is this difference in the action of levers of the first and second order;—that in the former, the motion of the power causes the weight to move in the contrary direction, as when we raise the sucker of the pump by pressing down the handle: whilst in levers of the second order, the power and the weight move in the same direction, as when we raise or force forwards a stone with a crow-bar. The question which lever we shall use, therefore, is a mere matter of convenience, since we can gain the same power by both.

292. But in a lever of the third order, there is *always* a



a, bone of the arm; *b*, *c*, bones of the fore-arm; *d*, muscle; *e*, its point of attachment.

FIG. 64.

disadvantageous application of the power with respect to the weight, since its distance from the fulcrum is less; but, on the other hand, there is a proportional gain in velocity. Examples of the application of this lever are very frequent in the construction of animals; for the tendons which move a limb are almost always inserted near the joint, so that, by a small amount of contraction on their part, a considerable motion is produced. Of this, again, the elbow-joint affords a good illustration. The fleshy mass that forms the front of the upper arm is chiefly concerned in bending the joint; its tendon is attached at a point a little in front of the elbow, so as to constitute the power; whilst the hand, with anything it may contain, acts as the resistance. There will be, therefore, the same mechanical disadvantage in the action of this muscle, as in that of the muscle already described as attached at the back of the elbow-joint for the purpose of straightening it; and the same proportional increase in the rapidity of the movement. Hence a very powerful muscle is required to raise a moderate weight in the hand; but its contraction need not be considerable, in order to carry the hand through the whole range of its movement. With the same object, the muscle which raises the lower jaw is attached at a point, *a*, very little in front of the joint. The force which it must sometimes exert, even in

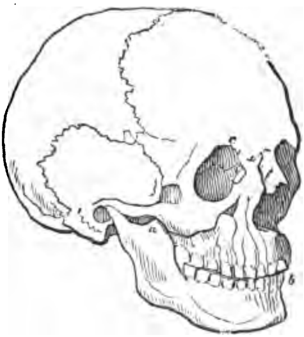


FIG. 65.

cannot be less than three or four hundred pounds; whilst in the tiger and other large carnivorous animals it must be frequently as much as two thousand pounds, or even more. Other examples of a lever of this kind are to be found in the shears used for shearing sheep, and in a pair of tongs. The treadle of a lathe is a lever of the second order, when the crank is in the middle of it, and the hinge or fulcrum behind it, the foot being applied in front. But in some lathes the hinge is in front of the treadle, the crank at the farther end, and the foot applied to the middle; and the treadle is then a lever of the third kind.

293. The process of raising a ladder is a good illustration of the variation produced in the character of the lever, by an alteration in the position of the power. When it is first lifted from the ground, by a force applied at one end, it is a lever of the second order; since (as just explained in regard to the door) its centre of gravity, in which its whole weight may be regarded as acting, is in the middle of its length, so that a power applied at its end will have an advantage of 2 to 1. But when the ladder has been partly elevated, the hands of the person raising it are made gradually to approach its foot; when they are moved to the position of the centre of gravity, they are acting neither at an advantage nor disadvantage; for though the top of the ladder will then be moving twice as fast as the hands, the bottom will not move at all, so that the average movement of the whole will be just the same as that of the hands: and when, in order to raise the ladder nearly to the upright position, the hands are made to act upon it still nearer its bottom, it becomes a lever of the third order,—the weight being now more distant from the fulcrum than the power.

294. It is evident that, in levers of the first and second orders, we may gain any amount of power we please, by simply making the distance between the power and the fulcrum just so many times greater than the distance between the fulcrum and the weight. It was by Archimedes that this truth was first perceived; and he expressed it by saying: "Give me but a place where I may stand, and I will move the world." The principle upon which this assertion was made is perfectly correct; but he seems to

have omitted in his calculation one important element,—the *time* necessary to produce the effect. It has been already shown, that the relative amounts of movement of the power and the weight will be proportional to their respective distances from the fulcrum; and if the arm to which the power is applied, be increased to such an enormous length as would be necessary to gain the mechanical advantage required for such a purpose, the time that would be occupied in moving, even to the amount of an inch, and with the whole force of a man, a body of the weight of the globe would be quite inconceivable. This may be readily shown by a simple calculation. Taking the diameter of the earth at 7,930 miles, the number of cubic feet in it may be calculated to be 38,434,476,263,828,705,280,000; and assuming each cubic foot to weigh 300 lbs., we shall have for the weight of the earth in pounds the number 11,530,342,879,148,611,584,000,000. Now, supposing Archimedes to act at the end of his lever with a force of 30 lbs., one arm of it must be 384,344,762,638,287,052,800,000 times longer than the other, that he may move this mass with it. And one arm of the lever being this number of times longer than the other, the end of that longer arm, when made to turn round its fulcrum, must move exactly that number of times faster, or farther, than the end of the other; so that, whilst the end of the shorter arm was moving 1 inch, the end of the longer arm must move 384,344,762,638,287,052,800,000 inches; or, on the other hand, when Archimedes had made the end of the lever to which he had applied his arm move this immense number of inches, he would only have raised up the earth, which was resting on the other end, to the amount of one inch.—Now it is estimated that a man pulling with a force of 30 lbs., and moving the object which he pulls at the rate of 10,000 feet an hour, can work continually for 8 or 10 hours a day; this is the extreme of the power which a single man can apply. Each day, then, Archimedes could, at the utmost, move his end of the lever 100,000 feet, or 1,200,000 inches; and hence it may thus be readily calculated, that to move it through 384,344,762,638,287,052,800,000 inches, or to move the other end—that is, the earth—1 inch, would require the continu labour of Archimedes for 8,774,994,580,737 CENTURIES.

295. It is to be remembered, however, that in this calculation the weight of the earth is estimated, by comparing its size with that of bodies on its surface having a certain known weight. Now it has been explained that the weight of such bodies is nothing else than their downward pressure, produced by the attraction of the earth for them. In this sense, therefore, the earth itself cannot be said to have any weight. It is attracted towards the sun with a certain force, which, if acting alone, would cause it to press towards that centre, in the same manner as a stone presses towards the centre of the earth. But this force is in fact completely balanced by the centrifugal force, which tends to keep the earth at a distance from the sun. In reality, therefore, Archimedes would have had no difficulty in moving the world, could he have brought his lever to bear upon it. It rests upon nothing, and is suspended by nothing; it is perfectly free to move in any direction. Had Archimedes a place on which to stand, a kick with his foot would have pushed the earth out of its situation; and the lever would have been a superfluous force. This, however, was evidently not the idea of Archimedes; who considered the earth as fixed in some way by its own weight, and as capable of being moved from its place by a certain mechanical force, in the same way as we should move a heavy stone; and the calculation in the preceding paragraph has been made to follow out this idea.

296. If it were necessary to construct a lever having a very great mechanical power, it would be found much more convenient to employ a system of levers bearing on each other, than a single lever. Thus, suppose that we desired by a pressure of 1 lb. to balance 1000 lbs., we should be obliged, in a single lever, to make the distance of the power from the fulcrum 1000 times that of the weight. But the same end may be obtained by a combination of three levers, in each of which the relative length of the arms is as 10 to 1. For if these levers be arranged, so as

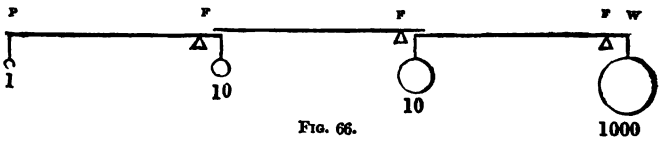


FIG. 66.

to bear upon one another in the manner here represented, the power of 1 lb. applied to the first will balance a weight of 10 lbs. at 1-10th the distance from the fulcrum. But the weight-end of the first lever is applied under the power-end of the second, and will thus tend to raise it with a force of 10 lbs. As the second lever has a mechanical advantage equal to the first, a power of 10 lbs. applied to raise that end will press down the weight-end with a force of 100 lbs. This force being applied over the power-end of the third lever, will tend to raise its weight-end with a force of 1000 lbs. Such a compound lever might be comprised within a narrower compass, by an arrangement like that here represented. The highest lever, which is of the first order, gives a power of 10; the other two, which are of the second order, have each a power of 11, the relative distances of the power and the weight being as 11 to 1; and the combined power of the three, being ascertained by multiplying their respective powers together, will be (10 × 11 × 11) 1210. In this, as in every other similar case, however, what is gained in power is lost in velocity; and the combination of levers has no advantage above a long single lever of equivalent power, except in its greater convenience. Neither, however, are commonly employed in the mechanical arts,—at least in the forms just described; since, when great power is required, there are other more convenient modes of obtaining it.

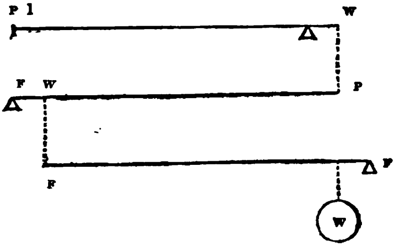


Fig 67.

297. There is an application of the principle of the lever in a circumstance of common occurrence, which should not be overlooked. Two men, A and B, carry a weight W upon a pole between them,—as in the case of a sedan chair. If the weight be at the same distance from each end of the pole, it will be equally divided between them; but not other-

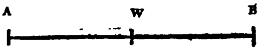


Fig. 68.

wise. For we may consider the pole as a lever, to which each man applies the power, the fulcrum being at the opposite end. Thus, the power being applied by A, the end resting on B is the fulcrum. Hence the lever is one of the second order; and, as the distance of the power from the fulcrum is twice the distance of the weight, A will be required to raise his end of the lever with a force equivalent to only half the weight. The same may be said of B; and thus the weight is equally distributed between them. But if the weight were nearer to B than to A, the case would be different; for B would then have a larger proportion to bear. Suppose that its place were such that the whole length of the lever being 3, its distance from A is 2, and from B only 1. Then the power of A is applied, B being the fulcrum, at a distance from it equal to three times that at which the weight is suspended; and consequently the pressure on him is only one-third of the weight. On the other hand, the distance of B's power from the fulcrum, at A, is to the distance of the weight from the fulcrum, as 3 to 2; and therefore B has to bear two-thirds of the weight.

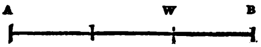


Fig. 69.

298. By a proper arrangement, a very heavy weight may be equally distributed amongst a considerable number of men. The following method is said to have been used in Constantinople for raising and carrying the heaviest burdens, such as cannons, mortars, and enormous stones; and the rapidity with which they were thus transported from one place to another is stated to have been truly surprising. A B is a bar of sufficient strength to sustain the whole weight of the load P, which is attached to its middle point; C D and E F are cross-bars fixed to this, near its extremities; and to these last again, in like manner, others, whose extremities of these cross-bars are again fixed others *a b*, *c d*, *e f*, *g h*; and to these last again, in like manner, others, whose extremities

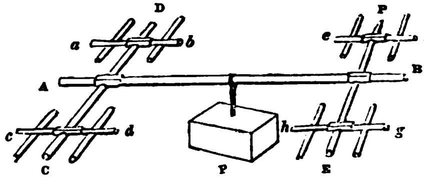


Fig. 70.

are borne upon the shoulders of the men who are to carry the load. Supposing one man's shoulder to support each extremity of these last-mentioned bars, the whole number, whose effort will be combined to lift and carry the weight, will be 16. If other cross-bars had been fixed in like manner to the extremities of *these*, the united effort of 32 men might have been applied. If other cross-bars had been fixed yet again to the extremities of the last, 64 men might have united their strength to the task; and so on for any number. If the bar A B, which supports the weight, carry it suspended accurately from its middle point; and if the point where each cross-bar is fixed to the one preceding it in the series, be exactly half-way between the points where the next two are affixed to *it*,—then the weight will be equally distributed between all the bearers. A small inaccuracy in this respect will produce great inequality in the amount of the pressure on the several bearers. The principal inconvenience of the method is the weight of the apparatus itself, which will be increased by that of the additional cross pieces, whenever an increase of power is to be thus gained.

299. Hitherto, we have supposed that the power and the weight press directly upon the arms of the lever, or hang in perpendicular lines from it, as they would do if left to themselves. But it may happen that one or both of them may have a different direction. Thus, suppose that, in order to raise the weight W, by the lever A B, of which C is the fulcrum, we apply our power, not in the downward line A D, but in the direction A E. It is obvious that power thus applied will not act so advantageously as if it pulled in the downward direction A D; and that more must be thus applied, in order to do the same work. It is also evident that the loss will be greater, in proportion as the line A E departs from the perpendicular, ar

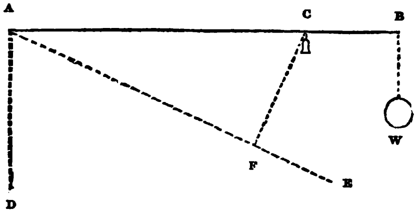


Fig. 71.

approaches A B; in which last direction, no force whatever would have the effect of pulling down the end A. The real operating power is ascertained by drawing a line from the fulcrum C, perpendicular to A E; and the length of the line C F is that at which the power is really acting.

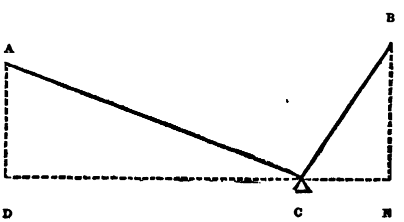


Fig. 72.

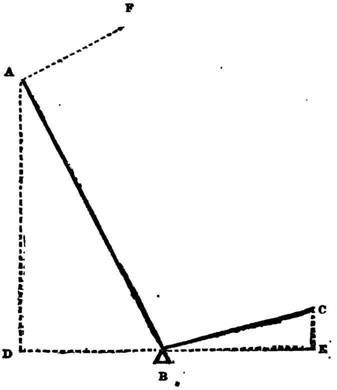


Fig. 73.

300. The same principle applies to the operation of the bent lever, in which the power and the weight may be both acting perpendicularly to the earth's surface, but not perpendicularly to the arms of the lever. Thus, in the bent lever A C B, of which C is the fulcrum, the lengths of the arms A C and C B do not represent the real working length of the lever; for weights inversely proportional to those lengths would not balance each other. The real action of such a lever is ascertained by drawing the horizontal line D E through the fulcrum, and drawing A D and B E perpendicular to this. The lines D C and C E, then, represent the real proportions between the acting lengths of the arms A C and C B, in this position of the lever. But it is a peculiarity of the bent lever, that its power is very different in different positions; for if the same lever be placed in the position represented in Fig. 73, the acting length of the arm A B is now even less than that of B C,—that is, with regard to any forces (such as suspended weights) which may be pulling in the directions A D and C E. If the forces act perpendicularly to the arms of the

lever,—as, for instance, when the arm A B is moved by the hand pressing in the direction A F, the action of the bent lever is the same as that of the straight one.

301. Various modifications of the bent-lever principle are employed in machinery; among the most interesting are those which are introduced into the various forms of the Printing - Press. The advantage they confer is principally this; —that the lever is much more powerful in its action in one position than in another; and that, when least powerful, the motion of the weight more nearly approaches that of the power in rapidity. Now this is precisely what is required in a machine that shall apply and take off a great pressure quickly; since, when the pressure is first being applied, the resistance is small, less power is required, and the press-board may be advantageously caused to move fast; but, in proportion to the amount of pressure that has been made, will be the resistance to any additional pressure, and greater power will then be needed.

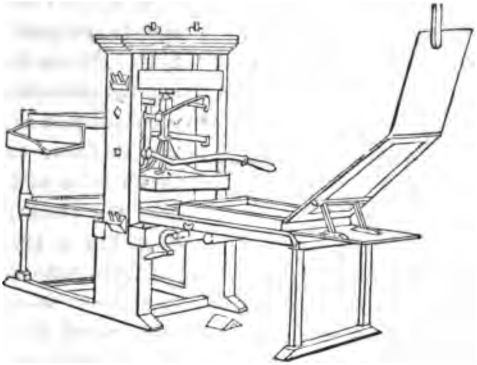


FIG. 74.

302. In the Stanhope Press (as it is termed after Lord Stanhope, its inventor) the press-board or *platten* is forced downwards by a powerful screw, which bears on its upper surface. So long as this screw is moved with an equal force and rapidity, its pressure will be equal; but, by the combination of levers that moves it, the screw is made to revolve more rapidly and with less force during the first part of the *pull*, but very slowly and with greatly increased force during the last part of it. A short lever

S A is fixed into the screw, and this is turned round by the connecting rod A B. This rod is united to the end B of the bent lever B C D, of which C is the centre. The power—the hand of the pressman—is applied at D in a direction always perpendicular to the arm C D. When the *pull* is commencing, the connecting rod A B is nearly perpendicular to the short arm B C; and therefore the acting length of that arm is just what it appears to be. On the other hand, the lever S A has a position, at the commencement of the pull, very oblique with reference to the line A B, the direction in which the power is operating on it; and therefore its acting length is expressed by the line S F drawn perpendicularly to the direction of the force. This line represents the long arm of a lever of the second order, of which the fulcrum is the centre of the screw, the weight or resistance being applied at its circumference, whose distance S H from the centre is therefore the short arm. Of course, the more prolonged the long arm, the greater force will be exerted by the same power in turning the screw; whilst the shorter the arm, the greater will be the amount of motion given to the screw by the same motion of the power.

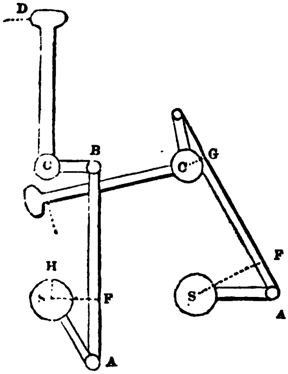


FIG. 75.

303. Now on looking at the situation of the levers at the conclusion of the pull, we shall see a great change in their efficiency. The bent lever is now thrown into a position in which the acting length of its weight-end C B is much diminished, in consequence of the oblique direction in which its force is applied; for instead of being B C it is really no more than C G, the line perpendicular to the direction of the force. By this shortening of the weight-end, the power of this lever is greatly increased; and it is obvious that, by turning the arm C D a little further round, B A and B C will be brought still more nearly

into the same direction, thus diminishing the distance C G to an extremely small amount, and increasing the power to an enormous extent. On the other hand, the change of the position of the arm S A has increased its acting length to that of the perpendicular S F; but this, too, gives an increase of power, since S A is the power-arm of the lever. By the combined increase in the power of these two levers, which takes place gradually during the pull, the pressure which the same force applied at D would exert is immensely increased; so that, by a proper adjustment, it may be rendered several hundred times greater at the end than it was at the beginning, the motion of the platten being diminished in the same proportion.

304. Even an ordinary straight lever may be made to act upon this principle, so as to gain much greater power in one position than it has at another. Thus let A C be a lever of the second order, of which C is the fulcrum, and W a weight suspended from the point B. In the horizontal position of the lever, the arm A C is 4 times the length of the arm B C; and a power of 1, applied perpendicularly to the surface of the lever, will therefore balance a weight of 4. But if the lever be raised into the position D E C, and the same power be applied at D, perpendicularly to the surface of the lever, whilst the weight hangs freely suspended from E, it would be able to sustain a much greater weight; for, whilst the acting length of the power-arm remains the same, that of the weight-arm has been diminished from A C to C F, which last is only 1-9th of A C, so that the power of the lever is increased from 4 to 9.

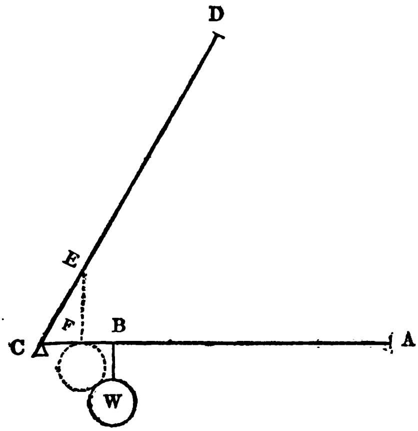


Fig. 76.

305. This principle is applied in another printing-press, which is known as the Columbian. The platten is not here forced down by a screw, but by a very strong lever ABC, of which A is the fulcrum, B the point of resistance, and C the point at which the power is applied. The end C is connected by the rod CE with the lever D F, the fulcrum of which is at D. Motion is given to this lever by means of the connecting-rod FG, which unites the end F with the end G of the bent lever G H I, whose fulcrum is at H. Now it is obvious that a power applied in the direction I K, will tend to draw the connecting-rod G F towards G, with a force continually increasing, and a rapidity proportionally diminishing, just as in the Stanhope press. But as the end F of the lever D E F is moved towards G, it gradually comes to form a right angle with G F; so that the power of the latter is applied to it in the most advantageous manner. On the other hand, by the same movement, the lever D E F and the connecting rod CE are brought more nearly into a line; so that the distance D *e*, which is the acting weight-arm of the lever, is gradually diminished, and reduced almost to nothing. In this manner, during the pull, the power of the lever DF is enormously increased by its change of position; whilst its rate of action on the rod CE is proportionally diminished. A further power is gained by the leverage of A B C, which is a lever of the second order, having a proportion of about 3 to 1 between the distances of the power and of the weight from the fulcrum. By the combined action of all these levers, any power that may be required is easily obtained; and, as in the former case, the levers may be so arranged as to give this power only when it is most required, —at the end of the pull; and to move the platten with much greater quickness at its commencement, when power is not required, but time is valuable.

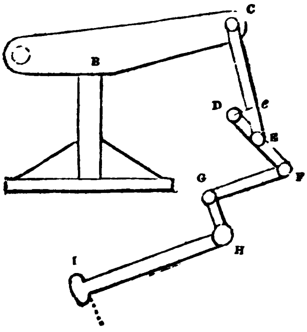


Fig. 77.

306. The action of the *Crank*, which is used to convert a straight motion into a circular one, or a circular movement into a straight one, is dependent on the same principle. Any one may watch its operation in a common lathe, the wheel of the itinerant knife-grinder, or the steam-engine; but a simple inspection of this kind will not lead to the full comprehension of its action, which it is desirable here to explain. The crank is nothing else than a lever A B fixed upon an axle or shaft at A, and moved by the connecting-rod B C. In this position, the power of the connecting-rod B C is applied almost as advantageously as possible; since it acts in a line nearly perpendicular to A B. Suppose the rod to be drawn upwards, however, until it has brought the crank into the position A *b*, in which it is in a straight line with *b c*,—it is evident that the latter then has no power of giving it any further movement, but that any further pull in the upward direction will only exert a direct strain upon the axle A; and it is also evident that, whilst the end B of the crank has been moving to *b*, the power has been gradually acting on it more and more disadvantageously, until it is altogether lost. But if the crank be made to turn a little further, so as to be no longer in the same line with the connecting-rod, and the latter then descend with a certain force, that force will act upon the crank more and more advantageously, until it brings it again into the *most* advantageous position A B′. Having passed this, the continued downward motion of the rod will cause the crank to turn until it reaches the position A *b*′, when the two are again acting in the same straight line, so that no pull exercised by the rod in either an upward or downward direction can turn the crank further. But if it be moved ever so little out of the stra

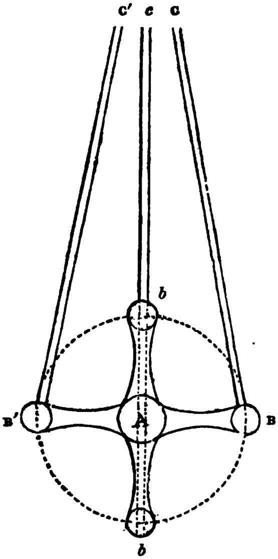


FIG. 78.

line, and the connecting-rod be again moved upwards, it will apply a continually-increasing power to the crank, until it brings it back to the position A B.

307. Hence we see that, supposing the connecting-rod to be moved alternately upwards and downwards, as it is by the beam of a steam-engine, its action upon the crank is continually varying; and that there are two points in the revolution of the crank, at which no power that the connecting-rod can exert, will continue its circular movement. It is necessary, therefore, that some means should be adopted for equalizing the application of the power; and for giving to the crank an independent movement, which shall carry it on through those parts of its rotation, at which the power cannot act directly upon it. This is accomplished by a very simple contrivance. The axle turned by the crank carries a large and heavy fly-wheel, which, when it is once set in motion, will continue its revolution for some little time without any additional power. The inertia of this fly-wheel of course requires, in the first instance, a certain expenditure of power for putting it in rotation; but, when this is once accomplished, the same inertia keeps up its movement (§.143). As its momentum, in consequence of its weight and velocity, is very great, it is able to keep up the action of the machinery during the time when the crank is in its most disadvantageous positions; and it also equalizes the application of the power,—storing it up (as it were) when in greatest abundance, and imparting it when needed. By this action, therefore, the axle is made to carry the crank out of the positions A *b* and A *b′*, into those in which the power can act upon it. In the common lathe and grinder's wheel, the action of the fly-wheel is even more important; for here the power produced by the pressure of the foot is applied only in the downward direction, or whilst the crank is moving through the semicircle *b* B′ *b′*; and the rotation is continued by the momentum of the wheel alone, whilst the crank is ascending through the semicircle *b′* B *b*. In the steam-engine used to propel vessels, the weight of a fly-wheel renders it inadmissible; and though the paddle-wheel serves, to a certain degree, the same purpose, it cannot produce an equable motion.

A single engine, therefore, is rarely used for this purpose; but two are employed, of which the cranks are so fixed to the same axle, that, whilst one is acting most disadvantageously, the other shall be acting to the greatest advantage. The same plan is adopted in the locomotive engines used on railways.

308. The crank is employed, however, not merely to convert straight motion into a rotatory one, but also to convert a rotatory movement into a straight one; and it is here, also, of advantage to apply the power to several cranks fixed in different directions, rather than to one only, or to any number fixed in the same direction. For in the latter case, the power with which the axle is being turned would only come into advantageous operation at two parts of its revolution, those in which the crank might be in the positions A B and A B′ (Fig. 78); but if the cranks be numerous, and be so arranged that some of them are in these positions, whilst others are in the positions A *b* and A *b′*, the power with which they are turned by the axle, will be much more equably applied. In the accompanying figure of a rice-mill, *a a a a* are four sieves, in which the rice is placed, for the purpose of having the husks beaten off, by pestles which move up and down within them. These pestles are at the lower end of the rods *c c c c*, which are fixed within a framework that slides up and down between the guides *b b b b*. They are set in motion by the cranks *d d d d*, which are so arranged, that whilst one is at its highest point, another is at its lowest; and, of the two others, one is in the middle of its ascent, and the other at the same part of its descent.

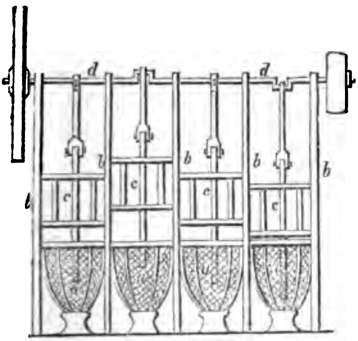


Fig. 79.

Balance.

309. The use of the balance, in its various forms of

steel-yard, weighing-engine, &c., is entirely dependent upon the principles of lever-action. We employ it to determine the weight of a substance, by balancing it against another whose weight we know. The ordinary balance, or pair of scales, is a lever of the first order, with the fulcrum (which is the point of suspension) in the centre, and the two arms exactly equal. From the extremities of these arms, the scales are freely suspended, so that a weight placed in either of them hangs perpendicularly from the point at which it acts on the lever, when the latter is in a horizontal position. This, as we have seen, is essential to the correct action of the lever; since, if one of the scales were drawn inwards, the acting length of its arm would be diminished, because the force is applied in a less advantageous mode (§.299); and the same would occur, if the scale were drawn outwards. The weight of the balance itself must be so adjusted, that its centre of gravity shall be at a greater or less distance *below* the fulcrum, for the beam will then have a tendency to hang at rest in the horizontal position. If the centre of gravity were *at* the fulcrum, the balance would hang at rest in any position. And if it were *above* the point of support, the beam might be brought to rest in a position exactly horizontal; but it would be upset by the slightest disturbance, and would have no tendency to return to it again (§.116). In a properly constructed balance, the centre of gravity, G, being below the fulcrum, will oscillate to one side like a pendulum, when one end of the lever is pressed down by a force suddenly applied to it.

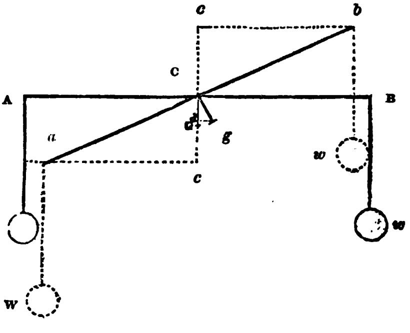


Fig. 80.

310. Now, such a displacement of the beam does not occasion any alteration in its leverage, so far as the scales are concerned; for the loss of power occasioned by the different

direction of its application is the same for both. This will be readily seen from the subjoined figure. Let the beam A B be thrown into the position *a b*; then, according to the principle formerly stated (§.299), the real acting length of the arm A C will be expressed by the line *a c*; and that of B C by the line *b c*. But it is easily shown that, in any position of the balance, *a c* will be always exactly equal to *b c*. The tendency of the balance to regain its equilibrium, when this has been disturbed, is due, therefore, to the displacement of its centre of gravity, which has been thrown from the position G, in which it hung perpendicularly below the point of support, to the inclined position *g*. The more it is displaced, the greater is its tendency to return to the perpendicular; and at last, therefore, this tendency is strong enough to resist the force which set the beam in motion, so that *g* begins to move back to G, and the beam returns to the horizontal position. But, just as the pendulum, when drawn out of the perpendicular, and then let go, has a tendency to swing as far on the other side, through the force it has acquired in its descent, so has the centre of gravity *g* a tendency to pass G, and to move to the same distance on the other side; thus occasioning the beam to become inclined in the opposite direction. Like the pendulum, it will again return, when the force which carried *g* onwards has been destroyed; and *g* will again return to G, pass it, and swing to the other side. The balance will thus perform a series of oscillations, which, like those of the pendulum, would continue for an indefinite period, were it not for the effects of friction and resistance of the air, which cause each oscillation to become less than the preceding, and at last bring the beam to rest in the horizontal position, so that G shall be in the line drawn perpendicularly downwards from C.

311. If the foregoing explanation have been rightly understood, there will be no difficulty in comprehending the action of the balance when used for weighing. Let us suppose, in the first instance, that equal weights are put into the two scales; it is obvious that there will be no disturbance in the equilibrium of the balance, since the product of each weight by the len

of its arm will be the same. And further, if the balance be set in motion, the oscillation will continue as before, until the centre of gravity regains that position in which alone the whole machine can remain at rest. But if a small additional weight be placed in one of the scales, so that W (the weight in one scale) is made greater than *w* (the weight in the other), then the balance will not come to rest in the horizontal position, but in one inclined to it. For the difference of W and *w* will obviously be a force tending to draw down the arm A C (Fig. 80) into an inclined position *a* C, in which it will act with a leverage represented by *a c*. This force is resisted by that which is produced by the displacement of the centre of gravity from G to *g*; and this tends to restore the beam to its level, with a lever power also represented by the distance to the perpendicular, *g d*. Now as *a* C is more and more pressed down, it is obvious that the acting length *a c* of its arm will be more and more diminished; and at the same time, *g d* will be increased; so that there will be a position in which the difference of W and *w* multiplied by *a c*, shall become equal to G multiplied by *g d*. This position will be that in which the balance will come to a state of rest. We know, by the depression of the arm A C, that the weight W is greater than *w*; and accordingly we add to *w*, or take away from W, until we find that they are equal, by the beam being brought to an equilibrium in the position A B. It is obvious that, the smaller the difference between W and *w*, the less inclined will be the position of the beam; since the required alteration in the place of G will also be less. But, on the other hand, the difference of W and *w* may be so great, that it cannot be counterbalanced by any alteration in the place of G; and the beam will then be turned into the perpendicular direction, if so permitted.

312. It is obvious that the correctness of a balance will depend upon the equality in the length of its arms; for, if these be of unequal length, equal weights in the two scales will not be in equilibrium; and, in order to bring the balance into equilibrium, the longer arm must have a less weight. Hence, as such a balance *appears* to indicate that the bodies in the two scales are

of equal weights, when they are really not so, it is a *false* balance. It may be made to hang in equilibrium when empty; for, by making the shorter arm, with its scale, rather heavier than that of the opposite side, the weight of each multiplied by its length, will give the same product. But, if weights known to be equal are placed in the opposite scales, the deception is at once shown by the preponderance of the longer arm. If the unfairness of a balance be suspected, it is very easily put to the test; for we have only to change the weights, and the bodies weighed, from one scale to the other, and the deception will be manifested by the want of equilibrium which will then show itself. For it is evident that, in an accurate balance, we may do this without any alteration in the equilibrium; since equal weights, being multiplied by equal lengths of arm, will always give the same product. But we will suppose that we have to do with a balance of which the two arms A and B have a proportional length of 8 and 7: such a balance cannot be brought to an equilibrium unless the weight in A be to that in B as 7 to 8, since $8 \times 7 = 7 \times 8$; but supposing the weights changed to the opposite scales, we shall have on the side of A, $8 \times 8 = 64$, whilst on the side of B we shall have $7 \times 7 = 49$.

313. It would be possible, however, to weigh truly, even with a balance so false as this; and we may do this in either of two modes. If we place the body in either scale, and ascertain the weight necessary to balance it in the other,—and then repeat the same process on the other side,—by multiplying together the two false weights thus obtained, and taking the square root of the product, we shall obtain the true weight. Thus, suppose that a body weighs 14 ounces in one scale, and 16 ounces in the other; the product of 14 and 16 is 224, the square root of which is $14\frac{2}{3}$, the true weight of the body in ounces. A simpler mode, however, is the following. Let the body to be weighed be placed in either scale of the balance; and any heavy but minutely-divided substance (leaden filings for example) be deposited in the other, until the body is precisely counterbalanced. Now if the article to be weighed be removed from the scale-pan, and weights be

put in its place, until the equilibrium is again restored, the weight thus substituted will exactly represent that of the body, since it balances precisely the same load on the opposite side of the beam. This mode, which is known as Borda's method of double weighing, is the most accurate that can be devised for any purpose, even if we have reason to believe the balance to be correct, since it is altogether independent of any errors arising from its construction.

314. By the *sensibility* of a balance is understood the readiness with which it will be turned by a very small weight; and, consequently, the amount to which it will be pressed down by this before its equilibrium is attained. This is chiefly determined by the position of its centre of gravity; for it is evident that, the further the point G is below C (Fig. 80), the greater will be the space *g d* through which it is moved by any given alteration in the position of the beam, and the greater will be its power of counterbalancing the effect of a weight placed in the scale A. Hence, for a very delicate balance, the weight of its parts must be so arranged, that the centre of gravity G shall be but a very little below C. Such a balance, however, will have the disadvantage of remaining a long time in a state of oscillation, and not readily coming to an equilibrium; since, the nearer G approaches to C, the less will be the tendency of the system to arrange itself in such a position that the beam shall be horizontal. For ordinary purposes, in which great nicety is not required, it is of advantage that the balance shall not be long in coming to rest; and this is effected by placing its centre of gravity at a sufficient distance below C.

315. The perfection of a balance depends, however, upon many other circumstances, which are quite independent of the adjustment of its centre of gravity. Among these, the principal one is freedom from friction in the points at which the beam is suspended, and at which the scales are hung from the beam. In order to attain this, the fulcrum of the best balances is a piece of steel, resembling the blade of a knife, but thicker at the back,—technically termed a knife-edge. This is fixed into the

beam, with its edge directed downwards, and rests upon two flat pieces of hardened steel or agate. The scale-pans are suspended in a similar manner from knife-edges placed at the extremities of the beam, with their edges directed upwards. In order that no injury may arise from the constant bearing of the beam upon its points of support, it is customary for good balances to be provided with a frame, so contrived as to lift up the beam, by the motion of a lever at the bottom of the stand. This frame has another use. It has been already stated that a very sensible balance is long in coming to a state of equilibrium, when loaded with weights which are nearly or quite equal. By observing its vibrations, however, we may form a tolerably accurate guess when the weights are equal; for if the oscillations are the same to each side, it is known that the balance, when it does settle, will take the horizontal direction. The amount of these oscillations is judged of by a long index or pointer, which is fixed at right angles to the beam (like the *tongue* of an ordinary balance) and points to a divided scale at the bottom of the stand. Now when we have reason to believe that the weights are nearly or quite equal, the process of the beam's return to equilibrium may be much shortened, by moving the lever and frame already mentioned, in such a manner that the beam may be brought into the horizontal position, though not lifted off its bearing. If the weights are equal it will remain there, and the operation is concluded; if not yet equalized, the addition of a very minute weight will maintain the equilibrium.

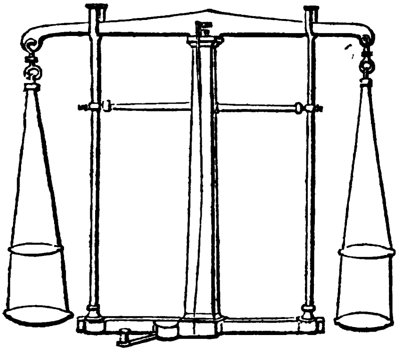


FIG. 81.

316. The most perfect balance yet constructed, is probably the one which was employed for determining the weight of water contained in the national standard bushel. Its beam is

made of a piece of mahogany, about 70 inches long, 22 inches wide in the middle, but tapering off towards its extremities, and 2¼ inches thick. The reason for preferring wood is that, in a beam of this size, it combines lightness and strength more than does any other material; and also that is not liable to be suddenly affected in its length by a change of temperature. This last is a consideration of much importance; for if, during the use of a delicate balance with a metal beam, a draught of cold or hot air were to blow unequally on the two sides of it, the length of the arms would be altered by the change of temperature in an unequal degree, and the performance of the instrument would be erroneous. The points of support of the beam are two planes of hard polished steel, on which a very strong knife-edge rests; and the scales are hung from similar planes also resting on knife-edges.* By a very ingenious contrivance, however, the beam and scale-pans may be made to rest upon round pivots, by a motion of the handle at the bottom. The balance is then rendered less sensible; and an opportunity is thus given of bringing the weights in the scale-pans nearly to an equality, before that extreme sensibility is given to the balance (by bringing the knife-edge supports into action) which renders the adjustment difficult. This contrivance has the further advantage of diminishing the wear of the knife-edges and of the planes on which they rest, by greatly shortening the time in which they are bearing on one another.

317. As the place of the centre of gravity is influenced by the amount of weight in the scales, a fresh adjustment of it should be made, in a balance in which the greatest sensibility is required, for every different weight; otherwise it will be much more sensible when the scales are but lightly loaded, than when they are heavily weighted, since in the last case the centre of gravity is lowered too far below the fulcrum. In the balance now described, this adjustment is made by means of a ball, which could be moved by means of a screw, nearer to the

---

* It is not requisite that these edges should be sharp, as was formerly imagined to be necessary; the sharper they are, the more liable to injury they will obviously be.

fulcrum or farther from it, in the perpendicular line; so as to raise or lower the position of the centre of gravity. The sensibility of the balance, when thus adjusted, is extreme. When loaded with a weight of 250 lbs. (avoirdupois) in each scale, it was very sensibly turned by the addition of a grain on either side. As each pound contains 7000 grains, the weight in each scale was 1,750,000 grains; and thus the balance turned with a weight not much greater than one *two-millionth* part of that to be determined.

318. The *steel-yard* is another form of balance, in which the principle is exactly the same, but the mode of applying it is different. Its value consists in the simplicity of its construction, a single weight being adapted to determine the weights of substances differing considerably in amount. This is accomplished by making a variation in the acting length of the arm from which the weight is suspended; that on which the body is hung remaining the same. The principle of its action is easily understood. Let A B be the beam of the steel-yard, and C its centre of support very near the extremity A, to which the body P is hung. The weight of the arm A C being made equal to that of B C, so that the lever itself shall be in equilibrium, it is evident that, if a weight equal to P be hung on the side B C at a distance equal to A C, the equilibrium will still be retained. But the same effect will be produced by hanging a weight equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ P at twice the distance A C, or a weight equal to $\frac{1}{3}$ P at three times the distance A C; since the weight multiplied by the length of its arm will thus always give the same product. The steel-yard being provided with a single weight, W, of a certain amount, the amount which this will balance at P will depend entirely on the distance of W from C. Thus, suppose the weight to be 2 lbs., if it be placed at 1 (the distance C 1 being equal to A C), it will balance a weight

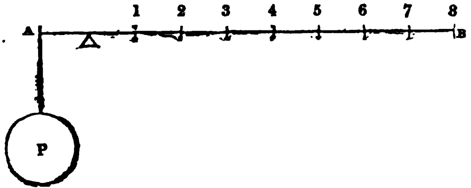


Fig. 82.

2 lbs at P. If placed at 2, which makes the distance C 2 equal to twice A C, it is able to balance a weight of 4 lbs. at P; if placed at 3, a weight of 6 lbs; and so on,—the amount it may thus be made to counterpoise being only limited by the length of the arm B C. In weighing with the steel-yard, therefore, we move the weight backwards and forwards, until the body at P is counterpoised; and its actual weight is known by a scale marked on the beam. In general, steel-yards are so constructed as to have two different scales, one adapted to weigh smaller, and the other greater weights. This is accomplished merely by an alteration in the position of the fulcrum. In the lever represented in Fig. 82, the weight W (2 lbs.) if removed to 8, its extreme end, will balance 16 lbs.; but suppose that, the whole length of the lever remaining the same, the fulcrum were removed nearer A, so that the distance B C should then be equal to 25 times A C; the weight W placed at B would then support 50 lbs. at P, and would balance proportional weights at the intermediate points.

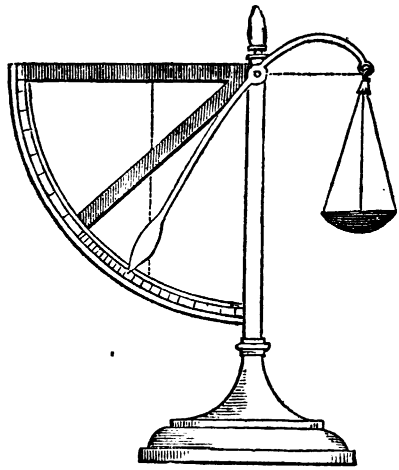


FIG. 83.

319. The bent lever-balance is somewhat similar in its construction to the steel-yard; for it acts by a fixed weight, the distance of which from the fulcrum increases or diminishes. Its operation will be understood from the accompanying diagram, when the principle of action of the bent lever is kept in mind (§.299) The acting length of the arm which carries the scale, is represented by the horizontal line drawn from the fulcrum to its line of suspension; and the acting length of the arm that carries the weight is shown by the space inter-

vening on the other side, between the fulcrum and the dotted line drawn perpendicularly through the weight. In the present position of the balance, these distances are equal; and if the weight in the scale be equal to that fixed to the balance, the beam will be in equilibrium at that point. But if an additional weight were placed in the scale, the weight on the opposite side would be raised; and the acting length of *its* arm will be much increased, whilst that of the scale arm will be but little changed, or partly diminished. The position in which equilibrium will be obtained, under this new force, will be that in which the weight P in the scale, multiplied by the acting length of its arm, shall be equal to the constant weight W, multiplied by the variable length of *its* arm. The heavier the weight in the scale, therefore, the higher must the weight be raised on the other side; and by the height at which it settles itself, the weight placed in the scale may be known, from the divisions marked on the quarter-circle through which its point may move. Such balances are in common use at the present time as letter-weighers; but though convenient, they are not very accurate.

320. In determining very heavy weights, such as those of loaded carts, a machine is employed, on the principle of the compound lever. The cart is made to stand on a platform, which rests at its four corners on four hard steel studs, which project upwards at C, C′, E, E′, (Fig. 84), from the levers D B, D′ B′ &c. The fulcrum of each of these levers is at the extremity (B, B′ &c.) near the studs; and the two levers on each side are united, near the centre of the apparatus, by short cross pieces, which are brought to an edge beneath. These levers are therefore of the second order; the fulcrum being at B, the weight at C, and the power (as will presently be seen) being applied at D

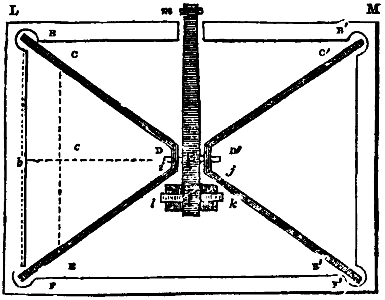


Fig. 84.

The other lever in this compound system is F P *m′*, in which F is the fulcrum, composed of an edge-piece of hard steel resting on solid supports; through P is another edge-piece, on which rest on either side the edged pieces of the levers D B, D′ B′ &c.; and there is another at *m n*, which is connected with a rod passing upwards. This rod is connected with a balance or steel-yard of any kind, having some convenient situation. Now it is evident that, if the end *m n* be drawn up with a certain force, this force may be considered as the power in the lever *m* P F; and it will tend to raise the cross piece *i j* on which the weight is resting, with a force as much greater, as the distance F P of the latter from the fulcrum is less than the distance F *m*. In like manner, the force applied to raise *i j*, becomes the power in the lever D C B; and is as much greater at C, the point on which the weight bears, as D C B is less than D B.

321. The amount of force thus gained, is estimated by multiplying the power of one lever by that of the other (§.296);* and we must of course include in this estimate the power of the steel-yard or lever to which the connecting rod from *m n* is attached. Now let us suppose the arms B C and F G to equal 1 foot, whilst the arms B D and F *m* are each 10 feet; then the power of each of these levers will be as 10 to 1, and their combined power will be as 100 to 1. Further, if the connecting rod from *m n* be attached to the short arm of a lever on the steel-yard principle, so as to be at a distance of only 1 inch from the fulcrum, whilst the longer arm to which the weight is hung is 12 inches, the additional power will then be as 12 to 1; and the power of the whole combination will be as 1200 to 1, or a weight of 1 lb. at the end of the steel-yard lever will balance a weight of 1200 lbs. on the platform. By a proper adjustment of the levers we may obtain any proportion we please between the small and the large weights; thus an ounce may be made to balance an hundred-weight. Small portable weighing-machines, for taking

---

* It is evident that, although the weight of the cart is distributed, by means of the platform, upon *four* levers, the combined effect of these in pressing down *i j* is the same as if only *one* were employed.

the weight of the human body, are constructed on the same principle; but the arrangement of the levers in them is usually such, that a pound is made to counterpoise a hundred-weight.

Wheel and Axle.

322. The space through which a man can raise a heavy weight by an ordinary straight lever is small; because, when he has pressed down the end to which he applies the power as far as he can advantageously do, he has no means of raising the weight further, except by altering the position of the fulcrum, and supporting the weight in some other mode whilst he is doing so. When a *continuous* motion is required, as when we desire to raise a stone to the top of a building, or water from a well, an ordinary lever could not be made use of, except in a very inconvenient mode. For such purposes, however, the *wheel and axle* offers every facility. This is only another form of the lever, so arranged as to have the continuous action required. We will suppose two ropes to be coiled in contrary directions, round a cylinder or drum supported on pivots, and a weight hung from the end of each. If the weights be equal, the cylinder will have no tendency to turn on either side, but will remain in equilibrium, like a balance. For suppose *a d b e* to represent such a cylinder cut across, C to be the centre on which it turns, and *a w*, *b* W, to be the lines in which the weights hang. Then *a* C and *b* C, the lines drawn from those points to the centre of the circle, may be considered as representing the two arms of the lever; and as these lines will be always equal, in any position of the cylinder, (since they will always be radii of the circle), the equal weights, which hang in lines perpendicularly to their extremities, will remain in equilibrium.

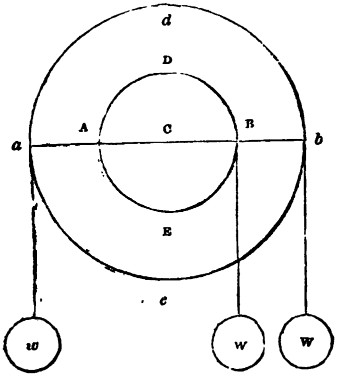


Fig. 85.

323. But suppose that, on the same spindle, there be two cylinders, one larger than the other; and that equal weights be hung from these in the same manner as before;—these weights will then be no longer in equilibrium, but the one that is hung to the larger cylinder will have a tendency to descend. The reason of this will be obvious on again referring to the figure. For let A D B E be the section of the smaller cylinder, from which hangs the weight W in the direction B W, opposite to the weight *w* on the larger cylinder. It is obvious that the weight *w* must have a greater power of turning the cylinder in its direction, than the weight W possesses for *its* direction; since the former is acting at the distance C *a*, whilst the latter is acting at the distance C B; and the same inequality will exist in any position of the cylinders. Such an apparatus may be regarded, therefore, as a lever having a continuous action,—C being the fulcrum, C B the weight-arm, and C *a* the power-arm; and the mechanical advantage gained by it will be exactly proportional to the number of times that C *a* exceeds C B. By extending C *a*, therefore,—that is, by enlarging the circle to which the power is applied,—we may gain any amount of advantage we desire. But here, as in the case of the simple lever, what is gained in power is lost in velocity; since the hand applied to the large cylinder or wheel will move so many times more than the weight suspended from the small cylinder or axle, as the diameter (and therefore the circumference) of the former exceeds that of the latter.

324. In the various forms of the wheel and axle, the weight hangs from a rope coiled round the axle; but the power is applied in various modes. The wheel may have projecting-pins upon its surface, to which the hands may be applied, as in that employed for steering a ship; or it may have teeth cut upon its edges, into which another wheel or pinion (§. 336) may work. But it is not necessary for the efficiency of the machine, that the power should be applied to a complete *wheel;* since a single spoke of that wheel will answer the purpose just as well. This is, in fact, the principle of the common windlass used for raising water out of a well, earth and stones out of a pit, and various other such

purposes. The winch constitutes the power-arm of the lever; whilst the distance between the centre of the axle and the point at which the cord pulls upon it (or in other words the radius of the axle) is the weight-arm. In estimating the power of a windlass, therefore, we divide the length of the winch, reckoned from the centre to the handle, by the radius of the axle; since weights inversely proportional to these, hung in the situations of the power and the resistance, would be in equilibrium. Thus, suppose the radius of the axle to be 2 inches, and the length of the winch 2 feet, the machine will have a power of 12; and a force of 1 lb. applied perpendicularly to the handle will balance 12 lbs. hanging from the axle. Sometimes the axle has no fixed handle or lever, but bars are inserted into holes cut in it, and these are shifted as occasion requires; this is the construction of the windlass, which is fixed in the fore part of a ship for the purpose of heaving the anchor. In order to gain sufficient power, the bars must be very long, and these can only be worked through a small part of a circle, without coming in the way of the deck; when they have been moved as far as they will go, therefore, they are shifted into a fresh set of holes and again drawn down. The axle is sometimes placed in a vertical position, so that the bars may go round horizontally. This is the case with the capstan, which is usually placed near the middle of a ship's deck, and is used for drawing up goods from the hold, &c., being turned by men who walk round and round upon the deck, pressing the bars before them.

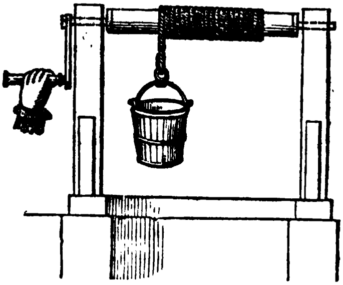


FIG. 86.

325. Although we may regard the power of the wheel and axle as capable of being increased, like that of the lever, to any extent, yet the same objections apply in practice to the carrying of this increase beyond a limited amount. If the radius of t

axle be diminished beyond a certain size, it will become too weak to bear the weight; and the radius of the wheel or winch cannot be increased beyond moderate dimensions, without inconveniences so great as altogether to prevent its employment. Hence, in order to gain a very large amount of power, it is necessary to make some alteration in the construction of the apparatus. We might, for instance, combine two of these machines together, upon the principle of the compound lever,—the cord passing from the axle of the first over the wheel of the second, and the resistance overcome by the first thus serving as the power to the second. Or we may apply some other mechanical power, such as a pinion (§. 337), or endless screw (§. 374), to turn the wheel. But the same end may also be answered by a very simple modification in the form of the axle, and in the mode in which the weight is suspended from it. The axle, instead of having the same diameter along its whole length, is smaller at one part than at another, so as really to consist of two cylinders of unequal sizes. The weight is suspended to a pulley, which plays on a cord that is coiled round both axles in contrary directions. When the winch is turned in such a manner as to wind the rope upon the larger part of the axle, it will be unwound from the smaller, but not to the same quantity; so that the rope will be shortened by the amount of the difference between the quantities coiled *on* the *larger* cylinder and *off* the *smaller* one. This shortening will raise the pulley and weight through half its amount, since it is divided between the two cords on which the pulley bears.

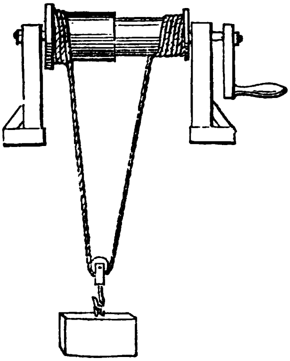


FIG. 87.

326. Now it is evident that, if the axle were of the same size throughout, and the two ends of the rope were coiled round it in contrary directions,—the pressure of the weight, being equally divided between the two strings, and acting in each case

at the same distance from the centre of the axle, will not give to this any tendency to turn round in either direction; and further, that, if the axle were turned round by the winch, the weight would not be moved, since it would uncoil at one part as fast as it would be coiled up at the other. On the other hand, suppose the diameter of the larger part of the axle to be twice that of the other; the force which the weight exerts upon that part, by means of the string coiled round it, will be twice as great as that exerted upon the other by *its* string in the opposite direction; and the difference of the two forces will be the real amount to be overcome by the power applied to the handle. The more nearly the two parts of the axle approach each other in size, the more nearly will the effect of the one string upon the smaller axle counterbalance that of the other string upon the larger one; and as this difference is all that the force applied has to overcome, the mechanical advantage gained is very great, and may be increased to any amount, merely by diminishing the difference in diameter between the small and the large parts of the axle. This difference is in fact the real working diameter of the axle; and the power of the machine is estimated, as before, by ascertaining how often this diameter is contained in that of the wheel, or of the circle which the winch describes. But as the weight is hung on a movable pulley, in such a manner that it bears equally on both strings, and as only one string is concerned in raising it, an additional power is gained, equal to double that just mentioned (§.343). But, for the reasons already mentioned, every increase of power is accompanied by a corresponding decrease in the velocity of the weight, when it is compared with that of the power. We have thus seen that the principle of this machine,—which is usually termed the Chinese wheel and axle,—is that of making the weight or resistance partly counterbalance itself, so that the power may act only against the remainder or unbalanced portion. This principle is introduced into some other machines, with equal success (§. 351 and §. 376).

327. The applications of the principle of the wheel and axle in the construction of various machines are very numerous. Besides those already mentioned (§. 324), which are o

varieties in the form of the simple wheel and axle, we may notice the different kinds of water-wheels which are employed as moving powers. In these, the weight of water, or the impulse from a stream, being applied to the circumference of the wheel, exerts a power, which, when communicated to the axle, is multiplied in proportion as the diameter or radius of the wheel exceeds that of the axle. Where there is a small stream having a considerable fall, the kind of wheel employed is that which is termed an *overshot* wheel; the float-boards of which are so formed, as to receive the water as it falls, and to deliver it, by the turning of the wheel, into the stream at the bottom, so that its weight may act on the wheel during the whole time that it is making the descent. As the wheel moves round, its successive float-boards receive the successive quantities of water which are brought by the streamlet; and thus the whole quantity that falls is made to exert its power on the wheel. Of course, the higher the fall, the larger may the wheel be made, and the greater will its power be. On the other hand, when the stream has little or no fall, but a rapid current, it is made to turn a wheel merely by its impulse on the float-boards; which are made, not to hold the water, but to be struck by it. Such a wheel is termed an *undershot* wheel. Where a stream has a rapid current, however, it is seldom that we are unable, by damming it up, to produce *some* fall; and the water may then

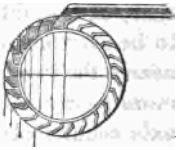
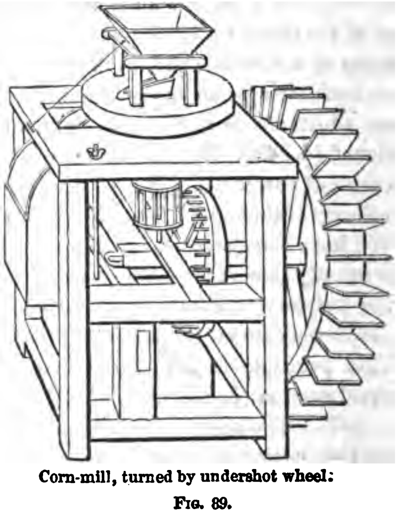


FIG. 88.



Corn-mill, turned by undershot wheel:

FIG. 89.

be advantageously brought, not to the top or bottom of the wheel, but to its side, so as to be received by the float-boards, and to act upon them, during its descent through about a quarter of the whole circle, to the bottom. Such a wheel, which is the most common of all water-wheels, is termed a *breast*-wheel.

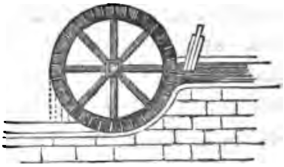


FIG. 90.

328. It is obvious that we may make the diameter of an undershot wheel as great as we please; and that, the greater the diameter, the larger will be the gain of power. But in this, as in all previous instances, what is gained in power is lost in velocity; since a given amount of movement in the water, which would carry a wheel of 12 feet in diameter through a whole revolution, will only carry a wheel of 24 feet through half a revolution. The most advantageous diameter of a breast-wheel will depend, like that of the overshot wheel, upon the height of the fall. It is obvious that the water does not act equally in moving the wheel, during the whole of its descent; for, as the power produced by its weight always acts in lines perpendicular to the earth's surface, its action at A is in the direction A *a*, and therefore the length of its leverage (according to the principle formerly stated, §. 304), is only C *c*. By the time that the wheel has moved round, so that the weight is at B, it will act in the direction B *b*, and therefore with the lever-power C *c′*; and when it has arrived at D, it will act with the power of the full radius D C. It is obvious that no weight of water at E will have any influence in turning the wheel, since its pressure is in the downward direction E F; but as soon as it is acting, to the least degree, on one side of this, it will begin to exert a power which continually increases until it reaches D, after which it will diminish in the same proportion.

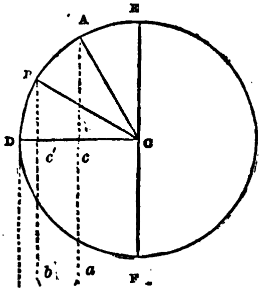


FIG. 91.

329. In the paddle-wheel of a steam-boat, also, the principle of the wheel and axle is applied; but in a contrary mode. The power is here applied to the axle, in order to produce a certain effect at the circumference of the wheel; and there is consequently a great loss of power, but a corresponding gain in velocity. If the wheel were *fixed*, and made thus to revolve by a power applied to the axle, a rapid current would of course be produced in the water, by the action of the float-boards; but, in the present instance, the water is the fixed point; so that, by the movement of the wheel, the axle and the vessel which carries it are forced onwards. In all the paddle-wheels of ordinary construction, there is a great loss of mechanical power, arising from the oblique mode in which the float-boards act upon the water, during the greatest part of their movement in it. This will be readily understood from the subjoined figure, representing the acting portion of a paddle-wheel, of which C is the centre, and A B D E F are five of the float-boards. The direction of their movement is from A to F; and A, therefore, is just entering the water (whose surface is represented by the line *a b*) whilst F is leaving it. By the action of these float-boards, the axle has to be moved onwards in the direction C *c*; and they ought to press upon the water, therefore, in the direction precisely opposite, namely, *a b*. But none of the float-boards except D will do this; for A and B will be pressing upon the water in a downward direction, so that a portion of their force is thus uselessly expended; whilst E and F will press upwards, and, in leaving the water, will carry up some of it upon their surface, so that its weight creates the necessity for an additional power to turn the wheel. Various ingenious contrivances have

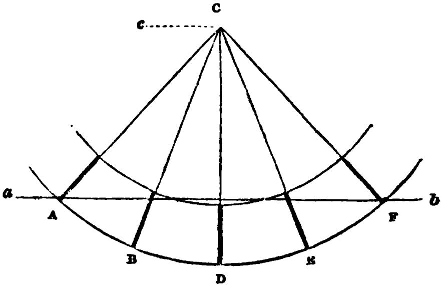


Fig. 92.

been devised, for causing the float-boards to dip into the water, and to leave it, in the perpendicular direction; so as to be always acting upon the water in the line $a\ b$, and to avoid the carrying up of the *back-water*, as it is termed, upon the floats that are leaving the water. But notwithstanding the great advantage thus gained, it is found that the complexity of the machinery required, and the risk of its getting out of order, more than counterbalance this; and it is not probable that any substitute for the ordinary paddle-wheel will ever be introduced.

330. We have now to speak of those machines, in which the principle of a succession of wheels and axles, acting alternately on one another, is introduced. It has been shown (§. 325) that this principle is exactly the same as that of a compound lever; the resistance overcome by the first axle, becoming the power of the second wheel; so that the power of the whole combination is found, by multiplying the power gained by the first wheel and axle by that gained by the second. Now, in practice, such combinations, or series of combinations, are extremely common, and they constitute, in fact, the principal part of mill-work of all kinds. The chief variation is in the mode of communicating the power from one revolving surface to another. This *might* of course be effected by a simple cord, like that by which the weight ordinarily hangs from the axle, passing from it to the wheel, and coiled round its circumference; so that, by the power applied to the first wheel, this cord might be wound round its axle, and motion be thus given to the wheel. But such a mode would be attended with this great inconvenience,—that, as soon as the cord is entirely wound off the wheel on to the axle, the action of the machine must stop. The mode which is adopted

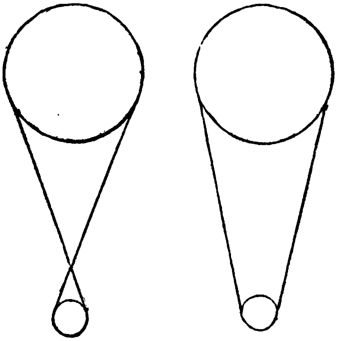


FIG. 93.

in practice, therefore, is to make an *endless* cord or band pass rather tightly over the axle and the wheel which it is to turn; and it is advantageous to cross this, if the sizes of the two be very different, in order to give the cord or band a greater hold upon their surface; as it is by the friction of this cord or band, that the motion of the one is communicated to the other. (Fig. 93.) When the band is crossed, however, the motion of the wheel and axle will be in contrary directions.

331. This kind of connection is used for various purposes. Sometimes it is employed simply to communicate motion from one revolving spindle to another at some distance; and if, as frequently happens, the second spindle be of the same size with the first, no mechanical advantage is either lost or gained; but the moving power may be thus conveyed from one end of a long room to another, or from the top to the bottom of a high building. If the revolving spindle be smaller, however, than the one which is to be thus put in motion, it is obvious, from the explanations already given, that power will be gained, in proportion as the diameter of the wheel moved exceeds that of the axle that moves it; but in the same proportion velocity will be lost, since the axle will have to turn just as many times round to produce one revolution in the wheel. The contrary will necessarily be the case, when the diameter of the moving wheel exceeds that of the axle to be moved; for the velocity of the latter will be multiplied, whilst its power is diminished. This is the principle of the common turning-lathe; where a large wheel, put in motion by a crank, is made to act upon a small pulley, and the substance to be turned is thus whirled round with great velocity: and it is much employed in mill-work, in which a small machine has often to be turned with great velocity, but with very little power, by means of a great power moving at a slow rate.

332. The great advantage, then, of this mode of connecting the spindles in revolution, is that the motion may be communicated, by merely lengthening the band or cord, from one to another at almost any distance,—until, in fact, the weight of the band itself comes to be a serious objection; and even this will

not interfere, if the motion is being communicated in a vertical direction, as from the bottom to the top of a mill. There is another advantage attending it, also; which is the great simplicity of the means by which its action may be suspended for a time, and again set on. This is an object which must always be kept in view in the construction of any machinery; since the change is very frequently required. In the various machines employed for spinning, weaving, &c., continual stoppages are required, on account of the breaking of threads or other accidents; these must be made by a momentary action, and in such a manner as not to interfere with the action of other machines turned by the same power. In mills for such purposes, there is commonly a large cylinder or drum, running from one end of each principal room to the other, and put in motion by the steam-engine, water-wheel, or other moving power. This drum carries a number of bands, that communicate motion to the spindles of the various machines placed along the room.

333. Every one of these machines ought to be capable of being checked at once, without the motion of the drum being suspended or retarded for an instant. This is accomplished by a very simple contrivance, known under the name of the *fast and loose pulley*. On the spindle of every machine there are two pulleys, which we shall call A and B; one or other of which is always being carried round by the band from the main spindle. One of the pulleys, A, is *fixed* on the spindle of the machine; and consequently when it is turned, the spindle must be turned with it. The other, B, which is close to A, turns loosely on the spindle; and consequently it may go on revolving with any velocity, without communicating its movement to that spindle. By the simple application of a lever, the band may be pushed from either pulley upon the other. When it is upon A, it will cause the revolution of the spindle and the action of the whole machine; but, if a stoppage be required, the band has merely to be pushed by the lever, off the pulley A, on to B; and as the latter goes on revolving, without in the least affecting the axis on which it turns, the machine remains at rest, until the strap is pushed back to A. In some machines, it is so contrived, that this ch

shall be produced by themselves, whenever it is necessary; thus rendering them independent of the constant attention of their overlooker.

334. But it is often required that the surfaces of the wheel and axle should act immediately upon each other; and this could not be accomplished if they were both smooth, as their friction would not be sufficient to turn the machine. But if they are both covered with minute roughnesses, these will create sufficient friction, to cause the revolution of one to put the other in motion, provided the resistance to be overcome is not too great. This plan, also, is much adopted in mill-work, especially for the smaller parts of spinning-machines; here the requisite amount of roughness is given by covering the surfaces of the spindles with buff leather, or with wood cut across the grain. The latter mode has even been adopted with success for large machinery; and it has the advantage of producing a motion which is extremely smooth and even, and is consequently accompanied with but little noise; but it could not be depended upon for overcoming any very considerable resistance. The most usual method of directly transmitting motion from one wheel to another, larger or smaller than itself, is by means of *teeth*, or regularly-formed projections upon the surface of each, which lock into the intervals between the teeth on the surface of the other. In this manner, the action of one upon the other is insured, so long as the strain is not so great as to break off the tooth.

335. In order that these teeth may act in the best manner upon one another, it is necessary that they should have a certain rounded form, which can be determined upon mathematical principles. The ill consequences of giving them a square form will be made evident, when their action upon one another is considered in detail. For, in the subjoined figure, when the tooth A comes into contact with B, it acts obliquely upon it; and, as it moves, the corner of B slides upon the flat side of A, in such a manner as to pro-

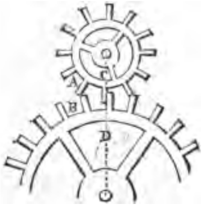


FIG. 94.

duce much friction, and to grind away the side of A and the end of B. As they approach C D, their sides come suddenly into contact; and a jerk is thus sustained; and after they have passed C D, the same scraping and grinding effect is produced, until the teeth become disengaged, whilst a new set are coming into action against each other. These effects are avoided, by giving to the teeth the curved forms represented in Fig. 95; these will allow the surfaces to roll on one another with very little friction; and the direction of the pressure is always that of the line M N, which touches both wheels, and is therefore perpendicular to the radius of each; so that the power is always applied at the same leverage, and consequently acts equably.

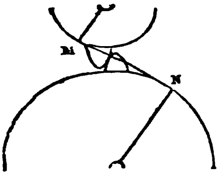


Fig. 95.

336. The various purposes for which wheel-work is applied, require numerous varieties in the mode of constructing it. When we desire simply to communicate a given power from one wheel to another, the wheels must obviously be of the same size. When we wish to gain power at the expense of velocity, however, we cause a small wheel to work into a large one; and, if we desire to increase the speed with a sacrifice of power, we cause a large wheel to turn a small one. Now, in all forms of wheel-work, it is necessary that the teeth should be of the same size in the two wheels; and therefore the space which any given number will occupy on the circumference, will always be the same, whether that circumference be small or large. Hence we may estimate the effects of a train of wheel-work as well, by ascertaining the proportion between the teeth of the several *turning* and *turned* wheels, as by comparing their diameters; and this is, in fact, by far the most convenient mode of doing so. When we wish to make the disproportion between the sizes of the two as great as possible, a very small axle with teeth raised upon it is made to work into a large wheel. Such an axle is termed a *pinion;* and it is usually made with 6, 8, 10, or 12 teeth, which are called *leaves.* Now if a pinion of 6 teeth be made to drive a wheel of

60 teeth, it is evident that the pinion must turn 10 times for 1 revolution of the wheel; but the power applied to the pinion need be no more than 1-10th of the weight to be raised by the wheel.

337. A simple combination of this kind is employed in a machine which is much used for lifting heavy stones to the tops of buildings. It consists of an ordinary wheel and axle; the wheel being cut into teeth at its edge, and being turned by a small pinion, or by an *endless screw* (§.375), which is moved by a winch. The winch thus acts on the pinion, or screw, as a wheel upon its axle; and thus its power, when conveyed to the wheel, is increased in the proportion of *its* radius to that of the pinion. The wheel and its axle have the ordinary power of that simple machine; and thus the whole power is increased by the product of the two. Thus, suppose the winch to have a radius of 18 inches and the pinion a radius of 1½ inch,—the power gained by its lever-action is thus 12. But suppose that the pinion has 8 teeth, working into a wheel having a radius of 18 inches, with 96 teeth upon its surface; then 12 revolutions of the pinion or of the winch will only turn the wheel once. Let the axle of this wheel, from which the cord hangs, have a radius of 2 inches; then its power will be augmented in the proportion of 9 to 1; but the amount which the weight will rise, will be diminished in the same proportion. Thus the power of the winch upon the toothed wheel is as 12 to 1, and the power of the latter upon its axle is as 9 to 1; so that the combined power of the whole is 108 to 1, or a force of 1 lb. applied to the winch will sustain a weight of 108 lbs. hanging from the axle. But the velocity

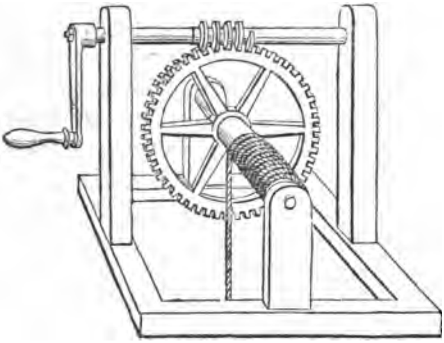


FIG. 96.

is diminished in the same proportion; since 12 turns of the winch only move the toothed wheel round once; and one revolution of this wheel only raises the weight through a height equal to 1-9th of its circumference. We might have obtained the same result by multiplying the diameters of the two wheels together, and the diameters of the two axles together; and then dividing the first product by the second. Thus, $18 \times 18 = 324$; and $2 \times 1\frac{1}{2} = 3$. If we divide 324 by 3, we obtain 108, the power gained, and the velocity lost, by this combination. This principle of computation is the same as that employed in the case of the compound lever (§. 296); and it is applicable, as we shall presently see, to a train of wheel-work to any extent.

338. Where it is desired to obtain a *very* large amount of power at the sacrifice of velocity, or a *very* large amount of velocity at a sacrifice of power, it is advantageous to employ several wheels and pinions, united into a *train*, in such a manner that each wheel shall act on a pinion fixed on the same spindle with the next wheel,—and so on. In such a combination, the mechanical advantage or loss will depend upon the situation to which the power is applied. If it be applied to the wheel which *carries* the pinion, then, as in the ordinary wheel and axle, velocity will be lost, but power gained; and this effect is increased by making the pinion work into a wheel, which shall carry another pinion,—this pinion to work into another wheel,—and so on. Thus, in the accompanying combination, the hand acts upon the circumference of a wheel, *d*, which we shall suppose to have a diameter of 18 inches; as this wheel carries a pinion, *c*, whose diameter is 6 inches, a power of 3 is thus gained. But the pinion has 8 teeth, and turns the wheel *e*, having 24 teeth; and this wheel will therefore make 1 revolution, whilst the wheel *d* and pinion *c* turn 3 times. But the wheel *e* carries a pinion *b* of one-third its diameter and

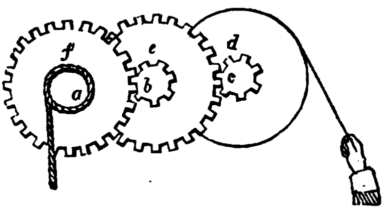


FIG. 97.

number of teeth, so that a further power of 3 is obtained; and this pinion works into another wheel *f*, which carries the axle *a* of one-third of its diameter. The wheel *f* and its axle *a* have only one-third the velocity of the wheel *e* and pinion *b*; but the power is increased in the same proportion. We have thus a series of wheels and axles acting on one another; and to obtain the combined result of all, we may either compute the advantage of each separately, or we divide the product of the diameters of all the wheels by the product of the diameters of all the pinions or axles. As the number of teeth in wheels, or of leaves in pinions, however, must be in exact proportion to their respective diameters, it is convenient to employ these as the data for calculation. Thus, in the present instance, we have seen that each wheel and pinion (or axle) gains a power of 3; and therefore, calculating the combined power of the whole on the same principle with that of the compound lever (§. 296), we find it to be $(3\times3\times3=)$ 27. Or, following the second method, we multiply the diameter of the wheel *d* (18 inches), by the number of teeth (24) in the wheel *e*, and this product by the number of teeth in the wheel *f* (24), the product of the whole is 10,368. This we divide by the number of teeth (8) in the pinion *c*, multiplied by the number (8) in the pinion *b*, and again by the diameter of the axle *a* (6 inches), which gives a product of 384; and the quotient is 27, as before. Where the number of teeth in the pinions is contained an even number of times in that of the wheels, the former of these plans is of course the simplest; but this will be presently shown (§. 340) to be seldom the case; and the latter must be therefore generally adopted.

339. If, on the other hand, we apply the power to a wheel which works into a pinion, and this pinion carry round upon its axis another wheel, which in its turn drives a pinion, and so on, there will be a gain of velocity and a loss of power; since each wheel will be turned so many times faster than the preceding one, as the pinion carrying it had fewer teeth than the wheel which drives it. It is in this manner that the wheel-work of clocks and watches is constructed. The first wheel, *b*, is turned

by a heavy weight, *a*, or by a spring coiled up in a barrel; and this acts upon a pinion, *c*, which carries another wheel, *d*, along with it. Thus any extremely slow motion of the weight or spring will produce a comparatively rapid movement of the wheel at the other end of the train, which acts on the pendulum or balance-spring; but the power applied is diminished in the same proportion. The vast increase of velocity is best seen in the striking train of the clock; in which a series of wheels and pinions is made to give a rapid whirling motion to a small flat plate, in order that the resistance of the air against this may produce a greater equality in the movement of the train, than would otherwise occur. It is also well seen in the machine used for spinning glass; in which a cylinder or drum is made to revolve with vast rapidity, by a slow motion applied to a small winch. In this case the gain of velocity and the loss of power, are calculated in a mode precisely the reverse of that employed in the preceding instance.

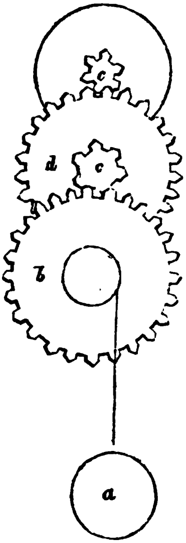


FIG. 98.

340. It is a matter of great importance, in the construction of machinery, to produce equal wear of all the teeth of the wheels, and of all the leaves of the pinions. In order to obtain this, the number of leaves must not be contained an exact number of times in that of the teeth. For if it were, the wheel would perform one revolution whilst the pinion moved round a certain number of times, and then would begin afresh; so that the same leaves of the pinion would come against the same set of teeth of the wheel. Thus, suppose the pinion to have 8 leaves, which we shall represent by I, II, III, IV, &c.; then, in the 8 revolutions of the pinion which would occur whilst the wheel turns once round, the leaf I would have come against the 1st, 9th, 17th, 25th, 33rd, 41st, 49th, and 57th, teeth of the wheel; and, when the wheel begins its next revolution, would again be brought

against the first tooth. In the same manner the leaf II would have come against the 2nd, 10th, 18th, 26th, 34th, 42nd, 50th, and 58th, teeth; and would come in contact with the same set in the next revolution of the wheel. The same will of course occur with regard to the remaining leaves. Such a system will have the disadvantage of producing a very unequal wear of the teeth of the wheel, if the leaves of the pinion have any irregularities which occasion them to act with unequal friction. Such irregularities can scarcely be avoided; but they are made to act equally upon all the teeth of the wheel, by the simple expedient of making the number of these *one more* than an even multiple of the number of leaves in the pinion. For, supposing that leaf I has acted upon the teeth 1, 9, 17, 25, &c., in the first revolution of the wheel, it will be brought to teeth 2, 10, 18, 24, &c., during the second revolution, to teeth 3, 11, 19, 27, &c., during the third; and so on. So that, as may easily be shown by a simple computation, the wheel will have revolved 65 times before leaf I again bears upon the the teeth 1, 9, 17, &c.; and in this interval, every one of the leaves of the pinion will have been engaged with each of the teeth of the wheel, so that the effect of any irregularities in the former will be equally distributed over all the latter. This additional tooth is termed by millwrights the *hunting-cog;* the term *cog* being used for all large teeth.

341. It is not requisite that the wheels that work together should have the same direction; since their axes may be inclined to each other at an angle, and may even be perpendicular one to the other. This change of direction may be obtained by inclining or bevelling the edges of both wheels, as seen in Fig. 99; or by raising the teeth of one wheel, not (as usually) upon its edge, but

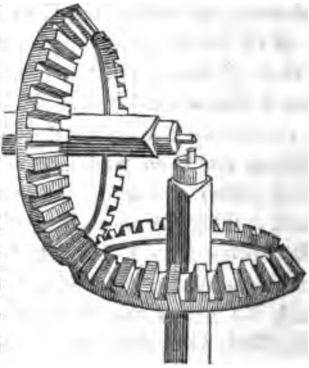


Fig. 99.

parallel to its axis, as in Fig. 100. Such a wheel is termed a *crown* wheel; and it works into an ordinary pinion, whose axis is at right angles to its own. The principle of its action is precisely the same as that of ordinary wheels. By the knowledge of these general principles, we may understand the operation of any kind of wheel-work, and compute its advantage as to power or velocity.

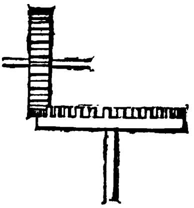


FIG. 100.

The Pulley.

342. The pulley may in itself be considered as a simple modification of the lever; and, according to the mode in which it is employed, it may be considered as a lever of the first or of the second order. A single fixed pulley, over which a rope is passed, having a weight suspended at one end, and the power applied at the other, affords no mechanical advantage; but it serves to change the direction in which the power is applied, which is often a means of applying power with greater facility. Thus, a man can much more easily raise a weight from the bottom to the top of a building, standing at the bottom, and by pulling downwards at a cord passing over a pulley at the top, than if he were at the top and had to pull the weight directly up to him. When a pulley is thus used, it may be regarded as a lever of the first order, with equal arms (Fig. 101, 1): for the spindle at C is the fulcrum; the radius B C,

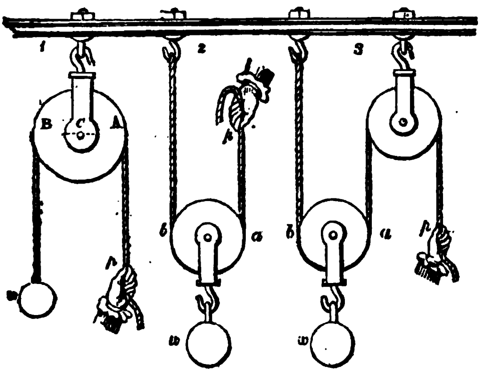


FIG. 101.

from the end of which the weight hangs, acts as one arm, and the radius A C, at the end of which the power is applied, is the other. Now, although the wheel is continually turning, as the line passes over it, the distance from the centre of the points at which the power and the weight are applied, remains constantly the same; and thus no direct mechanical advantage will be either gained or lost by it, since two bodies, P and W, if of equal weight, will remain in equilibrium when freely suspended over it.

343. But the case is different, when the weight is hung to the axle of the pulley, and one end of the string is fixed, as in fig. 2; so that, when the end to which the power is applied is drawn up, the pulley rises, carrying the weight with it. Here the diameter of the wheel *a b* is a lever of the second order; for the fulcrum is no longer the centre, but is at that side of the wheel, which rests against the fixed line. The power is applied at the side where the line is drawn up; and the weight hangs from the centre. Thus the power is applied at a distance from the fulcrum, which is double that at which the weight hangs; and therefore this pulley gives a mechanical advantage of 2 to 1. It is to be remembered that, though, as in the former case, the particular points of the wheel that bear against the two cords (here the fulcrum at *b*, and the power at *a*) are always being changed by its revolution, their distance from the centre will always remain the same, so that the properties of the lever are not affected. By this pulley, then, a power applied in drawing up the line *p a* will raise twice the weight suspended from *c*. But whilst a power acting over the single fixed pulley will raise the weight through exactly the same space that *it* descends, the power which is here applied in drawing up a weight by means of the movable pulley, will only raise that weight through half the space that itself traverses. For it is obvious that, if the cord *p b* be drawn up one foot, each of the two strings will be shortened by six inches; and the pulley will be only raised, therefore, to that amount. Hence we see that here, as in all other instances, what is gained in power is lost in velocity. The

case is not altered by the addition of a fixed pulley, which serves to change the direction of the cord, as in Fig. 101, 3.

344. But although the wheel of the pulley may thus be considered as a lever, it would be wrong to state that the power of this simple machine depends upon it; for, as a matter of fact, the pulley is only a contrivance for getting rid as much as possible of the obstacles which are opposed, by the rigidity or stiffness of cords, and by their friction when made to slide over surfaces, to the advantageous employment of certain modes of arranging these in order to gain power. For if it were possible to conceive of a cord that should be perfectly flexible, and that should move without friction through a fixed ring, we should obtain exactly the same effect as if it passed over a fixed pulley; since the direction would be changed without any gain or loss of mechanical power, the weight pulling on the cord with an equal strain throughout, and being counterbalanced by the power. In like manner, we may suppose a perfectly flexible cord, fixed at one end, to pass through a ring attached to the weight, and to be drawn up by a power applied to its other end; this simple apparatus, if friction did not exist, would answer the same purpose as the movable pulley, in saving power, but in causing a loss of velocity. For it will be easily understood that, in such a case, the weight is equally supported upon the two strings, and consequently its downward pressure is equally divided between them. The hook to which one end of the string is fixed will sustain half the pressure, and the power will only have to raise the other half. Moreover, for the reason just stated, there will be a loss of velocity to the same amount; the shortening of the string to which the power is applied being equally divided between the two.

345. By the combination of several pulleys into a system, it is easy in theory to gain mechanical advantage to any amount; but there are certain limits in practice, resulting from the great loss sustained by friction and by the want of perfect flexibility in the cords, which render it desirable to substitute other methods for gaining power, rather than multiply the number of pulleys beyond a certain amount. The numerous kinds of systems of

pulleys that have been invented at different times may be reduced to two classes,—the first comprehending those with several ropes,—and the second those with a single rope.

346. In a system of the former kind, an immense power may be gained by a small number of pulleys; but its use is not generally convenient. It is a combination of several movable pulleys, in such a manner that the power of each shall serve as the weight to the next; and thus, as in the compound lever, the combined power of the whole is expressed by the powers of the single pulleys multiplied into each other. In the adjoining figure, W represents a weight of 16 lbs. hung from the spindle of the pulley A; this weight, therefore, will draw down the two strings on which that pulley rests, with a strain of 8 lbs. on each. One of those strings is fixed at its end; whilst the other is attached to the spindle of a second pulley B, which it will tend to pull down with a force of 8 lbs. In like manner it will bear with a force of only 4 lbs. on each of the strings that support B; and one of these, being attached to the pulley C, will communicate a strain of 2 pounds to each of the strings on which *it* rests. Lastly, one of these cords being suspended to the pulley D, will pull it down with a force that will be equally distributed upon the two cords that pass under it, and will consequently press upon each with a force of only 1 lb. If one of these cords be carried over the fixed pulley E (which will simply change its direction), a power of 1 lb. hung at P will balance the weight of 16 lbs. at W. But it will be readily understood that the loss of velocity is exactly equal to the gain of power; since, for every 16 feet that P moves downwards, the pulley D will be drawn up only 8 feet, the pulley C only 4 feet, the pulley B only 2 feet, and the pulley A only 1 foot. It is further evident that if we

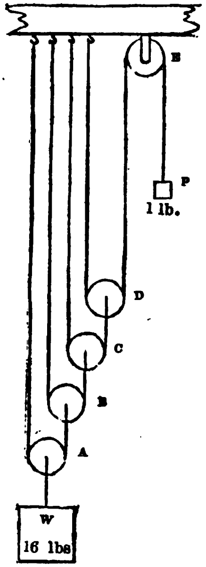


FIG. 102.

were to extend the system by adding another pulley below A, the power of the system would be doubled, and would be increased in the same proportion for every additional pulley; thus for seven movable pulleys thus connected, it would be ascertained by multiplying 2 by 2 to 7 times, the product of which would be 128. Of course the loss of velocity would be in exactly the same proportion.

347. Among the inconveniences to which such a system is liable, there is one which entirely prevents it from being advantageously employed in practice. If all the pulleys were at first at their lowest possible point, they will be separated from each other, the moment that the power begins to act; for, as just stated, the pulley D will move upwards half as fast as the power; the pulley C a quarter as fast; the pulley B only one-eighth as fast; and the pulley A, from which the weight is suspended, only one-sixteenth as fast. Hence the pulley D will have been drawn up to the top of the apparatus before the weight has been lifted far from the bottom.

348. It is on this account chiefly, that the systems commonly used are of the second of the two kinds just alluded to,—that having a continuous rope. In this arrangement we are not able to procure nearly the same amount of power from the same number of pulleys; and if the number of pulleys be greatly multiplied, the friction is enormously increased. In such a system, two, three, or more pulleys are fixed in a frame termed a block; and two of these blocks are employed, the upper one being fixed, and the lower one, to which the weight is attached, being movable. (Fig. 103.) The cord commencing from a fixed point in the upper block, passes beneath one of the pulleys in the lower block; it is then carried over a pulley in the upper block, and beneath another pulley in the lower block; again over another pulley in the upper block, and again beneath a third pulley in the under block; and if it be wished that the power should be applied by pulling downwards rather than upwards, the cord must again pass over a pulley in the upper block. It is evident, therefore, that by shortening the cord, the lower block will be drawn up so as to approach the upper one; and that the

length of the cord is the only limit to the space through which it can be made to move. The power of such a combination is to be estimated in a mode very different from that employed in the former instance. In the first place, it is obvious that the pulleys of the upper block serve only to change the direction of the cord, and give no mechanical advantage. Again, it is easy to understand that the strain of the weight is equally distributed on all the strings which pass under the lower block; and as there are six of these strings, the weight sustained by each will only be one-sixth of the whole. But the power is applied to the last string; and, in overcoming the pressure upon it, raises the whole block by shortening all the strings. The power required to counterpoise the weight will therefore be one-sixth of the latter; and the mechanical advantage of such a system is estimated by doubling the number of pulleys in the lower block, by which we ascertain the number of strings on which the pressure is distributed.

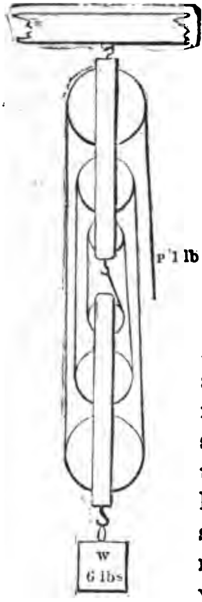


FIG. 103.

349. It is found convenient in practice to arrange the pulleys side by side, instead of one beneath the other; since in this manner we can raise the weight much nearer to the point from which the blocks are suspended. Such blocks are seen in the rigging of a ship. But this mode has great disadvantages. The rope cannot always pass from each pulley to one directly above or below it; and consequently it must then pull in a slanting direction, which will greatly increase the friction, and wear the spindles of the pulleys. Hence it follows, that when a block contains a large number of pulleys, the losses occasioned by friction and by the want of flexibility in the cord are altogether very considerable, and require a large additional power to overcome them; so that the real advantage of such a combination

is much less than we might suppose it to be from our calculations.

350. A very ingenious plan of diminishing the friction was devised by Mr. White, who proposed to cause all the pulleys to turn on the same axis or spindle. This could not be accomplished, however, if all the pulleys were of the same size, or if the cord passed over a broad drum instead of several pulleys; for a little consideration will show that the amount of movement of the part of the cord that passes under each of the lower pulleys is different. The string to which the power is attached, in such a system as that shown in Fig. 103, passes through 6 feet, whilst the string that first passes from the upper block to the lower is shortened by only 1 foot; and the proportional rates of movement of the three pulleys in the lower block will be 2, 4, and 6. Now, in White's system, the size of each pulley is adapted to its rate of movement, in such a manner that, when the whole system is turned round, the space passed through by any point on the circumference of each pulley shall be proportional to the length of cord that has to pass over it. Let the two blocks A and B be supposed to be drawn towards each other to the amount of 1 foot; then the string C C 1 will be shortened by the same amount, and this length of string will pass over the pulley C 1, and also over the pulley C 2. But there will further pass over the pulley C 2 the length of cord by which the string C 1 C 2 is shortened, which is also a foot; so that there will pass over C 2 twice the length of string that passes over C 1. In like manner, there will pass over C 3 the additional foot of cord by which the string C 2 C 3 is shortened, making in all 3 feet; and over C 4 will pass 4 feet. The same applies to any number of strings; the lengths which will pass over the pulleys

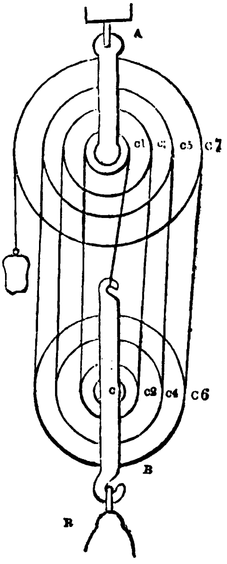


FIG. 104.

in the upper block being as 1, 3, 5, 7, &c.; and those that will pass over those of the lower block being as 2, 4, 6, 8, &c. If the sizes of these pulleys be made to bear these proportions to each other, one turn of each will give off the precise quantity of cord required to cause the blocks to approach each other; and by making those of each block form a solid piece turning on a single spindle, an immense saving of friction is obtained. These pulleys are not, however, in common use.

351. An extremely simple and ingenious application to the pulley, of the principle which has been mentioned under the head of the Chinese Wheel and Axle (§. 325) has been devised by Mr. Moore, of Bristol. Its beauty consists in permitting an increase of power to any extent, by the employment of only two pulleys. Its construction will be readily understood from the accompanying diagram. A is a fixed pulley with two grooves, of which one is a little larger than the other. An endless cord passes over the larger groove from F to E; then beneath a movable pulley B; after which it returns over the smaller groove from D to G, and hangs down, so as to become continuous with the first line. Now if a power be applied at P, so as to draw down the line 1, the line 2 will be raised to the same amount, and the circumference of the pulley A will move through the same space. Supposing that the line 3 were fixed at its extremity, the pulley B would be raised by half the amount to which the line 2 is shortened (§. 343). But the revolution of the pulley A, whilst it draws up the line 2 over one groove, lets down the line 3 from the other. If the two grooves were of the same size, therefore, the pulley B would not be raised; since the line 3 would descend as much as 2 ascends. But, in consequence of the different size of the grooves, the line 3 does not descend as fast as 2 ascends; and the rise of the pulley B will therefore be equal to half the difference in the amount.

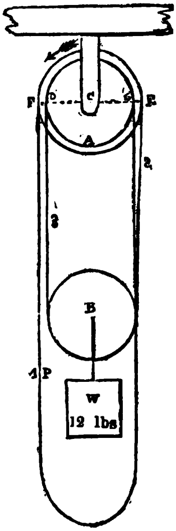


Fig. 105

But if the larger groove have a circumference of 18 inches, and the smaller of 15 inches, the line 2 will be drawn up, by one revolution of the pulley A, through 18 inches, whilst the line B will descend through 15. The movable pulley B with the weight attached to it will consequently be made to ascend through 1½ inch, whilst P descends 18 inches; and the power gained will be 12.

352. The reason of this gain of power is at once seen, by considering that the action of the weight upon the string 3 tends to turn round the pulley in the direction of the arrow, nearly as much as the action of the string 2 tends to turn it in a contrary direction; and that a small force applied to P will, therefore, overcome the difference. If, as in the present instance, the distance from C to D be 18, and from C to E 15, a weight bearing on the string 3 would cause the pulley A to move in the direction of the arrow with a power of 15; whilst the same pressure on the line 2 would make it turn in the contrary direction with a power of 18. The difference between the two strains, therefore, will be the real amount of resistance to be overcome by a power applied to the circumference of the larger groove of the pulley A; and this will be 1-6th of the strain upon either of the strings. But this strain is only half the total weight suspended to B; and the power of the combination will hence be 12. It may be increased to any amount, by diminishing the difference between the two grooves. Thus, if the larger one have a diameter of 100 parts, and the smaller one of 99, the resistance to the motion of the upper pulley will only be 100th part of the weight bearing on each string, or 200th of the whole weight suspended to B. As the cord has no fixed extremity, and as the action of the pulleys would be altogether destroyed if it had the power of *sliding* over them, it is necessary to take some means of preventing this. The simplest is the employment of a chain instead of a cord, the links of which are laid hold of by pins projecting from the surface of the wheels. The author may express his surprise that this ingenious invention has not come into more general use; since it enables any amount of power to be obtained, without any corresponding enlargement of the apparatus, or increase of friction.

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE MECHANICAL POWERS (CONTINUED).—THE INCLINED PLANE, WEDGE, AND SCREW.

Inclined Plane.

353. The Inclined Plane is the most simple of all machines; being nothing else than a hard inflexible surface, which may have any degree of inclination to the horizontal plane,—from a very gentle degree of ascent, to one so steep as to be almost perpendicular. When a weight is placed on such a plane, a twofold effect is produced; a part of the pressure is resisted by the plane; whilst the remainder tends to cause the weight to roll or slide down the incline, and to overcome any obstacle that may resist it. Let A C be a plane surface, inclined to the horizontal A B at the angle B A C; then the perpendicular line B C drawn at the highest end of the plane is termed its elevation. Now let W be any weight, kept at rest, (as we will suppose in the first instance) by a force W *c* acting parallel to A C. Now this weight presses upon the inclined plane in the perpendicular line W *a*; and this force we may resolve, by the construction of the parallelogram W *b a d*,

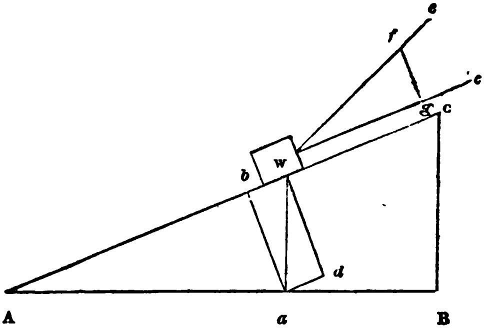


Fig. 106.

into the two forces W *b* and *b a*, the first acting in the direction of the plane surface, the second perpendicularly to it. This last is completely resisted by the plane; whilst the former can only be resisted by some force acting in the direction W C. But suppose this force to be acting in some other direction, as W *e;* to ascertain its action upon the weight, we must resolve it as before, into two forces, of which one, W *g*, shall act in the direction of the plane, and the other *g f* in a line perpendicular to it. The former, therefore, will act against the force W *b* which impels the body down the plane; and, if superior to it, will cause the body to ascend the plane; whilst the latter, acting upwards perpendicularly *from* the surface of the plane, will partly counterbalance the downward pressure W *d* or *b a*. It is evident that, the steeper the plane, the larger is the proportion which W *b* will bear to *b a;* that is, the greater will be the tendency of the body to roll down the plane, and the less will its weight be supported by the surface.

354. The mode in which the power of the inclined plane is estimated, may be deduced from a very simple mathematical process; by which the whole triangle *a b* W can be shown to have its three angles respectively equal to those of the original triangle A B C, so that the sides are proportional to each other. (Euclid, Book VI., Prop. 8.) Hence W *a* is to W *b* as A C is to B C; and W *a* is to *b a* as A C is to A B. Now W *a* represents the whole pressure of the body W in the downward direction; and W *b* that portion of its pressure which causes it to move down the plane, which must be resisted in order to keep the body at rest, and which must be overcome to cause it to ascend. Hence, under all circumstances, the whole weight of the body is to its *pull* down the incline, as the whole length of the incline A C, is to its height B C. And, again, the whole weight of the body is to its pressure perpendicularly to the surface of the incline, as the whole length of the incline A C is to the length of its base A B.

355. This enables us to estimate very readily the amount of force, which, putting aside friction, &c., would serve to drag a load up an incline. For we have only to ascertain how many

times the height of the incline is contained in its length, and we shall have the proportion of the power, acting in the direction of the incline, to the weight to be dragged up. Thus, supposing that the three inclines represented in the adjoining figure have the proportion of 1½, 2, and 3, to the perpendicular height; then a power of 1 lb. acting over the pulley at the top, would balance 1½ lb. on the steepest, 2 lbs. on the middle one, and 3 lbs. on that least inclined; or a weight of 12 lbs. on the first would require 8 lbs. acting over the pulley to balance it, whilst it would be balanced by 6 lbs. on the second, and by 4 lbs. on the third. In the construction of roads and railways, it is necessary to have constant regard to this principle. The proportion of the height of the inclined plane to its length is there termed its *gradient;* thus, if it be said that the gradient is 1 in 100, it is understood that the road rises 1 foot in height for every 100 feet of its length. On such a road, therefore, the additional load which the engine or horse will have to draw, will be the 100th part of the actual weight that is being moved. Thus, if a railway-train weigh 100 tons, and it can be moved along a dead level with a force that would raise 1 ton through a perpendicular, that force must be *doubled*, to move it up an inclined plane whose gradient is 1 in 100, and *tripled* to cause it to ascend one whose gradient is 1 in 50.

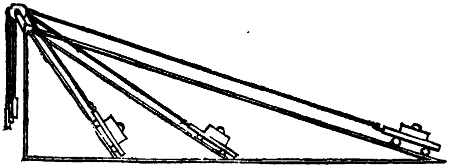


FIG. 107.

356. In the inclined plane, as in all other simple and complex machines, what is gained in power is lost in velocity. This is easily understood. For, in Fig. 107, the power that draws the weight up the least steep of the inclines, causes it to descend, by its own descent through the whole height of the incline, only one-third of the length of the plane; and must therefore descend through three times the perpendicular height, in order to raise the weight to that height. In the same manner, the second plane being twice as long as the perpendicular, the power which

descends in the direction of the latter must move through twice its length, in order to elevate the weight to the whole height of the plane; whilst the power, which in the first plane only exceeded one-third of the weight, must here be more than one-half. Hence the inclined plane is a means by which we can raise a certain weight to a given height, by a power which may be as small as we please, but which must act for a proportionably longer time in order to produce the required effect.

357. The mode of exhibiting the action of the inclined plane, which is represented in the adjoining figure, is of interest in reference to the operation of the screw; which power will be shown to have much the same relation to the inclined plane, as the wheel-and-axle has to the lever. The weight is here fixed in such a manner, as to be capable of being moved only in a vertical direction; and instead of being drawn up the inclined plane, the latter is drawn under it by a cord pulling in the direction of its base. When the force is thus applied, its proportion to the weight must be that which is borne by the height of the plane, not to its length, but to its base.

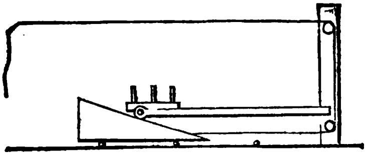


FIG. 108.

358. It necessarily follows, from the principles which have been explained, that any two inclined planes will have to each other a proportional advantage, expressed by the length of each required to raise a weight to the same height. Thus, let A B and B C be two planes, having the same elevation BD; but the length of the plane A B being three times B D, whilst B C is only twice B D. Then, if two weights W and *w* were connected by a cord that passed freely over a pulley at B, those two weights would be in equilibrium when W should be to *w* in the proportion of

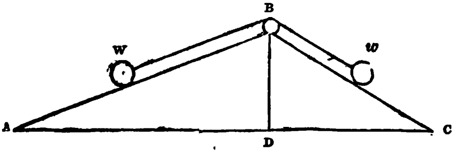


FIG. 109.

3 to 2. For a weight of 3lbs. at W would be balanced by a weight of 1 lb. freely suspended in the perpendicular B D; and this weight of 1 lb. would balance a weight of 2 lbs. on the plane B C. Hence these two weights, W and *w*, being in equilibrium with the same weight, will balance each other.

359. A very simple and elegant mode of expressing these properties of the inclined plane, is to suppose a heavy chain, of equal size throughout, to be supported on an inclined plane, without friction, and to pass over a pulley at its top. Then a portion of chain lying along the whole length of either plane (Fig. 109) will be exactly counterpoised, under all circumstances, by the portion hanging down in the direction of the perpendicular B D. For the weights of two such portions will be to each other as their lengths; and it has been shown that the weights that will balance each other, the one pressing on the plane, the other hanging in the perpendicular, are to each other as the length of the plane to its height. And, again, if similar portions of chain were to lie, without friction, on the double inclined plane A B C, the portions A B and B C would balance each other, being both equivalent to the portion B D hanging in the perpendicular direction.

360. The power of the inclined plane is more affected by friction, than is that of the lever, wheel-and-axle, or pulley; for whilst the friction in those instruments is merely that of the points on which they move, the friction in the inclined plane is that of the weight itself over the whole surface. The amount of this friction will of course depend upon the nature of the surfaces in contact. Thus, if we were to lay a book with a rough-grained cover sideways upon a board covered with cloth or unplaned, we might raise this to a considerable inclination before the book would begin to slide down; thus showing that the resistance occasioned by friction, is to the actual weight of the body, as the height of the plane at which the body begins to slide down is to its length. If the body, however, be smooth, and the surface of the plane also smooth, the angle at which it will slide down is of course greatly diminished; and it comes to be extremely small when the body is made to roll, instead of

sliding down the incline. The difference produced by friction is well seen in the common locking of a carriage-wheel, in order to retard the motion of the vehicle down a steep hill; for though the inclination be such as to cause the carriage to run rapidly down the hill if its wheels are left free, the fixing of one wheel, or the interposition of a "shoe," produces a degree of friction so great, that the carriage would remain at rest, even on a very steep incline, if not drawn down by the power of the horses. But as the descent of a body down an incline is regulated by precisely the same law of gravitation, as that which causes the ordinary descent of falling bodies, a carriage once put in motion downwards by a force sufficient to overcome the friction, may continue to descend, through the increased force which it acquires in consequence of its increasing speed.

361. We have hitherto considered the action of the inclined plane only on the large scale in which it is introduced into the construction of roads, &c., and in which the base of the plane corresponds with the surface of the ground. But the same principles operate, upon a smaller scale, in a great variety of modes. Thus the common chisel is an inclined plane; in which, when it is used for cutting, the pressure of the substance that is being divided, on the two sides of its edge, constitutes the weight or resistance; whilst the power is the force with which the chisel is made to go through it; and this force operates in the direction of the base of the plane, or the length of the chisel. Some other cutting instruments have the same action; but, in general, they may be rather compared to the wedge, the nature of whose power will be presently explained.

362. The inclined plane has been very effectively applied in the construction of some forms of printing-press; to supersede the screw and the system of levers employed in the Stanhope and Columbian presses (§.302 and 305). In one of these, the power is obtained by means of an inclined plane, which is forced by lever power between a pair of rollers; one of which is fixed, and the other connected with the platten, so that the latter is forced down as the inclined plane is driven between them. By making the inclination less in that part which is forced in last,

greater power may be gained at the latter part of the *pull;* whilst, the inclination being greater in the part of the plane first inserted, the quickness with which the rollers are separated and the platten moved down, is greater at *that* part of the pull. This, as already stated, is an important point to be attended to in the construction of the printing-press (§.301). In this press, the inclined plane works in a case filled with oil; and thus the friction is greatly diminished.

The Wedge.

363. The wedge may be regarded as consisting of two inclined planes applied base to base; and the peculiarity of its effect is rather due to the *mode* in which its power is applied, than to the simple mechanical advantage obtained by its construction. The latter is very easily computed on the principles already stated. For, let A B C be a wedge, formed by the union of the two inclined planes A B and B C along the line of their bases, B D; and let this wedge be driven into a piece of timber in order to split it: its resistance will be acting in a direction perpendicular to the sides of the wedge, at the points of contact, that is, in the lines *b e*, *a f:* these forces may be resolved (§.174) into the forces *b d*, *a c*, acting perpendicularly to the back of the wedge, and the forces *c f* and *d e*, acting in contrary directions along the back. These last will counterbalance each other; and the force, therefore, which must be applied to the wedge in the direction of its length, in order to counterbalance a given resistance at *a* or *b*, will be to that resistance as *a c* is to *c f*, or as *b d* is to *b e*,—which, on the principle already mentioned (§.354), will be as the side C D of the triangle B C D, or half the *back* of the

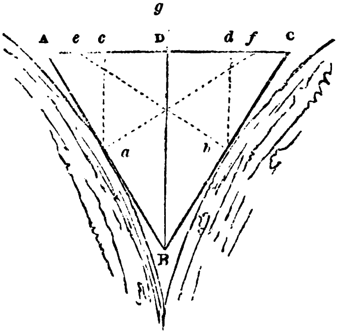


Fig. 110.

wedge, is to the side B C or the *side* of the wedge. But as the resistance is applied at both the points *a* and *b*, the force required to neutralize that resistance will be to the whole resistance itself, as the whole back of the wedge is to one of its sides. Hence the more acute the angle A C B,—or in other words, the sharper the wedge,—the shorter will be its back in proportion to its length, and the greater will be its power.

364. But it is evident that the amount of friction against the sides of a wedge must be enormous; and it is, in fact, such as would resist a very large amount of direct pressure applied upon its back; so that the real action of a wedge is very different from that which might have been inferred from theory. This, indeed, is evident from the fact, that an ordinary wedge, once driven in, will seldom be forced out by any pressure of the surfaces which it is separating, unless both it and the surfaces should be peculiarly smooth. Of course, however, the force which will operate to press it out will depend, not only upon the tendency of the sides to close together, but upon the form of the wedge itself; since it is evident that a thin wedge, which can be made to enter with a force bearing but a small proportion to the resistance to be overcome, will not be pressed out nearly as readily as a thick wedge, which requires a large amount of force to introduce it. Indeed, the pressure upon the sides of a thin wedge will be such as to hold it in with considerable firmness; and it is on this principle that the efficacy of the common *nails*, so extensively used in connecting wood-work, entirely depends. The length of the nail will, of course, have considerable influence on the force with which it will be held by the wood; since the surface over which the pressure is exerted, will be increased as its length is extended. It has been found that a sixpenny nail driven into dry deal, at right angles to the grain of the wood, required a force of 530 lbs. to extract it, when driven to the depth of two inches; but that, when it was driven to the depth of only one inch, a force of 187 lbs. was sufficient to extract it. A similar nail driven to the depth of one inch into dry oak, required for its extraction a force of 557 lbs.; and when driven into dry beech, a force of 667 lbs. It appears that, for

nails of the ordinary tapering form, the force required to extract them, is to that required to force them in, as 5 to 6. The tenacity of nails which have been long imbedded is greatly increased by the roughening of their surfaces through the formation of rust, which almost always takes place to a certain extent, even in very dry situations; and as the nail is itself weakened by the same cause, it very commonly happens that nails, which were quite strong enough to have borne being extracted, soon after they were driven in, break when an attempt is made to remove them at a subsequent period.

365. Another difficulty in estimating the mechanical power of the wedge results from the mode in which force is usually applied to it. This is not by simple *pressure*, but by *impact*,—that is, by a succession of blows upon its back, with a heavy body in motion. This produces results which no steady pressure could accomplish; thus we may with an ordinary hammer drive a wedge into some hard material, which would resist its entrance if it were pressed in with a force of many tons. The reason of this is, that a pressure, however great, necessarily yields at *the moment of impact* to an impinging force, however small (§. 206). The slightest yielding of the sides permits the forward motion of the wedge to that extent, and thus a succession of blows must in time produce an evident result; since the advantage gained by each is followed up by that of the next, provided the wedge have an angle sufficiently small to prevent its being pressed back again.

366. The applications of the wedge, in the various mechanical arts, are extremely numerous. Not only are large strong wedges, driven in by heavy hammers, employed for riving timber or for splitting stone, but all our cutting instruments with two inclined edges, such as knives, axes, sabres, &c., operate on the same principle. Wedges are often used, again, to raise immense weights through a small height; and they have the great advantage over all other mechanical powers, of being applied extremely easily in such cases. Thus, when it is necessary to examine and repair the keel of a ship, she is floated into a dock; and the water being pumped out of this, she is allowed to settle down

upon blocks placed under her keel, being at the same time steadied by shores, or timbers, placed rather aslant against her sides. It is an object to cause her to be entirely suspended upon these shores, in order to remove the blocks from under the keel; and this is accomplished by putting wedges under the lower ends of the former, and causing these to be all driven in at the same time. Though the ship may be thus raised by only an inch or two, she is completely lifted off the blocks, which may be then removed. Another plan is adopted in some dockyards, which is also an application of the principle of the wedge, though in a mode directly contrary to this. The blocks, on which the ship at first rests, are made in three pieces, the middle one of which has a wedge form, with the sides sufficiently inclined towards each other, to prevent its being held between the other two, when a considerable weight is resting upon them. It may be prevented from springing out, however, by a pin which is passed transversely across the three in the position of the dotted line; and the block will then bear the same amount of pressure as if it were solid. Now, after the ship has settled down, and has been propped up on the shores, these blocks are easily removed, one after the other, by simply drawing out the pin from each, and striking the small end of the middle or wedge-piece with a hammer, which will cause it to spring out. This method has the great advantage, of not requiring a large number of men to be brought together, for the purpose of lifting the ship off the blocks; for these being thus removed from under her, she is left supported on the shores, exactly in her previous position.

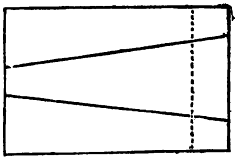


FIG. 111.

367. A successful application of wedges has been made, in restoring to the perpendicular a very tall chimney, which had become considerably inclined in consequence of a defect in the foundation. In the oil-mill, too, the wedge is the principal agent. The seeds from which the oil is to be extracted are placed, after having been reduced to the state of meal by another machine, in horse-hair bags, which are laid between upright planes

hard wood; between these planes there are large wedges, which are driven down by the successive blows of heavy beams of wood; and the pressure thus produced is so great, as to compress the matter within the bags, into a mass almost as dense as the wood itself. The pressure is removed, by causing one of the beams to fall a few times on the small end of a wedge, placed in the contrary direction. There is a very simple and useful application of the wedge, the operation of which closely resembles the one just described, though its purpose is different. It is often desirable to fix large timbers together with wooden, rather than with iron, fastenings; especially in situations where the latter would be exposed to corrosion through dampness. With this view, a wedge-shaped mortice (*ac*, *c′a′*, and *b c*, *c′ b′*) in each of the timbers; these mortices are of the same size at their smaller extremities *c c′*, which correspond when the timbers are laid together. Two pieces of hard wood are cut out, of such a form as to fit into the sides of this double wedge-shaped hollow, leaving between them an interval, which is somewhat broader at the top than at the bottom; and if a wedge, with sides very slightly inclined, be driven in between them, they will be pressed against the sides of the mortice, with a force so great, that no power can draw the timbers apart. This method is used in bolting together the timbers of the immense wooden bridges which have been erected in America (§.78).

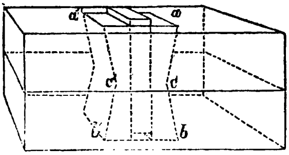


Fig. 112.

The Screw.

368. It is obvious that the action of the inclined plane will be the same, whether it is extended in a straight line or in a curve. Thus a certain inclination of a road will have the same effect upon the draught, whether that road be carried straight up a hill, or winds round and round it. In the same manner, an inclined plane coiled round a central pillar, like a spiral flight of stairs, would have the same mechanical advantage as if it were

extended in a straight line. Such an apparatus is sometimes employed for raising water, or finely-divided solid substances. For this purpose, it is only necessary to make a spiral incline revolve in a hollow cylinder fitted to its outside; and anything which is placed upon it at the bottom will be gradually raised to the top, in exactly the same manner as the weight is raised by a straight inclined plane forced under it (§. 357). This constitutes one form of the Archimedes Screw, sometimes used for raising water;* and it is sometimes employed in flour-mills, as a convenient mode of conveying corn, flour, &c., from one part of the building to another; since the material to be carried may thus be caused to move along a cylinder of any length or any inclination, and is delivered at the top, without any manual assistance, as fast as it is supplied at the bottom.

369. Such is, in fact, the principle of the Screw; which is nothing else than an inclined plane coiled round a cylindrical axis; and which, having thus a circular action instead of a continued movement in a straight line, bears very much the same relation to the inclined plane that the wheel and axle does to the lever. This may be made very apparent by a simple contrivance. Let a triangular piece of paper be cut out, having the form of the inclined plane A B C (Fig. 113), and of any convenient dimensions,—say 18 inches long and 6 inches high; and let a broad black line be drawn along the edge A C. Now, if this piece of paper be coiled round a ruler, beginning at its large end, the black edge A C will be seen to form a spiral path

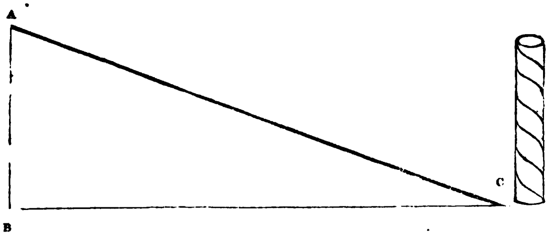


FIG. 113.

---

* See Treatise on HYDRAULICS.

around it, exactly resembling the thread of a screw. This path will commence from the point C, and will occupy on the ruler a length equal to C B. The number of turns which it will make, depends of course upon the size of the ruler; thus, if it be two inches round, the paper will make nine turns upon it,—if three, six turns. The distance between two threads at any point will depend upon the number of turns; for the whole inclination B C being constantly 6 inches, this amount, being divided by the number of turns, will give the space between each thread. If the cylinder were so large, that the whole length A B was required to make one turn round it, then the edge A C would form only one coil of the thread; and, as the point A would then be exactly under C, the distance between the beginning and the end of the coil would be 6 inches. But if the paper take 6 turns round the cylinder, the inclined edge or screw-thread will make 6 coils, and the depth of each will be only 1 inch; or if it take 9 turns, the whole depth of 6 inches will be distributed among 9 coils; and the space between each will only be 6-9ths or 2-3rds of an inch.

370. The power of the screw is usually applied, not by causing the weight or resistance to move along its surface; but by making it revolve within a hollow cylinder, of which the sides are cut with a thread the reverse of its own, so that the two exactly fit together. Now, it is obvious that, if this hollow cylinder be made to turn upon the screw (as in Fig. 115, where it has the form that is termed a *nut*), or if the screw be made to turn in it, the nut will be caused to move over the screw in the direction of its length. Supposing that the power is applied to the circumference of the screw itself, the advantage gained by it (putting friction aside), is estimated in precisely the same manner as in the ordinary inclined plane. For we may consider each turn of the thread as a short inclined plane, of which the length is the circumference of the cylinder, whilst the elevation is the distance between the two consecutive threads, or between the beginning and the end of each thread. Let it be supposed that a weight is attached to the nut, and that it is to be drawn upwards by the revolution of the screw,—

the nut being stationary; then such a force applied to the circumference of the screw, as to give it one turn, will raise the nut by the height of the incline, or the distance between the threads. The force being applied in the direction of the circumference of the screw, which is that of the base of the inclined plane, it will have an advantage equivalent to the excess of the base over the height of the plane (§. 354); that is, to the number of times that the circumference of the screw contains the distance between the threads. Thus, suppose the circumference of a screw to be 6 inches, and the distance between the threads to be ½ an inch; then the former contains the latter 12 times; and a power of 1 lb. applied to the circumference of the screw would balance a weight of 12 lbs. suspended from the nut.

371. But, in practice, the power is never so applied; for a much greater advantage is gained by the application of a lever, either to the screw (as in Fig. 114), or to the nut (as in Fig. 115). The additional power thus gained is calculated on precisely the same principle with that of the wheel and axle; for the centre of the screw being the fulcrum, the distance from that point to the circumference of the screw (that is, its radius) constitutes the short arm of the lever; and the whole length of the bar is the long arm. Thus, if we apply to such a screw as that last mentioned a lever of 3 feet in length, we shall gain a lever power of about 36 to 1; for the circumference of the screw being 6 inches, its diameter will be about 2 inches, and its radius 1 inch; and thus the long and short arms of the lever will be to each other as 36 to 1, so that a force of 1 lb. applied at the end of the lever, is equivalent to 36 lbs. acting at the circumference of the screw. And as 1 lb. acting at the circumference of the screw is equivalent to

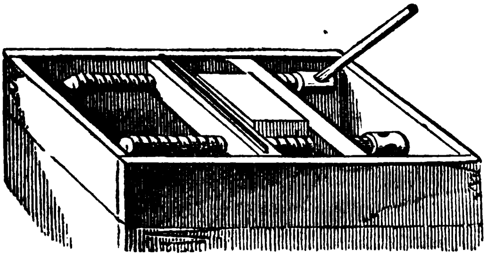


FIG. 114.

weight of 12 lbs. bearing on its thread, so 36 lbs. is equivalent to (36 × 12) 432, the weight supported by 1 lb. applied to the lever.

372. The same computation may be made, however, in a shorter way; for we may leave out the middle term, the size of the screw, which is of no consequence when we know the distance between its threads, and the length of the lever which moves it. For if we ascertain the space through which the power moves during one revolution of the screw, and divide this by the distance between the threads, we shall at once obtain the proportion between the resistance and the power. Thus, in the last example, the length of the lever being 3 feet, the circumference of the circle, of which this is the radius, will be something more than 6 times that amount, namely, 18 feet, or 216 inches. This being divided by $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch, the distance between the threads, gives 432, the proportion of the resistance to the power, as before. The simple rule for ascertaining the power of a screw, therefore, is to divide 6 times the length of the lever-arm by the distance between the threads of the screw; but the result obtained by such a calculation is greatly interfered with, by the friction of the surface of the screw-thread against that in which it works. So great is this friction, that a screw has very seldom any tendency to turn backwards; however strong might be its impulse to do so, arising from the weight or resistance acting against it.

373. Still the screw affords a very simple means of gaining a vast mechanical advantage; and it is, therefore, much employed, where a great resistance is to be overcome by a moderate power. This is especially the case in the construction of *presses* of different kinds, in which the screw is applied in a great variety of ways. The accompanying figure represents the common bookbinder's press; in which the screw is fixed into the press-board, whilst the nut, resting on the solid cross-piece, is turned round by the lever. In the common napkin-press, on the other hand, the screw is attached to the press-board, in such a mode as to admit of being itself turned round; and it works through a hollow screw cut in the cross-piece itself, which is a fixture. Presses of such kinds are employed for very numerous purposes;—when, for instance, it is requisite to compress soft and light materials,

such as cotton, into a small compass, for convenience of transportation;—or when it is desired to make an impression by one substance upon another, as in printing or coining. For those purposes in which the most powerful compression is required, however, the screw-press has been very much superseded by the Hydrostatic* or Bramah Press, in which the amount of friction is comparatively small.

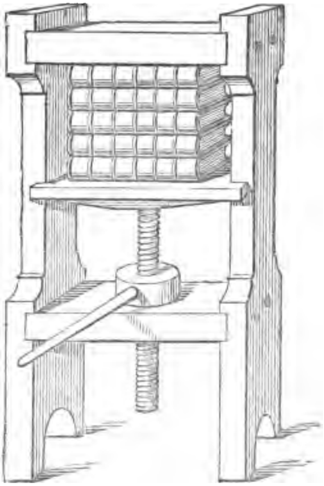


Fig. 115.

374. Another mode of applying the screw, consists in making its threads work against the teeth of a wheel, instead of into a nut; as is seen in Fig. 116. Here the distance between two threads of the screw is equal to the distance between two teeth of the wheel; and thus, by one turn of the screw, the wheel is advanced by an interval equal to that between any two of its teeth. A wheel may thus be turned by a screw (which, when so applied, is called an *endless* screw, as there is no limit to its action on the wheel) with much less power than would be requisite to turn it by a pinion; since the latter cannot advantageously have less than 6 teeth, so that the wheel is advanced by an amount equal to 6 of its teeth, by each turn of the pinion: but there is a proportional loss of velocity. The machine in the accompanying figure is so constructed, as to

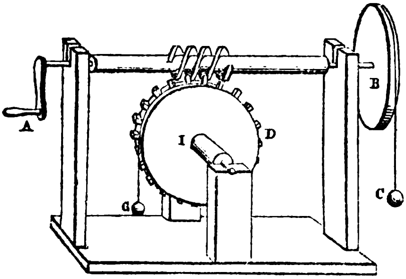


Fig. 116.

---

* See Treatise on Hydrostatics.

show experimentally the proportion between the power and the weight which it will overcome. The endless screw is turned by the winch A; and at the opposite extremity of its spindle is a pulley B, having a radius equal to that of the winch. The screw works into the wheel D, having 48 teeth, and from the circumference of this hangs a weight G. Now it is obvious that 48 turns of the winch A will be required to give one revolution to the wheel D,—that is, to raise the weight G through a space equal to its circumference. Let it be supposed that the space described by the handle A in *one* revolution is equal to the whole of that through which the weight ascends;—then by one turn, it will raise the weight through 1-48th part of the space; and, if the radius of the pulley B be equal to that of the winch A, a weight of 1 lb. hung at C will balance 48 lbs. at G, and a slight addition will cause it to descend so as to raise G. If the radius of the winch A be greater than that of the wheel D, additional power will be gained in the same proportion; and a very great increase of mechanical advantage will be gained, by suspending the weight G from the axle I, instead of from the wheel. For if the wheel have 6 times the diameter of the axle, then a weight of 48 lbs. at G will be equivalent to 288 lbs. suspended from the axle; but there will, of course, be a loss of velocity in the same proportion. It is by an endless screw that the vanes of a smoke-jack are usually made to act upon the wheel which causes the revolution of the spit: the power applied is very small; but, as it acts with considerable velocity, it gives sufficient motion to the wheel.

375. As the power of an ordinary screw depends upon the proportion between the circumference of the circle described by its power and the distance of its threads, it is obvious, that, by increasing the length of the lever, or diminishing the distance of its threads, we might increase our power to any required extent. But here the same practical difficulties occur, as in the case of the wheel and axle; for a great extension of the arm of the lever is attended with obvious inconveniences; and in proportion as the distance between the threads of the screw is diminished, they must themselves become thinner and weaker. The principle of

the Chinese wheel and axle (§.325) has been applied in a very ingenious manner to the screw. It consists of two screws, of which one works within the other; whilst the outside one turns in a fixed nut or cross-bar, as in the common press; and the inside one, being fixed to the press-board, rises into the outer one as the latter is turned round. If the threads of the two screws were at equal distances, it is obvious that the press-board would not be made to descend by the downward motion of the outer screw; since the inner screw would move up within it to just the same amount. But by making a certain difference between the distance of the threads in the two screws, any amount of movement which we desire may be given to the press-board. Thus, supposing that the outer screw have the distance of an inch between each thread, whilst the inner screw has only 3-4ths of an inch; the outer screw descends an inch by one turn through its fixed nut, but the inner screw rises into it 3-4ths of an inch by the same turn; so that the press-board is only made to descend through the difference,—1-4th of an inch; and the same power is thus gained, as if the turns of the screw had only the distance of 1-4th of an inch from each other.

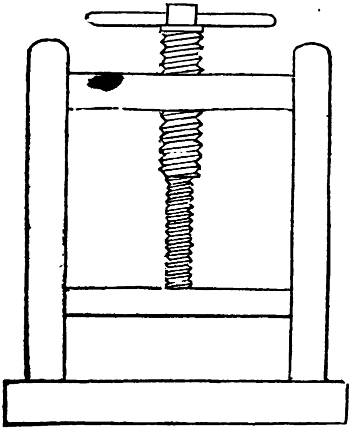


FIG. 117.

376. The more nearly the distance between the threads of the two screws approaches to equality, the greater will be the power gained, since the real motion is only to the amount of the difference between them. Thus, supposing that the outer screw has an inch between the threads, or 24 threads in two feet, whilst the inner screw has 25 threads in the same length, or a distance of 24-25ths of an inch between the threads,—the difference of distance, or the amount of motion produced by one

turn of the double screw, will be no more than 1-25th of an inch; so that, if the lever were 6 feet long, the power gained, according to the principle already stated (§.372) will be no less than (36 × 12 × 25 =) 10,800. To this kind of increase there are no limits, since we can make the threads as nearly equal as we please, and on a scale proportionate to the amount of strength required. This compound screw is termed Hunter's screw, after its inventor, the celebrated surgeon. As now applied in practice, however, its construction is somewhat different, although the principle is the same. If a single long cylinder have a thread of any size cut upon it for half its length, and the other half have a thread a little different, it is evident that two nuts, or cross-pieces, made to receive the two parts of the screw, will be made to approach each other, or to recede from one another, as the screw is turned, by an amount equal to the difference between the threads. For, supposing the threads equal, both nuts are made to advance along the screw as it is turned, to the same amount; and their distance from each other remains the same. But, if the lower thread be coarser than the upper, its nut will move on faster than that of the other, and will tend to overtake it; whilst, if the screw be turned in the contrary direction, the nuts will be made to separate from each other to the same amount.

377. The screw is not used, however, only as a means of gaining mechanical advantage; for it serves many other important purposes. Wherever a very small amount of motion has to be produced, and its quantity exactly measured, the screw is the instrument employed. Thus, in the instruments termed micrometers, which are applied to microscopes and telescopes, for the purpose of measuring the size of objects seen through them, a screw is used, either to move the object across a fixed thread, or to move the thread across the object; so that, by the amount of motion given, the diameter of the object may be known. This is easily ascertained by employing a very fine-threaded screw; and by marking divisions upon the head by which it is turned. Thus, suppose the screw to have 50 turns to the inch, and the circle round the head to be divided into 200 parts, each of these divisions will be equivalent to 1-10,000th part of an inch; since

one whole turn of the screw will move the object but 1-50th part of an inch; and 1-200th of a turn will move it but the 1-200th of that amount. The same principle is employed in drawing very fine lines upon glass or other hard substances; for, supposing the lines to be drawn by a diamond-point, fixed in a frame which only allows it to be moved backwards and forwards,—if the object be moved by the micrometer screw after each line has been drawn, the next may be drawn at any the most minute distance from it, which may be measured with the greatest nicety. In this manner lines have been drawn on glass at a distance of only 1000th of an inch from each other; and on steel at a distance of only 1-10,000th of an inch. These last were for the purpose of giving to a polished steel surface the power of reflecting light after the manner of mother-of-pearl, according to the principles to be explained in the Treatise on Optics. The principle of Hunter's screw may be very conveniently applied in the construction of a micrometer; since the minutest degree of motion required may be thus obtained, without such a degree of fineness of thread, as would make it difficult to cut the screw accurately.

378. Among the familiar applications of the screw may be noticed the vice, the clamp, and the patent corkscrew. The action of the two former requires no explanation; that of the latter may not be at once understood. In the patent corkscrew, there are two screws with unequal threads, one working within the other, as in Hunter's screw; but the threads are cut in contrary directions, and their action is not connected. The inner screw is attached to the handle above, and carries at its lower end the *helix* or spiral, which is to be made to penetrate the cork. This is forced down by the motion of the handle, until it can turn no farther; and it then lays hold of, and drags with it, the cylinder in which it turns. By means of the coarse screw which is cut on the outside of this, in the contrary direction to that of the interior screw, the continued circular movement of the handle causes it to ascend rapidly, carrying with it the interior screw, and the cork which is held at its lower end.

379. The most numerous of all the instances of the applications of the screw, however, are those in which it is made to

bind together two pieces of timber or other material, and its utility for such purposes entirely depends upon the amount of friction, which is generated by the pressure against its surface and thread. For, supposing the friction to be altogether removed, every screw on which there is any strain would slowly turn out of its socket, and allow the separation of the parts which it is intended to hold together. Screws which are to be inserted into a material that can be compressed, such as wood, are usually made smaller near the point than near the top; and thus they act upon the principle of the wedge also, being driven into a hole that is at first too small for their large extremity, but the resistance being gradually overcome. The increased pressure thus created serves to hold the screw much more firmly in its place, than if it were of a cylindrical form, and were driven into a hole just large enough to receive it. Only this last form, however, can be given to those screws which are to be inserted into metals and other incompressible materials; but here there is much more strength in the interior thread by which the screw is embraced. In instruments which are used to penetrate wood, &c., such as gimlets or augers, the screw is brought to a point at its extremity, so as to enter easily, and then widens rapidly; the combination of the action of the wedge with that of the screw, in such an instrument, is very apparent.

CHAPTER XII.

OF FRICTION.

380. Allusions have been several times made, in the preceding pages, to the resistance to motion occasioned by *friction*, or the rubbing of the surfaces, of which one is moving over the other. It is intended here to examine the nature of this resistance somewhat more in detail, and to state the laws by which it is governed.

381. It has been shown (§ 32) that great resistance to motion may occur, when the surfaces are extremely smooth, especially if they are of the same kind; in consequence of the homogeneous attraction, which occasions a tendency in the particles of the two surfaces to adhere, when brought into very close contact with each other. This is certainly one cause of friction; and it seems to explain the well-known fact, that there is more friction between two smooth surfaces of the same kind—two of brass, for instance,—or two of steel—than there is between two surfaces of different kinds—steel and brass, for example. It has been found that where steel works against gun-metal, (a kind of very hard brass,) the same weight may be moved with a force of 15½ lbs., which it would require 22 lbs. to move, when steel works against cast-iron. Hence we see the importance of so combining different metals, in the construction of machinery, as to reduce the friction of their moving surfaces to as low an amount as possible. It is for this reason that we almost always see iron spindles working in brass sockets; and even when the frame in which the spindle works may be of iron, the hole is lined or *bushed* (as it is termed) with brass.

is, in part, for the same reason, that, in clock and watch-work, the wheels are of brass, but the pinions of steel.

382. The resistance produced by friction, however, is generally caused, in part, by the roughness of the rubbing surfaces, which prevents their free motion on one another. It is impossible to make any surface perfectly free from such roughness; and the minute elevations on one, locking (as it were) into the depressions in the other, cause an obstruction to the force that moves them, which varies with the degree of roughness. Hence, even in the simplest machines, there must be a certain amount of loss by friction; and in those of a complex nature, that loss is very greatly increased. Yet this very friction performs purposes in the economy of nature, which far more than compensate us for the loss which it thus occasions. "Were there no friction," it has been well remarked, "all bodies on the surface of the earth would be clashing against one another; rivers would dash with unbounded velocity; and we should see little else besides collision and motion. At present, whenever a body acquires a great velocity, it soon loses it by friction against the surface of the earth; the friction of water against the surfaces it runs over soon reduces the rapid torrent to a gentle stream; the fury of the tempest is lessened by the friction of the air on the face of the earth; and the violence of the ocean is subdued by the attrition of its own waters. Its offices in works of art are equally important. Our garments owe their strength to friction; and the strength of ropes, sails, and various other things, depends on the same cause; for they are made of short fibres pressed together by twisting, and this pressure causes a sufficient degree of friction to prevent the fibres sliding one upon another. Without friction, it would be impossible to make a rope of the fibres of hemp, or a sheet of the fibres of flax; neither could the short fibres of cotton have ever been made into such an infinite variety of forms as they have received from the hands of ingenious workmen. Wool, also, has been converted into a thousand textures for comfort or for luxury; and all these are constituted of fibres united by friction. In fine, if friction retards the motion of

machines, and consumes a large quantity of moving power, we have a full compensation in the numerous and important benefits which it insures to us."

383. As an example of the advantageous application which may be made of the resistance occasioned by friction, we may advert to the various kinds of *drags* used to retard the motion of a coach down a hill, or to bring a rapidly-moving railway-train to rest (§ 152). A very ingenious drag has been contrived for the former purpose, which deserves special notice. It consists of a circle or collar of wood, divided into three pieces, which are jointed together; and this is fixed on the nave of the wheel, in such a manner, that it may either stand off at a short distance from its surface, or may be made to embrace it closely, causing friction sufficient to render the motion of the wheel difficult, or even to resist it altogether. The first position is seen in the left-hand figure; and the second in the right. The wooden collar is made to embrace the nave, by means of a chain attached to the bolt *b c*; and this chain is connected with the breeching of the horse in such a manner, that, when the vehicle is descending a hill, and the horse in resisting its descent bears upon its breeching, the chain is pulled, and the collar tightened, so as to drag the wheel. Both the wheels may be fitted with this apparatus; and the dragging of either or both of them may be prevented, by inserting a small pin into the shaft, which shall prevent the bolt from being drawn forwards when the horse bears on its breeching.

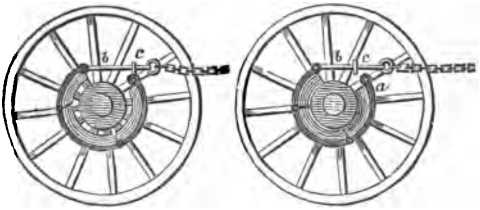


FIG. 118.

384. Numerous experiments on the effects of friction have been made at different times, and by various persons; and, although there is a good deal of discrepancy in their results, the following principles seem to be well established by them.—I. The amount of friction for hard substances is proportional to the pressure employed. Thus, if one piece of cast-iron be la

upon another, both having flat surfaces, it will be found that the force necessary to move the upper one over the lower will be almost exactly proportional to its weight—being doubled, tripled, or halved, as the weight is doubled, tripled, or halved. This rule holds good for hard metals, with almost perfect exactness, until the pressure amounts to 32 lbs. on the square inch; but there is a considerable deviation from it, in the case of pressures exceeding that limit. There is but little irregularity in the case of hard woods, even up to a greater pressure than this. A piece of Norway oak having a surface of 2 inches square, being pressed upon another with a weight of 1 cwt., exhibited a friction of 14 lbs., 5 oz.; whilst, under a pressure of 4 cwt., its friction became 56 lbs., 7 oz.,—thus differing from four times its previous friction by only 13 oz., although the pressure was then 112 lbs. on the square inch. The case is very different, however, with regard to fibrous substances, such as cloth; for *their* friction *diminishes* as the pressure is increased; probably because their texture is thus rendered closer, so that their character approaches nearer to that of hard substances. The friction of metallic substances for pressures beneath 32 lbs. on the square inch, is, upon the average, about one-sixth of the weight;—that is, a force equal to one-sixth of its pressure is required to move a mass of metal having a smooth surface, over the surface of another. The friction is found to be least, when brass and wrought-iron work together; its proportion to the weight being nearly as 1 to $7\frac{1}{3}$. When steel works upon steel, the proportion of friction to the weight is as 1 to $6\frac{6}{7}$. And when cast-iron works upon cast-iron, it is as 1 to nearly $6\frac{1}{2}$. The friction of the softer metals upon one another is much greater. Thus, when brass works on brass, its friction is to the weight as 1 to $5\frac{3}{4}$; and when tin works on tin, it is as 1 to $3\frac{1}{3}$.

385. II. The second principle is, that the amount of friction remains the same, when the whole pressure is the same, whatever be the extent of the surfaces in contact, provided their character remains the same. This is a very important property, and may be regarded as well established. It is evident that, when a weight rests upon a large surface, the pressure upon any given

portion of that surface is far less, than if the whole weight rests upon a surface of smaller dimensions. Thus, if a weight of 100 lbs. rest upon a surface of 8 square inches, the pressure per square inch is only 12½ lbs.; whereas, if the weight rested upon a surface of only 2 square inches, the pressure would be 50 lbs. per square inch. As the friction is proportional to the pressure, it follows that the friction of any given extent of surface, loaded with a certain weight, will be the same as that of a surface four times as large, but having a pressure only one-fourth as great on each quarter. This is found to be almost precisely the case, in regard to hard surfaces of the same character; but it does not hold good in reference to fibrous substances, such as wood, if the direction of its fibres be changed. Thus the friction of a piece of cast-iron, laid upon another, is very nearly the same, whether it be made to slide upon its flat side or upon its edge. But if a block of oak be made to slide upon an oak table, in such a manner that the fibres of the two are in the same direction, the friction is greater than it is, when the fibres of the block and those of the table run in opposite directions.

386. III. The third principle is also one of great importance. It may be thus expressed. The friction of a body, when in a state of continuous motion, bears the same constant proportion to the pressure, whatever may be the rapidity of the motion. Hence the friction of any machine is the same, whatever may be the velocity of its motion; and its influence may be regarded as a *uniformly retarding* force. This does not hold good, however, in regard to cloth and other fibrous substances, the friction of which is actually diminished by increased velocity. Neither does the principle apply in any case to the force required to change the state of a body from one of rest to one of motion; for the resistance occasioned by friction is usually much greater under such circumstances, than it is when the body is already in motion. The *friction of quiescence* (as it is termed) may, however, be changed into the *friction of motion*, by the slightest *jar* or shock, which shall produce the most imperceptible movement of the surfaces of contact. Of this we frequently see illustrations, in the case of bodies which are held by friction in insecur

positions—as a book lying upon an inclined surface—but which are made to fall by any tremulous motion, such as the shaking of the floor by a person walking across it. The same is noticed in the launching of a ship: the *ways* form an inclined plane, down which the ship slides readily when once set in motion; but, although all the props that previously kept her up are removed, she frequently does not commence her descent, until the people on board have produced a *jar* by jumping on her deck. When both surfaces are of wood, the friction of quiescence is generally about one-half more than the friction of motion; but when both surfaces are of metal, the difference is much less, and indeed can scarcely be said, in some instances, to exist at all.

387. The resistance produced by the friction of metallic surfaces is diminished, as every one knows, by interposing oily or greasy substances between them; and it is a matter of great practical importance to ascertain what substances are best adapted for this purpose. No general principles can be laid down in regard to their use; for the employment of them entirely destroys the constant proportion, which has been stated to exist between the friction and the pressure, in other instances. When oil is interposed between the surfaces, it is found to diminish the friction to a very great degree, so long as the load is not heavy; but when the pressure is much increased, the friction increases in a far higher proportion; so that it is nearly as great, for a very heavy load, as when no oil is employed. Thus, when an axle of yellow brass worked in a collar of cast-iron, without oil, its friction was about 1-4th of the pressure, whatever the amount of the load. When the surfaces were oiled, the proportion of friction was reduced, whilst the pressure was only ½ cwt., to 1-37th of the weight; but when the pressure was increased to 11 cwt., the proportion of friction rose to 1-6th, or little less than when no oil was employed. But when a harder unguent was employed, such as tallow, soft-soap, or anti-attrition composition, the proportion of friction under heavy pressures is much less; so that it seems to be a general principle, that, the heavier the pressure, the harder should be the unguent; whilst, with light pressures, the more fluid unguents may be

employed with advantage. Hence, for large machinery, tallow, lard, &c., may be most advantageously used; whilst for clock and watch-work, in which the least viscidity would check the movement, and the pressure is very light, only the finest oils can be employed. It is remarkable that the interposition of water between surfaces of wood *diminishes* their friction *when in motion*, if the fibres of one piece have a direction perpendicular to those of the other, from about one-third to one-fourth of the pressure; whilst it increases their *friction of quiescence*,—that is, increases the force requisite to produce the first movement,—from rather more than one-half to nearly three-quarters of the pressure.

388. The laws of friction have an important bearing on the construction of carriages; particularly as to the direction in which the power of the horse should be applied. It is found by experiment, that this power will produce a much greater effect, when it is made to pull the carriage somewhat upwards (or from the ground) as well as forwards, than when it pulls simply forwards; and the angle at which the power may be best applied is determined in the following simple manner. Let the carriage be placed upon a road having just such an inclination, that whilst at rest it will remain at rest, and that when put in motion it will continue to descend uniformly; its downward tendency at this inclination, therefore, is exactly equal to the friction, and is counterbalanced by it. Now such an inclination is exactly that at which the power may be most advantageously applied, when the carriage is moving on a horizontal surface; for the power will then have the tendency to lift the carriage from the ground, to just such a degree as may diminish its friction as much as possible, without any of it being uselessly expended. Hence, the rougher the road, and the more friction there may be in the axles of the wheels, the greater should be the inclination at which the draught is applied. In the railroad, in which the friction on the road is trifling in comparison with the pressure, the power is most advantageously applied horizontally, or in the line of the road.

389. Many contrivances may be adopted to reduce friction

where it opposes an undesirable resistance to motion; but the principle in all of them is the same,—that of substituting a *rolling* for a *rubbing* motion. It is in this that the superiority of the wheeled-cart or carriage over the sledge consists. The friction of the latter upon ice or snow is not too great to be readily overcome; but upon a common road it is enormously increased; whilst the interposition of even very small wheels or rollers at once diminishes it. There are few persons who have not witnessed the assistance given by rollers, laid under a beam of wood or a block of stone, in facilitating its movement along the ground. In America it is not uncommon to move whole houses by a contrivance of this kind. The earth is gradually dug away beneath the foundations, and the walls are supported on horizontal beams as the earth is withdrawn, until the whole house rests upon a timber frame-work. This is then drawn by capstans and pulleys, over *ways* previously prepared; the friction being diminished by placing rollers or balls between the moving surfaces. The largest mass ever thus moved, is probably the block of stone, on which stands the colossal statue of Peter the Great at St. Petersburg. It is estimated to weigh 400,000 lbs.; and its size may be judged of by the figure on its top in the accompanying diagram, representing the mode in which the moving power was applied; this figure is that of a drummer, who was placed there to regulate the movements of the men employed. The mass of stone was supported on each side upon two vast beams, which were grooved to receive the friction balls; on these, one beam was made to move over the other with the least possible friction. By these means, this enormous block was drawn for a distance of several miles, by the combined efforts of a large number of men.

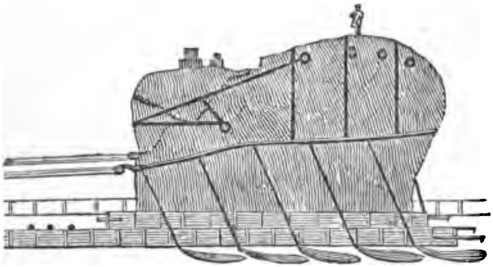


FIG. 119.

390. A similar plan is applied to the axles of wheels, whose friction it is desired to diminish to the smallest possible amount. Instead of making them turn in a socket, or collar, they are made to rest upon two other wheels, placed as in Fig. 120; and when put in motion, the axle *rolls* upon the edges of these, instead of rubbing. This is the contrivance employed to diminish the friction of the pulley in Atwood's machine (§ 247). Or the axle may be entirely surrounded by a set of rollers, which line, as it were, the socket in which it works. In either case the actual amount of friction is the same as that which would have existed, had the axle turned in a socket in the usual manner; since the pressure distributed over the pivots of the wheels or rollers, on which the axle rests, produces altogether exactly the same friction, as it would do when sustained by a single axis, on the principle just now laid down. But the force necessary to overcome that friction is applied much more advantageously; for the friction is now transferred from the axle itself, to the pivots of the friction-wheels. These last are turned round very slowly, by the rolling of the axle upon their edges; but as there is a gain of power proportional to the loss of velocity, a very small force is expended by the axle, in overcoming the friction of the pivots of the friction-wheels. Thus, we will suppose the diameter of the friction-wheel to be 6 inches, and that of its pivot to be ½ an inch; a power of 1 applied to the wheel will overcome a resistance of 12 at the axle; so that the resistance to the motion of an axle resting on two such wheels is only 1-12th of the combined friction of their pivots, or 1-12th of that which the friction of the axle itself would have produced.

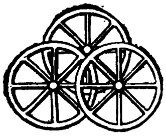


FIG. 120.

Cat. with preceding.

POPULAR CYCLOPÆDIA

OF

NATURAL SCIENCE.

MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY,
HOROLOGY,
AND
ASTRONOMY.

BY

WILLIAM B. CARPENTER, M.D.

AUTHOR OF "PRINCIPLES OF GENERAL AND COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY," AND
"PRINCIPLES OF HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY."

LONDON:
WM. S. ORR AND Co., PATERNOSTER ROW;
W. AND R. CHAMBERS, EDINBURGH; AND W. CURRY AND Co., DUBLI
MDCCCXLIII.

LONDON:
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

PREFATORY NOTICE.

The following little Work is intended to occupy a place somewhat intermediate between the simpler elementary treatises on Physical science, and the more elaborate works of a professedly philosophical character. With the former, it has this in common—that the Author has aimed at adapting it to those who have no preliminary knowledge of the subject; and to carry on his readers, step by step, from the known to the unknown, without requiring from them more than an accurate acquaintance with the ground over which they have already passed. To the latter, the Author ventures to hope it may be compared in this—that the highest principles of the science are introduced, and exhibited in their connexion with each other, and with the phenomena they govern. He has thus endeavoured to give his little work the character of a philosophical treatise; whilst, by the number of examples and illustrations which he has introduced, he has aimed at preventing what might have otherwise been its dry and abstruse appearance. In this attempt, he has merely followed out the plan which has proved successful in the former volume of the present Series.

The only preliminary knowledge required for the comprehension of the whole of this treatise, is an acquaintance with ordinary Arithmetic, and with the rudiments of Geometry. The mer beginner is recommended not to attempt to read the work straight through; but to omit Chapters V., VII., IX., and XII., until an accurate acquaintance has been formed with the rest; and not to proceed to the Astronomy, until a full acquaintance has been gained with the Mechanics.

The Author is well aware, that some parts of this Treatise may be deemed verbose and diffuse; and that the numerical illustrations may be thought to be too frequently introduced. To this he would simply reply, that some experience as a Teacher has convinced him of the necessity of explanations much more ample, and of illustrations much more complete, than those ordinarily given in elementary works; and that he has endeavoured to commit to paper the instructions which, when delivered verbally, were successful in impressing the minds of his pupils. The furtherance of this object has compelled him to extend the volume beyond the size originally contemplated, and it consequently becomes necessary to make a small addition to the price of the second Part.

In conclusion he would state, that, although a large part of the contents of this Treatise is the common property of all writers on the subject, many statements and illustrations may claim some degree of novelty. He thinks it right to add, that he is under particular obligation to the works of Professor Moseley, of King's College, London, for the assistance which he has derived from them in the first division of this volume; and to the Treatises of Sir J. Herschel, and Prof. Nichol, for a large part of the materials of the Astronomical portion of it.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE
OF MATTER AND ITS ESSENTIAL PROPERTIES 1

CHAPTER II.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER NOT UNIVERSAL—ELASTICITY, DUCTILITY, MALLEABILITY—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS 47

CHAPTER III.

ATTRACTION OF GRAVITATION 70

CHAPTER IV.

CENTRE OF GRAVITY—STABILITY OF SOLID MASSES . . . 81

CHAPTER V.

STABILITY OF STRUCTURES COMPOSED OF MOVABLE PARTS—FRAMEWORK—ARCH 96

CHAPTER VI.

OF INERTIA AS A PROPERTY OF MATTER—LAWS OF MOTION, COMPOSITION AND RESOLUTION OF FORCES, EFFECTS OF IMPACT . . 1

CHAPTER VII.

PAGE
OF CIRCULAR MOTION—CENTRIFUGAL FORCE—RADIUS OF GYRATION—CENTRE OF PERCUSSION 160

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE MOTION OF FALLING BODIES 186

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE PENDULUM 201

CHAPTER X.

OF THE SIMPLE MACHINES, OR MECHANICAL POWERS—THE LEVER, WHEEL AND AXLE, AND PULLEY 224

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE MECHANICAL POWERS (CONTINUED)—THE INCLINED PLANE, WEDGE, AND SCREW 284

CHAPTER XII.

OF FRICTION 305

CHAPTER XIII.

OF HOROLOGY, OR THE CONSTRUCTION OF INSTRUMENTS FOR THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME 317

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE HEAVENLY BODIES IN GENERAL—FORM AND DIMENSIONS OF THE EARTH 367

CHAPTER XV.

PAGE
OF THE FIXED STARS 405

CHAPTER XVI.

OF THE APPARENT AND REAL MOTIONS OF THE SUN AND PLANETS . 444

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE LAWS GOVERNING THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BODIES COMPOSING THE SOLAR SYSTEM 458

CHAPTER XVIII.

GENERAL ACCOUNT OF THE SUN, PLANETS, AND THEIR SATELLITES . 481

CHAPTER XIX.

OF COMETS 513

CHAPTER XX.

OF THE EARTH'S ANNUAL REVOLUTION 530

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE MOON 543

CHAPTER XXII.

OF THE NEBULAR HYPOTHESIS 557

HOROLOGY;

OR

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INSTRUMENTS

FOR

THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME.

CHAPTER XIII.

OF HOROLOGY, OR THE CONSTRUCTION OF INSTRUMENTS FOR THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME.

391. The division of time into regular intervals was suggested, without doubt, to the first-created of the human race, by the movements of the heavenly bodies. From the time when Man was placed on the globe, and was taught by his Creator to express his thoughts in language, would he give one name to the space during which he received the genial warmth and light of the Sun, and another to the interval during which these were withdrawn from him. He would soon observe that the lengths of the day and night do not always remain equal; but that each increases up to a certain limit, and then decreases in a corresponding degree; and that, after this series of changes has been once gone through, it is repeated in precisely the same manner. He could not but notice a similar change in the degree of warmth received from the Sun, producing that variation in the seasons, which is so beautifully connected with the changing aspects of animated nature; and he would soon perceive that, although they come round with less apparent regularity,—each succession of seasons being more or less different in character from the last, —yet that summer and winter, seed-time and harvest, do follow in uninterrupted order, and that the recurrence of each corresponds with that of a certain length of day and night. Hence, by the return of these changes, the notion of a *year* was suggested to him; and we shall hereafter see, that, at a very early period in the history of the world, the length of the year was fixed with a tolerable approach to accuracy.

392. In like manner, the division of the year into months

was early suggested by the altering appearances of the Moon; and from the natural tendency which there is to divide into quarters, the idea of weeks may have arisen. But the week, consisting of seven days, was undoubtedly fixed by the Fourth Commandment, which ordained that one day out of every seven should be set apart for the worship of God.

393. It may be difficult, perhaps, to trace the origin of the division of the day into hours. When first adopted, however, it was not a division of the whole time between noon and noon (which is almost exactly the same in every part of the year) into twenty-four hours of equal length,—as with us at present; but a division of the day and night, whatever their respective lengths might be, each into twelve parts. Hence the time really included in the twelfth part, or hour, was continually varying; but the difference would not be so great in the country of the Greeks and Romans, or of the Jews, as in Britain; since there is not the same difference between the longest and shortest days, in warm countries, as in cold. The hours were at first measured only by a sun-dial; the principles of whose construction will be explained hereafter (Chap. XX.); but as this was useless during a half of each diurnal period, and frequently inefficient at other times, on account of the cloudiness of the weather, it became desirable to obtain some other means of measuring the exact lapse of time.

394. Various instruments were contrived, therefore, for this purpose; and some of them showed great ingenuity. The common hour-glass, in which the interval is measured by the passage of fine sand through a small hole, seems to have been one of the earliest of these. It cannot, however, be at all depended on for accuracy; since a difference of two or three minutes not unfrequently occurs in the times required by the sand to run through; and its passage may be very much hastened by frequently shaking the glass, so as to keep the surface of the sand constantly flat. The most satisfactory of the ancient instruments for the measurement of time, was the *Clepsydra* or water-clock; in which the hours were indicated by marks upon the side of a vessel filled with water, from whose bottom a small stream was allowed to flow out. As the water in the vessel ran off, its surface sank;

and its height, as shown by the marks, indicated the time that had elapsed. It was soon found, that the water does not run from such an orifice with a regular velocity; for, when the vessel is full, the pressure of the fluid is much greater than when it is nearly empty, and its flow will be proportionally faster. But by making the divisions on the side long or short, according to the rapidity of the flow, the hours might be equally divided. Various additions were made to these clepsydræ; especially by Ctesebius of Alexandria, who flourished more than 200 years before Christ. Thus the water was made to carry a float, which sank with it; and a string attached to this float, and carried round a wheel to which a hand or index was attached, caused this to revolve, and thus to point out the hours on a divided dial-plate. It is related in an old chronicle, that the Emperor Charlemagne received, as a present from the celebrated Sultan Haroun al Raschid, in the year 809, a curious clock, which struck the hours by means of little balls of metal let fall upon a bell, and in which figures of horsemen, at the hour of twelve, came forth through little doors and returned again. This is known to have been a clepsydra or water-clock.

395. The simplest mode of overcoming the difficulty, arising from the unequal flow of water through an orifice in the bottom of a vessel, is shown in the accompanying figure. This clepsydra consists of a cylinder of glass, furnished with a float *a*, which carries the syphon *b*. When this syphon has been once filled with water, the fluid will run out at the cock *c*, until the whole water in the vessel has been drawn off *. The rate at which the water is discharged may be regulated by the cock, *c*; and as, by the connection of the syphon with the float, the mouth of the pipe is always at the same distance below the surface of the water, the quantity will always be the same, whatever be the height of the fluid in the vessel; and a scale, *d*,

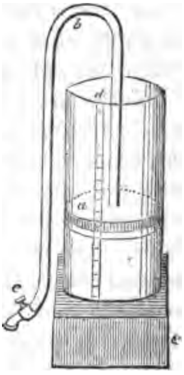


FIG. 121

---

* See Vol. on HYDRAULICS.

on its side, divided into equal parts, will always indicate, by the place of the float, the lapse of equal intervals of time.

396. It appears that the use of the clepsydra was not known in England during the times of our Saxon ancestors; for we read in the history of Alfred the Great, that, in order to portion out his time exactly, into the periods which he allotted for his studies, meals, sleep, and the duties of his royal office, he had large candles made, with marks upon them, so that he might judge of the hour by the quantity that had burned. It was to prevent the errors occasioned by draughts of air, in palaces which were not constructed with nearly the same care in preventing them as is shown in our present ordinary dwellings, that Alfred contrived the first horn lantern.

397. All these instruments, however, were but rude attempts to effect that, which is at present accomplished far more perfectly by other means. By the combination of wheel-work, acting upon the principles already described under the title of the *Wheel and Axle* (Chap. X.), with the *Pendulum*, the laws of whose vibration have also been explained (Chap. IX.), clocks are now constructed, which indicate the passage of time with a degree of accuracy which it would have been formerly thought quite impossible to attain. It is to these instruments that the term *Clock* is now restricted. A watch is a portable instrument, in which the same mechanism is employed as in the clock, but in which, instead of a pendulum, there is a balance-wheel, whose vibrations are regulated by a delicate spring. Any clocks or watches might be termed chronometers or time-measurers; but this name is now appropriated to those which are constructed with the utmost attention to the perfection of every part, and with means for compensating certain errors to which they are liable. The most perfect clocks are those constructed for astronomical observations, in which the greatest possible accuracy is required; and hence these are ordinarily termed astronomical clocks. It must be borne in mind, however, that these differ from ordinary clocks in no essential particular; though their appearance is often puzzling to those who see them for the first time, in consequence of the hour and minute-hands being fixed

on distinct centres, and pointing to different circles, instead of revolving about the same centre, and pointing to the same circle, as in ordinary clocks. Again, the most perfect watches are those constructed for the purposes of navigation, to which they give the most important assistance, as will be explained hereafter (§. 492); and these, being much larger than ordinary watches, though constructed on the same principle, are distinguished as marine chronometers.

It seems not inappropriate to introduce an account of these important instruments, between the chapters of this volume in which the principles of their construction are explained, and those in which their uses are unfolded.

General Principles.—Moving and Regulating Powers.

398. It has been stated (§. 275) that the object of clock-work is to maintain the oscillations of a pendulum, by continually communicating to it a slight additional impulse; and, at the same time, to register the number of these oscillations, so as to indicate the passage of time. In order to effect these purposes, a train of wheels and pinions is put in motion by a power acting on the first of them, whilst the last is connected with the pendulum by a peculiar contrivance, termed the *escapement*. In clocks which are to remain stationary, and in which a saving of room is no object, the moving power is a weight, which is suspended by a string coiled round a drum or barrel; this drum carries the first wheel of the clock, and imparts to the train the movement it derives from the gradual descent of the weight. If the whole of this force acted on the wheel-work alone, which it would do if the escapement were taken off, the weight would run down comparatively fast, and the train would be caused to move with great rapidity. But a part of it is expended in keeping up the vibrations of the pendulum; and the connexion of this with the wheel-work is such, that not a tooth of the latter can advance, unless permitted to do so by the swing of the pendulum. Hence a clock will not go, even when wound up, unless the pendulum be set in motion; but when its vibrations have once commenced, they will continue until the string has

been unwound from the barrel by the descent of the weight. In "winding up" the clock, we raise the weight by again coiling its string round the barrel; and thus communicate (as it were) to the machine, a power which will keep it in action for a certain limited time. It would not be difficult to extend that time, to any desired amount, by adding to the number of wheels. Ordinary watches, and the commonest kind of clocks, require to be wound up every day; chronometers for ships, and house-clocks, are commonly made to go without winding for a week; many clocks have been constructed, which only required winding once a month; and a few have been made to go for a year. It will be easily understood, upon the principle of the wheel-and-pinion (§. 339), that the greater the multiplication of velocity, the greater will be the sacrifice of power; so that, the longer a clock is made to go—or, in other words, the more slowly its weight is made to descend—the greater must be the power required to produce the same effect; and the weight must therefore be increased in the same proportion.

399. In small portable clocks, however, and in watches and chronometers, a weight cannot be thus employed; and motion is given to the wheel-work by means of a spring, made of elastic steel (§. 74) and coiled in a spiral. One end is secured to a fixed point; and the other, in the effort to uncoil itself, will carry round anything to which it may be attached. The spiral spring, partly uncoiled, is represented in Fig. 122. Now it is easy to understand, that a spiral spring, in uncoiling itself after having been tightly wound, exercises a much greater degree of force than it will do when it has become slackened; and therefore, if the spring were immediately connected with the wheel-work, the impulse which it would give to the train would be much greater at the beginning than at the end of the action. An attempt has been made, in France, to correct this inequality, by making a variation of strength in different parts of the spring itself, so that it shall unwind with equal force, whether it be tight or slack; and if this can be effected, the spring may be made to act at once upon the first

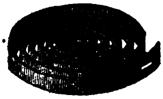


Fig. 122.

wheel of the train, as shown in Fig. 127; where O P is the spring, of which the outer end O is fixed, so that the inner end, being fixed on the axis or spindle of the wheel N, carries this round in its effort to uncoil itself. But it is found impossible to make such a correction with sufficient accuracy; and a different method is generally adopted.

400. The spring is enclosed within a hollow barrel or drum, to which its outer end is attached; and the inner or central end of the spring is attached to a fixed axle. Hence, when the spring has been coiled up, its elasticity will carry round the barrel, in its attempt to uncoil itself. The barrel, in turning round, pulls a chain, which was previously coiled round a conical axle, which is termed the *fusee*. This axle carries along with it the first wheel of the train. In winding up the watch, we coil the chain round the fusee, and draw it off from the barrel; by which action the spring within the barrel is coiled up and its power becomes very strong. In attempting to uncoil itself, it pulls the chain, which now acts upon the *small* part of the fusee. When it has gradually uncoiled itself, the power of the spring is weakened; but by this time nearly the whole of the chain is coiled upon the barrel, having been unwound from the fusee; and its pull or strain acts upon the *large* part of the fusee. Now upon the principles stated in the former part of the volume, the more distant the point, to which the force is applied, is from the central axis, the greater will be its power of giving the required motion. When the spring is acting most strongly, therefore, its power is applied at a far less mechanical advantage than when its power is nearly exhausted; and thus its action on the spindle of the fusee is equalized, so that from a variable power it is made to become nearly as regular, as that produced by the descent of a weight.

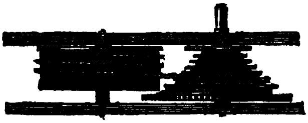


FIG. 123.

401. The contrivance by which, in winding up a clock or watch, we can turn the fusee without influencing the wheel-work, is shown in Fig 124. The first wheel is hollowed out to

receive the small *ratchet-wheel*, *d*, of which the teeth are so cut as to slant on one side, but to be upright in the other. In the same hollow, there is a movable click or *ratchet*, *b*, which is pressed down by the spring *c*. Now if the ratchet-wheel be turned in the direction of the slanting sides of its teeth (that is, from left to right in the accompanying figure), it will not carry the large wheel with it; for the ratchet will be lifted by the inclined side of each tooth, and will consequently pass over them all. But if the ratchet-wheel be made to turn in the contrary direction, it will carry the large wheel with it; for the upright side of the tooth will be caught by the ratchet; so that any force applied to the ratchet-wheel will act upon the ratchet, and consequently upon the large wheel with which it is connected. Now the fusee is attached to the ratchet-wheel; and hence, when the fusee is being drawn by the chain in the direction last mentioned, it carries round the large wheel with it, and gives motion to the whole train; whilst, if the fusee be turned in the contrary direction, as it is by the key in the act of winding, the teeth of the ratchet-wheel lift the ratchet, and there is no motion given to the large wheel. The same contrivance is applied in clocks, to the drum round which is coiled the string that suspends the weight.—In the better class of Time-keepers, whether clocks or watches, there is another contrivance introduced into the fusee, by which the train of wheels is kept in motion during the time when the weight or spring is being wound up; so that the inaccuracy that would be otherwise occasioned by the stoppage of the movement (which any one may observe, who notices the second-hand of an ordinary clock or watch, whilst it is being wound up) is prevented. This contrivance is termed the *Maintaining Power* or *Going-Fusee*.

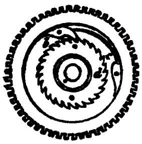


FIG. 124.

402. Having now considered the *moving* power, by which the train of wheels is kept in action, we shall examine the *regulating* power, by which its action is controlled. This, in all clocks now constructed, is the pendulum; whilst in watches and chronometers, it is a wheel termed the balance. The properties of the pendulum have been explained in a former part of the

volume, and need not be here repeated. The balance of a watch serves the same purpose as the pendulum, having the advantage of occupying much less space, and of acting equally well in almost any position. It consists of a wheel, having an axle which terminates in two very fine pivots, and so exactly balanced, as to be capable of being moved with a very small impulse in either direction. To the axle, however, is attached one end of a very delicate spiral spring; of which the other end is attached to the framework of the watch, as shown in Fig. 129: Now the action of this spring is like that of any other elastic body; it will produce a certain degree of resistance to any change of position of the balance; and the greater the alteration of its place, the greater will be the resistance, until at last the force which set the balance in motion is overcome by it, and the rotation ceases. But the spring has been so much displaced, that it tends to bring the balance back to its original position, with a gradually-increasing rapidity; and when it has arrived there, the force which it has acquired will carry it as far on the other side (§. 187). Again this force is resisted by the spring, and again will this bring back the balance to its former position.

403. Thus a balance, provided with a spring that possesses perfect elasticity, and uninfluenced either by friction or the resistance of the air, would go on vibrating backwards and forwards without cessation. But three retarding influences really act upon it;—want of perfect elasticity in the spring, so that each *reacting* force is somewhat less than the force which acted on it; friction of the pivots; and resistance of the air. Hence, in order to keep up these vibrations, it is necessary that a slight additional impulse should be continually given to the balance, as to the pendulum. When a balance is well constructed, its vibrations become almost perfectly *isochronous* (§. 265), whether the space through which it moves be long or short; hence it is not much affected by moderate differences in the strength of the impulses given to it by the moving power, and in this respect has even advantages over the pendulum. It is found advantageous to construct the balance-spring of the best chronometers, not in the form of a flat spiral, like that of the common watch,

shown in Fig. 129, but in that of a *helix*, or cork-screw, as shown in Fig. 125. And the balance itself is not a complete wheel, but is made in a peculiar form, which will be described hereafter (§. 432), for the purpose of compensating the influence of heat or cold upon the spring. The time occupied by each vibration of the balance, depends upon the strength of the spring—other things being supposed equal; and the strength is influenced by the length. A short spring, of equal thickness with a long one, is very much more elastic; hence by shortening the balance-spring, we increase its elastic force; whilst by lengthening it, we diminish that force. The greater the elastic force, the shorter will be the vibrations of the balance, and the less will be the time occupied by each of them; consequently the time-piece will gain when the spring is shortened, and will lose when its length is increased. It is by slightly altering the length of this spring, that a time-keeper is *regulated*, so as to go faster or slower than before.

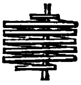


FIG. 125.

404. The contrivance by which the pendulum or the balance is connected with the moving power, is termed the *Escapement*. The simplest form of this is represented in Fig. 126. Let x y be the axis on which the balance turns, or from which the pendulum is suspended; projecting from it in different directions are two leaves, c and d, which are termed *pallets*. At f b is seen a crown wheel, turning on a perpendicular axis o e; its teeth are cut like those of a saw; and the direction of its movement is from right to left,—that is, f moves towards b, whilst on the farther side, i moves towards a, and a comes gradually round to f. This wheel, termed the *balance-wheel*, is connected with the rest of the move-

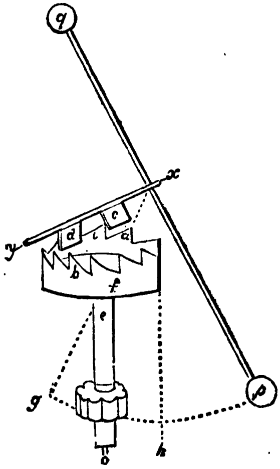


FIG. 126.

ment, by the pinion on its axis, as will be shown hereafter (§.431). The pallets are so placed, with regard to the teeth of this wheel, that, as the axle turns from one side to the other by the swinging of the pendulum or the vibrations of the balance, the teeth are permitted to *escape* alternately from each of them, and thus the wheel turns round with an interrupted motion. In the figure, the pendulum or balance is represented as at the extremity of its excursion towards the [right; and the movement of the axis has just allowed the tooth *a* to *escape* from the pallet *c*; whilst at the same time, the tooth *b* is just about to fall on the pallet *d*. Now whilst the pendulum or balance is moving to the left, that is, from *p* to *g*, the tooth *b* still presses against the pallet *d*, and is prevented by it from moving further on, until the pallet has changed its position so far towards the left, as to allow the tooth to *escape* from it. During all the time that the tooth is pressing against the pallet, the balance-wheel is communicating to the pendulum or balance, through its means, a part of the power by which it is itself moved; and thus supplies the impulse required to keep its vibrations up to the proper extent. When the tooth *b* has escaped from *d*, the tooth *i*, on the other side of the wheel, will drop against the other pallet *c*; and will remain pressing against it, in like manner, until the return of the pendulum or balance to the position represented in the figure, lifts the pallet *c* sufficiently to allow the tooth *i* to escape from beneath it, as *a* had previously done. In this manner, then, the wheel is allowed to advance by an interval of half a tooth at each vibration of the pendulum or balance; and thus, if the wheel have 15 teeth, and the pendulum vibrate seconds, it will make one revolution in half a minute.*

405. This escapement was in use, long before either the pendulum or balance-spring was applied to the regulation of timekeepers. An account has been preserved, of a large turret-clock which was erected for Charles V. of France, surnamed the Wise, about the year 1370, by a German artist named Henry Vick. The mechanism of this clock differed very little from that of

---

* A crown-wheel of this kind must always have an *odd* number of teeth; else the teeth on the opposite sides would come against the pallets at the same time.

later ones: it had the same crown-wheel and escapement as that just described; but instead of a balance or pendulum, the axis $x\ y$ carried a cross bar, loaded with weights, like $p\ q$. It was so arranged that the axis $x\ y$ was upright; and the cross-bar consequently horizontal. Here, therefore, the bar was moved backwards and forwards, solely by the action of the teeth of the crown-wheel upon the pallets of the axis. This was, of course, an extremely imperfect plan; and the *going* of such a clock must have been very inaccurate. But no essential improvement was made upon it, up to the middle of the 17th century; when the pendulum was first employed as a regulator. It has been mentioned (§. 257) that the laws regulating the vibration of the pendulum were discovered some years previously by Galileo. As he intended to adopt the profession of medicine, he first applied this principle to the measurement of the pulse; and he afterwards suggested the connexion of the pendulum with the clock. It is uncertain by whom this great improvement was first actually carried into effect. It is generally attributed to Huyghens, a learned Dutchman; but his claim has been disputed; and it has been asserted that the son of Galileo first applied the pendulum to a clock, which was constructed at Venice, about eight years previously to the date of Huyghens's invention.

406. The escapement first used to connect the pendulum with the clock, precisely resembled that which has been just described. The axis of the crown-wheel was vertical, as in Fig. 126; and the pendulum was attached to the horizontal axis $x\ y$. In fact, there was no essential variation from that representation, except that, instead of a cross-bar with weights, p and q, at either end, the lower portion only, $x\ p$, was left, to serve as a pendulum. It was found, however, that the extensive vibrations which a pendulum must make when so hung, were injurious to the regular going of the clock; and various contrivances have been devised to prevent this source of error, by constructing the escapement in such a manner, that the pendulum shall make shorter vibrations. These, of which the two most important will be hereafter described, (§. 417-21) have completely superseded the use of this original escapement (termed the *crown-*

wheel and *verge*) in clock-work; but it is still used in watches, where, indeed, it is an object to make the vibrations of the balance as extensive as possible. All ordinary watches are constructed upon this plan; and they are distinguished as *vertical* watches, because the last crown-wheel has a vertical or upright position, as seen in Fig. 127.

407. The first watches that were made, were as imperfect as the early clocks; and differed only from them, in being made upon a smaller scale, and in the use of a spring instead of a weight, as the moving power. They had only an hour-hand; and most of them required winding twice a day. The invention of the spiral balance-spring followed the application of the pendulum to the clock, at no long interval; and thus both machines were made to receive the greatest possible improvement in the principles of their construction, at a very short interval. The honour of this invention is claimed by Huyghens, the Abbé Hautefeuille, a Frenchman, and our ingenious countryman, Dr. Hooke. There can be little doubt that it is really due to the last of these; for he was able to produce proof, that he had employed the balance-spring, and had applied for a patent for his invention, in the year 1658; whilst the claim of Huyghens was not made until 1674. No subsequent improvement of any great importance has been made in the construction of watches; except in regard to the escapement, of which the forms now considered the best will be described hereafter (§.426-9). Very great advances have been made, however, in the degree of perfection of the workmanship of these important machines; and it is difficult to imagine anything superior to those which are now manufactured.

Construction of Ordinary Watches and Clocks.

408. The general construction of an ordinary watch will now be explained. That of a clock is precisely the same, whether it be large or small; with the exception of the substitution of a weight and barrel, for the mainspring and fusee. On opening an ordinary watch case, we see that the wheel-work is for the most part contained between two round plates, which are connected

together by pillars. One of these plates is attached to the dial; but there is a thin space between them, which is occupied by the wheel-work that connects the motion of the hour and minute-hands. On the other plate is a raised portion, beneath which the balance works.

409. A general view of the work of a common watch, as seen from the side, is shown in Fig. 127. For convenience of display, the parts are all arranged in one line, instead of being disposed in a circle as they really are; and, in order to make them more distinguishable, the distance of the two plates, between which most of the work is contained, is much increased; as is also the space between the upper plate and the dial, which really lie close together. The *balance* is seen at A; and on its axis or spindle are the two *pallets*, *p*, *p*, which together constitute what is termed the *verge*. At C is seen the *balance-wheel*, the teeth of which resemble those of a saw; by the vibrations of the balance, the teeth of this wheel are permitted to escape from each of the pallets alternately, as already explained. On the axis of the balance-wheel is a pinion, *d*; which is driven round by the crown-wheel, K, (see §. 341): this wheel is termed by watchmakers the *contrate-wheel*. On the axis of this last, is a pinion, *c*, which works into the *third-wheel*, L; and the axis of the third wheel is another pinion, *b*, which works into the wheel M, termed the *centre-wheel* from its position in the centre of the

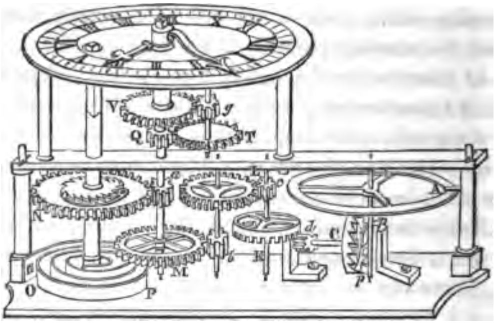


FIG. 127.

watch. (See Fig. 128, *e*). The axle of this wheel passes up through the centre of the dial, and carries the minute-hand; making one complete revolution in an hour. Upon this axle is placed the pinion *a*, which works in the *great-wheel*, N. This wheel is acted on by the main-spring; which is either fixed upon its own axis, as represented at O P in this figure; or is contained within a *barrel* or circular box, which acts by means of a chain upon the *fusee* which carries the great-wheel, as already explained (§. 400). Upon the axis of the centre-wheel, between the upper plate and the dial, is fixed the pinion Q; and this drives the wheel T. Upon the spindle of this wheel is a pinion *g*, which works into the wheel V. The axis of this last wheel is hollow, so as to allow the axis of the centre-wheel to pass up through it; and upon this hollow spindle the hour-hand is fixed.

410. It is seen, then, that in the watch, as in the clock, the moving power acts on a wheel which drives a pinion; that this pinion carries on its axis a wheel, which drives another pinion carrying another wheel,—and so on. Hence there is a continual increase of velocity, and at the same time a loss of power (§. 339). The revolution of the balance-wheel, *c*, is very rapid in proportion to that of the great-wheel, N; but its force is less in the same proportion; so that the slightest interruption (such as a thickening of the oil on the teeth and pivots) is sufficient to check the movement of the former; whilst the power of the latter, communicated to it by the spring, is sufficient to overcome a considerable resistance.

411. Many different trains may be adopted, to give the required proportions between the times of revolution of the several wheels; since their rates depend, not upon their *absolute* number of teeth, but upon the proportion between the teeth of the wheels and the leaves of the pinions. The centre-wheel must, of course, make one revolution in an hour; the balance-wheel is generally made to turn 9½ times in a minute; whilst the great-wheel makes one revolution in about four hours, so that, if the spring can turn it seven times round, the watch will go for 28 hours. The following is the *train* (or arrangement of the number of teeth in the wheels and pinions) usually adopted

in common watches. The *great-wheel*, N, has 48 teeth; and the pinion, *a*, into which it works, has 12 teeth; consequently this pinion will make 4 revolutions, whilst the wheel revolves once; and if the great-wheel turn round in 4 hours, the centre-wheel will make one revolution every hour. The *centre-wheel*, M, has 54 teeth; and the pinion *b*, has 6 leaves; so that it, together with the third-wheel, turns round 9 times, whilst the centre-wheel revolves once; and hence makes 9 revolutions in an hour. The *third-wheel*, L, has 48 teeth; and the pinion *c*, has 6 leaves; so that the velocity is again multiplied by 8; and the contrate-wheel, which is on the axis of the pinion, *c*, will make (8 × 9) 72 turns in an hour. The *contrate-wheel*, K, also has 48 teeth; and the pinion, *d*, into which it works, has 6 teeth; so that a further multiplication of velocity takes place, to the amount of 8 times; and the balance-wheel, C, which is carried round by the pinion *d*, turns (72 × 8) 576 times in an hour, or about 9½ times in a minute. The *balance-wheel*, C, has 15 teeth; and *half* of one of these *escapes* with every turn of the balance (§. 404); hence there are about (9½ × 15 × 2) 305 impulses given to the balance in a minute, so that each of its vibrations occupies 60-305th parts, or about 1-5th of a second.

412. It is often an object, however, to cause the fourth or contrate-wheel to revolve exactly once in a minute; so that its spindle may carry a hand which shall indicate seconds on the dial. This may be done by making the balance perform exactly 5 beats in a second; and by giving 15 teeth to the balance-wheel, 6 leaves to its pinion, and 60 teeth to the contrate-wheel. The contrate-wheel, in turning once round, causes the balance-wheel to revolve 10 times; and hence the number of escapes its teeth will make is (10 × 15 × 2) 300 in a minute, or one in every fifth part of a second. Or the balance may be adjusted to beat 9 times in 2 seconds; and then the number of teeth in the contrate-wheel must be 9 times that of the pinion it turns—that is, 54 to 6, or 63 to 7. Or the number of beats may be 4 in a second; and for this arrangement the contrate-wheel must have 8 times the number of teeth in the pinion it turns—that is, 48 to 6, or 54 to 7. When the contrate-wheel is to be thus made to turn 60

times in an hour, instead of 72 (as in the ordinary train), the number of teeth in the centre-wheel and third-wheel, and the number of leaves in the pinions they turn, must be regulated accordingly. The usual plan is to give the centre-wheel 64 teeth, and to the pinion it turns 8 leaves; so that this pinion, carrying with it the third-wheel, revolves 8 times for each turn of the centre-wheel. The third-wheel, having 60 teeth, works into a pinion of 8 leaves; and this last, carrying the contrate-wheel, turns $7\frac{1}{2}$ times for each revolution of the third-wheel. Hence the contrate-wheel turns ($8 \times 7\frac{1}{2}$) 60 times for each revolution of the centre-wheel; and as the latter makes one revolution in an hour, so does the former complete one in each minute.

413. The mode in which the parts of a watch are actually arranged, is shown in Fig. 128, representing the interior of a watch, from which one of the plates has been removed, seen from above. Here *a* is the barrel, containing the main-spring coiled within it; by the elasticity of this, the barrel is made gradually to wind upon itself the chain *b*, which was previously coiled around the fusee, and thus to give motion to that fusee, which carries round with it the great-wheel *c*. The pinion turned by the great-wheel is seen at *d*; and this carries on its axis the centre-wheel *e*. It is the spindle of this wheel which, prolonged through the dial, carries the minute-hand. The wheel *e* turns the pinion *f*, which carries round the third-wheel *g*; and this works into the pinion (which cannot be shown in this view) that carries round the contrate-wheel *h*. This wheel turns the pinion *i*, which carries round the balance-wheel *k*. The balance itself, and the verge, are supposed to have been removed with the upper plate, which is shown separately in Fig. 129. This gives a view of the back of the works of

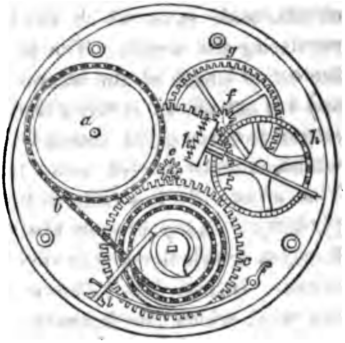


FIG. 128.

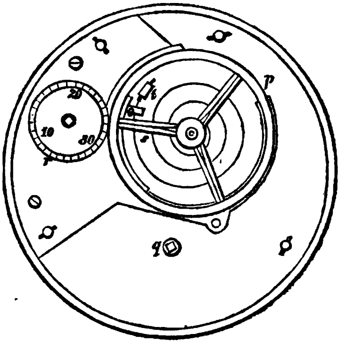


FIG. 129.

ordinary watch, as seen when the case is opened. The balance is seen at *p;* its spiral spring is shown by *s;* and the end of this is fixed at *t.* In order to regulate the length of this spring, so as to bring the vibrations of the balance precisely to their required number in a minute, there is a moveable piece, marked *o,* through a slit in which the balance-spring passes; this piece (which is termed the *curb*) can be made to travel towards one side or the other, by means of a wheel acted on by the circular scale *r,* to which the key is applied for the purpose of regulating the watch. The position of the curb *o* determines the *acting* length of the balance-spring, since the part between *o* and *t* is cut off, as it were, from the rest; hence, if the curb be moved towards *t,* the acting length of the spring is increased; whilst, if it be moved away from *t,* the spring is shortened. The effect of this alteration has been already explained (§. 403). At *q* is seen the square end of the spindle of the fusee, to which the key is applied for winding the chain off the barrel. In Fig. 130 is shown the work which lies between the dial and the plate on which it rests, having for its object to give motion to the hour-hand. The wheel *x* is turned by a pinion on the axis of the centre-wheel, concealed in this figure by the wheel *v,* but shown at Q in Fig. 127. The wheel *x* carries round with it the pinion *w,* which gives motion to the wheel *v;* and on the hollow

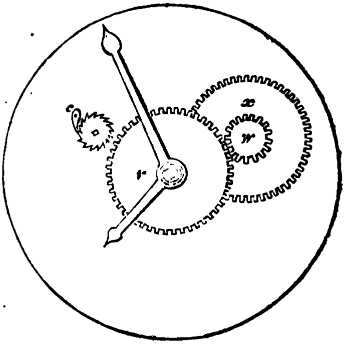


FIG. 130.

spindle of this last the hour-hand is fixed. The number of teeth in these wheels and pinions must be so proportioned, therefore, that the wheel *v* shall turn round with only 1-12th of the velocity of the central axis. Thus, suppose the centre pinion to have 15 teeth, and the wheel *x* to have 60 teeth, the latter will only revolve once whilst the former revolves 4 times. Again, if the pinion *w* have 20 teeth, and the wheel *v* have 60 teeth, the wheel *v* will turn round once whilst the pinion *w* revolves 3 times, and the central pinion (3 × 4) 12 times.

414. It is not exactly correct to say, however, that the central pinion and the minute-hand are *fixed* upon the spindle of the centre-wheel; for, if they were, the hands could not be moved without turning the centre-wheel, and we should not be able to *set* them, without disturbing the whole movement of the watch. There is a very simple provision for permitting this to be done. The pinion and minute-hand are fixed, not to the axis of the centre-wheel, but to a hollow spindle which is fitted upon this, and carried round by friction, so long as there is no opposing resistance. When we *set* the watch, however, the central axis remains unmoved, and we merely turn round the hollow spindle which carries the minute-hand and the pinion; this pinion acts upon the wheel *x*, which, through the pinion *w* and the wheel *v*, turns the hour-hand one-twelfth of the amount that the minute-hand has been moved; and thus the two are always made to turn conformably to each other, whether they be carried round by the going of the watch, or by the action of the key in setting it. If the face of any ordinary watch be examined, there will be seen a small round spindle projecting in the centre; this is the spindle of the centre-wheel. Enclosing this is the first hollow spindle, which carries the minute-hand, and which is squared at the top to receive the key; and this is again enclosed in a second hollow spindle, to which the hour hand is attached. These are seen in Fig. 127. Precisely the same means are adopted to connect the motion of the two hands in ordinary clocks; but where great accuracy is required, as in clocks used for astronomical observations, it is desirable to avoid unnecessary friction, as completely as possible. This is done by making the

hour-hand turn on a different centre from the minute-hand; and the former receives its motion from the latter, by means of a wheel containing 12 times as many teeth as the pinion which turns it, and therefore making its revolution in 12 times the period. In astronomical clocks, however, the hour-circle is not unfrequently divided into 24 parts, instead of 12; and the hand requires a whole day and night to traverse it. The object of this is to avoid any mistake, arising from the same numbers being repeated twice between noon and noon, or midnight and midnight. Some clocks have been constructed, especially at Venice, to strike all the numbers, from 1 to 24; but in this there can be no advantage.

415. The mechanism of an ordinary portable eight-day clock, is represented in Fig. 131. Of the two barrels, fusees, and trains of wheel-work here seen, the one on the right hand side alone has for its office the measurement of time. The other is called the *striking train;* and its office will be separately considered (§. 440). The works are arranged, as in the watch, between the plates, in which are holes for the pivots of the axles of the various wheels, &c. The front plate is attached to the dial, with an interval in which the hour-hand movement is contained, as in the watch; this interval also contains the mechanism by which the striking is regulated. The dial and the front plate are supposed to be here removed, so as to give an uninterrupted view of the train of wheels. The back plate is shown by the letters A B C D. The springs enclosed in the barrels E E give motion to the fusees F F, as in the watch, either by a chain or a piece of catgut. The main-wheel *a* of the going train, has 96 teeth; and this acts on the centre-wheel pinion, *k*, having 8 leaves.

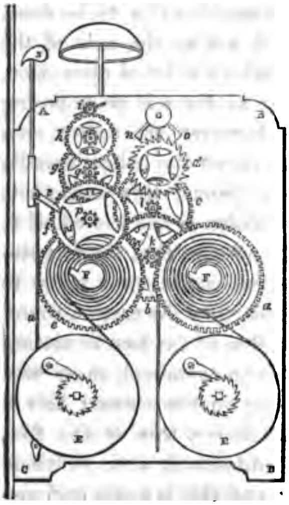


FIG. 131.

This pinion carries with it the centre-wheel *b*; and on the same spindle, as in the watch, the minute-hand is placed. The centre-wheel *b* acts on the pinion *l*; and this carries round with it the third-wheel *c*. This third-wheel, in its turn, acts on a pinion (not seen in the engraving) which carries round the scape-wheel *d*; and this wheel, acting on the pendulum by the pallets *n*, *o*, of the escapement, communicates to it the impulse received from the spring, whilst its own motion is entirely determined by the duration of the vibrations of the pendulum. For if, on the very same escapement, we were to hang a pendulum of 9¾ inches, another of 39 inches, and another of 13 feet, the duration of each beat—and consequently the interval between the *escape* of each tooth,—would be half a second in the first pendulum, a second in the next, and two seconds in the last.

416. The number of teeth in the wheels and pinions, therefore, must depend upon the length of the pendulum. Thus, for a pendulum vibrating seconds, the number of teeth in the scape-wheel is usually 30; since, as the wheel only advances to the amount of half a tooth at each *escape*, its revolution is then performed in a minute, and it may be made to carry a seconds-hand. If the centre-wheel and the third-wheel have 64 and 60 teeth respectively, and their pinions have 8 leaves, the multiplication of velocity will be (60 × 64 ÷ 8 × 8) exactly 60; so that the scape-wheel will turn round 60 times, for one revolution of the minute-hand. Where the pendulum vibrates half-seconds, however, it would be necessary to make the scape-wheel with 60 teeth, if it be required to perform but one revolution in a minute. Small portable clocks, however, such as those designed for a table or mantel-piece, are not made with a seconds-hand; and in these the scape-wheel is made with a small number of teeth, and revolves in a shorter time; the number of teeth in the wheels and pinions which connect it with the centre-wheel, being adjusted accordingly. In a clock now before the author, the centre-wheel has 84 teeth: this turns a pinion of 7 leaves, which must therefore revolve 12 times as fast, or once in every 5 minutes. This pinion carries round with it the third-wheel, which has 77 teeth in it; and the latter drives the scape-wheel by a pinion

of 7 leaves, so that a velocity of 11 to 1 is gained. The scape-wheel goes round, therefore, 11 times in 5 minutes, or once in somewhat less than half a minute. It has 32 teeth; and the pendulum, being not quite 8 inches long, allows each to escape in rather less than half a second.

Clock-Escapements.

417. The construction of the anchor-pallet escapement (so called from its having some resemblance to an anchor), which is now applied to nearly all ordinary clocks, is seen in Fig. 132. The scape-wheel has its teeth cut upon its edge, and not raised up as they are in the scape-wheel of a verge watch. The centre, from which the pendulum is suspended, is seen at A; and the same point is the centre of motion of the piece of metal A B C, which is termed the *crutch*, the extremities B and C being the pallets. This crutch is usually not fixed to the pendulum, since it is convenient to detach the latter, when the clock is to be moved from one place to another; but it is so connected with it, that, as the pendulum swings from side to side, the two ends of the crutch move up and down. The position of the crutch shown in the figure is that which corresponds with the direction A E of the pendulum. If the pendulum be carried to A F, the end B of the crutch would be raised still more; whilst if it swing to the other side A F′, the end B of the crutch would sink between

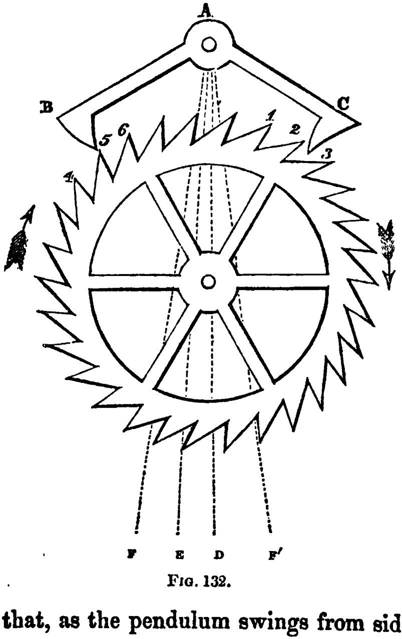


FIG. 132.

the teeth of the scape-wheel, whilst the end C would be raised quite clear of them. The scape-wheel is driven, by its pinion, in the direction of the arrows; but its motion suffers interruption by the alternate locking and disengagement of its teeth against the pallets of the crutch; and as the movements of these depend upon the pendulum, its time of vibration regulates the period in which the wheel revolves.

418. In the position of the escapement shown in the figure, the pendulum is to be supposed to be at E, and to be moving towards F. Now the elevation of the pallet B, against whose under side tooth 5 was previously pressing, has disengaged the point of that tooth; and the scape-wheel is consequently at liberty to move onwards. But it is prevented from doing so to more than the interval of half a tooth; for whilst the pallet B was being withdrawn from the space between 5 and 6, the pallet C was sinking into the interval between 2 and 3; consequently the wheel's revolution is checked by the fall of the point of tooth 2 against the upper surface of the pallet C. But as the pendulum continues to swing to F, the pallet C is still further lowered; and it gives a slight backward impulse to the tooth which was resting upon it, and consequently to the whole wheel. This backward movement, termed the *recoil*, may be seen in the seconds' hand of any common clock; this hand being attached to the scape-wheel, and carried round with it. Having completed its swing to F, the pendulum begins to move back again, and in doing so it is assisted by the pressure of tooth 2 against the upper surface of the pallet C. This pallet is gradually withdrawn from the tooth that rests upon it, so that this at last escapes. But in the meantime the pallet B has sunk into the interval between 5 and 4; so that when tooth 2 has escaped from the pallet C, tooth 4 drops against the under side of pallet B. The further motion of this pallet, which continues until the pendulum has reached the position F′, again causes the *recoil* of the wheel; but when the pendulum begins to swing back towards D, it is again assisted by the moving power of the wheel, which tends to make the tooth 4 (now resting on pallet B) press that pallet towards the left. When the pendulum has moved to E, tooth 4 escapes, as 5 had done before; and tooth 1 falls upon the pall

B, as 2 previously did; tooth 5 having in the meantime moved on to 6, and tooth 2 to 3.

419. The objection to the recoil escapement consists chiefly in this;—that the impelling power of the weight, communicated through the train of wheels, is acting on the pendulum, by means of the inclined surfaces of the pallets, during the whole of each of its vibrations. Hence, any inequalities in the moving power are liable to produce a considerable effect on the pendulum, so as to vary its rate of vibration; and such inequalities are continually liable to occur from various causes. It was to avoid this source of error, that the *dead-beat* escapement was invented by Graham, a celebrated clock-maker at the commencement of the last century, to whom we owe also the invention of the mercurial pendulum (§ 423). The peculiarity of this escapement consists in the form of the pallets; the surface of each of which is partly a circle, having the point of suspension for its centre, and partly an inclined plane. The construction and action of this escapement are seen in Figs. 133 and 134. The centre of suspension is at A; whilst AB and AC are the two legs of the crutch, moving from side to side with the vibrations of the pendulum, whose line of direction is shown by AD. The scape-wheel moves in the direction shown by the arrow; and the position of the whole is seen to be such in Fig. 133, that the pendulum having nearly reached the limit of its vibration on the left hand, the tooth 6 has *escaped* from the pallet B, having just slid off the inclined portion of its surface, of which the dotted line, *b*, shows the direction. The tooth 2 now drops against the pallet *c*; and the further motion of the

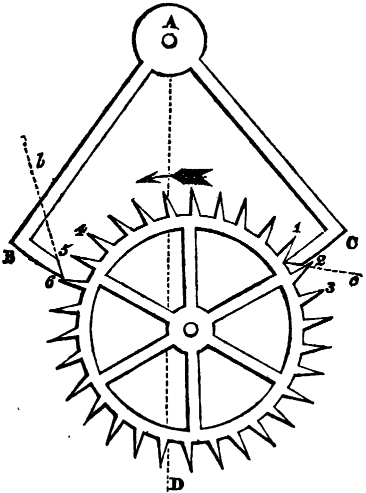


FIG. 133.

scape-wheel is thereby checked. The pendulum then begins to vibrate towards the right, carrying with it the crutch; so that the pallet B enters the interval between the teeth 5 and 6; whilst the pallet C is drawn out from the interval between 1 and 2. During this movement, however, the scape-wheel remains at rest; for so long as the tooth 2 bears upon the circular part of the pallet C, it does not either advance or recede; and its moving power is not communicated to the pendulum. But as soon as the pallet C has been sufficiently withdrawn, for the edge of the tooth 2 to press against the inclined plane, of which the dotted line *c* is a continuation, the wheel is allowed to move forwards; and it communicates an impulse to the pendulum, which aids it in its vibration towards D′, Fig. 134.

420. When the pallet C has been completely withdrawn by the continued motion of the pendulum, the tooth 2 is entirely disengaged from it; and the wheel would move onwards, but for the check it receives on the other side. Whilst the pallet C was being withdrawn, the pallet B was entering the interval between 5 and 6; consequently, just as the tooth 2 is disengaged from the former, tooth 5 falls upon the upper surface of the latter. This changed position is shown in Fig. 134. The pendulum, having completed its vibration towards the right, commences its return towards D (Fig. 133); and whilst it is moving in that direction, the tooth 5 remains at rest, and the whole wheel is consequently stationary, until the pallet B has been withdrawn far enough, for the tooth to rest against

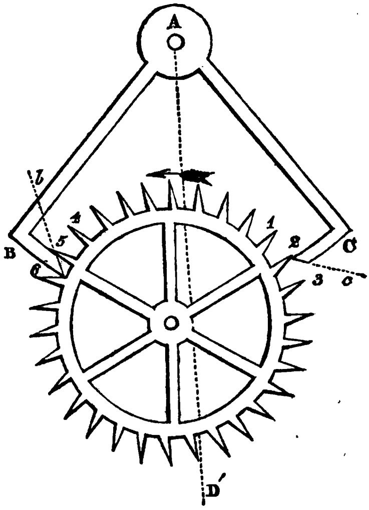


FIG. 134.

the inclined portion of its surface. When it does so, the wheel again begins to move onward, and gives the pendulum a fresh impulse, in a contrary direction to the first. When the pallet B shall have been completely withdrawn, and the pendulum have arrived at D, the tooth 5 will be disengaged, and will take up the position of the tooth 6 in Fig. 138.

421. Hence, during a large part of each vibration of the pendulum, the scape-wheel is stationary, in consequence of the resting of its teeth upon the circular portion of the pallets; and it is only whilst they are sliding down the inclined plane, which action occupies but a small proportion of the whole time, that the wheel moves on. Its movement, therefore, as indicated by the seconds'-hand, is a succession of jerks; very different from the recoiling movement of the scape-wheel of the ordinary clock. As the dead-beat escapement is the one now universally adopted in this country for the best kind of clocks, whether those designed for astronomical purposes, or for *regulators* of time (such as almost every watchmaker possesses), and also in many large public clocks, most of the readers of this description may obtain the opportunity of observing its action.

Compensation Pendulum.

422. Although every part of a clock may be constructed with the greatest perfection, its performance will be very inaccurate, unless it be provided with the means of compensating for those changes, which result from an alteration of temperature. It has already been explained (§. 269) that a very minute difference in the length of a pendulum, will produce a decided influence upon the rate of going of a clock. For if this alteration be so trifling, as to cause an increase or decrease of the time of each vibration by 1-1440th part of its whole length, it will occasion the clock to lose or gain a minute in every twenty-four hours,—a minute being the 1-1440th part of a day. The alteration in length, required to produce a difference of a second a day, will therefore be almost inconceivably small; and such as a trifling variation in the temperature of the air would be sufficient to produce. The amount will vary with the material employed. If the pen-

dulum-rod be of dry varnished deal, an alteration of the temperature to the amount of 10° (Fahr.) will only affect its going by one second a day. But if iron wire be employed, the alteration is three times as great; and it is increased to 5 seconds by employing brass. Hence, to insure the accurate going of a clock, some means must be devised to compensate for this source of error.

423. This compensation is ordinarily effected, in clocks constructed in this country, by the apparatus termed the *mercurial pendulum;* the form of which is shown in the accompanying figure. The rod of the pendulum consists of a flat piece of steel, which is formed at the bottom into a kind of stirrup, to carry a glass jar securely fixed to it. This jar is partly filled with mercury, which serves as the weight or bob of the pendulum. When a change of temperature causes the steel rod to expand downwards from its point of suspension, it also occasions an expansion of the mercury upwards from the bottom of the jar; and as the expansion of any given bulk of mercury is many times greater than that of the same bulk of steel, the rise of the mercury in the jar counteracts the lowering of the whole jar by the expansion of the rod; so that the place of the centre of oscillation remains the same, and the rate of vibration continues unaffected. The quantity of mercury requisite for the purpose can only be accurately determined by experiment; but in general it will be found, that the height of the column should be about 6·7 inches. If the column is not high enough, its expansion will not counteract that of the steel rod; if it be too high, the pendulum will be over-compensated, so that heat will cause it to gain, and cold to lose,—contrary to the usual rule. Of course what has been said of the mode in which the two expansions balance each other, equally applies to the contractions which will take place, in the steel rod and in the mercury, from the operation of cold. The absolute length of the pendulum is adjusted by a screw at D, by turning which the stirrup is raised or lowered upon

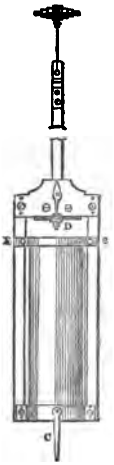


Fig. 135.

the rod. At C is a projecting index, which points to a circular scale below; by which the pendulum's arc of vibration may be observed from time to time.

424. A very simple compensation pendulum, which may be applied to any clock at the most trifling expense, consists of a wooden rod, dried and varnished; carrying at its lower end, by way of bob, a hollow leaden cylinder, which rests on a screw at the bottom of the rod. If the rod be made about 46 inches long, and the lead cylinder about 14 inches long, it will nearly vibrate in seconds (since the centre of oscillation will be at about the middle of the leaden cylinder, and therefore at about 7 inches from the end of the rod); and the expansion of the lead upwards is sufficient, or nearly so, to counteract that of the rod downwards. There is another very ingenious compensation pendulum, which was invented by Harrison, to whom we are so much indebted for his improvements in chronometers (§. 436). This, which is termed, from its form and aspect, the *gridiron* pendulum, is more used abroad than in this country. It is rather complex in its construction; and will be described in the treatise on HEAT. Many other contrivances have been devised for the same purpose; but they are not superior to these.

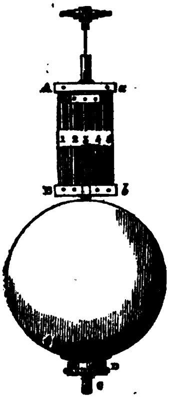


FIG. 136.

425. The regular going of a clock will partly depend also upon the steadiness with which it is fixed; and it is therefore desirable that a clock for scientific purposes should be as firmly supported as possible. After all, however, there is one source of error for which it does not seem easy to devise a remedy;—this is the varying density of the air, which will produce a variation in the resistance to the motion of the pendulum. When the air is dense, as shown by a rise of the mercury in the barometer, the resistance is increased, and the clock will go slower; the contrary result occurs, when the pressure of the air is diminished, as shown by a fall of the mercury. An attempt has been made to correct this error, by attaching small barome-

ters to the sides of the pendulum; it being intended that the rise of the mercury in the tube, by slightly raising the centre of oscillation, should counterbalance the effect of the increased resistance. This ingenious idea has not yet been properly applied to practice. To show the perfection at which clock-making has arrived, it may be mentioned that several clocks are now going, whose errors are less than 1-10th of a second daily.

Watch Escapements.

426. As in the Clock it is desirable to remove the Pendulum as much as possible from the *constant* influence of the moving power, so is it desirable in the Watch to withdraw the Balance from the same influence, slight variations of which (such as must be continually occurring from various causes) must otherwise greatly affect its regularity. In order to effect this, various kinds of escapements have been devised, which have completely superseded, for all but the most ordinary watches, the common verge-escapement already described (§. 404). In this escapement, as in the common recoil escapement of clocks, the teeth of the balance-wheel are continually pressing on the pallets, in such a manner as to be exercising a constant influence over the vibrations of the balance; and a fresh impulse is communicated at each vibration. In all the improved escapements referred to, the balance is so *detached* from the train of wheels, that it only receives a momentary impulse from the moving power; and in the intervals, the whole train of wheels is checked. In general this impulse is communicated only at every second vibration of the balance; that is, the balance, after receiving one impulse, completes its vibration in that direction, and returns to the same point again, before it receives the next.

427. One of the simplest contrivances by which these objects are fulfilled, is that known as the *duplex* escapement; the action of which will be easily comprehended by reference to the accompanying figure. AA represents the scape-wheel, which is provided with two sets of teeth;—1, 2, 3, &c., projecting from its sides, and termed the teeth of repose;—and *a*, *b*, *c*, &c., rising from the surface of the wheel, and termed the teeth of impul-

On the axle of the balance, there is fixed a piece CD, termed the impulse-pallet; this stands just above the surface of the scape-wheel, so that the teeth *a*, *b*, *c*, must strike the projecting portion D, when the wheel revolves. On the same axis, but placed a little below it, so as to be on the level of the teeth 1, 2, 3, &c., is a small roller made of ruby; this has a notch cut out of one side of it, as seen in the figure. The scape-wheel is constantly being urged, by its connexion with the going train, in the direction from 3 to 1; and consequently, in the position represented in the figure, the tooth *a* is just about to strike the impulse-pallet D. The impulse being given, the balance moves round, and the tooth *a* escapes from the pallet. The next tooth *b* does not immediately fall against it, however; since, before it can do so, the tooth 1 has been stopped against the ruby roller. There it is held, during the vibration of the balance and its return, until the roller comes back into the position shown in the figure, which will permit the point of the tooth 1 to pass by the notch; so that the tooth *b* may fall on the pallet D, and give the balance a renewed impulse just as its next vibration is commencing. Thus it is seen that the teeth *a b c* are those which give the impulses to the pallet; whilst by means of the check which, in the intervals, the points of the teeth 1, 2, 3 receive against the ruby roller, the train is kept in repose.

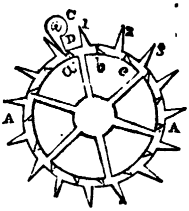


FIG. 137.

428. This escapement is not quite so commonly employed in this country, however, as the one known under the name of the *detached lever*. This essentially consists of the dead-beat escapement (§. 419), applied to the balance in such a manner, that a straight piece prolonged from the anchor or crutch, on the other side of its centre of motion, shall give a momentary impulse to a ruby roller fixed on the axle of the balance, each time that either of the pallets escapes.

429. Neither of these, however, is equal in perfection to that known, after the name of its inventor, as Earnshaw's detached

escapement. This is the one at present universally employed for chronometers and the most accurate timekeepers; and nothing but the delicacy of its construction, and its consequent expensiveness, prevents it from coming into general use. Its action will now be explained by the help of the accompanying figure. AA represents the scape-wheel, the teeth of which, 1, 2, 3, 4, &c., are considerably *undercut* on the side or face towards which they move. At BB is shown the steel roller or main pallet, which is fixed on the axle of the balance. This has a large notch cut in it; and the side of this notch nearest the tooth 1 is guarded by a thin plate of ruby, on which the points of the teeth strike as they pass it. The same arbor carries the small lifting-pallet *q*, which has a projection on one side, that lifts the end E *p* of the locking-lever or detent next to be described. This lever, EE, has its centre of motion at *c*, where it is attached by a screw to a stud S, which is firmly fixed to one of the plates of the chronometer. Near this stud, the lever is made thin and elastic; so that it has a springing power which keeps it pressing towards the scape-wheel, unless removed from that position. It is prevented from pressing too far, however, by the screw *d*, which is fixed into the stud D; for the head of this screw acts as a *stop* to the lever, and prevents it from moving further towards the right, than the place in which it is seen. At the other end of the lever is an extremely delicate spring *p*, which extends a little beyond the extremity of the detent. In the middle of the lever is the pin *o*, which serves to stop the teeth of the scape-wheel, when the detent is in the position represented in the figure, which is that of repose.

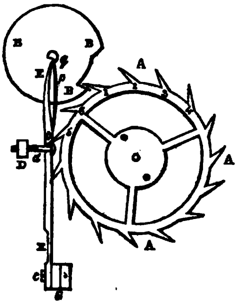


FIG. 138.

430. The following is the mode in which these parts act upon one another. The tooth 5 of the scape-wheel is seen to be resting against the pin *o*; whilst the tooth 1 is nearly ready to advance and strike the ruby face of the main-pallet BBB, but is prevented from doing so by this locking of the wheel. T

balance, however, being in motion from right to left (by the elasticity of its spring) carries round with it the lifting-pallet *q*, the projection on which acts against the end of the lifting-spring; and this spring, pressing against the end of the detent EE, raises it a little from its place, towards D, so as to withdraw the pin *o* from the point of the tooth 5. The wheel being thus unlocked, the tooth 1 strikes against the ruby face of the main-pallet, and gives the balance an impulse, which increases the extent of its vibration. Before the tooth has entirely escaped, however, from the ruby face, the lifting-pallet *q* has completely passed the point of the lifting-spring *p*; so that the detent is at liberty to fall back into its place, which it is caused to do by the spring at its fixed end. Hence, by the time that the tooth 1 has escaped from the main-pallet, the pin *o* will be in a position to check the next tooth, 6, which advances against it; and the whole train of wheels, therefore, again comes to repose. The balance, having completed its vibration forwards, begins to return, by the elasticity of its spiral spring. In this return, the lifting-pallet *q* has again to pass the end of the lifting-spring *p*; but it now merely separates this from the end of the detent, and does not move the detent itself. The locking of the scape-wheel still continues, therefore, until the balance has completed its return vibration, and again begins to move forwards; the lifting-pallet will then again raise the detent and set free the scape-wheel; the balance will receive a fresh impulse from the action of the teeth upon the ruby face of the main pallet; and the detent will again lock the wheel, as soon as the tooth has escaped. All this complex action, which occupies so long in the description, is really repeated in every half-second,—that being the time in which the balance is usually made to perform its double vibration.

Compensation Balance.

431. It is essential to the accurate going of a chronometer, that it should be furnished with some means of compensating the action of heat or cold upon the balance-spring, analogous to those by which compensation is made for the effect of change of temerature upon the pendulum. This is here also effected, by

taking advantage of the unequal expansion of different metals; so that the change produced in the length of the spring may be antagonized by a change in the form of the balance, producing a variation in the amount of force necessary to move it. From what has been formerly stated (Chap. X.) of the principles of the Lever, and Wheel and Axle, it is evident that, the nearer the chief weight of the balance is disposed to the centre of motion, the less amount of force will be required to turn it. Consequently if—when the action of heat upon the balance-spring has weakened it, by increasing its length—the same action can be made to cause the weight which the spring has to move, to approach nearer the centre, a perfect compensation may be effected. In the same manner, the spring being shortened by cold, and thereby rendered more powerful, the weight ought to be carried further from the centre, so as to require a greater moving power.

432. These objects are accomplished by the compensation balances represented in Figs. 139 and 140. The principle of both is the same; and the only difference consists in this, that the necessary weight is given in Fig. 139, by a single piece W on each arm of the balance; whilst in Fig. 140 it is distributed among the four screws, 1, 2, 3, 4, which are inserted into each arm. These balances are not made in the form of a complete wheel; but are composed of the cross-bar A B attached to the axis, and of the two circular arms carried by its ends. Each of these circular arms is a compound bar of brass and steel, the brass being on the outside. As brass expands by heat much more than steel, the effect of a rise of temperature is to cause the curvature of the bars to increase, so that their ends *a a* curl in, as it were, towards the cross piece A B, carrying inwards the

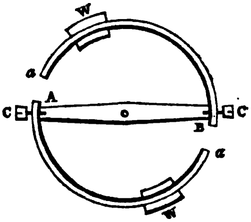


FIG. 139.

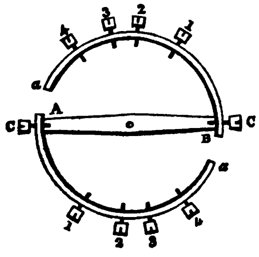


FIG. 140.

weights W W (Fig. 139), or the screws 1, 2, 3, 4 (Fig. 140); hence the balance will be more easily made to revolve, and the weakened action of the spring will be compensated. On the other hand, the effect of cold will be to make the brass contract more than the steel, and thus to diminish the curve of the circular bars, rendering them straighter; so as to increase the distance of the weights from the centre, and thereby to increase the power requisite to move them; thus counterbalancing the increased power given to the spring by its own contraction.

433. There is much difficulty in exactly adjusting this compensation to the error it is desired to correct. It may be that it is too great; in which case the chronometer will gain by heat and lose by cold. This is corrected by shifting the weights W W (Fig. 139) towards a part of the circular bars nearer to their attachment, so that they may be less influenced by the alteration of the curvature of the bars; and the same result is obtained, in the other form of the balance (Fig. 140) by drawing out the screws 4, 4, and screwing in 1, 1. On the other hand, if the compensation be not sufficient, the weights must be shifted towards the ends *a a* of the circular bars, so as to be more altered in place, when the curvature of the bars is changed by an alteration of temperature. The screws C C are obviously not affected by these changes of curvature, since they pass into the ends of the straight bar A B; but the effect of screwing them in or drawing them out, is to alter the rate at which the balance will vibrate; for if the moving power remain the same, and a portion of the weight be carried to a greater distance from the centre—as it is by partly drawing out the screws C C—the vibrations will be rendered slower; and the contrary effect will be produced by screwing them in. Now in finally adjusting a chronometer, it is found undesirable to alter the length of the balance-spring, after the point has once been ascertained at which its vibrations are isochronous or nearly so (§. 403). Hence, in order to bring it to the proper rate, it is found advantageous to make it go faster or slower as required, by slightly altering these screws, which are hence called, to distinguish them from the others, *mean time* screws.

Chronometers.

434. These are the principles on which the excellence of a time-keeper depends. In their application to practice, however, everything depends on the perfection with which the machine is constructed; and the minuteness of the conditions required for the good going of a chronometer may be judged of from the fact, with which practical men are familiar,—that, of two chronometers, constructed upon the same plan, and finished with equal care in all respects by the same hand, one may go very well, and the other comparatively badly, without any discoverable difference between them. In finally adjusting a chronometer, no attempt is made to keep it exactly to *mean time;* that is, to make it continue to point, day after day, and week after week, exactly to the correct hour; for it is just as advantageous to allow it to gain or to lose a few seconds a day, provided that the gain or loss be *regular* in its amount; since the real time may be known with equal accuracy from that which the chronometer indicates. Thus, suppose that I have a chronometer which was set 36 days ago, since which time it has been gaining 5 seconds a day; if its gain have been regular, its whole gain during that period will be (5 × 36) 180 seconds, or three minutes; and three minutes being deducted from the time to which the hands point, we shall have the real time. This regular amount of gain or loss is called the *rate* of a chronometer; and it is thus expressed:—When the chronometer is said to have a rate of + 2·53, we understand that it is gaining $2\frac{1}{2}$ seconds per day; but if its rate is —3·2, we know that it is losing $3\frac{1}{5}$ seconds per day. The more closely it keeps to this rate, the better the instrument will obviously be; but if it vary much from its rate, even though its errors should be sometimes on one side, and sometimes on the other, so as to compensate one another, and make the general average the same, the performance is bad, and cannot be relied on.

435. When the minuteness of the parts of a chronometer is considered, and the variety of disturbances to which it is exposed, the accurate performance to which it may be brought is most wonderful. For it must be remembered how very trifling

a cause, if constantly acting (such as a slight thickening of the oil), will greatly alter the result. Thus, as there are 1440 minutes in a day, any cause which makes each vibration of the balance (of which there are five in a common watch) take place in 1-7200th part less or more than its usual time, will cause the time-keeper to gain or lose a minute a day. And as there are 86,400 seconds a day, any cause which makes each vibration of the balance of a chronometer (which usually occurs 4 times in a second) take place in 1-432,000th part less or more than its usual time, will cause it to gain or lose a second a day—an error of very considerable magnitude. When it was first supposed that chronometers could be made sufficiently perfect to give important assistance in the determination of the longitude at sea (the mode of doing which will be explained hereafter), a parliamentary reward of £10,000 was offered in 1714 to any one who should construct a time-keeper capable of doing so within the limit of sixty geographical miles; £15,000, if to forty miles; and £20,000, if to thirty miles. Now a chronometer that has so much changed its rate as to have gained or lost, in a few weeks, two minutes more than it was estimated to have done, would gain the highest of these rewards; so that the utmost degree of accuracy which was contemplated as possible, at the beginning of the last century, when this act was passed, is far surpassed at present.

436. The reward was gained by John Harrison, who, in 1736, completed the first chronometer used at sea, after many years of patient study and laborious experiment. He gradually improved his machine; and in 1761, the first trial was made of it, according to the regulations of the Act of Parliament, by a voyage to Jamaica. In consideration of his advancing years, his son was allowed to take this voyage instead of himself. After eighteen days' navigation, the vessel was supposed by the captain to be 13° 50′ west of Portsmouth; but the watch giving 15° 19′, or a degree and a half more, was condemned as useless. Harrison maintained, however, that if Portland Island were correctly marked on the chart, it would be seen on the following day; and in this he persisted so strongly, that the captain was

induced to continue in the same course, and accordingly the island was discovered the next day at seven o'clock. This raised Harrison and his watch in the estimation of the crew; and their confidence was increased, by his correctly predicting the several islands as they were passed in the voyage to Jamaica. When he arrived at Port Royal, after a voyage of 81 days, the chronometer was found to be about 5 seconds too slow; and finally, on his return to Portsmouth, after a voyage of five months, it had kept time within about one minute and five seconds, which gives an error of about 18 miles. This amount was much within the limits prescribed by the Act; but Harrison did not receive the whole reward until a second voyage had been made; and large as the sum appears, it cannot be regarded as more than equivalent to the devotion of extraordinary talents, with unwearied perseverance, during 40 years, to the attainment of an object whose importance can scarcely be estimated too highly.

437. As an illustration of the improvements which have been since made in the construction of chronometers, the following circumstance, mentioned by Dr. Arnott* as having occurred to himself, is of great interest. "After several months spent at sea," he says, "in a long passage from South America to Asia, my pocket chronometer and others on board announced one morning that a certain point of land was then bearing north from the ship, at a distance of fifty miles; in an hour afterwards, when a mist had cleared away, the looker-out on the mast gave the joyous call of 'Land ahead!' verifying the report of the chronometers almost to one mile, after a voyage of thousands. It is allowable at such a moment, with the dangers and uncertainties of ancient navigation before the mind, to exult in contemplating what man has now achieved. Had the rate of the wonderful little instrument, in all that time, been quickened or slackened ever so slightly, its announcement would have been useless, or even worse;—but in the night and in the day, in storm and in calm, in heat and in cold, its steady beat went on, keeping exact account of the rolling of the earth and of the stars; and in the midst of the trackless waves which retain no

---

* Physics, Vol. I. p. 87.

mark, it was always ready to tell its magic tale, indicating the very spot of the globe over which it had arrived."

438. It is surprising that, in spite of the great advantages resulting from the use of Chronometers in Navigation, many ships are sent to sea without them, even for long voyages. Not unfrequently must it occur, that the knowledge of the exact position of the ship, which may be obtained by the chronometer, produces a great saving of time, as well as contributes to the avoidance of danger. A remarkable instance of this was mentioned to the author, a few years since, as having just then occurred. Two ships were returning to London about the same time, after long voyages, one of them provided with chronometers, the latter destitute of them. The weather was hazy, and the winds baffling; so that no ship, whose position was uncertain, could be safely carried up the British Channel. Confident in his position, however, the captain of the first ship stood boldly onwards, and arrived safely in the Thames; whilst the other ship was still beating about in uncertainty near the entrance to the Channel. The first ship discharged her cargo, took in another, set sail on a fresh voyage, and actually, in running down the Channel, encountered the second ship still toilsomely making her way to her port!

439. Of the degree of accuracy which chronometers are capable of exhibiting, some idea may be formed from the following statement, kindly communicated to the author by a gentleman practically conversant with them. A chronometer made by Molyneux, had its daily rate determined, in August 1839, to be a loss of 7 seconds per day. It was then placed in a ship which traded to the coast of Africa, and was consequently exposed to great variations of temperature. Yet when again placed under careful observation, in November, 1840, (sixteen months afterwards) its daily loss had only changed to 6-7 seconds, being a difference of only 3-10ths of a second a day. As opportunities for ascertaining the real position of the ship, without chronometers, frequently occur at sea, any error in these may almost always be detected, before it has accumulated to any great extent; but even supposing that no such opportunity had

occurred for six months, and that the alteration of the rate had taken place at once, and had been entirely unknown, the whole error would have been under a minute of time, and consequently less than 15 miles of space. Another chronometer, constructed by Muston, which had made the same voyage, and been out about the same length of time, had its previous gaining rate of 1·9 seconds a day increased to 2·3 seconds; the difference being here 4–10ths of a second. It is customary for two or more chronometers to be carried by the same ship, that they may check one another; for if one alone were trusted to, an accidental irregularity in its going might lead to great error. The average of several,—their errors counterbalancing each other,—will be most likely to give the real time with great exactness.

Striking Apparatus.

440. The apparatus for striking the hour is somewhat complex; but we shall endeavour to make its action intelligible, as it is a very beautiful specimen of ingenious mechanism. The form which will be described is that which is adopted in the best English clocks: a simpler plan is adopted in the cheap German clocks, which are now so largely employed in this country; but they are very liable to get out of order. The difference consists, however, only in the apparatus by which the striking is regulated, as to time and number of strokes; the mechanism by which the hammer is made to strike the bell is the same in both cases. It consists of a train of wheels and pinions, put into action by the spring contained in the barrel E (Fig. 131) which turns the fusee F. The fusee carries round with it the main-wheel, *e*, which has 84 teeth; this drives the pinion *p*, of 8 leaves, which carries on its axle the *pin-wheel*, *f*, having 64 teeth. In the rim of this pin-wheel are 8 pins, which lift the hammer, *s*, by acting on its tail, *t*, when the train is in motion. The hammer being gradually lifted by each pin, is at last let go by it; and is made to strike the bell by the spring *u*. The pin-wheel drives a pinion, *q*, of 8 leaves, which carries round the *pallet-wheel*, *g*, of 56 teeth: as the pin-wheel has 64 teeth, it turns the pallet-wheel pinion 8 times for each revolution of its own, consequently this

pinion makes one revolution for every stroke of the hammer, an arrangement of which the use will be presently shown. The pallet-wheel acts on a pinion, *z*, of 7 leaves, on which is the warning-wheel, *h*, of 48 or 50 teeth; and this last turns the fly-pinion *i*. The object of this part of the train is only to equalize the motion; which is principally effected by the constant resistance of the air against the surface of the plate (termed the fly) which is whirled very rapidly round by the highest pinion. If it were not for this addition, the pin-wheel would move onwards with a jerk, after each pin had escaped from the tail of the hammer.

441. The striking train remains completely at rest during each hour's movement of the going train; and is only allowed to act at the conclusion of one hour and the commencement of the next. The mode in which it is restrained in the intervals, and its action at the proper time permitted and regulated, will now be explained. The mechanism by which this is effected is shown in Fig. 141. It is situated immediately behind the dial. The axis of the centre-wheel, as already mentioned, is prolonged through the dial, to bear the minute hand. In the striking clock, this also bears a small wheel, *a*, which gives motion to another wheel, *b*, of the same size and number of teeth; hence this wheel, like the former, revolves once in each hour. On the centre of this wheel is a pinion of 6 or 8 leaves, which turns a wheel, *c*, with a hollow axle, moving on the same centre as *a*, but at a different rate, as in the watch. This wheel has 12 times the number of teeth that the pinion contains; and therefore moves at only 1-12th of the rate. To it the hour-hand is affixed; and it also carries a peculiarly-shaped piece of metal, *d*, which is called the *snail*. The edge of this snail is cut into 12 steps, each of which is a twelfth of the circle of which it forms a part; but the distance of each from the centre increases regularly from 1 to

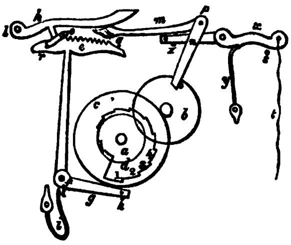


FIG. 141.

12. At *e* is seen a circular *rack*, fixed to the end of a bent lever, *e f g h*, whose centre of motion is at *f*. By the action of the bent spring *i*, this rack will be made to fall towards the left, when permitted to do so; but the amount to which it shall fall, is governed by the position of the snail, against the edge of which, the pin *h* will be brought to bear. This spring is prevented from forcing the rack out of the position shown in the figure, by means of the projecting piece on the lever *k*, which turns on the centre *l*, and drops by its own weight into the teeth of the rack. The form of these teeth is such, that when the rack is moved from left to right, the catch is lifted by them and allows them to pass; but, so long as it is allowed to drop between the teeth, it completely prevents the motion of the rack from right to left. The lever *k*, with its catch, may be lifted by the bent lever *m p n*, whose centre of motion is at *p*; and this is acted on by a pin in the circumference of the wheel *b*, which is seen in the figure, close against the tail of the lever.

442. Only one other part remains to be described—that which is known as the *gathering-pallet*. The axle of the pallet-wheel *g* (Fig. 131) projects through the front plate; and is furnished with a projection, seen at *o*, resembling one leaf of a pinion. This works into the teeth of the rack, in such a manner that, as the axle turns round, the rack is *gathered up* by it, to the amount of one tooth for each revolution. When the machinery is in the position shown in the figure—which it has during the whole time that the striking train is at rest—a projection on the gathering pallet rests on a pin which projects from the rack, as seen at *r*. It is this which keeps the striking train from acting; for, so long as this projection from the axle of the pallet-wheel bears upon the pin, so long must the pallet-wheel, and consequently the whole remainder of the striking train, be prevented from running on.

443. But when the time of striking is nearly come, the pin on the wheel *b* acts on the tail of the lever *n p m;* the end *q* of which raises the lever *k l*, and consequently lifts its catch out of the rack *o*, which is thus set free. The spring *i*, therefore, pressing upon the projection below *f*, causes the rack to f

towards the left; and therefore sets free the projection on the gathering-pallet, by withdrawing the pin on which it rested. Hence the whole striking train would be set in action by its weight; if it were not that, at the same time that the gathering pallet is freed, another check is provided. The end *q* of the bent lever *m p n* bears a projecting piece, which, when the lever is raised, stops a pin placed on the circumference of the warning wheel *h* (Fig. 131). So long as the lever remains in this position, therefore, the striking train is prevented from acting. The amount of motion given to the rack is determined by the place of the snail. In the position represented in the figure, the pin *h* would be stopped by the second step; and thus the rack would only be permitted to move to the amount of two of its teeth. If the position of the hour-wheel were such, that the twelfth step of the snail corresponded with the end *h* of the rack-lever, then the pin would not be stopped so soon; and the rack would fall towards the left to the amount of twelve teeth. This preparatory action is usually made to take place about 3 or 5 minutes before the expiration of the hour; and it is called *giving warning*.

444. The machinery remains in this position, until the minute-hand points to XII; at which time, the wheel *b* has so far advanced, that its pin escapes from under the end of the lever, and thus allows it to fall, so that the end *q* no longer checks the pin on the warning wheel. The striking train is now set entirely free; the weight or spring that moves it produces a rapid revolution of its wheels; and the pins on the pin-wheel, acting on the tail of the hammer-lever, cause the successive strokes on the bell. This movement goes on, until it is checked by the action of the gathering-pallet on the rack. It has been already mentioned that the pallet-wheel, from the axle of which the gathering-pallet projects, turns round once for every stroke given to the hammer; and in each turn, it gathers up one tooth of the rack, causing it to move towards the right, so as to regain its original position. The projecting catch of the lever *k l* drops between the teeth at each advance, and prevents the rack from being moved back by the spring *i*. This goes on, until the rack has been completely brought back to its first position; and then the

projection on the gathering-pallet will be again checked by the pin *r*, and the striking train would be brought to rest.

445. It is evident, then, that the number of strokes will be determined by the number of revolutions which the gathering pallet is allowed to make; this depends upon the number of teeth on the rack which have to be gathered up by it; and this number is regulated by the extent to which the rack is permitted to fall, by the bearing of the pin *h* against the edge of the snail. It is almost impossible for any error to be committed by a movement so constructed; but the striking train of the common German clocks, now so largely imported into Britain, is regulated by an apparatus of simpler construction, which is very liable to give wrong indications. It principally consists of a large wheel (termed the *count-wheel*), usually placed at the back of the clock, on which are cut 78 teeth; this is so connected with the striking train, that it moves on one tooth for each stroke. The number 78 is the sum of all the strokes which the clock should make in 12 hours; consequently, after all these strokes have been made, the wheel returns to the same place again. From the surface of the wheel, near its edge, there projects a rim, in which are cut a series of notches, at intervals corresponding with the number of strokes. Thus, between the first and second notches, there is an interval amounting only to one tooth of the wheel; between the second and third notches, an interval of two teeth; and so on, up to the twelfth notch, the interval between which and the first is 12 teeth. The use of these notches is to receive a catch or projection, which keeps the striking train at rest during the hour, and regulates the number of strokes. When the clock gives warning, this catch is lifted out of the notch; but there is a temporary check applied to the warning wheel, as in the last case. When this check is removed, the train immediately begins to move, and continues in action until it is stopped by the falling of the catch into the succeeding notch. The number of strokes is determined, therefore, by the number of teeth which the count-wheel shall have moved on, before the catch falls into this notch,—or, in other words, by the number of teeth between each notch and the succeeding one.

446. The advantage of this last plan consists in its simplicity, and the facility with which the apparatus may be constructed. Its disadvantage consists in the readiness with which it may be put out of order. For it will be easily seen that if, from any cause, the clock be made to strike at an improper time, the count-wheel advances, and the number of strokes made will be one more than the last; so that, when it should next strike the hour, the number of strokes is one too many. Or if any cause (such as neglecting to wind up the weight of the striking train) should prevent the clock from striking at the proper time, the count-wheel remains stationary; and when the clock next strikes, it gives the number succeeding the one which it last struck· which may, of course, be altogether wrong. On the other hand, in the more perfectly-constructed clock, the striking may be repeated any number of times within the hour, or it may be made to cease for a time altogether; and yet, when the clock next strikes the hour, it shall do it correctly. For the number of strokes, as just explained, is dependent upon the position of the snail; which is carried round by the hour-wheel, whether the clock strikes or not; and which must, therefore, always correspond with the place of the hour-hand. In some clocks of this construction, there is a simple contrivance for causing the hour to be struck at any time. This consists of a lever x, to one end of which the string t is attached, whilst the other carries a pin that raises the lever m. The action of this lever is checked by the two pins s and z, which prevent it from being moved too far in either direction. When the string t is pulled, the lever m is lifted, and all those changes take place, which have been described as occurring in the ordinary *warning* of the clock. When the string is let go, the lever is made to return to its place by the spring y; the lever m falls, the warning-wheel is released, and the proper number of strokes is made. Such a contrivance is convenient to those who desire to know the hour during the night.

447. Where a clock is made to strike the quarters, as well as the hours, a third train of wheels is required. The mechanism is the same in principle, with that which regulates the striking of the hours. The axle of the minute-hand carries round a snail

cut into four steps; and on a wheel corresponding to *b*, and revolving therefore in an hour, there are four pins, one of which lifts the lever that sets free the rack, every quarter of an hour. The rack has four teeth, corresponding with the four steps of the snail; and the passage of each tooth permits one stroke on the quarter-bell. Most frequently, the quarter-stroke is made upon two bells; and this is accomplished simply by having a set of pins on each side of the pin-wheel; of which one set acts on one lever, and the other set (acting a little afterwards, so that the two strokes may not be made at the same moment) on the other lever. In clocks constructed for purposes in which great accuracy is required, it is necessary to dispense altogether with the striking apparatus; since a certain degree of force is required to set it in action, that would derange the very regular movement of a delicate and perfect clock; in which the power of the weight ought to be no more than is requisite to keep the pendulum in action.

448. The same apparatus has been applied to watches; but, when made on so small a scale, and carried about in the pocket, its action is extremely liable to become deranged; and it is therefore of little use. The ordinary repeating-watches are made, not to strike the hours regularly, but merely to indicate them when desired to do so. In order to effect this, it is not requisite that the watch should be furnished with a second barrel and fusee with a distinct striking train of wheels; for it is easy to apply a power sufficient to produce the strokes, every time that the watch is applied to for this information. This is usually accomplished by pushing in the *pendant*, or projecting portion to which the chain is attached; and by this a spring is compressed, which sets in action the mechanism that produces the strokes. The number of strokes is regulated by a snail, resembling that employed in clocks. The ordinary repeating-watches are still very complex in their construction; and we prefer describing one, invented some years ago by Mr. Elliott of Clerkenwell, in which the number of parts is greatly reduced, by the combination of several into one. The striking portion of this watch is represented in Figs. 142 and 143. The most important part of

it is a flat ring or centreless wheel, of nearly the same diameter with the watch, supported in its place so as to admit of a circular motion, by four grooved pulleys round its external circumference. In Fig. 142, A B represents the plate to which the dial is attached; and the flat ring C D, with the rest of the striking mechanism, lies between this plate and the dial. The four pulleys are seen at E F G H. This ring has teeth cut in the part of the outer edge, *b*, nearest to the pendant; and the rack may be thus turned by the wheel *a*, to which motion is given by turning the pendant. At the lower part of this ring is a series of projecting pins; which in the position shown in Fig. 142, act upon the projecting pallet *i*; whilst in the position shown in Fig. 143, they act upon the pallet *r*. Of these, the former is destined to strike the hours, and the other the quarters. The internal edge of the ring is cut into two series of *steps*; of which the one seen on the left-hand side of each figure contains twelve, and regulates the striking of the hours; whilst the one on the right contains only four, and regulates the striking of the quarters. When the ring has had its position changed by turning the pendant, it is brought

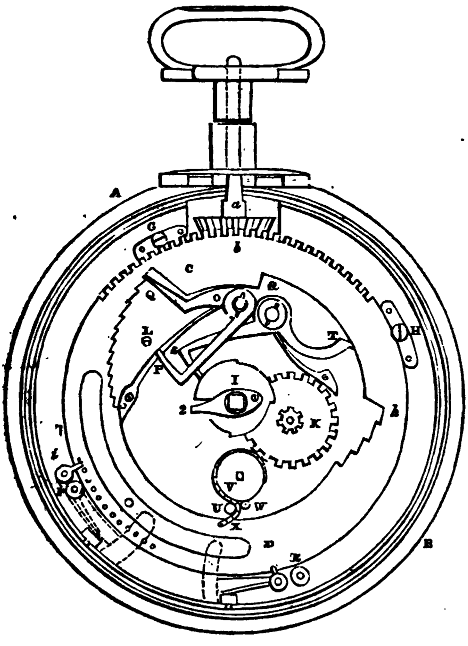


Fig. 142.

back again by a spring contained in the box or barrel V; the action of this spring is communicated to the ring by a chain which winds off the barrel, passes between the pulleys U and W, and is attached to the ring at X. Hence in whichever direction the ring is turned, the chain will be drawn off the barrel, and the spring put on the stretch, as seen in Fig. 143; and the elasticity of the spring will tend to bring back the ring to its previous position, shown in Fig. 142.

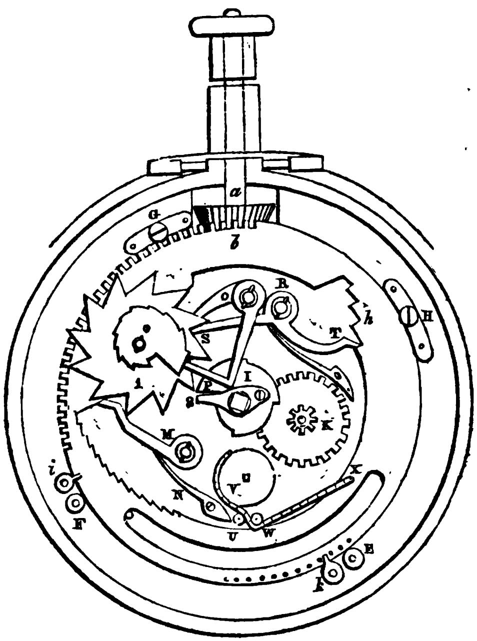


Fig. 143.

448*. The regulation of the number of strokes is effected by means of a snail, exactly resembling that of a clock. At I in either of the figures is seen the quarter-snail, placed on the axis of the minute-hand so as to revolve every hour, and cut into 4 steps. The same axle carries a projecting piece 2, which acts on the star-wheel 1, Fig. 143, in such a manner as to push it on to the amount of one-twelfth of a circle at each revolution of the minute-hand; consequently the whole star is made to turn once in the 12 hours. To this wheel is attached the hour-snail, as seen in Fig. 143; the common centre on which they turn is marked at L, Fig. 142. The hour-snail acts upon the bent lever P O Q, whose centre of motion is at O; and the end P is always kept against the step of the snail, by the spri seen in Fig. 142. In the position in which the lever is there shown, the snail having been removed, the end Q of the lever is pressing against the last or lowest step of the flat ring; and consequently the ring cannot be moved. But supposing the end P to be lifted by the snail to the 2nd, 3d, 4th, or any other step, the end Q will be raised to exactly the same amount, and will permit the ring to be turned from right to left, until it is stopped by the contact of Q with the corresponding step of the ring. In exactly the same manner, the quarter-snail acts upon the steps cut in the inner edge of the ring at *h*, by means of the bent lever S R T, whose centre is R.

449. Now when it is desired to ascertain the hour, the watch is held in one hand, and the pendant turned from right to left with the other. This causes a corresponding motion in the ring; and every pin, as it passes the pallet *i*, gives an impulse to the hammer, which causes a stroke upon the sounding body. The extent to which the ring may be turned, and consequently the number of pins allowed to pass the pallet, depends upon the position of the lever P O Q; and this, as just explained, is determined by the position of the snail. Hence the ring is stopped, just when as many pins have passed the pallet, as correspond with the step of the snail against which the end P of the lever is resting. After the hours have been struck, the ring is brought to its original position by the spring contained in the barrel V; and the pendant may then be turned in the opposite direction, so as to cause the other set of pins to act upon the pallet *k*, and to strike the quarters. Its motion in this direction is governed by the position of the lever S R T, of which the end S rests upon the quarter-snail, whilst the end T checks the steps cut in the ring at *h*. In the position represented in Fig. 143, the ring has been turned as far as possible in this direction; for the end S rests upon the highest step of the snail, and has lifted the end T so high, that the motion of the ring is not checked until it stops at the last step, by which time four pins have passed the pallet, and four strokes have been made.

ASTRONOMY.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE HEAVENLY BODIES IN GENERAL.—FORM AND DIMENSIONS OF THE EARTH.

450. THE Science of Astronomy may be said to consist in the application of the laws, that have been described as governing the actions of bodies upon the surface of the Earth, to the explanation of the movements of the Heavenly bodies, and of their changes of appearance. It has been well observed by one of its most distinguished cultivators, that there is no science which, more than Astronomy, requires for its successful pursuit the complete dismissal of crude and hastily-adopted notions respecting the objects to be examined, and a corresponding readiness to admit any conclusion which is found to be supported by careful observation and sound argument, however adverse it may be to the opinions with which the mind was previously possessed, and even though it should seem opposed to the obvious teachings of common sense, and to the almost universal belief of mankind.

451. " Almost all the conclusions of Astronomy stand in open and striking contradiction with those of superficial and vulgar observation, and with what appears to every one, until he has observed and weighed the proofs to the contrary, the most positive evidence of his senses. Thus, the Earth on which he stands, and which has served for ages as the unshaken foundation of the firmest structures, either of art or nature, is divested by the Astronomer of its attribute of fixity, and conceived by him as turning swiftly on its centre, and at the same time moving onwards through space with great rapidity. The Sun and the Moon, which appear to untaught eyes as round bodies of no very considerable size, become enlarged in his imagination into vast globes,—the one approaching in magnitude to the earth it

the other immensely surpassing it. The Planets, which appear only as stars somewhat brighter than the rest, are to him spacious, elaborate, and habitable worlds; several of them vastly greater and far more curiously furnished than the earth he inhabits, as there are others less so. And the Stars themselves, properly so called, which to ordinary apprehension present only lucid sparks or brilliant atoms, are to him suns of various and transcendent glory—effulgent creatures of life and light to myriads of unseen worlds. So that when, after dilating his thoughts to comprehend the grandeur of those ideas his calculations have called up, and exhausting his imagination and the powers of his language to devise similes and metaphors illustrative of the immensity of the scale on which his universe is constructed, he shrinks back to his native sphere; he finds it, in comparison, a mere point; so lost—even in the minutest system to which it belongs—as to be invisible and unsuspected from some of its principal and remoter members. There is hardly any thing which sets in a stronger light the inherent power of truth over the mind of Man, when opposed by no motives of nterest or passion, than the perfect readiness with which all these conclusions are assented to, as soon as their evidence is clearly apprehended, and the tenacious hold they acquire over our belief when once admitted *."

452. In a formal treatise on Astronomy, it may be proper to begin with the first principles of the science, which are no others than the laws of Motion and of Mutual Attraction, which have been stated and illustrated in the earlier part of this volume; and to carry out and apply these, so as to explain the movements and changing appearances of the heavenly bodies. Or, on the other hand, we might commence with the observed facts, and might bring them together in such a manner, as to make evident the real explanation of those facts; in each case avoiding all mention of the erroneous systems which have formerly prevailed, and which still have possession of the minds of the ignorant. It is, again, not an unfrequent or uninstructive mode of commencing, to give a history of these systems, showing how long

---

* Sir J. Herschel's Treatise on Astronomy, p. 3.

it was before the truth was arrived at, and explaining the various steps by which it was attained. In the following chapters, an attempt will be made to combine these three methods,—each having its particular advantages. The principal appearances, which strike every person of common observation, will first be noticed; and the explanation which the ancient philosophers gave of these, corresponding as it does with what seem to be the deductions made from them by common-sense, will naturally follow. In the progress of time, however, more careful observation detected many circumstances which appeared inconsistent with this view; and after many attempts to make it conform to them, it was abandoned by the most intelligent seekers for truth in favour of another, which appeared at first sight less satisfactory, but which explains every principal phenomenon that could be discovered with the unaided eye, and even predicted some which were not actually witnessed, until the invention of the telescope afforded to Astronomy precisely the assistance of which it then stood in need. By carefully combining the observations which were made on these more correct ideas, and with improved means, and by sagaciously reasoning upon them, those high and general principles were arrived at by Kepler and Newton, which give to the Astronomy of the present time the character of such perfection and completeness.

453. When we take a survey of the heavens, without being interrupted in our view by any intervening obstacle, we see them spread out like a vast hemisphere, in the centre of which we stand; and this appears to join at its base the *horizon*, or boundary line of that part of the earth's surface which is visible to us. By day this immense vault is illuminated by a brilliant disk, which ascends from beneath the horizon in the regions of the east, gradually travels onwards with a continually ascending movement until it reaches the southern point, and then as gradually descends, until it sinks beneath the western horizon. The feeble twilight which it leaves behind is soon extinguished; and then appear from all sides in the immensity of space, a multitude of luminous points of various degrees of brightness, whose numbers augment as the darkness becomes more profound. These

bodies, like the sun, are found, by a little observation, to have regular and determinate motions. Some of them, like him, rise in the east, attain their greatest elevation in the sky as they pass the south, and sink beneath the horizon in the west. These are succeeded by others, which follow a similar course. All the stars, however, do not thus sink beneath the horizon; for there are some that never reach this circle, but are constantly above it. These, also, however, perform a similar circuit; but there is one among them which appears immoveable; and the stars that are nearest to this (which is termed the Pole-star), have the least motion. Others, however, scarcely make their appearance above the horizon, sinking again almost as soon as they have risen.

454. Such are the general phenomena presented by the starry heavens. They are repeated every night, with a trifling variation. If the rising and setting of particular stars be noticed from the same place, it will be found that they appear and disappear a few minutes earlier each night; and if we accurately note the time when they pass any particular mark,—such, for instance, as the end of a wall, along which we look,—we shall see that the interval is about four minutes short of twenty-four hours. Now this difference between the *solar* and *sidereal* days,—that is, between the time which the sun requires to return to a certain point in the sky, and that which is occupied by a star,—is not enough to make any considerable change in the appearance of the heavens on two or three successive evenings; but the change becomes very perceptible, when we look at them after an interval of a month or two. For in 30 days, the difference amounts to (4×30) 120 minutes or two hours; so that we shall see the stars in the same position at midnight a month hence, as we should see them at two hours later to-night. In six months, the change would be so complete, that, if the darkness were sufficient to enable us to perceive them, we should see the same stars rising and setting at six o'clock in the evening, that we now see at six in the morning. And after twelve months, we shall find the place of the stars, at any given hour, exactly what it is at the same hour now; but if we had observed the number of times that any

star had risen or set, or crossed any mark, we should find that, instead of 365 times, corresponding to the rising and setting of the sun, it has been 366.

455. From the observation of these regular movements, it might be concluded that the whole starry firmament revolves from east to west, about the earth as a centre, in 23 hours, 56 minutes; and that the central line or axis of its revolution passes through the Pole-star. This was in fact the opinion of the ancients, who had no conception of the real sizes and distances of the heavenly bodies, but who regarded the stars as luminous spots, fixed to the interior of the celestial vault, and carried along with its revolutions. It was perceived, however, that the Sun must have an independent motion of his own; since his place among the stars was known to be constantly changing, by the difference in the height to which he rises, and in the consequent length of his stay above the horizon, as well as by the greater length of time that he requires to return to his line of highest elevation in the south. Still more evident was it, that the Moon must have an independent motion. For not only is there a difference in the time of her crossing any line in the skies, to the amount of nearly an hour in a day; but by watching her course in the heavens even for a short time, we can distinguish a manifest change in her place among the stars, some of these disappearing behind one edge of her disc, whilst others seem to start forth from beneath the other. Thus in a single month, she will have made one whole revolution less than the starry firmament. Hence the ancient Astronomers were led to attribute, both to the Sun and to the Moon, an independent motion round the earth, contrary in its direction to that of the stars; that of the sun carrying him once round our globe in a year; whilst that of the moon was much more rapid, and enabled her to complete her revolution in a month.

456. The Moon's place among the stars could be assigned by direct observation; but that of the Sun could not, since his brilliant lustre obscures all their paler fires. It could be ascertained, however, by a very simple process of observation; for as certain stars now pass the southern line or *meridian* at midnight.

these same stars will pass it six months hence at midday; and we may thus be certain of the sun's place among them at that time. On the other hand, we know the place of the sun at midday now, to be among those stars, which crossed the meridian at midnight exactly six months ago, and which will cross it again six months hence.

457. But the sun and moon are not the only celestial bodies which have a motion independent of that of the starry firmament. For the accurate observations of the Chaldean shepherds, who, as in later times, "kept watch over their flocks by night," appear to have early shown, that, whilst the greater part of the smaller luminaries retain exactly the same relative position towards each other, there are some (and two of these among the brightest of the whole) which are continually changing their places amongst the rest; sometimes approaching the sun, at others receding from him; sometimes moving directly onwards, at others appearing to move backwards; and yet, with all this apparent irregularity, repeating the same set of movements at regular intervals, some of which are of great length. These bodies were called *Planets* or *wandering* stars, to distinguish them from the *fixed* stars.

458. Sometimes there are to be observed in the heavens certain luminous bodies quite different in their appearance from those already mentioned, and undergoing changes of a far more remarkable character. When first seen, they are small and of little brilliancy; but they gradually increase in size and brightness, and at last appear like stars of large size, attended by a luminous train, which, from its occasional resemblance to a head of hair, has caused these bodies to be termed *Comets*[*]. These change their places among the fixed stars with greater and greater rapidity; they usually at last approach within a short distance of the sun; and after exhibiting their highest brilliancy, and the greatest extent of luminous train or tail, they gradually diminish in apparent size as they increase their distance from the sun and from us, and at last disappear wholly from our eyes. It is not surprising that these bodies should always have been

[*] From a Greek word meaning *Hair*.

objects of popular wonder and curiosity; nor that their appearances, unrestrained as they appeared by any regular laws, should be regarded, by the superstitious, as portents of Divine wrath, and by the timid as betokening some terrific convulsion, which should produce the overthrow of our system.

> "Hast thou not seen the comet's flaming light?
> The illustrious stranger passing, terror sheds
> On gazing nations, from his fiery train
> Of length enormous; takes his ample round
> Through depths of ether; coasts unnumber'd worlds
> Of more than solar glory; doubles wide
> Heaven's mighty cape; and then revisits earth
> From the long travel of a thousand years."
>
> YOUNG.

Of the Earth's Form and Dimensions.

459. It was not unnatural that, with the limited amount of knowledge possessed by the earliest observers, as to the form of the Earth, and the variations in the aspect of the heavens occasioned by a change in their place upon its surface, they should have supposed it to be flat or nearly so; but more extended observation seems to have very early led to a tolerably correct estimate of its form. For those who lived on the sea-shore must have early noticed the phenomenon, which often excites surprise even now, in the minds of those who are ignorant of its cause, —of the disappearance beneath the horizon of the hull and lower masts of a receding vessel, whilst the upper masts and sails are yet distinctly visible,—or, on the contrary, the appearance of the upper masts and sails of an approaching vessel, some time before the hull comes into view. This can only be accounted for, by supposing that the sea has a curved surface, with which that of the land,—though interrupted by hills, valleys, and other irregularities,—must, of course, bear a general correspondence. Thus suppose that E A D be a portion of the earth's surface, and that an observer be situated at A, having the elevation B above it: his horizon, in the direction BD, will be limited by the line BD drawn to touch the curve at D, since it is evident that the portion of the surface below D will be invisible to hi

through the bulging or curvature at D. Hence if a vessel be sailing along the curve, she will be completely within sight until

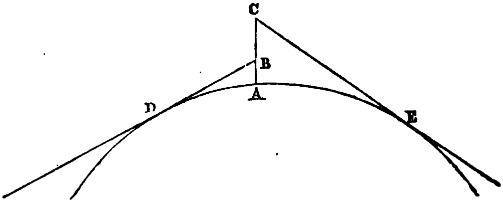


Fig. 144.

she reaches D, and after passing that point, her lower part will first sink beneath that line, whilst the upper portion will gradually follow, as she continues to increase her distance from the observer. Now this takes place at the same distance (provided the height of the observer be the same) in *any* direction, north, south, east, or west; so that we know that the boundary line of the horizon is, what it appears to be, a *circle*. Now on no kind of curved surface could this be the case, excepting upon one that is equally curved in *every* direction,—that is to say, upon a globe.

460. The extent of the horizon visible from any point, depends upon the height of the observer above the surface. This is evident from the inspection of Fig. 144; for if the observer be elevated to C, the point E, at which the line CE touches the surface, is more distant from A, than the point D, determined by the line BD, which is the limit of the view of the observer at B. A rough estimate of the Earth's magnitude may be formed from the knowledge of the distance of the visible horizon from the eye, at any particular level; for it is very easily proved by geometry, that the earth's diameter bears the same proportion to the distance of the visible horizon from the eye, as that distance does to the height of the eye above the sea-level. Now it appears by observation, that two points, each 10 feet above the surface, cease to be visible from each other, over still water, at a distance of about eight miles. As the interruption is caused by the convexity or bulging of the water half-way between them, we may

regard the horizon visible from either point as limited by a circle of 4 miles radius. The proportion will therefore stand thus;—as 10 feet : 4 miles (21,120 feet), so 4 miles = 8448 miles, which is not very far from the actual diameter of the earth, though somewhat too great. Taking 8,000 miles as (in round numbers) the actual diameter, we may estimate the proportion of the whole surface of the Earth, which can be seen from any elevation. The most lofty mountain known does not exceed 5 miles in perpendicular height,—a quantity which is no more than 1-1600th of the Earth's diameter, and therefore bears no larger a proportion to the whole globe, than the smallest grain of sand would do to a globe of 16 inches in diameter. By a simple rule of geometry, it is found that the proportion of the whole surface of the globe seen from any elevation, is almost exactly that which the height bears to the diameter of the Earth; so that from a height of 5 miles, supposing the view to be uninterrupted in any direction, no more than 1-1600th part of the Earth's surface would be visible. The proportion visible from the top of Etna, the Peak of Teneriffe, or Mowna Roa (in Owyhee), which are about two miles in height, is about 1-4000th.

461. The determination of the spherical form of the Earth, made by such observations as these, corresponds with that which was made, even by the ancient astronomers, from observations upon celestial phenomena. For it was early noticed by them, that the position of the Pole-Star, and consequently the height which all the other stars attain in the sky, is liable to variation, when the observer changes his place on the Earth's surface. This alteration is most evident in the case of the Pole-Star, which appears to a person travelling southward to descend gradually; and which seems to ascend, when the traveller directs his course towards it. This change is the necessary result of the change in the direction of the horizon, which is produced by the curved surface of the Earth. Did the observer move along a flat surface, the plane* of his horizon carried out into the starry sphere would always meet it in the same line; but as his own position

---

* An imaginary flat surface, passing through the horizon, and spreading out in every direction.

on the sphere is changed, so is the direction of his horizon, and consequently the line in which the plane of that horizon will meet the starry sphere. Thus an observer at A (Fig. 145), would see the star *a* immediately above his head; the star *b* would be low down in the sky, and the star *d* would be invisible to him. But supposing that he changed his place to B, the star *b* is now above his head, the star *a* is low down on his horizon on one side, whilst the star *d* is seen just above it on the other. Again, he changes his place to D; the star *d* is then directly above his head, he loses sight altogether of *a*, and *b* is low down on his horizon on one side, whilst new stars come into view on the other.

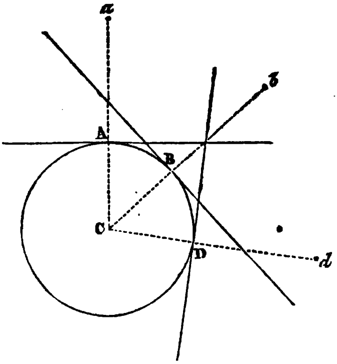


FIG. 145.

462. Now this change will take place whether he travel north, south, east, or west; but it becomes more evident in travelling in the northerly or southerly direction—and for this reason. It has been stated that the starry sphere appears to revolve round a fixed line or axis, which passes through the Pole-Star,—that star not undergoing any evident change in its position, during the whole daily revolution of the Heavens. Hence any change in *its* height above the horizon is more evident to us, than a change in any of the other stars, which are always varying their elevation in the sky. If the height of *any* of these be observed, however, when it crosses the meridian or southern line (where it attains its greatest elevation), it will be found to vary in precisely the same degree as that of the Pole-Star; but *they* will rise in the southern line whilst the Pole-Star descends in the northern. Thus, in the south of Europe, the brilliant constellation Orion, which with us never rises to any great height in the sky, passes completely overhead. The proportion of the whole starry sphere seen during its daily revolution, will thus vary in

different parts of the Earth's surface. The same is true of the Sun, when the alteration in his height, which takes place in the changing seasons, is allowed for. A person standing on the pole, and having the Pole-Star just above his head, will never see more than the northern half of the sphere; since the plane of his horizon will cut it at an equal distance between the two points round which it turns.

463. This may be made evident by a simple illustration. Hang up an orange or small globe by a string, in such a manner that it shall rotate round an axis passing through its centre. Then cut out of a sheet of paper a circular hole, just large enough to allow the orange to pass through, and hold this round the *equator* of the revolving globe,—that is, round that circle which is everywhere equally distant between its two poles, or the extremities of its axis. The paper will then represent the horizon of a person standing at either of the poles; and the portion above it will be that part of the sphere seen by an observer standing on the North Pole; whilst the portion beneath will be the part of the sphere seen by an observer at the South Pole. Now when the orange or globe is made to rotate, it will be seen that *the same* parts of the sphere are constantly above and below the horizon; and that there is no change in the height of any point upon it; so that an observer at the poles would always see the same stars, at the same heights in the heavens, and only changing their positions from east to west. The same would be the case in regard to the Sun, were it not that his height in the sky undergoes an alteration with the seasons. But when he is shining directly on the Earth's equator, he will be on the edge (as it were) of the polar horizon,—half above and half below; and will make a whole circuit in this manner.

464. On the other hand, let the position of the paper be so changed, that it shall still divide the surface into two equal halves, but that its plane shall pass through the axis of revolution, so as to touch on both sides the string or wire on which the globe is suspended. It will then represent the horizon of an observer on the Equator; being every-where equally distant from that spot on the orange, which rises the highest above it o

either side. Now the Pole-Star, which marks the northern end of the axis of the sphere, and the corresponding fixed point at the southern end of the axis (which is not marked by any visible star), are now on the horizon; and as the sphere revolves, *the whole* of it is seen to come progressively above the horizon, so that, in the diurnal revolution of the sphere, every star in it would be visible for 12 hours, if it were not obscured by the sun's light. Moreover, the Sun, when shining upon the Equator, instead of passing round the horizon, will describe an arch exactly over-head; but he will only be seen for twelve hours, instead of being visible, as at the Pole, during the whole twenty-four.*

465. On the other hand, the change in the apparent position of the stars, occasioned by travelling in an easterly or westerly direction, will not make any other difference than that which is being continually produced by a change of *time*. This will be evident on referring again to Fig. 145; for if we now suppose A B D to be three points on the earth's surface, of which A is east and D west of B, we perceive that a person travelling eastwards from B to A will perceive certain stars, which were previously beneath his eastern horizon, elevating themselves above it,—whilst others, which were previously near his western horizon, are seen to sink below it. But this very change would have taken place in a short time, if he had remained at B; so that, by journeying to A, he has merely anticipated them, by an amount of time that would suffice (in the diurnal revolution of the sphere) to carry the star *a* to *b*. On the other hand, if he travel westward to D, he loses sight of the eastern stars, whilst the western rise in the sky; and thus he delays, as it were, the rising of the former, and the setting of the latter. Precisely the same is the case in regard to the sun, which is seen to rise and set at A earlier than at B, and at B earlier than at D. Now where the sun and stars rise earlier and set earlier, they must

---

* This illustration is better given by the ordinary celestial or terrestrial globe, where the horizon is marked by a wooden circle; but the simple device here proposed will answer the same purpose to such as have not the use of these instruments.

also pass the middle of their course or their greatest elevation, at an earlier hour; and, as we reckon our time at each place by the moment when the sun is on the meridian or southern line, which we call *noon* or twelve o'clock, it follows that there will be a difference of time in different places, according to their easterly or westerly direction,—the sun coming to his meridian earlier in the east, and later in the west; so that the clocks at A will be faster than those at B; whilst those at D will be slower.

466. By observation of the celestial bodies, then, we can determine our position upon the globe of the earth; and we can also measure, not only the distance from one place to another, but also the whole diameter of the earth, and even the difference between the Polar and Equatorial diameters (§. 480). In order to understand the manner of doing this, it is necessary to explain what is meant by the division of a circle into degrees, &c. Every circle, whether large or small, is considered as divided into 360 parts called *degrees*. The *absolute* length of the degree varies, of course, with the size of the circle; thus in the part *dc* of the circle *a b c d*, there are just as many degrees as there are in the part C D of the circle A B C D, or in the part C′ D′ in the circle A′ B′ C′ D′; but C D is equal to one-third *c d*, and C′ D′ is equal to seven times *c d*. But they all form the same proportion of their respective circles; for the entire inner circle is one-third the length of the middle circle, and one-seventh as long as the outer one. Henc

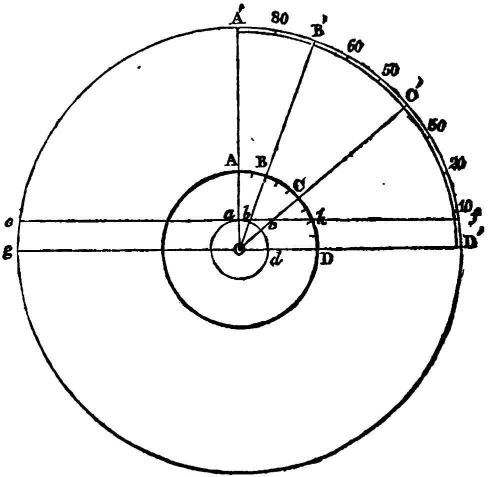


Fig. 146.

the angle between any two straight lines, as OC′ and OD′, contains the same number of degrees, whether those degrees are measured upon a large or a small circle; or, in other words, the line OC will cut off equal proportions of the several circles through which it is drawn. Thus, reckoning from D and D′, the portion cut off by the line OC′ is 40 degrees (40°); whilst that cut off by OB′ is 70°, and that by OA′ is 90°; and this is the same, whether measured upon the larger or the smaller circles. The degree is subdivided into 60 parts, which are termed *minutes;* and each of these is again divided into 60 parts which are called *seconds.* It is necessary to bear continually in mind the difference between minutes and seconds, as employed to express the division of the circle, and the division of time.

467. It is further necessary to explain the difference between the *visible* horizon and the *astronomical* horizon. The former has been explained to be the boundary of the prospect seen from any part of the earth's surface; and it might be supposed that, in order to ascertain the amount of the starry sphere which would be seen above this, nothing more would be necessary than to carry out a plane passing through this small boundary circle, until it should meet that sphere. And this is really the case; but it requires a little explanation to show, that a complete *half* of the vault of heaven is seen from any point of the earth's surface. For let the inner circle in Fig. 146 represent the earth; the boundary of the horizon, to a person at *a* is determined by the line *e f;* and this line does not cut off by any means half of the two outer circles, but a portion of each, which is less (on either side) than the whole, by a distance almost exactly equal to the radius O *a* of the earth. It is seen, however, that the *proportion* thus cut off from the larger half-circle is very much less than that which the smaller one loses, being only about 8°, whilst the latter is 22°.

468. Now, if we were to draw a circle at double the distance of A′ B′ C′ D′, the proportion of it that would be cut off by *e f* prolonged would be still less; and it would continually diminish, with the increase in the dimensions of the circle; so that the horizon of a person standing at *a* would come to be almost exactly

the same as if it were bounded by the line *g* D drawn through the centre of the earth, and parallel to *e f*. For the more distant the outer circle, the more insignificant do the small parts of it, *e g* and *f* D, come to be in proportion to the rest; and as a matter of fact, the nearest of the fixed stars is at a distance from the earth so immensely exceeding the radius O *a* of the earth, that the *cutting* off a ring of 4000 miles broad (as it were) from the lower edge of the hemisphere, does not make any sensible difference in its completeness; and the *astronomical* horizon at any place is *virtually* the same (in regard to the fixed stars at least) as if it were bounded, not by the line *e f*, but by the line *g* D drawn parallel to it, through the centre of the earth; and there are many reasons which make it convenient thus to determine it. In regard to the sun and planets, however, which seem to move in circles smaller than those of the fixed stars, the visible and astronomical horizons have a perceptible difference; and this is still further the case with regard to the moon, on account of her nearer proximity to the earth, which makes its radius (4000 miles) of some consequence in proportion to the circle in which she moves; so that her visible path is actually less than it would be if viewed from the earth's centre, by that quantity cut off from each extremity of it.

469. If, on the other hand, the observer be at any considerable height above the earth's surface, his horizon is extended to rather more than a hemisphere; so that to a person on the top of a hill, the sun does not set so early as it does to an observer on the level surface. The late celebrated aëronaut, Mr. Sadler, having once ascended in a balloon from Dublin, at about 2 o'clock in the afternoon, was wafted across the Channel, and approached the British coast as the sun was setting. His balloon was sinking too fast, however; so that he would have descended in the sea. To avoid this, he threw out his ballast, and suddenly sprung upwards to a great height. His horizon being thus extended to a larger portion of the sphere, the sun again came in sight above it; and he thus witnessed what might be termed a *western sunrise.* He subsequently descended in Wales, and thus witnessed a second sunset on the same evening.

470. In all measurements of the place of the heavenly bodies, it is necessary to make an allowance for the influence of our atmosphere in *refracting*, or bending from their regular straight course, the rays of light which proceed from them to us. This refraction does not take place (for reasons which will be explained in the Treatise on Optics) when the rays come from a body in the *zenith*,—that is, in the point of the starry sphere which is just over our heads, and which is therefore equally distant from the horizon on every side; and hence a body which occupies this spot is seen in its actual place. On the other hand, it very much changes the apparent place of a body seen in the horizon, making it seem higher than it really is; and the rays of all the heavenly bodies, which are situated between the zenith and the horizon, are more or less affected by it,—the more, when they are low down in the sky,—the less, as they are more elevated. Hence, the apparent descent of the sun, moon, and stars, below the horizon, is retarded; that is, these bodies are seen by us above the horizon, when a straight line drawn from our eyes through the visible horizon would find them below it. So much is this the case, that, when we see the lower edge of the sun or moon just resting (as it were) upon the horizon, the whole disk is really below it. Hence the duration of night and darkness is very perceptibly shortened by this influence. It would produce great errors in all calculations made from astronomical observations, if its amount were not exactly known and allowed for; but as it has been very correctly ascertained, for every degree of elevation which the body may have in the sky, there is no difficulty in making the necessary correction, by subtracting from the observed height a certain number of minutes and seconds, which is stated in the tables drawn up for the purpose.

471. We are now prepared to understand the general principles, upon which, by observation of the heavenly bodies, the relative places and distances of various spots upon the earth's surface may be exactly ascertained. It will be remembered that, to an observer at the north pole, the pole-star will appear in the zenith; whilst, by an observer at the equator, it is seen in the horizon. In travelling southwards from the pole, therefore, to ~~p~~art of the equator, the pole-star will appear gradually to

descend in the sky. The height of the pole-star above the horizon, therefore, will correspond, for every place, to its distance from the equator. Now the whole distance from the zenith to any point of the horizon being a quarter of the entire circle of the starry sphere, or 90°,—and the distance of the pole from the equator being a quarter of the entire circle of the earth, and also 90°,—it follows that the number of degrees of elevation which the pole-star has above the horizon corresponds with the number of degrees which the particular spot, where the measurement is taken, is distant from the earth's equator. Thus in Fig. 146, supposing *a* to be one of the poles of the earth, and *d* a point on its equator, whilst *b* and *c* are two intermediate points on its surface, the pole-star will be seen from *a* in the zenith, or at 90° from the horizon, indicating that *a* is at 90° from the equator;—at *d* it will be seen *on* the horizon, or at 0°, indicating that the spot is at *no* distance from the earth's equator, or is *on* it; at *b* it will be seen at 70° above the horizon, and will thus indicate that the point *b* is at 70° from the equator;—whilst at *c*, being seen at 40° above the horizon, it will indicate that the distance of *c* from the equator is 40°.

472. A corresponding change will take place in the apparent positions of all the other heavenly bodies which we see on the *northern* side of us; but the contrary change will occur in the height of those on the *southern* side; for these will rise higher and higher in the sky as we travel from north to south. Thus, when the sun shines directly on the equator (which happens twice in every year,—see Chap. XX.), it will be seen by an observer there at the zenith, whilst to a person at either of the poles it will appear in the horizon. Hence, as the observer travels *northwards*, the sun will appear to descend; and he will consequently measure his distance from the equator, not by the sun's elevation above the horizon, but by its distance from the zenith. Thus to an observer at *c*, the sun will appear at noon (the time of his highest elevation), at 40° from the zenith,—or in other words, at 50° above the horizon;—whilst by an observer at *b*, it will be seen at 70° from the zenith, or at only 20° above the horizon. By ascertaining the sun's place at noon, therefor

we can determine the distance of the place from the equator, which is termed its *latitude*, as well as by the observation of the height of the pole-star; and this is, on many accounts, the better plan to pursue.

472*. It is only on two days in the year, however, that the sun actually shines on the equator; for at all other times, its rays fall vertically upon a point either above or below it. Now supposing that it should be shining upon a point 20° above *d*, then it will be seen by observers at *c* and *b*, 20° higher in the sky than it would appear when shining on the equator; and to an observer at *a*, who previously saw the sun in the horizon, it will now appear 20° above it. This does not alter the real latitude of the place, however; and allowance must therefore be made, in calculating the latitude from the height of the sun, for this change in his position. Thus, in order to ascertain the latitude of the point *c*, we first ascertain the distance of the sun from the zenith at noon, which is now 20°; this gives us the distance of *c* from the point on which the sun is shining vertically; but as that point is itself 20° from the equator, we must add this 20° to the other, in order to express the distance of *c* from the equator, or its latitude. On the other hand, we will suppose that the sun is shining on a point 20° *below* the equator; it will then be altogether invisible at the *north* pole, and will appear to a person at the south pole to be 20° above the horizon; whilst at *b* and *c* it will appear to be 20° lower down in the sky than when it was shining on the equator, so that it will be on the horizon at *b*, and at an elevation of only 20° at *c*. Hence, as the *zenith-distance* of the sun, at either of these points, gives us the number of degrees which it is distant from the point whereon the sun is shining vertically, and this point is 20° south of the equator, we must *subtract* 20° from the observed zenith-distance, to find the true latitude of the place, or its distance from the equator.

473. The latitude of any place may thus be ascertained with the most perfect exactness, provided that we are precisely informed of the sun's *declination*,—that is, of the distance of the point on which the sun is shining, from the equator,—for each particular day. During the six months between the 20th of March

and the 23rd of September, the sun is vertical on some point *north* of the equator; its declination commencing with the 21st of March, goes on increasing until the 22nd of June, when it arrives at its highest amount, the sun being then vertical on a point 23½° (nearly) north of the equator. It then diminishes as gradually, until, on the 23rd of September, the sun again becomes vertical on the equator. The southern declination then begins, and reaches the same limit with the northern on the 21st of December; after which it begins to decrease, until the sun again becomes vertical on the equator on the 21st of March. Now the amount of declination may be calculated with great exactness, for each day in the year; and is specified in tables constructed for the purpose. Hence in determining the latitude of any place on land or at sea, nothing more is necessary than to take the sun's altitude at noon, by means of the instrument termed the quadrant, which will be immediately described;—this altitude is first corrected by subtracting the allowance which it is requisite to make for refraction (§. 470); it is then subtracted from 90°, which gives the sun's zenith distance; and this is corrected by *adding* the sun's declination for the day, if it be *north*, and *subtracting* it, if it be *south*. The result is the latitude of the place.

474. The determination of the altitude of the sun is effected by instruments of measurement, which are termed *quadrants*. The principle is the same in all, and the difference consists in the mode of applying it. Again referring to Fig. 146, let us suppose O *a b c d* to be a fourth part of a small circle of wood or pasteboard, divided into degrees and portions of degrees; and C′ to be the place of the body whose altitude is to be measured. In order to effect this, the lower edge O *d* of this quarter-circle must be directed to D, the horizon; the eye then observes from O the position of the sun or star at C′, and the line in which it is seen is marked on the divided edge of the quadrant. From the principles already stated respecting the division of the circle (§. 466), it is evident that the number of degrees in the arc *c a* cut off by the line O *c*, upon the circle *a b c d*, is precisely equivalent to the number in the arc C′ D′, cut off by the same line pr

onged, from the circle A′B′C′D′; and thus the one is determined by the other. A large quadrant of this kind is employed in fixed observatories; but it is necessary to devise some other instrument of a portable kind, for the measurement of the altitudes of the heavenly bodies by the voyager or traveller.

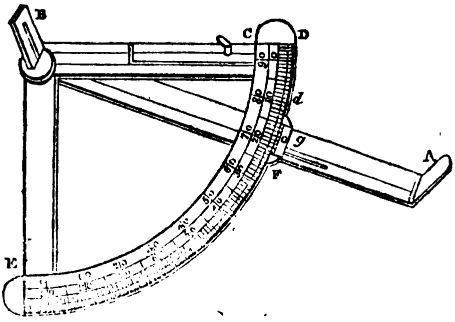


Fig. 147.

475. The accompanying figure represents a quadrant adapted for this purpose. It consists of a frame BCDE, carrying the quarter-circle DE, which is divided into 90°; and of a moveable bar, AB, which turns on a pin at B that passes through the centre of the circle. At A and B are two *sights*, that is, upright pieces of brass, with a narrow slit, through which the eye of the observer looks at the horizon. At C is another upright piece of brass, termed the shade-vane; and the purpose of it is to cast a shadow, when turned towards the sun. In using this quadrant, the observer lays hold of the bar AB, and looks steadily through the sights A and B, at the line of the horizon; he then makes the quadrant turn upon the centre B, so as gradually to raise the shade-vane C, until the edge of the shadow thrown by it comes to correspond with the slit in the horizon-vane B. At this time, the line drawn through AB is directed to the horizon; whilst that drawn through B and C is directed towards the sun: the scale shows the angle between them, which is, of course, the sun's altitude. This instrument, however, is now but little used; the one which is termed Hadley's quadrant (after the name of the inventor) being preferred to it. In the latter, the sun's image falls upon a mirror which is fixed upon the bar AB; and this is turned, until his disk is

reflected to the eye, so as to coincide with the horizon. Now by a very simple law of optics, the reflected image will move a whole degree for every half degree that the mirror is turned; consequently half degrees on the scale measure whole degrees of the sun's elevation. The instrument employed for the simple measurement of the sun's altitude, therefore, need not be a quadrant, since a scale of 45°, or an eighth part of the circle, is sufficient to measure 90° in the heavens. Accordingly, *octants* (as they should properly be called, rather than *quadrants*) are sufficient for this purpose; but as they cannot measure any greater distance, they are now generally put aside for the *sextant*, an instrument constructed upon the same plan, which has a scale of 60° or one-sixth of the whole circle, and can therefore measure 120°,—a range which is necessary for taking distances between the sun and moon, or between the moon and stars, by which means the *longitude* is determined, as will be presently explained.

476. Now, it is by measurement of the actual distance between two points on the earth's surface, whose distance in degrees (that is, the proportion of their distance to the whole circumference of the earth,) is ascertained by astronomical observation, that we are enabled to determine the real dimensions of our globe. It is obvious that, as the poles are equally distant from every part of the equator, it is of no consequence along which of the circles that we may draw through the poles, crossing the equator (which are termed meridians), we make our measurement; since the degrees will have the same value or actual length in all. We shall presently find, however, that the length of the degree is different according as it is measured near the pole or the equator on any meridian; but taking its average amount at 69½ miles, which is very near the truth, we determine the whole circumference of the earth by simply multiplying this by 360, which gives as the product 25,020 miles. Supposing the earth to be a perfect sphere, its diameter might be readily calculated from its circumference, and would be found on this estimate to be about 7960 miles. But this is not the case; for, as already mentioned, the earth is an oblate spheroid, or a sphere flattened at the poles like an orange; which form has

been given to it by the operation of the centrifugal force, resulting from its movement on its axis, when its mass was in a soft condition (§§. 95, 215). Its real form and dimensions are ascertained by the comparison of the length of the degree in different parts of a meridian.

477. In making such measurements, it is of course desirable that as level a country as possible should be selected; and that the line measured should be in the exact direction of a meridian. But this is not absolutely necessary; for by the ordinary process of surveying, the distance between any two marked points,—as, for instance, a church-spire and a tower on a distant hill,—may be exactly determined in spite of intervening obstacles; and a similar process being carried on over a large extent of country, the distance, in a straight line, between any two points may be precisely ascertained, although the line of measurement has been continually varied in its direction, according to convenience. With such accuracy are these processes now conducted, that an error of 10 feet in the measurement of a degree would be regarded as a considerable one; and the error in fixing the distance of the two extreme points by astronomical observation can scarcely exceed (if proper care be employed) a single second. These errors may tend to correct each other; but supposing them both to tend the same way, so as to give a result greater or less than the truth, the whole amount of difference between the true diameter of the earth and the estimate thus formed, would not exceed about the third part of a mile; and this would be large allowance. It is not requisite to measure an *exact* degree; since the proportion of the part measured to the whole circumference is as readily determined, whether it be one, two, three, degrees, or any uneven quantity. The longer the portion measured, the less will be the probable error of the calculation from it. Thus, when an arc of 12½ degrees was measured by the French government, or the arc of nearly 16 degrees was measured in India by the British, the probable error would not be much more in amount, than that which would be incurred in measuring a single degree; and would be thus reduced, for each degree, to 1 part in 12½ in the former case, and 1 part in 16 in the latter.

478. Now the length of a degree of latitude,—that is, the measured distance between two points which are found by astronomical observation to be a degree apart from one another,—has been ascertained by measurement in Peru, where the lower end of the arc joined the equator, to be 362,808 feet. In India, at 16° from the equator, it is 363,044 feet, or 236 feet more. At the Cape of Good Hope, at 33° from the equator, it is 363,713 feet, or 905 feet more than in Peru. At Rome, in latitude 43°, it is 364,262 feet, or 1,454 feet more than at the equator. In England, in latitude 52½°, it is 364,971 feet, or 2,163 feet more than at the equator. And in Lapland, in latitude 66⅓°, it is 365,782 feet, being 2,974 feet, or nearly three-fifths of a mile longer than on the equator. It is thus seen, that the length of the degree increases with the latitude; and if a degree were measured still nearer the poles, the increase would be found to be much greater.

479. The mode in which this difference is produced by the peculiar form of the earth, may be explained without much difficulty. It has been shown, that the alteration in the horizon, and therefore in the height of the sun, of the pole-star, or of any other celestial luminary, above it, is due to the curvature of the earth's surface, producing a change in the direction of the observer's view. No such alteration would take place, if he travelled for any distance along a perfectly plane or level surface. Now, from the description of the form of the earth which has been already given,—that of a sphere flattened at the poles like an orange,—it is evident that its surface more nearly approaches to a level in the polar regions, than if the earth were a perfect sphere; whilst it is more curved in the equatorial region. Hence, an observer would have to travel further in the polar regions, to produce any given change in his astronomical horizon, and consequently, in the height of the stars, &c. above it; in other words, the length of the degree would be greater. But, at the equatorial regions, the curvature is more rapid, and the horizon is therefore altered much more by the same change of place; so that the stars will be raised or lowered a degree in the

sky, by a less alteration in the position of the observer;—in other words, the degree, as measured on the earth's surface, will be shorter.

480. By calculations founded on these measurements, it is found that the length of that diameter of the earth which joins the poles is about 7899 miles; whilst the length of any diameter joining two opposite points of the equator is 7925½ miles; so that the difference of the two diameters is 26½ miles. This estimate corresponds exactly with that which has been formed by comparison of the length of the seconds' pendulum in different places (§. 277).

481. When we have ascertained the *latitude* of a place, we have done something to determine its position on the earth's surface; but not nearly enough. We have only found out that it is at a certain number of degrees from the equator; and every point in a circle, drawn parallel to the equator, and at that number of degrees from it, will have the same latitude. Hence we not unfrequently speak of two or more places, whose climates we are comparing, as being under the *same parallel of latitude*; meaning that their latitude is the same, or that they are at the same distance from the equator. Now if we can specify the point of that circle at which the place of observation is, we determine its position on the globe; and it is described by the number of degrees which it may be east or west of a certain line drawn from the pole to the equator, and termed the *meridian* of any place through which it passes. Now the astronomers of all countries have agreed to make the equator the standard from which they reckon their latitude; but they have not made a similar agreement respecting the *meridian* from which they shall measure their eastward or westward distance, which is called their *longitude*. Thus British astronomers and navigators reckon from the meridian of Greenwich, as do in general those of the United States; but in France the meridian of Paris is regarded as the standard; whilst the Prussians reckon from that of Berlin; and the Germans from that of the island of Ferro, one of the Azores. The determination of the distance eastward or westward from the standard meridian,—or, in other words, of

the longitude,—is not effected with nearly the same facility as the determination of the latitude; for although the horizon, and the apparent places of the heavenly bodies, are as much altered by travelling eastwards or westwards, as they are by travelling northwards or southwards, yet they are only changed in the same manner as they would be by the simple lapse of a few minutes or hours, supposing the observer to remain at rest (§. 465); and therefore in all calculations made from observations of this kind, to ascertain the longitude, the knowledge of the *time* comes to be an essential element.

482. The general principle on which these calculations are made, is easily explained; it is only in applying it to practice, that any difficulty exists. The *time* of any place is determined by the sun's passage across the meridian, which in our northern hemisphere is the southern point; whilst in the southern hemisphere it is the northern point: at this point of his circuit, which is midway between the points of his rising and setting, he attains his greatest height in the sky. The moment when the centre of the sun's disc is on this line, is the hour of noon, or twelve o'clock; and the interval between one noon and another we divide into twenty-four hours. Now as the hour of noon is determined by the sun, all the other hours of the twenty-four, dating (as it were) from this, are also fixed by it. As the sun occupies twenty-four hours to make his whole circuit, and travels from east to west, it is obvious that he will make his first appearance, and will cross the meridian, an hour earlier at a place one-twenty-fourth part of the whole circumference, or 15°, to the east of us, than he does with ourselves; and therefore their whole time will be an hour *before* ours. On the other hand, he makes his first appearance to us, and crosses our meridian, an hour earlier than he does at a place 15° to the westward of us; and hence their time is an hour behind ours. Hence for every degree of longitude there is a difference of four minutes of time; the time being earlier when we go towards the east, and later when we journey to the west. A traveller leaving London and travelling westwards to Bristol, finds his watch, which was set correctly by London time, about 11 minutes too *fast* by that of

Bristol, their difference of longitude being nearly 3°. But, on the other hand, a traveller from Penzance, coming eastwards to Bristol, would find his watch 11 minutes too *slow* by Bristol time; Penzance being nearly 3° west of Bristol.

483. The time of any place is most correctly determined by means of the *Transit-Instrument;* by which the exact moment can be observed, when the sun, or any of the fixed stars, crosses the meridian. It consists of a telescope, supported in such a manner, that it can only move up and down in the plane of the meridian, having no horizontal movement whatever; and thus, at whatever height the body may be, whose *transit*, or passage across the meridian, is to be observed, the time when it does so may be known, by simply directing the telescope to the point at which we know that it ought to cross, and waiting until it shows itself exactly in the centre of the telescope. The general construction of the instrument is shown in the adjoining figure. The telescope, *e*, is firmly attached to a horizontal axis, *d*, made in the form of two cones, united in the middle, where it has to support the greatest pressure. The ends of this axis rest in the angle formed by two pieces shaped like a Y, of which one is supported on each side by the frame-work *b*, *c*; and this frame-work is attached to the circle *a*, through which pass the screws that fix the instrument to the place selected for it. When once fixed in such a manner that the telescope is always directed to some point in the meridian line, it must not

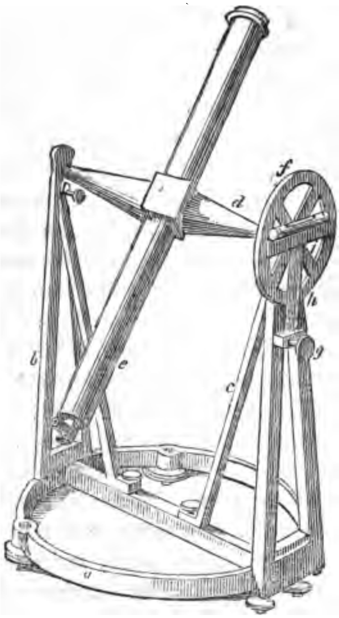


FIG. 148.
TRANSIT INSTRUMENT.

be moved. It is customary to set up a mark at some distance, by which it can be seen if the telescope is exactly in its place. One end of the axis carries a graduated circle, *f*, by which the telescope may be made to point exactly to the desired inclination on the meridian line.

484. The exact centre of the telescope is marked by a very fine thread, passing from top to bottom of the circular aperture through which we look; and there are also one, two, or more threads on each side of the central one, the use of which will presently appear. In making an observation of a transit, the observer adjusts the telescope to that point of the meridian at which he knows that the sun or a certain star will cross it; and being aware of almost the exact moment when it is to be expected, he takes his station at the telescope, and watches until it makes its appearance. An assistant then calls out the exact time by the clock, and goes on counting the seconds, until the observer sees the star or the edge of the sun touching the first wire; when he notes the exact time at which this happened. He then looks out for its contact with the second wire, and notes the time as before. The third wire will be the central one, if the instrument have five wires; and the observation of the passage of a star across this might seem to give all that was required. But it is very desirable not to trust to a single observation alone; and the multiplication of the wires is intended to permit a larger number of observations, so that their separate errors may check each other. After the star has passed the central wire, the observations are still carried on upon the times of its correspondence with the other two; and these times are accurately set down. An average of all the five observations is then taken in the following manner. The times of the 1st and 5th, and of the 2nd and 4th, are severally added together and their sums divided by 2; if the observations have been accurate, the result will be the same from each, and will correspond with that of the single observation upon the central wire. For the instrument is so constructed, that the 1st and 5th wires are at equal distances on the two sides of the central one; and the 2nd and 4th at half that distance.

485. Thus, supposing the distance of the wires to be such, that the sun, or a star, occupies 30 seconds in passing from each to the next, its contact with the 1st wire will take place a minute earlier than its arrival at the 3rd or central wire; and its contact with the 2nd wire will be 30 seconds earlier. On the other hand, its contact with the 4th wire will be 30 seconds later than its passage across the central wire; and its contact with the 5th wire will be a minute later. Thus supposing that the time when a star actually crosses the meridian is 35 minutes past 10 o'clock, the following will be the times when it will pass the several wires:—

	h.	m.	sec.		h.	m.	sec.		h.	m.	sec.		h.	m.	sec.		h.	m.	sec.
I.	10	34	0	II.	10	34	30	III.	10	35	0	IV.	10	35	30	V.	10	36	0

It is evident that, by adding together I and V, and also II and IV, and halving each sum, we shall obtain as the result 10 h. 35 min.; which corresponds exactly with the observation made upon the central wire. If this correspondence did not take place, however, there would be a slight error in one or more of the observations; and if it could not be found which was the faulty one, the error would be probably reduced by taking the mean or average of all of them. There is another advantage resulting from the power of thus making several distinct observations. It not unfrequently happens, especially in such a variable climate as ours, that the sun or star cannot be distinctly seen during the whole time that it is crossing the field of the telescope; and may, perhaps, be obscured just when it would be touching the central wire. Hence this observation might be altogether lost, if it were not for the aid gained from the rest. For if we know the time when the luminary touched the 1st and 2nd wires, and know that it would require two intervals of 30 seconds each, to pass on to the 3rd, we can calculate exactly the time when the third would be reached, even though we are prevented from seeing the contact. Thus we only lose one or two out of five observations; instead of losing our observation altogether. Of course, the observation of even one or two wires will be useful, when the rest cannot be seen; but the greater the number of contacts observed, the less chance will there be of error.

486. The mode in which such observations are employed, for the regulation of clocks and chronometers, may be very easily understood. If the tables calculated for the purpose give 5 minutes past 11 as the hour when a particular star crosses the meridian, and our clock stands at 6½ minutes after 11, at the moment when the star is seen on the central wire, we know that the clock is a minute and a half too fast. In the case of the sun, there would be equal or greater simplicity, if the earth moved round him at the same rate in every part of its orbit; for the clock ought then to point exactly to 12 o'clock each day, when his disc crosses the central wire of the transit instrument. But this, in consequence of the varying rate of the earth's motion, is not the case (§. 655); for, supposing the clock to keep accurate time, the sun would sometimes cross at a few minutes before 12, and sometimes at a few minutes after. As the amount of this difference, which is termed the Equation of time, is accurately known for every day in the year, it is easy to correct the clock from the sun's passage across the meridian, by adding or subtracting the number of minutes and seconds, that the clock ought to be faster or slower than the sun. Thus, if the sun pass the meridian at 3½ minutes before 12, by my clock, and I find in the Equation table that the sun is on that day 2 minutes faster than the clock, I know that the clock is 1½ minute too slow.

487. It is a remarkable circumstance, which has now been noticed in several instances,—that some persons see the passage of a star, or make any other similar observation, a considerable part of a second earlier than others. This singularity was first noticed by Dr. Maskelyne, who was Astronomer Royal in the latter part of the last century; for he found that his observations were constantly about 7-10ths of a second before those of his assistant. A still larger difference exists between two celebrated astronomers of the present day. It is not easily to be accounted for, since it is found to continue when the observers exchange places, and to be quite independent, therefore, of their instru-

ments. It might, however, be a cause of serious error in the comparison of longitudes, by means of transit observations; for if the observer at one place witness the transit at the exact time, and the observer at the other place do not see the transit until nearly a second after it has occurred, the distance of the former place from the latter will be wrongly estimated by that amount. The error may be prevented, by employing the same person to make the observations at both places; or by allowing for the tardiness of the observer, provided the exact amount of it can be ascertained.

488. Now, when the *exact time* at each of two places is known, the next step in the determination of the longitude,—that is, the distance of their two meridians, is to *compare* their times. Now, simple as this process appears, it is the one in which the greatest difficulty exists, when great accuracy is required. Nothing more would seem to be necessary, than to carry to one place a chronometer set to the time of the other, and to note the difference between the two; from which the difference of longitude may be easily calculated. Thus, suppose that a chronometer set to the time of one place, A, be carried to another place, B; and that A's time is found to be 16 minutes *faster* than B's; then, upon the principle already mentioned (§. 482), we know that A's longitude is (16 ÷ 4) 4 degrees *east* of B. On the other hand, suppose that A's time were found to be 22 minutes *slower* than B's, we should then know that A is (22 ÷ 4) 5½ degrees *west* of B. Nothing more than this would be requisite, if we could rely on the minute accuracy of the chronometers employed; and in fact, by using several time-keepers, and comparing the results of numerous observations, a very exact determination has been made of the difference in longitude of several places easily reached, from one another.

489. A second mode of comparing the times of two places, is to note the exact instant when the same phenomenon is seen at each. This phenomenon may be either terrestrial,—that is, an occurrence on the earth, such as the letting-off of a rocket;—or it may be celestial. The former method is of course restricted to short distances; but by establishing a chain of points of obser-

vation, and thus ascertaining the difference in longitude of each two, the relative longitudes of the extreme stations may be ascertained, by adding all these differences together. For instance, suppose that two observers on the watch at A and B, saw the firing of the rocket, the one at 20 min. 40 sec., and the other at 21 min. 20 sec., after 10 o'clock at night. The time at A is, therefore, 20 seconds earlier than at B; and as 4 minutes, or 240 seconds, are equivalent to a degree of longitude, the difference of longitude will be (240 ÷ 20) one-twelfth of a degree, or 5 minutes. Supposing that a rocket, sent up between B and the next station C, was seen at the former at 15 min. 20 sec. after 11 o'clock; and at the latter at 15 min. 44 sec.;—the difference of time between the two places is, therefore, 24 seconds, which is equivalent to (240 ÷ 24) one-tenth of a degree, or 6 minutes. The whole difference of longitude between A and C is therefore 11 minutes; and as A's time is earlier than C's, it is to the east of it. In this manner, the difference of longitude between the Observatories of Greenwich and Paris has been very accurately determined, notwithstanding the interruption of the Channel.

490. For the determination of the respective longitudes of distant places, however, it is more convenient to observe such celestial phenomena as are seen at the same moment from every part of the earth where they are visible. Such are the eclipses of the satellites or moons of the planet Jupiter; and the eclipses of our own moon. The latter afforded, previously to the invention of the telescope, the only astronomical means by which the longitude of distant places could be determined; but it is now completely put aside for other methods, which have the merit of greater accuracy, as well as of being more frequently available,—an eclipse of the moon being a comparatively rare occurrence. The eclipses of Jupiter's satellites were for a long time the chief phenomena by which the determination of longitude was accomplished. (§. 618.) The time at which these eclipses take place,—that is, when each moon is lost by passing into the shadow of Jupiter, or *immerges*, as also when it passes out of it, or *emerges* and becomes visible again,—can be precisely calculated before-

hand, and is set down by the time at Greenwich, in the Nautical Almanac. Now, a person observing one of these eclipses, and finding that he sees it 2 hours and 40 minutes earlier by *his* time, than it would be seen at Greenwich, becomes thus aware that his longitude is east of that of Greenwich by 40°; since the difference of time is 160 minutes, and every 4 minutes of time are equivalent to one degree of longitude.

491. These eclipses occur so frequently, that they afford the required means of readily ascertaining the longitude of any fixed station, where a telescope can be erected to observe them. But at sea they cannot be watched with sufficient accuracy; and it is necessary, therefore, to devise some other means of ascertaining the time at Greenwich. The simplest and most available of these means, consists in measuring the angular distance between the moon, and either the sun, or the more remarkable of the fixed stars; which distance, from the rapidity of the moon's revolution, is continually changing. Now, in the Nautical Almanac, a series of these distances is set down beforehand by calculation, for every three hours of Greenwich time; and thus an observer, measuring some of these distances with his sextant (§. 475), and looking for the corresponding distances in the columns of the Nautical Almanac (after making certain necessary allowances and corrections) finds out what would have been the time at Greenwich when his observation was made; and thus is enabled to compare that time with his own, precisely as if it were possible for him to see a rocket which it had been agreed to send up from Greenwich at that particular moment, or as if (to use an apt simile of Sir J. Herschel's) there were a clock-face and hands, keeping Greenwich time, set up in the heavens, so as to be everywhere visible.

492. Having ascertained the time at Greenwich, then, by any such observations, nothing more is necessary to the navigator, in order to determine his longitude, than to compare it with the time of the place where he then is. This he cannot find out by a transit instrument, since a transit instrument can only be used in a fixed observatory; but there are methods of ascertaining it, by measuring the elevation of the sun or of the stars,

before and after they have passed the meridian. If he have a watch, therefore, which will keep time well from one day to another, and is able to take observations for Greenwich time by the moon's distance, (which are termed *lunar* observations, or in common language *lunars*,) as often as he desires, correcting his watch each day by the sun or stars, as he changes his place on the earth, he can determine his longitude with sufficient accuracy for the purposes of navigation. But it will very often happen that for many days, sometimes even for weeks together, he is not able to obtain satisfactory lunar observations; and that he is deprived of this means of comparing his own time with that of Greenwich. It is under such circumstances, therefore, that the chronometer becomes of such essential service to him; for by its means he carries Greenwich time along with him, and can thus compare it, at any period, with the time of the spot on which he may be, as ascertained by observation of the sun or stars. If the chronometer can be relied on, therefore, the determination of the longitude is a very easy matter,—that is, when the time of the place can be ascertained; and it is seldom that an observation of the sun, or of some of the stars, cannot be taken at least once or twice in the twenty-four hours. But it must be remembered that, as even the best chronometers are liable to change their rates from some obscure causes, no reliance can justly be placed on a single time-keeper, as it may lead to considerable unsuspected errors. Even where two chronometers are compared, there is only greater certainty so long as they agree tolerably well; for if there be any considerable difference, it will be doubtful which chronometer is right. If three or more be compared, however, the faulty one will be almost certainly detected.

493. In the practice of navigation it is customary to rely chiefly upon chronometers for the determination of the longitude; but to *check* these, at intervals of a few days, by lunar observations; and this is especially necessary when the land is being approached, as any considerable error in the chronometers will then occasion great danger. Many ships traverse the Atlantic, however, without either chronometers or lunars; their owners

not being willing to incur the expense of chronometers, and their captains not being sufficiently instructed to make the necessary calculations from lunars. Their knowledge of their place depends, therefore, upon what is termed their *reckoning*;—that is, upon their estimate of the number of miles they have sailed (which is noted down every hour), and the course they have steered. This estimate is *checked* by the observations for latitude, if the course have been either directly north and south, or oblique. But if the ship have been sailing due east or west, the latitude remains the same, and there is no check upon the reckoning. It is often kept, however, by a practised navigator, with remarkable precision, when his course has been tolerably straight; but if he have been driven out of his course by storms, or drifted by currents, he is liable to form a very wrong estimate of his position.

494. The length of the degree of longitude varies with the latitude in which it is measured. This will become obvious on a little consideration. For at the equator, the degree will be 1-360th part of the *whole circumference* of the earth, and is therefore the same with the average of a degree of latitude, or about 69½ miles. The meridians approach nearer and nearer to each other, as they are traced from the equator to the pole, whilst the interval between them in degrees remains the same; hence the length of the degree decreases with the increase of latitude, since it is the 360th part of a smaller circle; and *at* the pole, all difference of longitude vanishes, since the meridians all meet there in a point. The decrease is more rapid near the poles, than it is near the equator.

495. It must be remembered, in regard to all the allusions which have been made to "Greenwich time," that this is selected as the standard of comparison, for the sake of convenience only. This is the site of the Royal Observatory; and the Nautical Almanac, which is published three or four years in advance, for the convenience of ships about to proceed on long voyages, contains tables of the celestial phenomena calculated for the time at which they will be seen there; by which the observer's distance east or west of Greenwich may be determined.

But other nations have similar tables calculated for their own observatories; and their longitude is estimated, therefore, by their own standard. The longitude of the observatory of Paris is 2° 20′ 24″ east of that of Greenwich.

Diurnal Rotation of the Earth.

496. So far as respects the *general* apparent movement of the sun, moon, and starry sphere, once round the earth in every 24 hours, it may be easily shown that it may be accounted for in two ways,—either by supposing that this movement really takes place, the earth remaining fixed in the centre of revolution,—or that the heavenly bodies are fixed, whilst the earth revolves in the contrary direction, round an axis which points to the Pole-Star. The former idea is that which naturally occurred to the ancient philosophers; who regarded the sun, moon, and stars as placed in the sky merely for the benefit of man; and who considered the earth as the most important body in the system, without dependence upon any others, but itself the immoveable centre round which they turned. The evidence of the senses appeared not only to sanction, but to require this explanation; and yet, as we shall presently see, it must now be unhesitatingly discarded. The second supposition appears to have been entertained by Pythagoras, who lived about five centuries before the Christian era; but it was not generally known to the world until the sixteenth century, when it was brought forwards by Copernicus, a Polish ecclesiastic, who ventured to disturb the rest in which mankind had slumbered for two thousand years, by proclaiming that it is not the starry sphere, but the earth—fixed and stable as it seems—which really revolves. The reasons by which he was led to this conclusion will gradually unfold themselves as we proceed; at present we shall inquire how it is capable of being reconciled with our own feelings.

497. Every one who has been in rapid motion, under such circumstances that he was not aware of it, well knows that, on looking at any near objects, *they* appear to be moving away from him, whilst he is at rest. The kind of motion which we experience in a carriage travelling along a smooth railway, is a

very good instance of this deception. After we have been for a short time accustomed to it, we are not conscious of it by anything in our own feelings; but if we look at the sides of the road along which we are travelling, we see them flying, as it were, rapidly backwards. We *know*, however, that *they* must be fixed; and therefore we *infer* that *we* are moving rapidly forwards. When the train in which we are is moving slowly forwards, and passes another train at rest, the illusion is more complete; for we may suppose the other train to be very probably moving in a direction contrary to our own; and thus we transfer (as it were) our own motion to it. Many other examples of the same fact are more familiar, though less perfect; such as the apparent motion of the banks of a river, produced by our sailing or rowing in the contrary direction; or the apparent rotation of the surrounding objects, when a person spins himself on the point of his foot. These examples are sufficient to prove, that the earth's rotation, although opposed, as it seems, to our own senses, is really quite consistent with their evidence. For it may be inquired of an objector to this doctrine, who maintains the fixity of the earth, *how* we should become aware of its rotation, supposing it to be thus put in motion. In other instances we become aware of our movement, either by the slight vibrations or shocks to which we are subjected, or by observing our change of position in reference to surrounding objects which we know to be fixed. Now we almost lose the first of these sources of information on a railroad, so even is the motion of a carriage over it; hence we trust entirely to the second, and we may be deceived by it, as just explained. The movement of the earth being perfectly uniform, free from all shocks and vibrations, and being shared in by all the bodies upon its surface, we gain no direct information respecting it from our feelings; and we have no objects with which to compare it, save the heavenly bodies. Hence it is absurd to object to it, on the ground that we are not conscious of the rotation; for, granting the rotation to occur, we should not become aware of it otherwise than as we do.

498. The arguments of Copernicus were not at once able to change the opinions which had prevailed for ages, strengthened

as these were by the supposed authority of Scripture; and it was not until the succeeding century, that his doctrine was generally received. It was powerfully supported by Galileo, who was able, by means of the telescope, to adduce many additional arguments in its defence (§. 554 and 617). For espousing this cause, however, he fell under the displeasure of the Inquisition, who had pronounced the doctrine of the earth's motion to be heretical; and he was led, by the dread of severe punishment, to promise not again to demonstrate that the earth moves. He seems, however, to have been unable to restrain himself from propagating what he believed to be truth; and having again been summoned before the Inquisition, and been wearied by long confinement, he signed, in his seventieth year, an abjuration of the doctrine, to the defence of which he had devoted the best part of his life. Yet it is recorded of him, that, on rising from his knees, after making this recantation, he whispered to a friend who was standing by him, "And yet it *does* move." During his confinement, he was visited by our own immortal Milton; who, doubtless, then learned from him many of those sublime truths, which he afterwards interwove, with such striking effect, in his Paradise Lost.

499. At the present day, no one having any pretensions to the name of a philosopher, doubts the rotation of the earth upon its axis; yet no proof of it can be given, that would be satisfactory to the uninstructed mind. There are four circumstances, however, which leave no room for hesitation, among those who can appreciate the value of the evidence they afford. The first of these is the fact, revealed to us by the telescope, of the similar rotation of the sun, and of all the planets on whose discs can be seen any marks, that may enable such a movement to be detected.—The second is the flattening of the earth at the poles, precisely to the degree which its centrifugal force would be calculated to produce, its rotation being performed at its present rate (§. 215).—The third is the result of the experiment of letting fall a stone from the top of a lofty tower; if the earth remained at rest, this would of course fall exactly at its base; but it does in reality fall a little to the eastwards of its base,

in consequence of its having partaken, at the moment of commencing its descent, of the motion of the top of the tower, which is moving through a larger circle, and consequently at a quicker rate, than the bottom (§. 167). This is the most direct and positive of all the proofs yet brought forward.—The last, however, is also of a very convincing nature. It is the prevalence, or rather the almost constant existence, of easterly winds in the equatorial region. The atmosphere does not rotate with the earth, except so far as it is carried round by its friction. In the temperate and polar regions, where the motion of the surface of the earth is comparatively slow, this friction is sufficient to carry the atmosphere along with it; but near the equator, the motion of the surface being much more rapid, the atmosphere is not carried along at the same rate; and the effect is therefore produced, of a wind constantly blowing in a direction contrary to that of the earth's movement (that is, from east to west); just as when a person travelling rapidly in a coach experiences a strong draught of air in the opposite direction, though the atmosphere may be perfectly calm at the time.

CHAPTER XV.

OF THE FIXED STARS.

500. Although the sun, moon, planets, and comets, whose motions seem to connect them with our own system, might seem to claim our attention in the first instance, yet we shall probably form more accurate notions respecting the part performed by that system in the universe, and of the vast extent of created being to which the laws that govern its operations are to be extended, if we previously inquire into our actual knowledge respecting the bodies composing the starry firmament.—Of the ideas entertained respecting them by the ancients, it is not requisite to say much. They do not appear to have formed any notion of their actual distance from the earth; and, considering our own globe as the centre of their motion, they accounted for their retaining the same positions with respect to each other, by supposing them to be fixed in a hollow sphere, by the revolution of which they all turned round together in a day and night. Their principal attention was given to the division of the stars into certain groups, which were conceived by them to have a likeness to the figures of men, animals, &c.; and various wild and romantic fables have been handed down to us in the writings of the Greek and Roman poets, with respect to the origin of these groups. Thus, some of the groups or constellations* were regarded by them as representing their gods; and others were considered as the figures of their chief heroes, who, after the conclusion of their mortal lives, were deified, and had places assigned to them amongst the stars. Of these fables, many appear to have originated among the

---

* A name derived from the Latin words *con*, together, and *stella*, star; and therefore meaning a cluster or assemblage of stars.

Egyptians, from whom the Greeks, and after them the Romans, learned much of their astronomy; and some of the constellations thus named retain their appellations to the present day, although some have received other designations. Ptolemy, an Egyptian astronomer who flourished in the second century of the Christian era, enumerates forty-eight constellations; and these are still known for the most part under the same names. Many have since been added, however, in order to include stars which could not be well made to form a part of the original ones; and a large number of new ones had to be created, to distinguish those stars of the southern hemisphere, which were not known to the ancient astronomers, having been first noticed by the adventurous voyagers of the fifteenth century.

501. The accompanying figure, representing the constellation of Orion, is intended to give an idea of the mode in which the ancients combined, as it were, these starry clusters into figures. This constellation is one of the most beautiful in the heavens, on account of the number of large stars which it contains. Those that chiefly attract notice are the three large stars of the belt or girdle, which are arranged in an oblique line,—the two large stars at some distance above it, situated in the shoulders of the figure,—and the two other large stars, at about the same distance below, the one in the knee and the

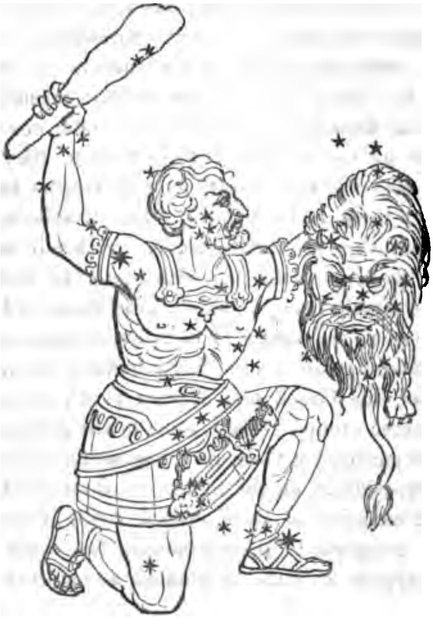


FIG. 149.

other in the foot. But there are many other stars of considerable size in this brilliant constellation;—those, for instance, which are contained in the lion's head, and in the sword or dagger below the girdle. A peculiar appearance about one of these will be noticed hereafter (§. 538).

502. The division into constellations, though quite arbitrary and fanciful, has this great advantage, that it enables us to *map out* the heavens, as we do the surface of the globe: and as, in *Geography* (or the description of the earth), we give names to the continents, islands, &c., which are distinguished by natural boundaries, and can thus indicate without any trouble the place where a particular occurrence took place, or where some particular scene is to be witnessed; so is it convenient, and, indeed, absolutely necessary in *Urano*graphy (or the description of the stars) to form similar divisions, for the purpose of fixing the place where any peculiar appearance is to be seen, or the star which is exhibiting certain movements. Thus, suppose a comet to become visible, and we wish to make its situation known to the public, we may say that it is to be seen near Orion's belt, or in the tail of the Great Bear; and, if we wish to be more precise, we may mention the particular star near which it is, each of the principal stars of each constellation being distinguished by one letter of the Greek alphabet. Were it not for a contrivance of this kind, no information could be given, without stating the measured place of the luminary in the skies; which would render it intelligible to those alone, who are provided with instruments to ascertain the spot meant. Hence we retain the names of most of the constellations that have come down to us from the ancients; whilst we forget the fables in which they originated. It is enough that astronomers understand one another; and there is nothing in any science so much to be avoided, as a confusion of names. The Great Bear is popularly known under the name of Charles's Wain, which was given to it in honour of the illustrious French monarch, Charlemagne; but its former or scientific appellation is alone mentioned on celestial globes or maps; and a person who consulted one of these in ignorance of the double name of

the constellation, would be much perplexed. It has also received the name of the Plough; which should be entirely disused.

503. It must not be supposed that, because certain stars appear to form groups, they are really near each other. The idea that the fixed stars are at anything like an uniform distance from us, has long been put aside, for reasons which will presently appear; and we have only to suppose that a certain set are seen by us in nearly the same line, to understand the *apparent* proximity of bodies that are really at an enormous distance. Let it be imagined that, from a commanding situation, we discern the peak of a distant hill;—that, some miles nearer to us, there is a church, whose spire is a little to the right of the hill; and that, some miles nearer still, there is a lofty and remarkable tree, which is seen by us a little to the left of the hill. Now, so long as we know that these objects are in reality one beyond another, we are not deceived by their apparent proximity; but if we imagine ourselves to be removed so far away, that we can form no estimate of the respective distances of these objects from us in a straight line, we shall easily perceive that their apparent closeness to each other will deceive us as to their real situations.—Let us make a comparison that shall render this truth, which lies at the foundation of all correct notions respecting the relative positions of the stars, still more obvious. There are few persons who have not observed the impossibility of forming any accurate idea of the distance of a luminous object on a dark night. The navigator might easily mistake the light of a star just above the horizon, for that of the friendly light-house, which is to guide him into his port, or to enable him to avoid the hidden danger; or he might, from error in his reckoning, mistake the beacon-light for a star.* The same mistake is not unfrequently made respecting the light from the window of a distant dwelling, which is seen just above the horizon, the darkness being too intense to enable the building itself to be discerned; for this could only be distinguished from that of a star, by reason of its greater steadiness, or by its

---

* Such errors are prevented by giving to the light a distinct colour, such as red or green; or by causing it to disappear and return at intervals.

remaining fixed in the same position, instead of rising above the horizon, or sinking beneath it, as a star would do.

504. Or, again, if there were three lights on a wide open heath,—one of them proceeding from a large and brilliant lamp in a mansion at a distance,—another from a lamp of inferior brightness in a nearer dwelling,—and another from a farthing candle in the lantern of a passing traveller; we should be completely unable to form an estimate of their respective places and distances, if the intervening ground could not be seen by reason of the darkness. If the lights should happen to be nearly in the same line, they would appear to our eyes almost close together; and if their actual distances from us were in the proper proportion to their respective illuminating powers, their *apparent* sizes might be the same,—the farthing candle yielding as much light to us, by reason of its proximity, as either of the larger and brighter luminaries. We will further suppose that the traveller, whose lantern is at first our principal luminary, walks away from us, towards either of the more distant dwellings;—we shall not then see any motion in his light, since he is simply increasing his distance from us, and not turning to one side or to the other; —but it will gradually become fainter and fainter, and may at last, when actually removed to the same distance with the largest lamp, be lost sight of altogether. Hence we may conclude that the actual positions of the fixed stars with respect to each other, cannot be known from their apparent places as seen from the earth; and that the brightest of them are not necessarily the nearest.

505. There is much reason to believe, however, that, as a general rule, the distances of the fixed stars from us bear some relation with their apparent magnitudes, or rather with the different degrees of light which we receive from them;—that is, if we see two stars apparently near together, the one being large and the other small, we should believe their distances to be very different, the smallest being the furthest removed from us. They are all, however, so very remote, that the most powerful telescopes do not give the least information respecting their actual sizes; for the brightest,

> "Those sparks of light,
> The gems that shine in the blue ring of heaven,"

even when magnified most highly, look like most brilliant *points* of light, having no measurable diameter. Sir W. Herschel, when viewing the heavens with his 40 feet telescope,—the mirror of which, being 4 feet in diameter, took in an immense quantity of light, and reflected it to the eye,—was obliged to avoid the larger stars, on account of the glare of light which they produced; but he tells us that on one occasion, "the appearance of Sirius (the dog-star, the most brilliant of all the fixed stars) announced itself at a great distance, like the dawn of the morning, and came on by degrees, increasing in brightness; till this brilliant star at last entered the field of the telescope with all the splendour of the rising sun, and forced me to take my eye from the beautiful sight."

506. The total number of stars visible at once to the naked eye on a clear night, has been estimated at about 2000; but when the eye is aided by the telescope, the number is increased, just in proportion to the power of the telescope employed. No possible limit can be assigned to the number of stars, even supposing that those which are discernible with our present instruments could be reckoned; for every improvement in the construction of the telescope (and such improvements are continually being made) brings into view multitudes of stars which could not be previously distinguished; and as it would be absurd to attempt to set limits to such improvements, it would be in vain to endeavour to form an estimate, even of the number of stars with whose existence we may become acquainted, and much more of those which have their dwelling-place in those depths of space, into which man with all his ingenuity will never be able to penetrate.

507. Besides the stars which we distinctly recognise to be such, we notice on a clear dark night a broad luminous arch or band, known as the Milky Way, stretching across the whole sky from horizon to horizon. This band may be traced also through the southern hemisphere; and it thus forms a complete circle, surrounding our system at a vast distance. Although it is studded, as it were, with distinct stars, these evidently form no part of it, but merely have it for a back-ground, from being seen in the same direction. The general aspect of this band is

that of a delicate luminous cloud, presenting the faint and indistinct appearance which is termed *nebulous*,—a term which will have to be frequently employed hereafter.

> "A broad and ample road whose dust is gold
> And pavement stars, as stars to us appear
> Seen in the galaxy, that milky way
> Like to a circling zone, powdered with stars."

Now when the Milky Way is examined with telescopes of even moderate power, it is perceived that the nebulous appearance is due, not to any vapour-like assemblage of uncondensed matter, but to an innumerable multitude of very faint stars, apparently so near together that they cannot be distinguished by the naked eye.* Of the enormous number of stars thus crowded together, some conception may be formed from the fact mentioned by Sir W. Herschel, that he counted 70 at once, upon an average, in a space about one-fourth the apparent size of the moon's disk; from which he computed that 50,000 must have passed under his observation, during one hour, in a zone or band about a quarter of the whole breadth of the Milky Way. Other nebulous patches are to be seen in different parts of the heavens; and of these also, many are capable of being separated or *resolved*, by means of telescopes of greater or less power, into distinct stars; whilst many others cannot be so resolved, but retain their nebulous aspect even when examined with the assistance of the best telescopes. Of these *nebulæ* we shall have more to say hereafter.

508. For the sake of easy comparison, Astronomers have agreed to class the stars into different *magnitudes;* but it must be remembered that, by the term magnitude, *size* is not meant, but *lustre* or degree of light; for, as just stated, none of the fixed stars have any apparent diameter. The division is somewhat arbitrary; since there are no means of easily comparing the quantity of light given off by the different stars; but the following table exhibits the proportion assigned by Sir W.

---

* Some of the ancient astronomers imagined that the Milky Way was an old and disused path of the sun! But Democritus had hit upon the real explanation of its appearance.

Herschel to the light of certain stars, which were selected as *types* or specimens of the six classes, that can be seen with the naked eye.

Light of a star of the average First magnitude . = 100
Second . . . . = 25
Third . . . . = 12?
Fourth . . . . = 6
Fifth . . . . = 2
Sixth . . . . = 1

It should be borne in mind, that the apparent "magnitude" of any star must depend upon three conditions:—1st, the star's distance from us;—2nd, on the absolute size of its illuminated surface;—3rd, on the degree of brightness of that surface. Now as we have no means of judging of the two latter, we must not hastily conclude that the magnitudes of the stars are a measure of their relative distances; but that such an estimate is *generally* applicable appears from this important circumstance,—that the number of stars of each magnitude increases in proportion to the smallness of their light. Thus Astronomers restrict the *first* magnitude to about 15 or 20 stars; the *second* to 50 or 60 next inferior; the *third*, to about 200 yet smaller; and so on, the numbers increasing very rapidly as we descend in the scale of brightness, so that the whole number of stars already registered, down to the seventh magnitude, amount to from 15,000 to 20,000. Now these are not uniformly distributed over the sphere; for though the stars of the three or four highest magnitudes are scattered pretty equally in every direction, those of the smaller sizes are crowded together more and more as we approach the borders of the Milky Way; and the whole light of this is given by stars, whose average magnitude may be stated at about the tenth or eleventh.

509. Now this increase in the number of stars in proportion to the diminution of their brilliancy, corresponds so nearly with that which we should expect, if their diminution in brilliancy is occasioned by their increase of distance, that such may be confidently stated to be generally the case. For if we imagine an observer to be situated in the midst of a vast multitude of lamps or candles, arranged at tolerably uniform distances from each

other—say a foot in every direction;—he will see the small number in his immediate neighbourhood, distinguished beyond the rest by their brilliancy, and scattered widely apart on all sides of him;—a larger number will be seen within double the range, but these will appear less brilliant on account of their increased distance, and the same cause will make them appear closer together;—a still larger number will be seen at triple the range, still less brilliant, but nearer each other;—and the number of lights, and the diminution of their individual brilliancy, will continue to increase in like proportion with the distance, until at last we cannot distinguish the separate points, but they appear crowded or packed together in one continuous but faintly illuminated mass. It is fair to explain similar appearances in the heavenly bodies by similar causes, unless valid objections can be assigned; and thence to conclude, that the close packing and the diminished brilliancy of the stars of inferior magnitudes, result, in like manner, from their vastly-increased distance.

510. Now, if we imagine the luminous bodies to surround the observer equally in every direction, it is easy to understand that the continuous diffused luminosity of the most distant will form a sort of back-ground on *all* sides, against which the nearer and more brilliant lights will be seen. But let it be supposed that the cluster or group, instead of having the form of a globe (in or near whose centre the observer is supposed to be), is shaped like a cheese or millstone;—then the observer, placed in the centre, will be able to look out through its flat surfaces into empty space, and will see, on either side of him, the stars which form its *thickness*, studding the black ground presented by the darkness beyond;—whilst, if he look towards the circumference, his eye will meet with those more distant ranges of stars, whose near (apparent) neighbourhood to each other produces the indistinct luminousness already mentioned. Now, as these ranges will be only seen when the observer looks in some particular directions, they will appear to form an arch or band, stretching over his head from one point of the horizon to another.

511. It was by reasoning of this kind, that Sir W. Herschel came to the remarkable conclusion (which, though at first

thought ridiculous by many is now adopted by all scientific astronomers) that all the stars distinctly visible to us really form part of one immense cluster, of which the boundary is formed by the Milky Way, whilst the position of our sun with its system is not far from its centre. The similitude of a cheese or millstone just adverted to might express tolerably well the form of our cluster; were it not that the Milky Way splits, as it were, at one part into two bands, which reunite again, so that we must imagine our cheese to be split at one part of its edge into two portions, which diverge somewhat from the general plane of the remainder. The accompanying delineation is probably a not very inaccurate view of our cluster or firmament, as seen from some of those more distant groups, of whose existence we have now positive evidence.

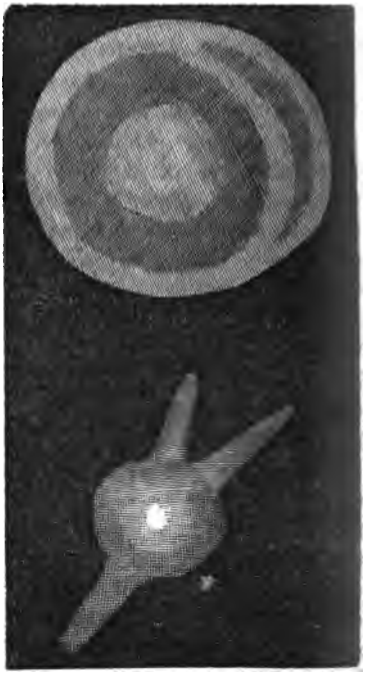


FIG. 150.—Ideal view of our cluster of stars, as seen from a distance; the upper figure represents its form as seen from the side; and the lower one, as seen from above or below.

512. In regard to the distance of even the nearest of the fixed stars, there have not existed until recently the least means of forming an accurate estimate. All that could be stated was, that their distance could not be less than *two hundred thousand* times the distance of the sun from the earth, or 19,200,000 *millions* of miles. The mode in which any such estimate must be made, is the same as that which is adopted for measuring the distance of the sun and planets from the earth, and is founded on what is termed the *parallax* of these bodies. This it will be

desirable to explain before going further. The term parallax is given to the *apparent motion* which objects exhibit, when the position of the observer is changed. Every one must have noticed that, when walking or riding through a country, there is a constant change in the aspect of the scene, arising from the different directions under which we view it; the apparent position of the nearer objects being continually altered, whilst that of the more distant remains the same. For instance, if we have a distant mountain in sight, we may travel for several miles before we can see any particular changes in its aspect; whilst various objects that at first intervened between ourselves and it have gradually been approached, have been left on one side, and are now at a considerable distance behind us. Thus, in the accompanying diagram, let A be the first position of the observer, and B and C two objects which he sees in the same straight line A B C D; if he change his position from A to E, he will no longer see them in the same line, but there will be a distinct interval between them; for the rays from the object B will come to his eye in the direction B E, so that it is seen in the line E F; whilst those from the object C will come in the direction C E, so that the object is seen in the line E G. It will be observed, that the direction in which the object is seen is more altered in the case of the near object B, than of the more remote object C. The amount of this alteration in the apparent position of any object, is measured by the angle included between the lines joining the two stations with the object; thus, in the case

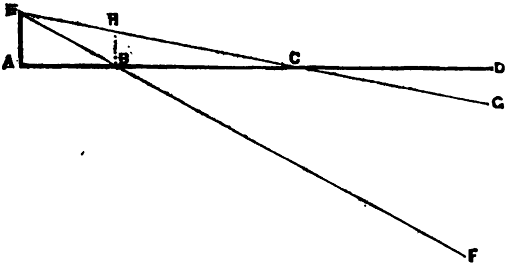


FIG. 151.

of the object B, the *parallax* is the angle A B E between the lines A B and B E; whilst, for the object C, it is the angle A C E between the lines A C and C E. Hence, we observe that, the greater the distance of the object, the smaller will this angle be, whilst the line A E (which represents the amount of real change in the observer's place) remains the same. Now, by a very simple calculation, the mathematician who knows the amount of the angle A B E or A C E, and the length of A E, can ascertain the distances A B and A C of the bodies B and C from A; and it is from calculations of this kind, that the distances of the sun, moon, and planets, have been determined.

513. Now, if the fixed stars were moderately near to us, we should see their relative positions changing, during each of their (apparent) daily revolutions round the earth; since they are seen in a different direction, when near the horizon, from that in which we view them when they have risen to the zenith. Such a difference is perceptible in the case of the moon, whose apparent position is changed with respect to the sun and stars (after making the proper allowance for her real motion) as she makes the circuit through the heavens; and from the amount of this change, which is termed the moon's parallax, her distance from the earth may be estimated. Again, supposing the point C (Fig. 151), to represent the place of the sun, and B to represent that of Mercury or Venus; this planet, to an observer situated on the earth at A, will appear to be crossing the sun's disc; but to an observer at another part of the earth at E, the planet will not appear in a line with the sun, and it must, in fact, move onwards to H, before it is seen upon his disc. Hence, if we know the interval between the two observers, and the length of time which elapses between the times when the planet appears to the one and to the other to be in a line with the sun, we can determine the angle A C E with greater exactness than we could by any ordinary measurement; and we thus obtain from the *transits* (§. 561) of Mercury and Venus the best opportunities for ascertaining the sun's parallax, and consequently our distance from him. Not the slightest alteration, however, can be perceived in the relative places of the *stars* during their daily passage through the sky.

514. But if the stars, though not near enough to be affected by the daily change in their position in regard to the earth, were still at a distance not exceeding by many times that of the sun, a very sensible alteration would be observable, when the earth alters its position (as it will be shown in the next chapter to do every six months), to the amount of 190 millions of miles. Yet so vastly is this exceeded by the distance of the nearest of them, that it has been until recently a matter of uncertainty whether they exhibit the least change of position, or, in other words, exhibit any parallax; although the perfection of astronomical instruments is now such, that an angle, such as A C E, Fig. 151, could be measured with certainty, even if it were no more than a single *second*, or 1-3600th part of a degree. The sides of the triangle, therefore, are of such inconceivable length, that, although the base A E measures 190 millions of miles, the angle at its vertex can scarcely be appreciated. Numerous attempts have been made to determine whether any of the stars have such an *annual parallax*,—that is, a change of apparent position resulting from the earth's annual movements; but, until recently, these have all been unsuccessful. "After exhausting every refinement of observation," wrote Sir J. Herschel in 1834, "astronomers have been unable to come to any positive and coincident conclusion upon this head; and it seems, therefore demonstrated, that the amount of such parallax, even for the nearest fixed star which has hitherto been examined with the requisite attention, remains still mixed up with, and concealed among, the errors incidental to all astronomical determinations." Now if the parallax were as much as a single second, the distance of the star exhibiting it could not be less than 200,000 times the distance of the earth from the sun, or 19,200,000 millions of miles.

515. In such numbers the imagination is lost; and the only mode of conceiving of such intervals at all, is by estimating the time which it would require for light to traverse them. Now we know from other sources (§. 622) that light travels at the rate of about 192,000 miles per second; consequently it would require 100 million seconds, or about three years, to per-

form the journey,—or, in other words, we should not see a star newly placed at that distance, for three years after it had begun to shine, and we shall see it for three years after it shall have ceased to exist. In the year 1838, however, Professor Bessel of Königsberg announced, as the result of a most careful and laborious series of observations on a star in the constellation Cygnus, that it has a parallax amounting to about *one-third of a second;* and that, upon this, its distance from the earth may be calculated with tolerable accuracy. He has since (1840) slightly corrected his first series of observations, and has given ·0″·3483, or something more than a third of a second, as the annual parallax of this star; which makes its distance about 592,200 times the distance of the earth from the sun,—a distance which light would require 9¼ years to pass through. This has been truly spoken of as "a magnificent conquest;" for it is so, both in regard to the sublimity of the object to be attained, and the amount of intellectual labour bestowed upon it. If we estimate the comparative distances of the other stars by the proportion of light we receive from them, we shall be led to the astounding conclusion, that many, even of those in the Milky Way, must be so distant, that their light would be at least *a thousand years* in travelling to our earth; though its rapidity of movement is such, that it comes to us from the moon—vast and almost inconceivable as *her* distance (237,000 miles) is, in comparison with any of which we can form a definite idea—in little more than *one second* of time.

516. Of the actual magnitudes of the Fixed Stars, their light and distance, compared with those of the sun, afford us our sole means of forming an estimate. It has been ascertained by very careful measurements, that the light of *Sirius*—the most brilliant of all of them—is to that of the sun, as 1 to about 20,000 millions. The sun, therefore, in order that it should appear to us no brighter than Sirius, would require to be removed to 141,400 times its actual distance.* It has been shown (§. 514) however, that the distance of Sirius cannot be so little as that of

---

* The proportional intensity of light being inversely as the squares of the respective distances (§. 91).

200,000 times that of the sun, and is probably a great deal more. Supposing that the sun were removed to 282,800 times its actual distance, its light would be only one-fourth of that of Sirius; so that, if this be the real distance of that star (and it is probably much less than the reality) its light must be equal to that of four suns. "Now, for what purpose," it is well inquired by Sir J. Herschel, "are we to suppose such magnificent bodies scattered through the abyss of space? Surely not to illuminate *our* nights, which an additional moon of the thousandth part of the size of our own would do much better,—nor to sparkle as a pageant void of meaning and reality, and bewilder us among vain conjectures. Useful, it is true, they are to man, as points of exact and permanent reference; but he must have studied astronomy to little purpose, who can suppose man to be the only object of his Creator's care, or who does not see in the vast and wonderful apparatus around us, provision for other races of animated beings. The planets derive their light from the sun; but that cannot be the case with the stars. These doubtless, then, are themselves suns; and may, perhaps, each in its sphere, be the presiding centre round which other planets, or bodies of which we can form no conception from any analogy offered by our own system, may be circulating."

"And these are suns!—vast, central, living fires,
Lords of dependent systems, kings of worlds
That wait as satellites upon their power,
And flourish in their smile. Awake, my soul,
And meditate the wonder! Countless suns
Blaze round thee, leading forth their countless worlds!
Worlds—in whose bosoms living things rejoice,
And drink the bliss of being from the fount
Of all-pervading love. What mind can know,
What tongue can utter all their multitudes!
Thus numberless in numberless abodes!
Known but to Thee, blest Father! Thine they are,
Thy children, and thy care—and none o'erlooked
Of Thee! No, not the humblest soul that dwells
Upon the humblest globe, which wheels its course
Amid the giant glories of the sky,
Like the mean mote that dances in the beam
Amongst the thousand mirror'd lamps, which fling

> Their wasteful splendor from the palace wall.
> None, none escape the kindness of Thy care;
> All compassed underneath Thy spacious wing,
> Each fed and guided by Thy powerful hand."*

517. Although we are accustomed to speak of the fixed stars as undergoing no visible change whatever, yet they present to us several most interesting and remarkable phenomena. Thus, there are several which are not distinguished from the rest by any obvious peculiarities of appearance, but which undergo a periodical increase and diminution of lustre, involving in one or two cases a complete extinction and revival. These are called *periodical* stars. One of the most remarkable, in regard to the shortness of its period, is the star called Algol, in the constellation Perseus. It is usually visible as a star of the second magnitude, and retains this size for 2 days and 14 hours. It then suddenly begins to diminish in splendour, and in about 3½ hours it is reduced to the size of a star of the fourth magnitude. It then begins to increase, and in 3½ hours more regains its usual brightness,—thus going through all its changes in about 2 days 21 hours. The cause of this variation was supposed by its discoverer (M. Goodricke) to be the revolution round the star of some opaque body, which, when it interposes between its disk and ourselves, cuts off a portion of its light. The effect strikingly resembles that which is produced by the same cause in the revolving lights of light-houses. It is interesting to remark that this variation, first discovered in 1782, was noticed not only by a professed astronomer, but also by an unlettered peasant of the name of Palitzch, residing near Dresden; who, from his familiar acquaintance with the heavens, had been led to distinguish this star from so many others, and had ascertained its period. It was by the same individual that the anxiously-expected comet, whose return in 1759 had been predicted by Dr. Halley, was first seen; he detected it nearly a month before it was observed by any of the astronomers, who were watching for it, armed with their telescopes.

518. The most remarkable of the periodical stars, in regard

---

* From an Address to the Ursa Major, by the Rev. H. Ware of Boston, New England.

to its complete extinction at intervals, is the one named Omicron, in the constellation Cetus; its variation was first noticed by Fabricius, in the year 1596. It appears about 12 times in 11 years, its period being about 334 days; it remains at its greatest brightness about a fortnight, being then on some occasions equal to a large star of the second magnitude; it decreases during about three months, till it becomes completely invisible, in which state it remains about five months; it then again becomes visible, and continues increasing during the remaining three months of its period. It is a peculiarity of this, and of one or two more of the periodical stars, that the variations are not regular. It is stated, that for four years this star did not appear at all; and another small periodical star in the constellation Cygnus, the period of whose variation is about 13 months, was scarcely visible, during three years, at the times when it ought to have been most conspicuous.

519. These variations prepare us for other phenomena, to which at present no character of regularity can be attached; though it cannot be doubted that they too are subject to laws which we might discover, if our opportunities for observation were sufficient. There have been seen, at different times, *new* stars,—or rather stars which were not previously visible; but these have had only a temporary lustre, blazing for a while with extraordinary lustre, then dying (as it were) and leaving no trace behind. The earliest star of this kind on record, is that which suddenly appeared in the year 125 B.C., and is said to have been the occasion of the catalogue of stars which was then drawn up by Hipparchus. Another blazed forth in A.D. 389, remained for three weeks as bright as Venus, and then disappeared altogether. There are records of similar appearances in the years 945, 1264, and 1572; and the near coincidence of the *intervals* between the first and second, and the second and third of these, together with the coincidence in the *place* of their appearance—so far as can be ascertained from the imperfect observation of the first two—leads to the suspicion that they result from a periodic change in the same star, having an interval of something more than 300 years. If this be the case.

we may expect a re-appearance in the latter part of this century. The appearance of the star of 1572 was so sudden, that Tycho Brahe, a celebrated Danish astronomer (§. 555), returning one evening from his observatory to his dwelling-house, was surprised to find a group of country-people gazing at a star, which he was sure did not exist half an hour before. This was the star in question. It was then as brilliant as Sirius, and continued to increase, till it surpassed Jupiter when brightest, and was even visible at mid-day. It began to diminish in December of the same year; and in March, 1574, it had entirely disappeared. A star of this kind, not less brilliant, burst forth in the constellation of Serpentarius in October, 1604; and remained visible for a year, after which it completely vanished.

520. Similar phenomena, though of a less splendid character, have been since noticed; and they offer an abundant field for observation and speculative inquiry. Are these all to be accounted for, like the variations of the periodical stars, by the revolution of an opaque body, sometimes eclipsing their light; or are these changes due to alterations in the constitution of the star itself? There is this objection to the idea of their similarity to the periodical stars;—that in the former, there is a continued lustre, occasionally diminished or interrupted; whilst in the latter it is the absence which is continued, and the lustre which is occasional. Now the occasional interposition of an opaque body, such as would take place during its revolution round the star, fully accounts for the former; but it would require the supposition that the opaque body has the form of a ring, having a gap or opening on one side, to account in the same manner for the rare appearance of the stars of the latter class. It is probable, then, that we are to regard changes in the constitution of the individual stars, as the cause of their occasional appearance and subsequent disappearance. This idea corresponds with the fact, that many stars, whose places have been accurately noted in catalogues, have altogether disappeared from the heavens. Some of these supposed losses may not be real, having originated in mistaken entries; but in regard to several, there is no doubt. They may, however, be analogous to the stars previously

described; and may burst forth again into splendour, after a long period of darkness.

521. An explanation of these appearances has been offered by Prof. Nichol, which does not seem improbable. The amount of light given off by our sun is continually varying, in a slight degree, in consequence of the occupation of a minute portion of his surface by spots of greater or less magnitude (§. 591); and there is some reason to believe, that one side of his globe is rather less brilliant than the other; so that, as he turns on his axis in about 25 days, there is a constant, though trifling, variation in the amount of light and heat which we receive from him. Now, if we suppose that this variation is more considerable in the case of the *periodical* stars, so that a greater or less part of one side is not luminous at all, we shall have a satisfactory explanation of their regular diminution of lustre, or (in some cases) entire but temporary extinction. And if we further suppose that in the *occasional* stars, the principal part of the surface is dark, whilst the illuminated space occupies but a small portion of it, we shall account for their long period of darkness, and for their occasional brilliancy; provided that it be admitted (which from analogy, as well as from other considerations to be adverted to in the last chapter, seems highly probable) that the stars, like the sun, rotate on their own axis.

522. How wonderful the thought, that for years, and perhaps for ages, after these changes have taken place, we remain ignorant of them,—that most probably even now have the rays of the brilliant star of 1572 been shot forth towards our planet, though these will not reach us for nearly half a century to come,—and that its disappearance from the astonished gaze of Tycho was in consequence of a withdrawal of its light before that illustrious astronomer himself came into existence.

> "Yea, glorious lamps of God! He may have quenched
> Your ancient flames, and bid eternal night
> Rest on your spheres; and yet no tidings reach
> This distant planet. Messengers still come
> Laden with your far fire, and we may seem
> To see your lights still burning; while their blaze
> But hides the black wreck of extinguished realms,
> Where anarchy and darkness long have reigned."
>
> (Rev. H. Ware

523. We now come, however, to a class of phenomena which appear more wondrous still, because more unexpected—from its dissimilarity from anything that ordinarily comes beneath our notice;—and which is yet a peculiar source of interest to the philosopher, as affording him the means of demonstrating, that the great law of mutual attraction is not confined to our own system, but extends its agency through the illimitable realms of space. It has been observed, at least since the time of Galileo, that, whilst the greater part of the nearer stars appear scattered through the heavens with a tolerably equal distribution, so as to be at medium or average distances from each other, there is a large class which appear to be in closer neighbourhood than the hypothesis of equal scattering will account for. It has been already pointed out (§. 503) that if two stars be nearly in the same line from the earth, they will seem to an observer very near together; and it is in this manner that we are to account for most or all the instances, in which two stars having this close proximity can be distinguished by the naked eye. But the case we are now to consider, is the not unfrequent one of two or more stars, which are so close that they appear as a single star to the naked eye, and cannot be separated without the assistance of telescopes. Until the time of Sir W. Herschel, it had been supposed, that the conjunction of these also is *optical* and not *real*, being dependent upon their situation in the same visual line, though one might be supposed to be at many times the distance of the other. But his attention having been particularly directed to these *double stars*, in the hope of ascertaining the annual parallax through their means, he soon found out that their number was much greater than could be accounted for, with a fair degree of probability, in this manner. It is only in the Milky Way,—where the stars appear too crowded (in consequence of their number and remoteness) for the unaided eye to distinguish the intervals between them,—that we should expect to meet frequently with such coincidences. When the vast extent of the remainder of the sky is considered, and compared with the moderate number of stars scattered over it, we at once perceive it to be greatly against probability, that

any large proportion of them should be immediately, or even nearly, behind one another.

524. The argument is thus familiarly illustrated by Prof. Nichol :—"Suppose a number of peas were thrown at random on a chess-board, what would you expect ? Certainly that they should be found occupying irregular or random positions ; and if, contrary to this, they were, in far more than average numbers, arranged by *twos* on each square, it would be a most natural inference that here there was *no* RANDOM *scattering ;* for the excessive prevalence of the binary arrangement would indicate forethought, design, *system*." Hence it is evident that the larger the number of stars of a certain magnitude, the more likelihood there is of the conjunction being merely optical ; whilst among the comparatively few stars of the highest magnitudes, the coincidence would almost certainly indicate a real connection between the two bodies. Further, it will be evident that, the nearer the proximity, the less is the probability of the coincidence being accidental ; or, in other words, we are more entitled to suppose that the neighbourhood of any two stars is apparent and not real, when they are far enough from each other to be distinguished with little difficulty, than when they are so close that the assistance of the best telescopes is required to separate them. For in such a case as that of the random scattering of the peas on the chess-board, there is much greater probability that we should find a dozen pairs within a quarter of an inch from each other, than that we should find them in absolute contact.

525. Now it has been ascertained that there are 653 double stars of considerable magnitude, the intervals between whose two bodies do not exceed 32 seconds, or the apparent breadth of the planet Jupiter ; and it has been calculated that the number of these which might be expected to coincide optically, is no more than 48. Hence there are 605 whose neighbourhood remains to be accounted for. Of 612 stars of a smaller magnitude, but having the same range of apparent distance, it has been calculated that 129 may probably be only visually connected ; and that the remainder must have some other relation. But whe

the interval is increased from 30 seconds, or the apparent diameter of Jupiter, to 900 seconds, which is about half the breadth of the sun, the probability of the *optical* connexion becomes much greater; so that out of 25 that have been observed at the latter distance, 21 or 22 are likely to have only this accidental relation. The difference between the two may be simply stated in this manner. The stars that are only visually related, through being in the same line from the earth, would be found to undergo a complete change in their mutual positions, if they were viewed from a different point (§. 512); but the stars that really are close and connected, will appear so under all aspects.

526. Particular attention was given to these double stars by Sir W. Herschel, from the belief he entertained that careful observation of their positions in regard to each other would enable the annual parallax to be ascertained with more certainty than it could be in any ordinary mode;* and he applied himself to determine the precise directions in which they lay with regard to each other. Thus, supposing one of the bodies to be exactly upon the meridian or southern line, the other might be above or below it, to the east or to the west. He had scarcely entered, however, upon the series of observations requisite to determine with the requisite precision the *angles of position* and mutual distances of these stars, before his attention was arrested by a most novel and unexpected change. Instead of finding, as he anticipated was possible, a small alternate increase and decrease in their distances and angles of position, taking place in each year as the result of the earth's change of position, he observed in numerous cases a *regular progressive change*, which could only be accounted for, by supposing that the stars are actually in motion round some fixed point. The appearances which such motions will exhibit to us, manifestly depend upon the direction in which we view them. Thus a person at a distance moves one ball round another in an *upright* circle, so that we look fully upon its whole path; we then see the revolving body

---

* The result has completely justified this opinion; for it has been by the careful observation of the double star 61 Cygni, that Prof. Bessel has now clearly proved the existence of annual parallax (§. 515).

constantly maintaining its distance from the central one, but continually changing its angle of position; since a line joining the two would point in a different direction, with every change in the place of the revolving body. But supposing that the body be moved in a *horizontal* circle, the plane of which is in the direction of our line of sight, so that we see its *edge* and not its *face*;—the revolving body will be seen to move from one side of the centre to the other, apparently in a straight line, sometimes passing in front of the central body and sometimes behind it; and their apparent distances would be thus continually altered, without any variation in their angular position, since a line joining the two would always point in the same direction.

526*. Among the numerous double stars, are some whose paths are seen in the first of these directions, and others in the second; whilst there are many more whose orbits are presented to us obliquely, so that in their revolution they change both

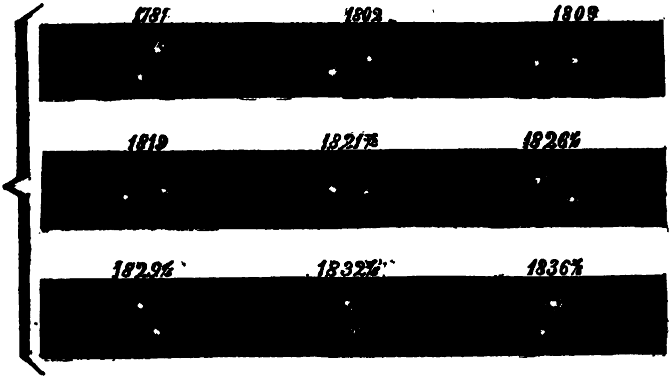


FIG. 152.

their distances and their angles of position. One of the first stars in which this peculiar revolution was observed by Sir W. Herschel is the one designated as ξ in the Great Bear; and the progressive changes it has since exhibited are represented in the accompanying diagram, from which it is evident that we can see the revolution almost in the first-named position; the distance varying but very little, whilst the angle of direction is continually changing. We observe that, after undergoing a nearly complete revolution, the two stars have come, in 1836, nearly into the same position which they had in 1781, when it was first registered by Sir W. Herschel; and by 1839 they would have returned into precisely the same relative positions, the period of their revolution being 58¼ years. This is nearly the shortest periodical revolution that has yet been observed among the stars thus connected, which are termed *binary* stars, to distinguish them from those which are merely visually *double*. The star η Coronæ, however, has a period of only 43⅓ years; and has far advanced in its second revolution, since its motion was first discovered by Sir W. Herschel. In general, however, the period is much longer; in γ Virginis it has been estimated at nearly 629 years; whilst in γ Leonis, it is not less than 1200.

527. Of all the binary stars yet observed, the former of these two is probably the most interesting, not only on account of the great length of its period, but also on account of the great variation in the apparent distance, and in the rapidity of motion, of the individuals composing it. They are of nearly equal lustre, and together appear like a star of the 4th magnitude. At the beginning of the last century, they were much wider apart than they are at present; and were, in fact, entered in the catalogues of the time as two distinct stars, being then separable with telescopes of very moderate power. Since that time they have been continually approaching, and are now so close that only a first-rate telescope will enable them to be separately distinguished; their appearance in any others being that of a single elongated star. Hence the plane in which they move must be seen by us nearly edgewise. It fortunately happens that Bradley, who was Astronomer Royal in 1718, noticed and recorded in the margin of one of his observation-books, the apparent direction of their line of junction, as being parallel to that of two remarkable stars of the same constellation; and this remark, casual and unimportant as it seemed, has been the means, together with the observations which have been made since the commencement of the present century, of enabling Sir J.

Herschel to determine the orbit with nearly as much precision as if we looked fully upon it.

528. In this manner it has been shown that the individuals composing a binary star have a motion round each other, or rather round their common centre of gravity (§. 120); and that they move in elliptic orbits, according to laws precisely the same as those which will be shown to govern the motions of our own planetary system,—a system which, in comparison with the vast universe thus opened to us, is immeasurably smaller than the minutest atom discerned by the microscope, when compared with the bulk of the globe we inhabit. If we estimate the distance of the individuals of the binary stars from each other, as not less than that of the sun from the nearest of the fixed stars (which we seem perfectly justified in doing), the rapid movement of the comet of 1680, which in one part of its revolution swept along at the rate of nearly a million of miles in an hour, must be as nothing to theirs.

529. The number of *double* stars, whose existence was noted, and whose positions were measured by Sir W. Herschel, amounted to upwards of 500; and this number has been since augmented to 2640, by the labours of his successors in this field of observation. A still further increase may be anticipated, from the observations of Sir J. Herschel at the Cape of Good Hope, which have not yet been made public. Of these, however, it *may* prove that only a small proportion are really *binary* stars,—that is, have a mutual revolution round each other. Professor Struve, of Dorpat, in a catalogue published a few years since, states that there are 58 in which such a change is certain, 39 in which it is probable, and 66 in which it is suspected; and he considers that we may assume, on tolerably good grounds, that, altogether, 101 double stars are entitled to be considered as *binary* combinations. It must not be imagined, however, that, because no motions have been detected in the others, they do not take place. For it must be remembered, how minute are the distances that have to be measured; and how many observations at distant intervals must be needed, to establish the fact of

the revolution in the case of those whose periods are long. It is now not much more than 55 years since measurements of this kind were first made; and scarcely 40 years since the probability of orbitual motion was first announced. Many of these stars may have a period so long, that this brief space is not sufficient to enable the least change to be detected in them, with our imperfect means of observation; and a century or more may elapse, before their motion shall have been ascertained beyond a doubt.

530. The differences of colour which manifest themselves among the Fixed Stars, are often displayed with remarkable vividness by the stars of these binary systems. The haziness of our atmosphere prevents these differences from being so evident in our climate, as they are in those countries where their light comes to the observer more brilliantly and uninterruptedly; but still a variety of hue is very distinguishable among the stars of the first magnitude, and can be discerned with a telescope in those of inferior brightness. These hues seem to change in the course of long periods of time. Thus, Sirius (the Dog-star) was celebrated by the ancients as a red star, but it is now brilliantly white. The contrast is remarkably seen in many of the binary stars; for wherever one of the pair possesses any peculiar hue, the other presents what is optically termed the *complementary* colour,—that is, the colour which, united with the other, will form white or colourless light.* Thus, if one of the stars be red, the other will have a green hue, resulting from the mixture of blue and yellow; or if one be green, the other will be red. On the other hand, if one of the stars be yellow, the other will be purple, from the mixture of red and yellow, and *vicè versâ*. Lastly, if one of the stars be blue, the other will be orange, from the mixture of red and yellow; and *vicè versâ*.

531. It has been suggested, that this phenomenon is the mere effect of contrast; proceeding from the same cause, as the dark spot which is seen on a piece of white paper, when the eyes are turned upon it after looking at the sun or some very lumi-

---

* See Treatise on OPTICS.

nous body,—or as the red spot on white paper, when we have been looking at a bright-green object. If this were true, the colour should be only exhibited by one of the stars, and the other should only show its peculiar tint when viewed at the same time with the first. But there are several double stars, in which this is certainly not the case, their distance being sufficiently great to enable us to look at them *separately* through the telescope; and it is then seen that each has its own proper colour, with which it impresses the eye as well when the other is absent as when it is present. "It may be more easily suggested in words," remarks Sir J. Herschel, "than conceived in imagination, what variety of illumination *two suns*—a red and a green, or a yellow and a blue one—must afford to a planet circulating about either; and what charming contrasts and grateful vicissitudes,—a red and a green day, for instance, alternating with a white one and with darkness,—might arise from the presence or absence of one or other, or both, above the horizon. Insulated stars of a red colour, almost as deep as that of blood, occur in many parts of the heavens; but no green or blue star (of any decided hue) has, we believe, ever been noticed, unassociated with a companion brighter than itself."

532. Combinations of *two* stars are not the only ones, however, in which this kind of union has now been ascertained. Guided by the clew which the researches of Sir W. Herschel afforded him, Prof. Struve has examined numerous sets of triple stars,—that is, of conjunctions of *three* bodies; and he has ascertained that the number of these is many times greater than could be accounted for, on the simple probability of their having the same visual direction. In several of them, such changes have already been recognised, as to lead to the belief—almost to the certainty—that they also have a motion round their common centre of gravity, and are subjected to the same laws with binary compounds. Even more complex systems have been discovered. Groups of four and even of five have been observed to present such appearances, as sanction the belief in their mutual relation; and the same view has been

extended with much probability to the interesting group of the Pleiades, which consists of 44 stars of the seventh and higher magnitudes, contained within a circular space of two degrees in diameter; for the probability of their merely optical coincidence can be proved to be so excessively small, as almost to approach an impossibility.

533. From combinations like these, we are naturally led to consider whether various stars of our firmament, distant from one another though they are, have any mutual connection and related motions. If our cluster could be regarded from that distance, at which it would present the aspect shown in Fig. 150, the probability of such a connection would appear much stronger than it does to us, who are placed in its interior, and know only the vast distances which separate its nearest members. Yet, by the law of mutual attraction, there would be a tendency of all the individual stars towards each other, and towards the centre of the whole mass; and such tendency could not be counteracted, except by giving to them all a movement around their common centre of gravity, like that which prevents the planets from being drawn towards the sun. Now, it is quite certain that many of the so-called Fixed Stars have sensibly changed their places in the heavens, since these were first recorded; and that our sun partakes of this general movement, —sweeping rapidly along, with his train of planets, towards a point in the constellation Hercules.* Many thousands of years must elapse, however, before the change of position can produce any sensible effects upon the appearance of the heavens from our globe, or upon its own condition,—so vast are the distances to be traversed; and it will only be by the combined observations of the many astronomers, who are now labouring with patience and disinterestedness for those who come after them, that such changes can be accurately known, and their laws determined.

534. We now quit our own cluster or firmament,—in which are to be included (as already explained) all the stars that we

---

* This motion, first announced by Sir W. Herschel, has been since denied; but its existence has recently been completely established.

can distinguish with the naked eye or with telescopes of moderate power, and which seems bounded by the Milky Way as by a band or zone,—and pass on to consider the evidence we have of the existence of other similar clusters, far beyond the limits of our own. There may be seen, in different parts of the heavens, even with the naked eye, luminous spots resembling stars surrounded by a bright halo, or comets without tails; and many of them *have* been mistaken for comets, until their fixed positions proved the mistake. These, when viewed with telescopes of moderate power, continue to present the same appearance; but when examined with more perfect instruments, they are seen to be composed of *clusters of distinct stars*, having more or less of the globular form. From the small amount of light which every individual star transmits, it is evident that the cluster must be far beyond the confines of our own group; since they are far inferior in brightness to the smallest stars of the Milky Way. But from the number which are crowded together in an area whose apparent size is very small, the light transmitted by the whole cluster is often sufficient to give it a considerable degree of brilliancy. This is especially the case towards the centre, where, of course, we shall see through the thickest part of the cluster (supposing it to be of a globular

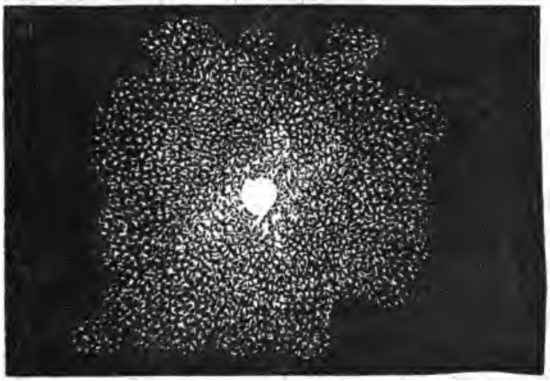


FIG. 153.

form), and where there will consequently be the most intense brightness. The appearance of one of the most beautiful of these clusters,* which are termed *nebulæ*, from the cloudy appearance they present until separated by very high magnifying powers into their component stars, is shown in the accompanying figure; which gives, however, but a very faint idea of its beauty. But it may generally be observed, as in this instance, that the brightness of the centre is greater than would result from the simply optical cause just mentioned; so that there must be a real crowding together of the stars towards the centre of the group. To attempt to count the stars composing such clusters, would be quite out of the question; but it is certain that many of them must contain ten or twenty thousand stars, compacted or wedged together into a round space, whose apparent size is not more than a tenth part of that covered by the moon.

535. There are numbers of other *nebulæ*, however, which require still more perfect telescopes for their separation into distinct stars; and which, therefore, may be regarded as at a vastly greater distance. These, of course, do not present the same degree of brilliancy to the eye; though many of them, by reason of their enormous size, are still distinguishable by it. Of this kind are the Magellanic Clouds of the southern hemisphere, which are so named after the celebrated voyager who first noticed them. They are two patches, which have the diffused luminousness of the Milky Way, but are very much fainter. They have recently been examined by Sir J. Herschel at the Cape of Good Hope; and he describes the larger of them as consisting of globular clusters and nebulæ of various sizes and degrees of condensation (or crowding); the space between them being filled up with a diffused luminosity forming a bright ground on which the other objects are scattered. In this he could not distinguish separate stars, even with his highest powers; but he believes it to be made up, like the rest, of distinct individuals, far more distant and therefore more indistinct. This bright ground, when

---

* This is the celebrated nebula in the constellation Hercules. It is visible to the naked eye; and in an ordinary night-glass it appears like a small round comet.

viewed with such a telescope, closely resembles the Milky Way, as seen by the naked eye; and it can scarcely be doubted, that, with still higher magnifying powers, it would be seen to consist of distinct stars. At present, therefore, it is in the condition termed by the astronomer *irresolvable*, since he cannot *resolve* or separate it into the parts of which it probably consists: but there is reason to believe that it *may* be resolved with still more perfect instruments. We shall find the contrary to be the case in regard to some other nebulous patches presently to be described (§. 538). One of the most remarkable circumstances in the constitution of these Magellanic Clouds, is the crowding together of many distinct clusters, and the curious form which one of them presents. This consists of a number of loops united in a kind of unclear centre or knot, like a bunch of ribbons disposed in what is called a "true lover's knot!"

536. The resolvable Nebulæ are scattered in great numbers through the heavens; and, from the different degrees of magnifying power which are required to make out their individual stars, there is good reason to believe that they are at varying distances from our own cluster. To an observer living in one of the bodies of which either of these clusters is composed, the appearance of the heavens will be determined by the arrangement of the stars in his own group. If it have the globular character, seen in Fig. 153, and he be situated near the centre of it, the number of stars in his near neighbourhood, and therefore of the first magnitude, will be very considerable; and these, as well as the other stars, will appear disposed with tolerable uniformity in different directions. To *him*, our cluster will present the form represented in Fig. 151; and he may perhaps speculate as to the appearance which would be exhibited to *us* by the bright band of stars, which encircles our group, and gives such a pleasing variety to the aspect of our firmament. Most of the resolvable nebulæ have a round or oval aspect;—their loose appendages and irregularities of form being as it were extinguished by the distance, and only the general figure of the more condensed parts being discernible.

537. But there is a very numerous class of nebulous objects

which cannot be resolved into distinct stars, even with the highest powers which the telescope at present possesses: these are termed *irresolvable* nebulæ. Now, from the regularity of the forms presented by some of these, and from other circumstances, astronomers have generally agreed to consider *them* also as clusters of stars, too far removed for the individuals to be distinguished. The reasonableness of this idea is evident from the fact, that they present appearances precisely resembling those of the resolvable nebulæ, when viewed with inferior telescopes,—[illegible] as were the sole instruments of astronomers less than [illegible]tury ago; and that [illegible] improvement in the [illegible] (and such are [illegible] taking place), enables [illegible] other of them to be [illegible]. To this class we are [illegible] to refer the very remarkable nebula shown in the [illegible]panying figure, which seems like a picture or fac-[illegible] of our own system hung up in space, and which has been [illegible] employed as an imaginary delineation of it.

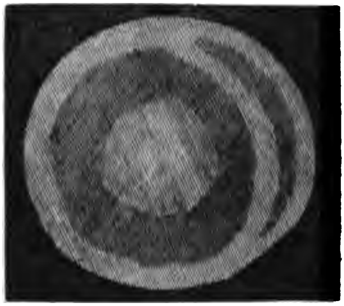


FIG. 154.

538. But it is also certain that a large number of these nebulous patches must have a different character; and that, even if we could view them from a comparatively short distance, we should not be able to distinguish any individual stars among them. One of the most remarkable of these is seen in the constellation Orion, where it occupies the middle part of the Sword. To the unaided eye it appears as a small star, having a somewhat indefinite hazy aspect. With a telescope of low power, it is seen that the light comes from a surface much larger than the mere point of a star; and when more highly magnified, this surface is seen to be of considerable extent and of strange irregular form. Now, the peculiarity of this nebula is its great size and brightness, combined with its complete irresolvableness;

for even with Sir W. Herschel's 40 foot telescope, it did not present the slightest indication of being composed of separate stars. To be thus irresolvable under the most powerful telescope, the stars in this nebula,—supposing it to have a constitution similar to that of the nebulous clusters already described,—must be placed at a distance from us far exceeding that of any of those resolvable nebulæ, and therefore quite inconceivable; and not even a milky light could be sent from it through so vast an interval, unless the stars which compose it were crowded together in a most improbable degree. Hence there can be little doubt, that this appearance results from a vast mass of self-luminous matter, which exists in the condition of a diffused vapour, floating in space, like the most delicate clouds which we distinguish in the flood of light sent upwards in a calm sunset. A similar nebula, also visible to the naked eye, and looking like a faint luminous spot upon the dark-blue of the firmament, may be seen in the Girdle of the constellation Andromeda.

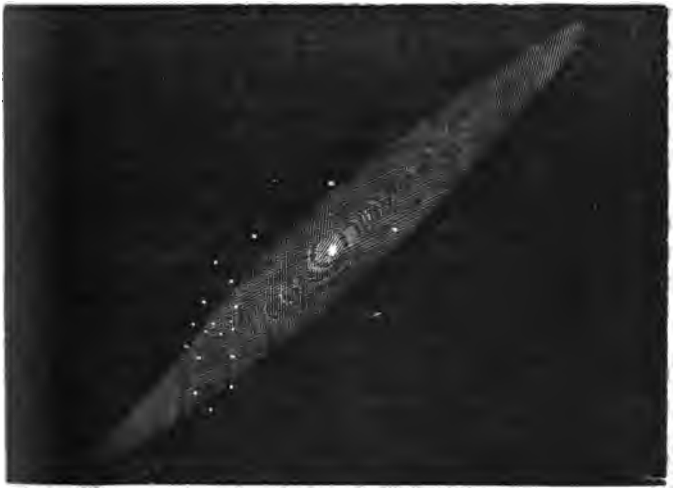


FIG. 155.—NEBULA IN ANDROMEDA.

539. Of the existence of this self-luminous or nebulou

matter, there are many other proofs. Numerous stars exist in the heavens, which do not present the definite appearance of the rest, but are encircled with a halo or dim atmosphere, and yet are evidently nothing else than *stars*,—the body being perfectly distinct in the centre, and the luminous atmosphere being so gradually shaded off, that it is impossible to suppose it to consist of an assemblage of distinct solid masses. It will be hereafter mentioned (Chap. XXII.) that, between stars having a very extensive atmosphere of this kind, with but an indistinct solid centre, and stars entirely destitute of it, and being (as it were) *all* centre, a regular series of gradations may be detected; which leads to the belief, that these nebulous stars are gradually undergoing a change, by the conversion of the luminous vapour into the solid state, so that the body is continually increasing in bulk, whilst the luminous atmosphere is diminishing in extent: and further, that there is a high degree of probability (to say the least) attendant upon the supposition, that *all* the solid masses, composing our own and other clusters, were originally in the condition of this luminous vapour, or nebulous matter.

540. These unresolved nebulæ, which are suspected to consist of patches of nebulous matter, not condensed into solid masses, are very numerous, and exhibit strange varieties of form. Many, like the nebula in Orion, present a large ill-defined surface, in which it is difficult to say where the centre of the greatest brightness is. Some appear to cling to stars, like wisps of cloud; whilst others exhibit the appearance of enormous rings, with a vacancy more or less complete in the centre. A very remarkable annular (ring-like) nebula, in the constellation Lyra, is described by Sir J. Herschel as having an opening which is not entirely dark, but is filled up with a faint hazy light, resembling fine gauze stretched over a hoop. Another nebula is mentioned by him as possessing the remarkable form of an hour-glass or dumb-bell; the bright matter being surrounded by a thin hazy atmosphere, so that the whole presents an oval form. It appears that double nuclei are not unfrequent, exhibiting all the varieties of distance, position, and relative brightness, with their counterparts the double stars. Now, as

single nebulæ, having a correspondence with these in size and appearance, are but rarely seen, it is extremely improbable that the neighbourhood of two such bodies should be apparent only; and it is still more improbable that they should touch, and in part overlap each other, without having any mutual connection. It is much more likely that they constitute systems, which are perhaps binary stars in process of formation; and they offer most interesting subjects for future inquiry.

541. No certain knowledge can be gained as to the constitution of the nebulæ, and the changes they undergo, until they have been watched through their different aspects during a long period; and in order that this may be accomplished, it is necessary to keep accurate records of their positions and appearances at different times,—a work of immense labour, which is only now begun. No fewer than 2000 nebulæ and clusters of stars were observed by Sir William Herschel, and their places determined by him. His son, Sir J. Herschel, commenced, in 1825, "the arduous and pious task" of revising his father's observations; and he published, in 1833, a list of 2500 nebulæ and clusters, of which 500 were new. Since that time, he has been engaged in the exploration of the Southern Hemisphere; and, when his observations shall have been arranged, a vast amount of novel information will doubtless be made public. To the exalted spirit in which he has undertaken this great work, let the following quotation bear testimony.—"How much is escaping us! How unworthy is it in them who call themselves philosophers, to let these great phenomena of nature—these slow but majestic manifestations of the power and glory of God—glide by unnoticed, and drop out of memory beyond reach of recovery, because we will not take the pains to note them in their unobtrusive and furtive passage,—because we see them in their every-day dress, and mark no sudden change; and conclude that all is dead, because we will not look for signs of life, and that all is uninteresting, because we are not impressed and dazzled."

542. The question naturally presents itself, when the analogy of the Stars and our Sun is considered, whether the latter partakes

of the nebulous character which has been mentioned as being exhibited by many of the former. There is a phenomenon, known under the name of the Zodiacal light, which is now generally regarded as leading to such a conclusion. It consists of a long train of faint light, of a conical form, which is left by the sun after setting, and is projected upwards on the sky. It is easily seen, after almost any clear sunset, in tropical climates; but in our comparatively hazy atmosphere it is not so readily distinguished; and it is only when the sun is in its most favourable position, which happens about the month of April, that it can be clearly seen, and then only on a clear evening. It is called the Zodiacal light, from its following nearly the course of the Ecliptic or sun's path (§. 547). We know that it extends on all sides of the sun; since it may be seen before he rises, as well as after he sets; and from these facts it may be certainly concluded, that it is produced by a thin self-luminous atmosphere surrounding the sun, and spread out, in the direction of his equator, into a lenticular* form, so that the edge of either half of it will appear like a cone. Its extent appears not to be limited by the orbit of Mercury, or even by that of Venus; and its character appears to be precisely that of the nebulous matter already alluded to, in a state of greater condensation. But although we have thus distinct proof that the Sun belongs to the class of nebulous stars, it is equally certain that it would scarcely appear to be surrounded by such a luminous halo, even when viewed from the nearest of the fixed stars with Herschel's largest telescope; since, as already stated, even the 190 millions of miles which make up the diameter of the earth's orbit, constitute a space which would be viewed from the nearest fixed star at an angle of less than a second, which is much less than that exhibited by the nebulous atmosphere of many of the stars. Hence we are justified in believing, that all the stars are surrounded by such an atmosphere, to a greater or less extent, even though we are unable to see the least indication of it;—a circumstance of which the importance will be obvious, when the theory of their formation is considered (Chap. XXII.).

---

* That is, like a lens or round disc of glass, convex or bulging on both sides.

543. One more question yet remains. Do our own group, and the clusters and nebulæ which we can see from it, make up the whole of the universe; or are these but a part of a system still more vast? Upon this question we can only speculate; and yet speculation seems justifiable. For, since every improvement of the telescope brings into view nebulæ, which, through their distance and consequent faintness, were previously invisible,—and resolves others, which were previously considered irresolvable, into distinct stars,—it would be evidently absurd to suppose, that the confines of the universe have yet been explored; and scarcely less absurd to imagine, that man, in his present state of being, and with his limited powers, can ever reach them. Now, it is remarkable that these clusters and nebulæ are not by any means uniformly diffused through the heavens, but that they seem to form distinct bands; so that we must regard our own cluster, and its fellows, not as scattered confusedly through space, but as having a certain definite arrangement, that shall give to the whole assemblage a distinct form. If it could be viewed from a distance, therefore,—if the eye could be removed to a point as far beyond the furthest visible nebula, as that nebula is from the most remote on the other side of this vast assemblage,—it would present an appearance corresponding with that of the Magellanic Cloud. May not the wonderful appearance, then, of this filmy spot (§. 535) be due to its similar constitution; and may we not regard it as including within itself numbers of distinct clusters, every one of them composed of vast multitudes of suns and systems like our own?

544. And if this be regarded as probable, who shall venture to assign a number to these vast assemblages, or to say that he has thus measured the length and the breadth, surveyed the height, or fathomed the depth, of ALMIGHTY POWER? Our own planetary system, comprising as it does a sweep of nearly *six thousand millions* of miles in circumference, is but a speck, almost immeasurable on account of its minuteness, when viewed from the nearest of those luminaries which sparkle in our skies, like brilliants studding the dark mantle of night. The whole assemblage of these luminaries, bound together by a common

tie, and encircled by the glowing zone whose distance reduces its brilliance to the soft and gentle light of the Milky Way, constitutes an isolated cluster, which would appear but as a luminous speck in the firmament, when seen from even the nearest of similar groups, and but as a filmy spot, when viewed even with the most powerful telescopes from the more remote. And all these clusters are themselves part of one great system, bound together by common ties, glowing with the same light, their movements regulated by the same laws,—and thus proclaiming to the mind of man the unity of creative design. And how is this conviction strengthened, when we find that even this is not the highest point from which we can survey the universe,—that we can look even beyond that vast system of which we form so insignificant a part, and discern the impress of that same design in what we might almost term a different universe,—so vast must it be,—so completely does it seem isolated from our own! And even this is probably but one out of many, formed upon the same plan, yet each differing from the rest, as this from ours.

545. It has been well said, that truth is often more wonderful than fiction; and that reason may advance, where the imagination dare not follow. So is it here. For what imagination *could* have ventured so bold a flight, if reason had not pointed the way? The philosopher, engaged in searching for the laws which govern the phenomena of nature, and gaining but a glimpse of the uniformity of plan which is to be discovered amidst their countless variety, sees there displayed an order, a beauty, a harmony, a majesty, more glorious than anything which the fictions of the poet can produce, — because *real.* It is, then, the legitimate use, the noblest employment, of our intellectual powers, to apply them to the attainment of those lofty views of the Creator's works, which shall enable us to see them in some measure as He sees them,—to survey them as parts of one vast and harmonious scheme,—instead of looking upon them (as from a less elevated position we are compelled to do) as insulated spots, beautiful in themselves like the oases of the desert, but connected by no plan that embraces them all and affords the guiding clue to their diversified wonders.

546. Is it not thus that we are led to the highest conception of Infinite power, wisdom, and love, of which our finite minds are capable?—POWER, that has filled all space with the creatures of its hand, so endlessly diversified in their structure and mode of existence, that the mind would not be able to follow them through their varieties, were it not for the unity of plan that pervades the whole:—WISDOM, that has arranged that whole with the most consummate harmony and perfection, attaining every end by means that approve themselves, even to our limited comprehension, as the most simple and the best adapted that could be employed:—LOVE, that in all has provided for the greatest amount of happiness and enjoyment of which each living creature is susceptible,—giving to some the pleasures of earthly existence, which, however short-lived and transient in our estimation, are to them the height of felicity,—and to man, whom the Creator hath made in His own likeness, upon whom He hath stamped His own image and superscription, the power of preparing himself to enter upon a state, where, "disencumbered of a thousand obstructions which his present situation throws in his way, endowed with acuter senses and higher faculties, he shall drink deep at that fountain of beneficent wisdom, for which the slight taste obtained on earth has given him so keen a relish."

"There is a land where everlasting suns
Shed everlasting brightness,—where the soul
Drinks from the living streams of love, that roll
By God's high throne!—Myriads of glorious ones
Bring their accepted offering! Oh how blest
To look from this dark prison to that shrine—
T' inhale one breath of Paradise divine—
And enter into that eternal rest
Which waits the sons of God."

"If the eye of man is here permitted to behold such dazzling wonders,—if his mind can soar into such depths of space, and grasp such immensity of time,—what will be the world which *eye* hath not seen, and which the human imagination cannot conceive! What will man be when he is perfected and become as the angels in heaven!"

CHAPTER XVI.

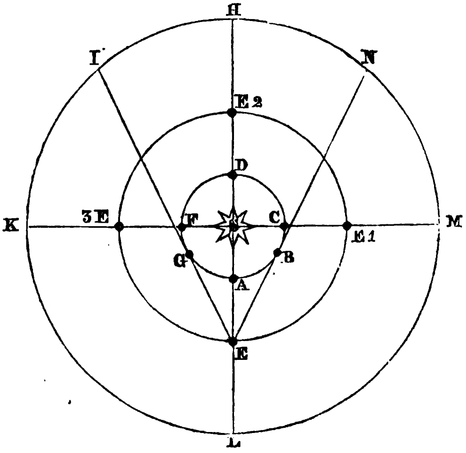
OF THE APPARENT AND REAL MOTIONS OF THE SUN AND PLANETS.

547. Besides their daily rotation around the earth, the Sun and Planets appear to have motions of their own; so that their place among the fixed stars is continually changing. The ancient astronomers were well acquainted with these, so far at least as they could be ascertained by their imperfect instruments of measurement; and they framed an ingenious theory to account for them. The idea of the sun's daily motion around the earth, along with the fixed stars and planets, being once admitted, it was not difficult to suppose that he travels a little more slowly than the stars, so as daily to shift his apparent place among them; by which *he* makes only 365 revolutions round the earth, whilst *they* perform 366 (§. 454). They accounted for this independent motion by imagining, that, whilst the sun is carried round the earth by the general motion of the starry sphere (§. 455), he has a sphere of his own, which travels in the contrary direction, and makes one revolution round the earth in a year. They observed that his path among the fixed stars (determined in the manner already mentioned) is a very regular one, and forms a circle in the starry sphere, which does not correspond to its equator (that is, is not everywhere equally distant from its poles), but is inclined to it, being considerably nearer the north pole in one part of its course, and as much nearer to the south pole in another. This path they called the *Ecliptic;* and they observed that the points where the Ecliptic crosses the Equator (see Fig. 160) are those at which the sun is, when the length of the day and night is equal; whilst the length of the

day is greater (in the part of the globe to the north of the Equator) when the sun is in the northern half of the Ecliptic, at which time he rises higher in the sky; the length of the night being greater whilst he is traversing the southern half of the Ecliptic. The belt of stars above and below the sun's path was termed by them the Zodiac; and it was divided by them into twelve constellations (§. 500), which were termed the *Signs of the Zodiac.* These are,—*Aries* (the Ram), *Taurus* (the Bull) *Gemini* (the Twins), *Cancer* (the Crab), *Leo* (the Lion), *Virgo* (the Virgin), *Libra* (the Scales), *Scorpio* (the Scorpion), *Sagittarius* (the Archer), *Capricornus* (the Goat), *Aquarius* (the Water-bearer), and *Pisces* (the Fishes). The list may, perhaps, be best remembered by the following doggerel lines—

The Ram, the Bull, the heav'nly Twins,
And next the Crab the Lion shines,
  The Virgin and the Scales,
The Scorpion, Archer, and He-Goat,
The Man that holds the Watering-pot,
  And Fish with glittering tails.

548. When the idea of the *daily* revolution of the sun round the earth was abandoned by Copernicus, it was at once perceived by him, that the *annual* motion of the sun was alike improbable; and that his apparent change of place may really be accounted for, quite as satisfactorily, and much more probably, by regarding the sun as fixed, and the earth as revolving



. 15 .

round him. This may be easily proved. For, in the accompanying figure, let S be the sun, fixed in the centre; and let E, E 1, E 2, and E 3, be four positions of the earth, revolving around him. Now, when the earth is at E, the *apparent* place of the sun in the Ecliptic (which is represented by the outer circle) is found by drawing a line from E through S; and this line, terminating in H, marks this as the position of the sun among the fixed stars. But supposing the earth to travel onwards to E 1, the sun's place, found in the same manner, will be at K. When the earth has advanced to E 2, the sun will have shifted his position to L; as the earth travels onwards to E 3, the sun travels to M; and by the time it has reached its first position E, the sun reaches *its* first position H. Now, if we imagine, with the ancient astronomers, that the earth is at S, and that E, E 1, E 2, E 3, are different positions of the sun, we shall not see any difference in the sun's apparent path among the stars; except that his place at any given time will be in a part of the heavens opposite to that in which he would be seen from the earth, if their positions were as at first described. For, to an observer at S, the sun, when at E, will appear to be at L; when at E 1, he will appear at M; when at E 2, he will appear at H; and when at E 3, he will appear at K. The time and direction of his apparent revolution is the same in either case.—In deciding this question, therefore, we must be influenced by other considerations, such as the relative sizes of the earth and sun, and the analogy of the other planets, which can be proved to move round him; by these it is not left in the least degree doubtful, that the apparent annual revolution of the sun among the stars is caused by a real annual revolution of the earth around him.

549. The apparent paths described by the planets (of which *five* only were known to the ancients,—namely, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn), do not differ widely from that of the Sun; but they are executed in different times. Thus Mars requires nearly two of our years to perform one complete revolution; Jupiter nearly twelve; and Saturn nearly thirty. Hence it was imagined that each of them was fixed in a different

sphere, which was daily carried round the earth with that of the stars, but which had a contrary movement of its own, like that of the sun. Judging from the times of these movements, they formed a correct idea of the relative distances of these bodies from us. The Moon, whose revolution is performed in a month, they considered to be the nearest; they supposed Mercury to be the next, then Venus, and then the Sun,—their times being less than his; beyond the sun they placed Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. The planets nearer than the sun were called *inferior;* the more remote, *superior;* and these terms are still employed. But it was soon observed that the motions of the Planets have not the regularity which characterises those of the Sun and Moon; for that, instead of always proceeding onwards in their course among the stars, they sometimes appear stationary, and sometimes actually seem to move backwards for a short time—then becoming stationary again, and afterwards moving forwards again. The ancient astronomers were much perplexed to account for these irregular motions; and invented many ingenious methods of explaining them. They set out upon the principle that all the heavenly bodies move in *circles*,—the circle being considered the most perfect figure; and they endeavoured, by combining together two or more circular movements, to show that the planets might continue to execute these without interruption, whilst appearing to us to move forwards, backwards, or to remain stationary. Into the details of this explanation it is not desirable here to enter, since its falsity has been completely proved; but it may be mentioned, that so complex was the system of motions thus required to account for the irregularities of *each* planet, and so unlikely did it seem that such an apparatus could execute its movements without jarring or disturbance,—that Alphonso, king of Castile, having been instructed in these cumbrous mysteries, is recorded to have said,—"If I had been the Creator of the universe, I could have made it better."—To such low ideas of a creative power and wisdom does a false philosophy lead.

550. The greatest difficulties of the early astronomers re-

spected the planets Mercury and Venus, which are never seen at any great distance from the sun, and seem to vibrate (as it were) within a limited range on either side of him. There are traces in the writings, even of those who believed in the motion of the sun round the earth, of an idea that Mercury and Venus really revolve round the sun, and are carried by him in his annual and daily rotation round the earth. Copernicus saw the truth of this idea; and pointed out that, if combined with the idea of the earth's revolution around the sun, it would reconcile all the principal irregularities observed in their motions. Thus in Fig. 156, let the circle A B C D F G represent the orbit of one of the inferior planets, S being the position of the sun, and E, E 1, E 2, E 3 the orbit of the earth. Now, supposing that, while the earth is at E, the inferior planet, Mercury or Venus, is at A, it will then be in the same line with the sun, so that, if it be seen from the earth, it would occupy a corresponding part, H, of the Ecliptic. It would be invisible to us, however, in consequence of its bright or illuminated face being turned completely away from the earth (§. 553); and instead of being exactly *on* the ecliptic, it would be probably a little above or a little below it. But suppose the planet to be in the position B, it would then be seen at N, or to the west of the sun; it would therefore set before the sun, and also rise before him, being thus a *morning* star. Now, this position is the one in which the planet is most removed from the sun; for it is easy to see that no line can be drawn from E through any point in the circle A B C D F G, which shall diverge from the line E S H passing through the sun, at a wider angle. Supposing the planet, in its progress through its orbit, to advance to D, it will then have returned to the apparent position H; and its motion from N to H, being in the same direction as its real revolution in its orbit, is termed *direct*. Continuing still to revolve round the sun, it comes to G, and is then seen at I; it is then east of the sun, and consequently rises and sets later than the sun, or is an evening star. In its passage through the part G A of its orbit, its apparent place again approaches that of the sun; and its motion among the stars from I to H, being now in the direction contrary to that of its real revolution, is termed *retrograde*. The retrograde movement continues, until the planet reaches B and is seen at N; after which it returns by a direct movement to H, and thence to I.

551. Now, in this description it will be seen that we have not taken account of the earth's motion, and have therefore considered the place of the sun as fixed at H. The vibration of the planet on either side of the sun will be exactly as first represented; but as the sun's place among the stars is itself changing, the inferior planets will go forward (as it were) along with him; and thus, instead of being limited to the small portion I N of the whole ecliptic, they will in time traverse the whole of it,—each retreat being shorter than the advance which precedes and follows it. This will be understood from Fig. 157. For let S represent the sun, as before; let the inner circle represent the orbit of Mercury, the middle circle that of the earth, and the outer circle the ecliptic. The spots E, E 1, E 2, &c. upon the orbit of the earth represent its various positions, corresponding to those of Mercury, which are indicated by the spots 1, 2, 3, &c. upon the inner circle. During the time that the earth moves from E 1 to E 2, Mercury passes from 1 to 2; in the same manner as the earth moves from E 2 to E 3, Mercury passes from 2 to 3; and thus, whilst the earth moves from 1 to 8, Mercury executes a whole revolution, and begins another. Now, when the earth is at E 1 and

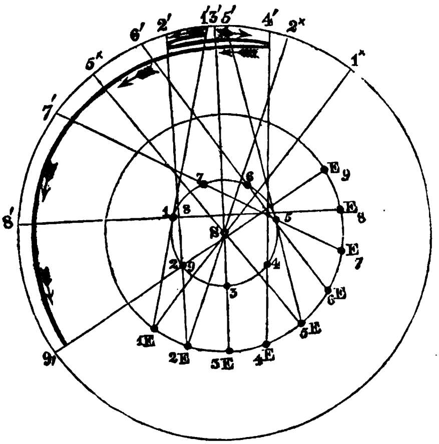


FIG. 157.

Mercury at 1, the place of the latter in the sky will be at 1′ in the outer circle; and as the apparent place of the sun, as viewed from the earth, is at 1 *, we see Mercury at his greatest distance to the east of the sun. But by the time that Mercury has advanced to 2, the earth will have moved to E 2; the apparent movement of Mercury, therefore, will be from 1′ to 2′; and this being in the direction of his real revolution (or from west to east), is a *direct* motion. At the same time, the apparent place of the sun will have changed from 1 * to 2 *; and as his motion is more rapid than that of Mercury, the latter will seem to have approached him. As Mercury advances to 3, the earth advances to E 3; and by this change in their relative positions, there is a change in the apparent position of Mercury from 2′ to 3′; and this movement, being from east to west, is *retrograde*. At the same time, the sun has been regularly advancing in his course, so that his apparent position comes to be the same as that of Mercury, namely 3′; and by this double change Mercury has been gradually approaching the sun, and at last comes into the same line with him, which is termed Mercury's *conjunction*. The retrograde movement of Mercury continues, whilst he is travelling from 3 to 4, the earth at the same time changing its place from E 3 to E 4; and as the sun continues to move steadily in the opposite direction, they again begin in appearance to separate from one another, Mercury being now, however, to the *westward* of the sun. When Mercury has reached 5, he will be seen at 5′, having commenced his return or *direct* movement; and the sun, as seen from the earth at E 5, will have the apparent place 5 *; so that Mercury is now at his greatest distance on the western side of the sun. His direct movement continues, as he passes through the positions 6, 7, 8, whilst the earth changes to E 6, E 7, and E 8; when at 8, he really attains the point from which he started; but he is seen in a very different place among the stars, in consequence of the changed position of the earth. During this movement, the sun also continues to change his position in the ecliptic, in the same direction; but Mercury's apparent motion is quicker; so that when Mercury reaches 9, he is seen at 9′, which is almost exactly the same point at which the sun would be seen from the earth at E 9. Hence Mercury is again in *conjunction*, though he is on the side contrary to his previous one, where he was between the earth and the sun. By a continuation of the same change, we should find that Mercury, still gaining in his apparent motion upon the sun, will again become east of him, and will afterwards commence a retrograde movement, which will soon give place to a direct one, as before. The path through which we have traced Mercury is indicated by the bent line drawn within the outer circle.

552. Now, by applying the same mode of reasoning to the superior planets, Copernicus showed that *their* apparent irregularities could be accounted for as simply. For in the accompanying figure, let S, as before, represent the sun, and E, E 1, E 2, &c. the various positions of the earth; whilst P, P 1, P 2, &c. represent the corresponding positions of Mars or Jupiter, moving more slowly in a larger orbit. It will be seen that the apparent places of the planet as seen from the earth, will be those indicated on the outer circle or ecliptic by P′, P′ I, P′ 2, &c.; and that it thus performs a movement which is *retrograde* between P′ 2 and P 3, and *direct* elsewhere. The extent and rapidity of the retrograde movement are greater, as the distance of the planet from the earth is less; hence it is more remarkable in Mars than in Jupiter, and in Jupiter than in Saturn. The superior planets are not confined to the neighbourhood of the sun, however, as Mercury and Venus are; but are sometimes seen in a part of the heavens exactly opposite to him. Thus suppose A, Fig. 156, to be the position of the earth, and E

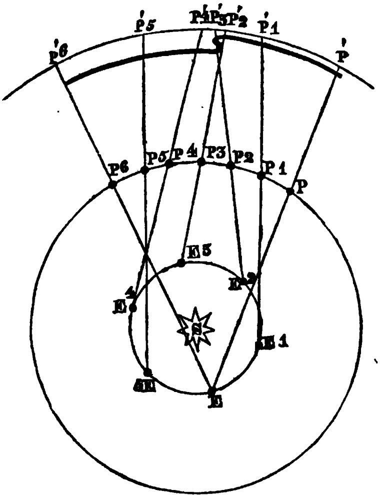


FIG. 158.

to be that of Mars or Jupiter, the sun will be seen at H, whilst Mars or Jupiter is seen at L. It is then said to be in *opposition*.

553. The doctrine of the earth's double motion, long after it was first propounded by Copernicus, was strenuously opposed by those who called themselves philosophers. Some of the objections brought against it were of a nature which, in the present day, we should consider as most absurd. But there was one which seemed more important, even to Copernicus himself. This was the supposed fact, that Mercury and Venus always present to us round and fully illuminated discs; whereas, if they revolve round the sun, in the manner supposed by Copernicus, and derive their light from him, they ought to present a series of *phases* or changes of appearance, resembling those exhibited by the moon. Thus in the accompanying diagram, let E be the position of the earth, and let V 1, V 2, V 3, &c. be various positions of the planet Venus in her revolution round the sun. The dark portion of each small circle shows that part of the planet which, not being illuminated by the sun, is invisible to us; whilst the unshaded portion shows that which is illuminated, and of which we shall see more or less according to our position. The lines drawn across these circles show the boundary of the portion of the planet's globe, that is seen from our earth at E. Now, when Venus is at V 1, the whole of her illuminated side is turned directly towards the earth, and her disc should be round, like that of the moon at full. As she passes towards V 2, V 3, and V 4, however, we gradually see less and less of her illuminated side; and she should appear at first gibbous, then a half-circle, and then horned, just as the moon does. When she arrives at V 5, her dark

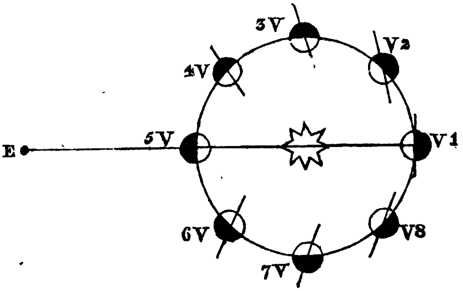


FIG. 159.

side is entirely turned towards us, and she should then be completely invisible; but she should reappear, on the other side of the sun, in a form like that of the new moon, and should go through a series of changes resembling hers, until she again arrives at the full.

554. Now, all this, to any one who gives attention to the subject, is a necessary consequence of the system of Copernicus; and so far from attempting to dispute the fact, he contented himself with replying, that it would be perceived to be so, if ever we had the means of seeing the discs of these planets more clearly. His prediction was most signally confirmed; for soon after his death the telescope was invented; and one of the first astronomical discoveries made with it, was that very series of phases, the supposed absence of which had been the most important objection to his doctrine, but which thus afforded to it them ost triumphant confirmation. It is only during a part of the revolution of Venus, however, that these phases can be observed; for when she approaches the sun too nearly, she is drowned (as it were) in his flood of light, and her form cannot be distinguished. This is still more the case with Mercury; whose apparent distance from the sun is never so great as that of Venus, the orbit in which he moves being much narrower.

555. The doctrine of Copernicus thus gradually prevailed, and its simplicity came to be appreciated. An attempt was made by Tycho Brahe, an eminent Danish astronomer, to combine the idea of Copernicus with the ancient system; by supposing that the earth remains fixed in the centre of the system, and that the planets revolve, not round it, but round the sun, and are thus carried with him in his annual course round the earth. This idea never extensively gained credit, however; and it seems to have been only adopted by Tycho Brahe, because he perceived the impossibility of accounting for the motions of the planets upon the ancient system, and yet was not prepared to give it up for the simple doctrine of Copernicus—*his* mind, like that of other less enlightened men of the time, being imbued with the idea of the earth's fixity, to question which seemed to be striking at the root of all knowledge.

556. It is evident, from what has been said, that all the irregularities of the apparent motions of the planets are thus explained by the simple idea of their revolution round the sun, combined with the motion of the earth; and that, instead of the cumbrous machinery with which the ancient astronomers were obliged to suppose every part of their system to be loaded, we can view it with Copernicus, as a simple but majestic whole. By carefully observing the places of the planets, as seen from the earth, we can determine those in which they would be seen from the sun, with as much accuracy as if we were ourselves really viewing them from the centre of the whole system; and can thus appreciate the real uniformity of their revolutions, and the simplicity of the principle by which these are governed.

557. A more striking analogy has scarcely ever, perhaps, been pointed out, between the changes in the world of matter and in the world of mind, than that which the profound and excellent Hartley has suggested, between the movements of the solar system, as viewed by the terrestrial astronomer, and the operations of God's moral government, as it manifests itself to our present imperfect observation. There is no thinking person, it may probably be affirmed, who has not at some time or other found it difficult to reconcile with his idea of the infinite benevolence of the Deity, the pain, guilt, and wretchedness, which he sees in the world around him;—who has not felt disposed to murmur or repine at the dispensations of Providence, as they affect himself, or those in whom he feels the deepest interest;—or who has not experienced some despondency, when the best-laid schemes (as they appeared), designed by motives of pure benevolence, to promote the welfare of the human race, have proved abortive, and the social condition of the world has appeared rather to be retrograding than progressing. Those who have learned, by the study of astronomy, how from a perplexing and imperfect, because a distorted view, a system replete with beauty and harmony may be discovered, simply by placing ourselves in its centre, and viewing every movement as it would be *there* seen, should attempt to carry the same idea into their contemplations of the more obscure and difficult scheme of God's

moral government. "We ought," as Hartley finely observes, "to suppose ourselves in the centre of the system; and to try, as far as we are able, to reduce all apparent retrogradations to real progressions."

558. And those who have most calmly watched, and most quietly waited, for the appointments of Providence, have testified most abundantly that such is the actual result of experience,—that out of darkness has shone marvellous light,—that out of perplexity a straight path has been revealed,—that out of the guilt or misery of the few have arisen the elements of happiness to many,—and that out of the apparent retrogradations in the condition of mankind, have sprung the elements of its most rapid progressions. By dwelling on such views, the mind becomes habituated to them; and that entire conviction of the perfect benevolence of the Deity is obtained, which leads to an implicit reliance on his paternal goodness, even in the seasons of greatest darkness and despondency. "And thus," continues Hartley, "all difficulties relating to the Divine attributes will be taken away; God will be infinitely powerful, knowing, and good, in the most absolute sense, if we consider things as they appear to Him. It is the greatest satisfaction to the mind, thus to approximate to its first conceptions concerning the Divine goodness, and to answer that endless question,—why not less misery and more happiness?—in a language which is plainly analogous to all other authentic language, though it cannot yet be felt by us, on account of our present imperfection, and of the mixture of our good with evil."

559. The same idea may be carried out in the formation of our own rules of conduct. "With respect to benevolence, or the love of our neighbour," says Hartley, "it may be observed that this can never be free from selfishness, till we take our stand in the Divine Nature, and view everything from thence, and in the relation which it bears to God. If the relation which it bears to ourselves be made the point of view, our prospect must be narrow, and the appearance of what we see, distorted."

Inclination of the Orbits of the Planets.

560. From what has been stated of the cause of the sun's apparent path among the stars, it will be evident that the Ecliptic is that circle in the starry sphere, in which the earth would appear to move, if seen from the sun; and that a plane or level surface, passed through the earth's orbit, and carried out indefinitely, would reach this line. Now it has also been mentioned, that the planets do not move exactly through the same path with the sun, but are sometimes a little above it, and sometimes below. The reason of this is, that their orbits are not upon the same plane or level with that of the earth, but are more or less *inclined* to it. The meaning of this term is shown in the accompanying figure, which represents the orbits of two planets revolving round the sun, and viewed *aslant*, that their relative positions may be better seen. Let A E B F represent the ecliptic, or orbit of the earth; whilst *c e d f* represents the orbit of Mercury or Venus, the end *c* being raised considerably above the plane or level of the earth's orbit, whilst the end *d* dips as much below it, the points *e* and *f* being on the same level. Their relative positions will be better understood, by carrying out the orbit *c e d f*, until it becomes as large as the other; and it will then be represented by C E D F. Thus it is seen that the plane of one orbit cuts the plane of the other in the line E *e* S *f* F; this line always passes through the centre. The angle which the two planes make with each other, is called the *inclination*. Correctly speaking, either orbit might be said to be inclined to the other; but it is convenient to refer all of them to that of the Earth as a common standard. Hence the inclinations of the orbits of the different planets are expressed in reference to the Ecliptic.

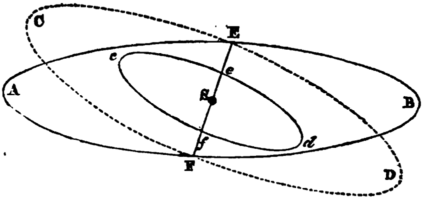


FIG. 160.

561. As it is only at the two points, *e* and *f*, that the plane

of one orbit is the same with that of the other, so it is only when the two planets happen to be at the same time on these corresponding points of their respective orbits, that they will actually come into the same line. For suppose the earth to be at B, whilst Mercury is at *d*, he will be seen from the earth not *upon* the sun, but *below* him, though in the same part of the ecliptic. Or, again, let the earth be at A, and Mercury at *c*, he will then be seen *above* the sun, though in the same part of the ecliptic. And when the planet is on the other side of the sun, as at *c* when the earth is B, or at *d* when the earth is at A, it will not be hidden behind the sun, but will be seen above or below him. But when the earth is at or near one of the points E or F, and Mercury is also at or near one of the points *e* or *f*, (which are called the *nodes* of his orbit,) he will either be seen as a black spot upon the sun's disk, or will be obscured behind it, according as he is between the earth and sun, or beyond the latter. The apparent passage of Mercury or Venus over the sun's disk, which is called a *transit*, is obviously a phenomenon that can occur but rarely; since many revolutions of both may happen, before they will be at or near the nodes together. It is obvious that no *transits* of the superior planets can occur; but the earth, being an inferior planet to Mars, Jupiter, &c., will perform occasional transits to *them*.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE LAWS GOVERNING THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BODIES COMPOSING THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

562. "WHAT is a law of nature?"—is a question which may be appropriately put, at the commencement of the exposition, to which we have next to proceed, of those governing principles whose operation we trace in the movements of the heavenly bodies. Yet the answer to it will be best given, after we have traced the steps by which these principles have been attained. By those who watched these movements, it was early perceived that an order and regularity prevail among them. The uniform motions of the Stars, which vary only in the times of their rising and setting, with the place of the sun among them, must have been remarked in the very earliest times. The Sun daily rises in the east, and sets in the west; his path through the heavens, though altered in each succeeding circuit, is yet but a repetition of that which he took a twelvemonth previously; and we may predict with certainty, that it will be traversed with the same exactitude, at every future return of the same season. Though the "changes of the Moon" have passed into a proverb, yet in these variations is the influence of law and order yet more obvious,—so exactly do they recur, with such positiveness may they be predicted. Even the less frequent phenomena which are dependent upon some of the finer peculiarities of her motion, and which seem to occur with no regularity—those, for instance, of eclipses—are reduced, by patient and long-continued observation, to a code of no inferior certainty; so that even the Chaldean shepherds, who were completely ignorant of the mode in which they were regulated, were enabled to predict them, for a

long series of years beforehand, with considerable accuracy. So, again, with regard to the movements of the Planets:—although many apparent irregularities exist, which, with the wrong conception formerly entertained in regard to the central position of the earth, gave rise to great difficulty, yet in all ages there has been a settled idea, that they are capable of being accounted for on fixed and determinate principles. Even Comets—those strange and wandering lustres, which seem almost to connect our system with the universe beyond—were not altogether excluded from this idea of regularity, by the more sagacious of the earlier astronomers; although regarded by the vulgar but as portents of the Divine wrath, significant of war, pestilence, or famine.

563. More attentive observation of these movements led, as we have seen, to a clearer and more accurate conception of the mode in which they take place. The earth, by the followers of Copernicus, was no longer regarded as the centre of the system, but as one of its subordinates; and the simple idea that the planets, instead of revolving around the earth, move, like her, around the sun, was sufficient to explain a large number of the apparent irregularities, and to increase the belief in the simplicity of the laws by which the movements are controlled. For this idea once properly applied, showed that, however regular and exact the movements of the planets around the sun, they *must* present irregularities when viewed from a body which, like our earth, is itself out of the centre of the system. But Copernicus still entertained the idea that the heavenly bodies move in circles, and at a uniform rate; and he could not satisfactorily account for certain irregularities which presented themselves, after all needful allowance had been made for the difference between real and apparent motion. The discovery of the cause of these was reserved for Kepler, who had early imbibed the doctrines of Copernicus, and who devoted the energies of his powerful mind to the search for the laws governing the planetary motions.

Kepler's Laws.

564. After many ingenious speculations, which he abandoned when they were proved to be erroneous, as easily as he

had constructed them (a rare virtue in a philosopher, but that which every one ought to possess), Kepler became acquainted with the mass of valuable observations which had been collected by Tycho Brahe; and selecting from them those which related to the planet Mars, he applied himself with the greatest diligence to discover his true orbit, or the path he describes in space around the sun. His perseverance was crowned with success; for, after a patient and laborious investigation, he succeeded in proving that, if we regard the orbit of Mars as an *ellipse* or oval, instead of a circle, we shall be able to account for *all* the variations in its observed positions. Extending the same mode of inquiry to the orbits of the other planets, Kepler showed that they also are elliptical; and so far as the orbits of their satellites have been investigated, the same rule holds good in regard to them. It might have been predicted, then, with tolerable certainty, that all planets move round the sun, and all satellites round their primaries, in obedience to this law; and it has been found to hold good most completely, in regard to the five new planets, and the numerous satellites, discovered since the time of Kepler. But he could only state the general fact, without assigning any reason for it; and we shall find that it was reserved for Newton to give that proof of the necessity of this form of the orbit, as the result of the primary laws of motion, which alone could properly confer upon it the character of a general principle.

565. The forms of the orbits of most of the planets depart little from that of the circle; that is to say, although elliptical or oval, yet the oval is not a long one—or, in other words, its eccentricity is not great. The orbits of the comets, on the other hand, are extremely long ellipses; and thus we have, as it were, two extremes in the form of the paths of bodies belonging to the solar system, in each of which the same law holds good. The place of the Sun, in all these cases, is not in the *centre* of the ellipse (C, Fig. 161) which is the point where its longest and shortest diameters, P P 6 and A B, cut each other; but in one of the points, S, F, which are termed the *foci*. Hence in a very elliptical orbit, the sun will be much nearer one extremity than

the other; and even in an ellipse so little eccentric as that of the earth's orbit, the variation between the least and greatest distances (S P and S P 6) is no less than three millions of miles. The *mean* distance, which is the one usually referred to when the distance of a planet from the sun is mentioned, is the average between the longest and shortest, and would be represented by the line S B, Fig. 161; which, by a property of the ellipse, is equal to half the long diameter.

566. It was found, however, by Kepler, that although the *places* of the planets could be thus exactly accounted for, and their courses predicted, there was an irregularity in their *times* of movement, which was inconsistent with the idea of their having an equal velocity in different parts of their orbit. He observed that, when in the part nearest the sun, they moved with much greater rapidity than when at their greatest distance; and that, after passing their *perihelion** or nearest point, their motion was gradually retarded until they reached the *aphelion*† or furthest point; after passing which it was gradually accelerated until the perihelion was again reached. Kepler then applied himself most diligently to discover what general principle might be found to govern these varieties of movement; and his perseverance was again rewarded with complete success. The law which he ascertained to govern the rate of motion of every planet in every part of its orbit, and which has been since found applicable to those newly-discovered planets whose orbits present such varieties of form as completely to test its accuracy,—and not only to these, but to comets moving in orbits far more eccentric,—is extremely simple, and may be thus very briefly expressed in mathematical language:—*The radius vector moves over equal areas in equal times.* To the readers of this treatise, however, an explanation of this law, as well as a simple statement of it, is necessary; and it will, it is hoped, be readily comprehended by the aid of the accompanying diagram, which represents an ellipse more eccentric than the orbits of most of the planets. Of this ellipse, S is one of the foci; and it consequently repre-

---

* From two Greek words, meaning *near* the *sun*.

† From two Greek words, meaning *away from* the *sun*.

sents the position of the sun. Each of the lines S P, S P 1, S P 2, &c. drawn from S to points in the ellipse, is termed a *radius vector*. By these lines, the whole area or surface of the ellipse is divided into smaller portions, each bounded by two straight lines and a part of the curve. Now these lines are so drawn in the diagram, that the area included between the lines S P and S P 1 is exactly equal to that included between S P 1 and S P 2; although the distance along the curve P 1 P 2 is much less than the distance P P 1. In like manner, the area bounded by S P 2 and S P 3 is equal to that bounded by S P 1 and S P 2; and thus, in fact, all the areas into which the ellipse is so divided are equal to each other. The portion of the curve which forms their exterior boundary, gradually decreases from P P 1 to P 5, P 6, in proportion to its distance from the centre.

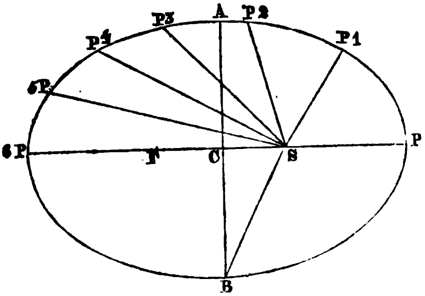


FIG. 161.

567. Into whatever number of equal areas the ellipse be thus divided, the general law holds good, that the planet will move along the portions of the curve that include them, in equal times; so that it moves very much faster when near the sun, than when at a distance from him. If a *circle* were similarly divided into equal areas, as all the radii are equal, these areas would be enclosed by equal portions of the curve; and the motion of the planet would be uniform. The more eccentric the ellipse, therefore, the greater will be the difference in the rate of the revolving body's motion at its two extremities. This difference is most extraordinary, however, in the movement of comets, as will be pointed out hereafter (Chap. XIX.). Now this principle is briefly but fully expressed in the law just stated. For if we suppose the *radius vector*, S P, to move round S as a centre, so as to come successively into the positions S P 1, S P 2, &c. this line will

move over equal areas; whilst the revolving body is moving in equal times through the arcs P P 1, P 1 P 2, P 2 P 3, &c. Or, to state it in another form,—if we mark upon the planet's orbit the portions which it has described in any given times, as, for instance, a day, a week, or a month,—and then draw lines from those points to the focus, we shall find that the included areas are uniformly equal. Thus we see that the apparent irregularities in the rate of movement, are really obedient to a law as constant and regular in its action, as if the body moved at the same rate in every part of its orbit. This law, as ascertained by Kepler, however, is simply the expression of the general fact,—that the rate of movement always corresponds with the area traversed by the radius vector: and *why* this peculiar relation exists, was altogether unknown to him. This it was reserved for Newton to explain.

568. The third great law established by Kepler, is that which governs the times of the revolution of the planets round the sun. Many attempts had been made, both by him and by others, to discover some connection. It was felt to be probable, that some relation does exist between the distances of the planets from the sun, and the times of their revolution; since these times increase in the same order as the distances increase, without any exception. These times, however, do not increase in the same proportion with the distance, but in a higher one; thus Venus is at nearly double Mercury's distance from the sun, and her year is almost three times as long; and nearly the same is the case in regard to the planets Saturn and Uranus at the opposite end of the series. But still the proportion is not a simple one, as that of 2 to 1, 3 to 2, or any numbers of such a kind; and after many efforts, Kepler perceived that the relation was as follows:—*The squares of the times in which the planets revolve round the sun, are proportional to the cubes of their mean distances from the centre.* This will be best explained by an example. The mean distance of Jupiter from the sun is almost exactly 5·2 (or $5\frac{1}{5}$) times that of the earth; consequently, reckoning the latter as 1, the *cubes* of their *mean distances* will be as (5·2 × 5·2 × 5·2 =) 140·6 to (1 × 1 × 1 =) 1. Now, the very sa

proportion exists between the *squares* of their *times*. The length of Jupiter's year, reckoning ours as 1, is 11·86; consequently, the square of Jupiter's time is (11·86 × 11·86 =) 140·6, whilst that of the earth is (1 × 1 =) 1. In this way, then, we may ascertain the time of a planet's revolution, from the knowledge of its distance; or its distance from a knowledge of its time: and such is the method employed for exactly ascertaining the comparative distances of the planets, which could not be determined with near so much precision by direct observation. Thus, if we know that the period of Jupiter's revolution is 11·86 times that of the earth, we square that number, and take the cube-root of the product (140·6). This cube-root (5·2) gives its proportion of distance to the earth's. In the same manner, if, having the proportional distance, we had desired to find the time of revolution, we cube the distance (5·2); and of the cube (140·6) we take the square-root (11·86), which gives the proportional time. We cannot ascertain their *actual* distances from the sun, without being first acquainted with that of the earth; and this is determined by observing certain celestial phenomena, as already explained (§. 513).

569. These three laws regulating the motion of the planets round the sun,—1. Their motion in elliptical orbits, the place of the sun being in one of the foci,—2. The passage of the radius vector over equal areas in equal times,—3. The constant proportion between the squares of the times of revolution, and the cubes of the mean distances,—are universally known as the laws of Kepler, by whom they were discovered; and every succeeding discovery has only served to show their exact application to new cases, and therefore to prove their correctness. Still, however, they are in themselves only general statements of facts. The reason why such a proportion should exist between the time and the distance, was no more evident than the reason why the planet should move in an ellipse; which seemed a figure much less natural than the circle for it to revolve in. Nor did any connexion appear to exist between these laws themselves. Each expressed one set of facts; and this might or might not have bearing on the others. It was reserved for Newton, however,

to show that these laws are themselves subordinate to one general principle; and that all the facts which they express are the necessary results of this.

Newton's Discoveries.—Laws of Motion and Gravitation.

570. Newton commenced the study of the planetary motions, by starting with the idea of their being produced by the combined action of two forces acting on one another in the same manner as they would act at the surface of the earth. By carrying out this idea, he proved that, if a body be put in motion in a straight line, and be then subject to a constantly-operating force, drawing it in a different direction, it will be bent from its straight path towards the source of this second force; and that, if the two forces be in a certain proportion, the body will revolve around that point. The laws of force and motion, together with this particular application of them, having been already treated of in this volume (Chap VI.), it is not requisite to do more here than refer to them. Now when these principles were applied, by the aid of mathematics, to the planetary movements, it was found that an *ellipse* would be almost necessarily the curve performed by one body revolving round another (§. 172);—that a body moving in such an ellipse must have a very different rate in different parts of its orbit, in consequence of the varying force exercised over it by the central body;—that this rate always corresponds with the area passed over by the radius vector;—and lastly, that the diminution of the central attraction as the distance increases, would occasion that particular relation between the distances of the planets and their times of revolution, which has been just explained.

571. Thus the movements of the heavenly bodies, under the influence of these two forces, were shown to be perfectly conformable to those of a body at the earth's surface, acted on by corresponding forces; and the *laws of motion* laid down by Newton, were proved to apply alike to the movements of the planets in their vast orbits, and to the simplest and most ordinary changes that are continually taking place under our own notice. This, therefore, was a vast advance in *generalization*; for these

simple principles, when carried into operation, are found to govern *all* the varieties of motion that we can detect, whether in the heavens or on the earth; and thus, whilst each of Kepler's laws embraced a limited group of facts, having little or no apparent connexion with each other, the comprehensive principles established by Newton enabled him to show *why* these laws should exist, or, in other words, to prove that, from the very nature of his principles, the movements *must* take place as Kepler discovered them to do.

572. But there was still another great advance to be made. Newton's reasoning, up to this point, was carried out upon the idea that there exists in the sun an attractive force, which has the power to draw the planetary bodies from the straight paths in which they would otherwise be moving, and to cause them to revolve around him; and he perceived that, if this force be regarded as diminishing in exact proportion to the increase of the square of the distance, it would produce all the results which actually follow. But the question next arose in his mind,—What is the nature of this attractive force?—has it any relation with the attractive force by which the earth draws towards its centre the bodies on its surface? Such an enquiry it would not be difficult to answer satisfactorily, by comparing the force with which the earth attracts a body on its surface, with that with which it draws the moon out of its straight course. Thus, in the accompanying diagram, let E be the centre of the earth, and B C a portion of its surface. Let M O P be a part of the orbit of the moon; and let us suppose that she passes through the space M O in the course of a minute. This shows, upon the principle already laid down in regard to elliptical motion (§. 172), that, if the moon had been allowed to fall freely towards the earth from the point M, she would traverse the distance M N in precisely the same time; and we

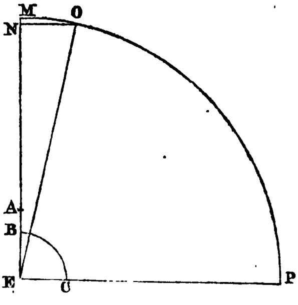


FIG. 162.

are thus enabled to estimate precisely the influence of the earth's attractive force upon the moon, if we are acquainted with her distance, and the consequent size of the ellipse she traverses, so that we may ascertain the precise length of M N. This attraction we may compare with that which the earth has for a body at its surface, by ascertaining the height, A B, through which a body would fall in the time occupied by the moon to fall from M to N, which we have supposed to be a minute.

573. Now the attraction of the earth for bodies upon its surface, would be much greater than for the moon, in consequence of the increased distance of the latter (§. 89); and allowance must be made for this, in comparing the two. If, when this has been done, we find that the amount of attraction which the earth has for the moon, evidenced by its drawing that body out of its straight course to the amount of the distance M N in every minute, is *the same* as that which it has for bodies upon its surface,—we may reasonably conclude that the force is the same in both instances, and not only in these cases, but in all similar ones. Thus, to identify the mysterious force which binds together the far-distant masses of the solar system, with that which produces the simplest and most familiar effects upon the earth's surface,—is an idea which now seems to us simple and familiar; and we may feel surprised that it should have remained so long undiscovered. But it must be remembered that the minds of men had been possessed with the notion, that *celestial* and *terrestrial* motions were of entirely different characters, not governed by the same laws, and dependent on different causes. In fact, when Newton first brought forward his doctrine, it was strongly opposed by all but a very few, who had sagacity to perceive its truth, and appreciate its beauty.

574. The history of the discovery is not a little interesting. After Newton had been engaged in studying the planetary movements, and had discovered that they are to be accounted for by the laws of motion which he had established, he retired to his country-seat, there to meditate upon further progress. It is commonly believed that the grand idea, upon which his fame rests and ever will rest until time shall be no more,—that

of the identity between the attracting power which the earth has for the moon, and that which it has for every particle of matter on its surface,—was suggested to him by the fall of an apple to the ground, while he was sitting in his orchard. But though such an accident may have suggested it to *his* mind, it is probable that in no other human being of his time would this or any other accident have aroused the thought; and it is equally probable that it would have sooner or later occurred to him, if this accident had never happened. For it was not one of those extraordinary phenomena which arrest the attention and strongly excite the spirit of enquiry; but one of a kind which has been, from the very creation of the human race, constantly occurring beneath their eyes, without ever opening the least glimpse of the great truth beyond.

575. When Newton, in the year 1665, first brought the truth of this idea to the test, by comparing the earth's attractive force, exercised at the distance of the moon, with the power it exerts on the surface of the earth, he was led into error by having wrong materials to work upon. It was necessary that he should compare the respective distances of the moon, and of a body on the surface of the earth, from the centre of the latter (§. 92); and if either of these distances was wrongly estimated, there would be a disagreement in the results. Now at that time, a *degree* of latitude was reckoned at only 60 miles instead of 69½; and consequently the distance from the centre of the earth to its surface was supposed to be only about 3436 miles, instead of 3964. Hence the result of the calculation was to indicate, that the diminution of the earth's attraction at the distance of 237,000 miles (the mean distance of the moon) was greater by about one-sixth than it really is; and it appeared, therefore, that it is not sufficient to produce such an effect upon the moon as was indicated through observation, by the amount of this difference. Many persons would have imagined that this very close accordance—for such it really is—was sufficient to prove the correctness of the idea; but it was not so with Newton; and he laid his hypothesis aside for nearly *sixteen* years. No advance was therefore made, until 1682; when he accidentally heard, whilst

attending a meeting of the Royal Society, of a new measurement of the length of the degree, which had been made in France three years previously. Having taken a note of the result, and calculated the earth's radius from it, he resumed his former calculation; and it is recorded that, as he advanced towards the completion of his task, and perceived that the result would be probably conformable to his theory,—"when he felt on the verge of obtaining one of the most important laws ever revealed to man, and was recognizing that which for evermore would bind the heavens to the earth, and constitute himself the first of philosophers,—he became so agitated that he could not carry on the computation, but paced the room whilst a friend put the finishing stroke to it." The principle once recognized in regard to the attraction of the earth and moon, its application to the sun and planets was obvious; and thus combining the celestial and terrestrial phenomena into one grand but simple generalization, Newton announced to the world the most important principle that man has ever attained,—that principle which has been already stated (§. 88) as the *law of gravitation* or *universal attraction*. What were his emotions when he first ventured to assure himself of his success, we can only guess at; but from the habitually religious character of his mind, we may infer that they were those of "a thankful child, bending in reverential gratitude, that he had been enabled to look into the ways of the beneficent Maker and Father of all."

576. We are now prepared, therefore, to reply to the question—"What is a Law of Nature?" It has been shown that the majestic phenomena presented to us in the varied movements and changing appearances of the heavenly bodies, take place in a certain order, so definite and constant that they are all capable of being exactly predicted, yet not by any means apparent at first sight. We have seen that, for some of these phenomena, a certain rule or principle might be laid down, whilst another rule or principle might be said to govern others. Now, if we could discover no higher or more general principle, of which these become the necessary results, we should consider these as *immediately* depending upon the will of the Creator. and therefore as primary or fundamental laws of nature. By

by the discoveries of Newton, they were shown to be subordinate laws, resulting from this grand principle of universal attraction, and from the general laws of motion. In these we at present rest, as the highest laws yet discovered;—that is to say, they explain all the varieties of motion, shown by *masses* of matter, with which we are acquainted, and leave nothing to be accounted for. Whether this principle may be united with those which regulate the movements of *particles* of matter, producing the various *molecular* changes which occur in electrical and chemical action, so that one principle still more general may include the whole,—is a question at present undetermined. The simplicity of the mode in which the Creator executes His operations upon the universe, as manifested in the principles or laws discovered by Newton, would lead to the belief that there are other laws yet more simple and comprehensive, which it is perhaps left for another Newton to discover.

577. Our minds, however, must be at present content to rest in the laws of motion and attraction discovered by that illustrious man, as the simplest and most direct expressions we possess, of the mode in which the Deity operates upon the material universe. A law of nature is nothing else than such an expression. When we say that the Creator *willed* that all masses of matter should attract one another, with forces directly proportional to their bulks, and inversely as the squares of their distances,—we not only state that one fact, but include all the consequences of it, however numerous and diverse they may be. Thus we are able to calculate from it the precise force with which the earth attracts a stone upon its surface, and is itself attracted by the sun, the moon, and the planets. And when we state that a mass of matter in motion, will continue moving at the same rate, unless retarded or accelerated by some force external to itself, we do in fact state what is true of every motion in the universe, because the Creator *wills* that it should be so. A law of nature, then, is nothing else than a simple expression of the will of the Divine Creator. Or, to define it in another way, it is the mode in which He determined that the operations of the material universe should be performed. When He created mat-

ter, He endowed it with certain properties, which occasion its various actions; thus he gave it the property of mutual attraction, which causes any two masses to approach each other, if they are not kept asunder by any other force. Having once ordained these conditions, and having foreseen by His infinite wisdom *all* the actions to which they will lead, he continues to act in the same manner. Were he continually changing his plan of operation, we should not be able to avoid the idea of mutability, and therefore of imperfection. In his *moral* government of the world, such changes *may* seem to occur. It requires an enlarged mind, capable of placing itself in some degree in the same position with the Deity, and of viewing things as He views them (§. 557),—such a mind as we sometimes see in the closing years of those who have spent their whole lives in faith and duty, when the world is gradually fading from view, and the spirit seems already preparing to quit its earthly tenement and to enter its immortal home,—to conceive the unity of the design upon which *that* is conducted. And it is perhaps not one of the least advantages of the study of Astronomy, that it impresses on us, more strongly perhaps than the study of any other science can do, the idea of the immutability and perfection of the Divine Mind; and thus prepares us to believe that of which Revelation assures us, in regard to his dealings with mankind.*

578. There is, perhaps, a danger in dwelling too exclusively on these *laws*, lest we should forget that, after all, they are only expressions of the mode in which the Creator is *constantly* acting on the universe. This tendency has shown itself among philosophers in all ages. It is sufficient, say they, to suppose matter endowed with certain properties, for us to account for all its actions. This is quite true so far as it goes: but whence the properties? whence matter itself? *Their* existence cannot be satisfactorily accounted for, except by regarding them as dependent upon the will of the Creator. And if that will underwent a change,—if the supporting, guiding, and controlling hand were withdrawn but for an instant,—the whole fabric of the universe must fall into confusion. We may illustrate this by

---

* For some interesting views on this subject, see Mr. Whewell's Bridgewater Treatise, p. 381.

the analogy of the government and laws of a human kingdom; but it must be recollected that the word *law* is here used in a very different sense, being merely a rule of action, to which its subjects are expected to conform, and for violation of which there are certain penalties. The action is not necessarily obedient to the law, but becomes so by the choice of the individual subject. Still there is this important analogy:—The law is made by a government, and may remain unchanged for ages in its statute-book, constantly operating upon the people, but without any fresh exertion of the governing force; yet, if that force were to cease, if the government were to be upset by a revolution, and no supreme power existed to compel observance of the law, it must cease to be efficacious. Just so is it in regard to the laws which the Creator has laid down for the government of the universe. We may conceive that, as an eminent philosopher has expressed it, the Deity "has, by creating his materials endued with certain fixed qualities and powers, impressed them in their origin with the *spirit* not the *letter* of his law, and made all their subsequent combinations and relations inevitable consequences of this first impression;" but the continued existence of these materials, and the various actions they perform, are but the manifestations of the continuance of the same mode of operation. To suppose, therefore, as some have done, that the properties first impressed on matter would of *themselves* continue its actions, is not only to deny all that revelation teaches us regarding our continued dependence on the Creator, but is inconsistent with the teachings of the soundest philosophy, regarding His government of the material universe,

Perturbations.

579. If we trace the law of universal attraction into its consequences, we shall find that it not only produces the *regular* motions of the planets round the sun, and of the satellites round their primaries, but that it must also occasion *irregularities* resulting from the action of these bodies upon one another. For there is no reason why the Earth should not be attracted by Venus, Mars, Mercury, or Jupiter, as well as by the Sun; and why its motion should not be affected by them, in a degree pro-

portional to their sizes and distances. Nor, again, if the law of universal attraction be true, is there any reason why the satellites should not be attracted by the sun, as well as by their primaries; and their orbits considerably deranged, by the variation of this attraction with their varying distances from him. Such irregularities actually do occur; and they are so numerous as, altogether, to render the real motions of the heavenly bodies considerably different from those which the simple law already laid down might be expected to produce. Newton had himself contemplated this result; and he successfully applied the principle to the explanation of certain considerable variations in the moon's motion, which were known to the astronomers of that time. But the motions of the planets had not then been studied with sufficient accuracy for the minuter variations which *they* exhibited, to be detected. The existence of these, however, he predicted; and the result has afforded the most triumphant confirmation of the truth of his doctrine. For every such disturbance, or *perturbation*, which can be shown to be a necessary result of the theory, *has been* discovered, provided its amount be great enough to be detected by our present means of observation; whilst, on the other hand, "there is not a single perturbation, great or small, which observation has ever detected, that has not been traced up to its origin in the mutual gravitation of the parts of our system, and been minutely accounted for, in its numerical amount and value, by strict calculation on Newton's principles."

580. Here, then, we see the full perfection of this noble science. Its theory not only accounts for all observed phenomena, but predicts those which, either through insufficient attention, or imperfect means of observation, had previously escaped detection. No other science can approach it in this respect; for although, in many, principles of great generality — that is, accounting for a large number of phenomena—have been discovered, there is none in which there are not a great number of phenomena yet to be accounted for, or in which the action of the principles is unaffected by some unknown causes, often rendering predictions fallacious. In this respect, then, as in many others

does the study of astronomy conduct us peculiarly near to the Creator; enabling us to conceive, however imperfectly, of His mode of governing the universe; and giving to the dark and finite mind of man some portion of that foreknowledge which is fully possessed only by Him, to whom past, present, and future, are the same, and "a thousand years but as one day."

581. We shall find, in the next chapter, that the masses of the planets are altogether but very small, when compared with that of the Sun. The largest of them, Jupiter, is only 1-1300th part of his bulk; and therefore, supposing the distances of the Sun and Jupiter from the earth to be the same, the latter's attraction for the earth would be no more than 1-1300th of that of the former. But, whilst the mean distance of the sun from the earth is 95 millions of miles, Jupiter, being at a distance of 490 millions of miles from the sun, can never be nearer to us than 395 millions, and may be as distant as 585 millions,—that is, must be always from about 4½ to 6½ times as distant from the earth as the sun is. Hence, supposing their masses equal, his attraction would be weaker in the proportion to the squares of 4½ and 6½ to the square of 1; or as 20¼ or 42¼ to 1. If we suppose Jupiter to be at his nearest point to the earth, therefore, his attraction will be 20 times less than that of a mass equal to himself, situated in the place of the Sun; and as the Sun is 1300 times the bulk of Jupiter, the attraction of the latter must be less by (1300 × 20) 26,000 times, than that of the Sun. As Mars, however, is nearer to Jupiter, and more distant from the Sun, the attraction of Jupiter will produce much more considerable perturbations in his movement; and these become, in fact, very sensible, when his course is accurately watched. The influence of Jupiter upon the four Asteroids is still greater; but his power of attraction is most remarkably shown by Comets, which, when they cross his path at no great distance from him, have their times and orbits greatly altered, or even altogether changed.

582. The most important class of perturbations, however, is that of the motions of the satellites, in consequence of the Sun's attraction; and this has been, of course, most completely studied in the case of our own Moon. Here the attraction of the Sun

for the satellite or secondary becomes subordinate to that of the primary, round which it revolves, in consequence of the near proximity of the latter. For although it may be absolutely greater (as it is in the case of our moon) the greater part of it is expended in keeping the satellite, as well as the primary, in revolution round itself; and it is, therefore, only the *difference* of the Sun's attraction for the primary and secondary, which results from the constant variations in the distance of the satellite, that acts as a disturbing force in altering its course. The average amount of this force, as it acts upon the Moon, was calculated by Newton to amount to no more than 1-638,000th of the force of gravity at the earth's surface, or 1-179th of the principal force which retains the moon in her orbit. In some instances, these perturbing causes operate but for a short time; and tend to produce a contrary effect within a short time afterwards, so as to neutralize the first. But in other instances, the irregularity goes on accumulating, and may produce permanent effects of great consequence. ' Sometimes these effects increase up to a certain point, and then diminish; and continue to increase and diminish alternately, each set of changes requiring many years or ages for its performance, so that the mean or average condition is not affected. Any series of such changes, requiring a certain length of time for their performance, and repeated again in the next similar interval, are termed *secular* * variations. Of this kind is the variation in the plane of earth's orbit, or the ecliptic, which is produced by the influence of the other planets, to the amount of about 48 seconds every year, and which is recognised by an alteration in the latitudes of the stars. The effect of this change, at present, is to occasion a diminution in the angle between the ecliptic and the equator; but it can never proceed to a greater amount than about 1$\frac{1}{3}$ deg.; after attaining this, it will begin to take place in the opposite direction; and a constant vibration within this limit will occur, in periods of enormous duration.

583. Not only do the planetary bodies attract one another, however, but they also attract the Sun himself, which is very far

---

* From the Latin *sæculum*, an age, or long period of time.

from being the fixed body he is ordinarily supposed. Their masses are so small, however, in comparison with his, that, even were they all brought into one line, they would not be able to draw his centre more than his own diameter from the point it should occupy. And as, so far from ever being in or near that line, they are to be found, at any period of time, scattered on different sides of the sun, their several attractions for him, in a great degree, balance one another. Still, however, the sun is not fixed; for he performs a revolution around the centre of gravity of the whole system; and this is, in fact, the real centre round which the planets revolve. For if a large and a small cannon-ball be connected by a chain or bar, and be fired from a gun, they will be pretty sure to receive a movement of rotation as well as one of projection (§. 230); and we then observe that neither, strictly speaking, revolves round the other, but that they both revolve round their common centre of gravity. Now, the centre of gravity of a system containing any number of bodies, whose weights and positions are known, is easily ascertained; but as the positions of the planets are constantly changing, the situation of the centre of gravity must also be in continual alteration; and thus the movement of the sun is one which can hardly be described. He is drawn farthest away from his central position, when Jupiter and Saturn are on the same side of him; since their attraction for him is far greater than that of all the other planets put together. But notwithstanding such variations, the place of the sun remains so far unchanged, that the common focus of the ellipses of the planetary orbits is always within his globe;—that is to say, his centre never moves so far from this point, as to cause it to be outside his surface; and after a series of any length, the position of the sun would always be the same as it was, when the planets last had the same places.

584. There are some perturbations, however, which do not seem to be thus kept in check; but which appear, on a cursory examination, to go on increasing without limit, and thus to threaten the overthrow of our system. It is said that Newton himself entertained this fear; and that he supposed that the

stability of the system could not be preserved without a direct interference on the part of the Deity. He did not attempt to solve the question, however; but left it for the mathematicians of the next generation to investigate. It is not a question of observation alone; for observation would lead us to believe in the progressive continuance of many of the changes in question. Thus, the Moon has been revolving more and more quickly round the earth, from the time of the first recorded eclipses; and is now in advance, by about four times her own breadth, of what her place would have been, if it had not been affected by this acceleration. The eccentricity of the Earth's orbit, again, and the obliquity of the ecliptic, have been continually diminishing since the first observations that serve to determine their amount. We might not unfairly suppose, therefore, that such changes would continue to proceed, as they can be shown to have done for thousands of years past; and that the overthrow of the system must be the final result. But the question cannot be so decided. It requires a laborious and profound investigation, which embraces problems of the highest mathematical difficulty. Nevertheless, these difficulties have been overcome; and the wonderful result has been obtained,—that the arrangements of the solar system are stable, all the changes which occur in it being restrained within moderate limits, and having a tendency to balance each other, and to keep each other in check. The orbit of every planet and satellite may be regarded as having an average form, on each side of which it will undergo deviations; but these deviations are never great, and their direction is changed before any serious derangement is produced. The periods required for a single series of these changes are in many instances of thousands of years in length, and in some cases even of millions; and hence it is that these apparent derangements have been going on in the same direction since the beginning of the history of the world. But the restoration is, in the sequel, as complete as the derangement; and in the meantime, the disturbance never attains an amount sufficient to make a serious alteration in the adaptations of the system.—With this wonderful demonstration, the names of Lagrange and Laplace (both

French mathematicians)—especially of the latter—will ever remain connected; as that of Newton is with the doctrine of universal attraction.

585. The stability of the system has been shown by Laplace to depend upon the fact, that the planets all move in the same direction, in orbits of small eccentricity, and slightly inclined to each other. This being the case, whatever be the masses of the planets, all their *secular* variations are periodical and included within very narrow limits; and they have thus a kind of vibration on the two sides of an average state, to which they will constantly tend to return. Now it is very interesting to remark in this connexion, that the planets Mercury and Mars, which have much the largest eccentricities among the old planets, are those in which the masses are much the smallest. The mass of Jupiter is more than 2000 times that of either of these planets; and if his orbit were as eccentric as that of Mercury, all the security for the stability of the system which Laplace has pointed out, would disappear. The earth and smaller planets might in that case change their nearly circular orbits into very long ellipses, and thus might fall into the sun, or fly off into remote space. It is further remarkable that in the newly discovered planets, of which the orbits are still more eccentric than that of Mercury, the masses are still smaller, so that the same provision holds good here also. There is no necessary connexion between the principle of universal attraction, and the uniformity in the direction of the revolution of the planets round the sun; nor has any reason been shown by the mathematician, why the smallest masses should have the greatest eccentricities,—a fact which is still more remarkable in regard to comets. The uniform direction of the revolution, however, is fully accounted for by the theory which regards the whole solar system as having originated in a mass of nebulous matter gradually undergoing condensation into solid spheres,—a theory which has the merit of accounting for numerous phenomena not otherwise to be explained, and of giving what is at least a probable solution of the great problem of the history of the universe (Chap. XXII). And it is probable that the connexion between the small size of

the revolving body, and the eccentricity of its orbit, may be shown to be but a result of the same principle.

Universality of the Law of Gravitation.

586. Hitherto we have considered the operation of the grand principle of mutual attraction upon the bodies composing the solar system alone; and the question now presents itself,—whether this principle is restricted to our own system, or extends throughout the universe. From what we know of the uniformity and simplicity of the Creator's operations, we might reasonably suppose that the same power, which binds together the parts of one system, should be employed to produce a corresponding effect in another. But however probable such an idea might seem, it could not be regarded as a law of nature, unless confirmed by the observation of facts. Such confirmation has been derived from a most remarkable and unexpected source. The vast distance of even the nearest of the fixed stars, prevents them, in spite of the enormous size which we may attribute to them, from exercising any perceptible attractive force on the bodies composing the solar system; for though the existence of such an attraction has been *suspected* in regard to certain comets, whose orbits seem to extend to an almost incalculable distance from the sun, it has never been *proved.* Again, although we are almost unquestionably entitled to regard each of the fixed stars as holding the same rank with our sun, and therefore to suppose, without improbability, that every one of those luminaries has its own system of planets and satellites in revolution around it; we must remember that this is only a speculation, and that it affords no real confirmation to the doctrine of universal attraction.

587. But the observations of astronomers have recently shown that, in many instances, these suns revolve around each other, or rather around their common centre of gravity, in systems of two, three, or even more (§. 526-532); and that their revolutions are evidently governed by the same laws as those which govern the movements of the bodies composing the solar system;—a magnificent generalization, which leads us to regard our own comparatively insignificant group, vast as

appears to us, as presenting, within its own narrow space, an example, in a form adapted to our comprehension, of the mode in which the Creator is operating, in "worlds beyond worlds, and system beyond system," through that vast universe, whose extent impresses us with the highest conception of *infinity* of which our finite minds are capable.

588. Well has it been said by the illustrious philosopher, to whom we owe the confirmation and extension of this idea, which was first suggested by his no less illustrious father, that "there is something in the contemplation of general laws, which powerfully persuades us to merge individual feeling, and to commit ourselves unreservedly to their disposal; while the observation of the calm, energetic regularity of Nature, the immense scale of her operations, and the certainty with which her ends are attained, tends, irresistibly, to tranquillize and re-assure the mind, and render it less accessible to repining, selfish, and turbulent emotions. And this it does, not by debasing our nature into weak compliances and abject submission to circumstances, but by filling us, as from an inward spring, with a sense of nobleness and power which enables us to rise superior to them; by showing us our strength and innate dignity, and by calling upon us for the exercise of those powers and faculties, by which we are susceptible of the comprehension of so much greatness, and which form, as it were, a link between ourselves and the best and noblest benefactors of our species, with whom we hold communion in thoughts, and participate in discoveries, which have raised them above their fellow-mortals, and brought them nearer to their Creator." *

---

* Sir J. Herschel's Discourses on the Study of Natural Philosophy, p. 16.

CHAPTER XVIII.

GENERAL ACCOUNT OF THE SUN, PLANETS, AND THEIR SATELLITES.

589. Having now considered the general laws regulating the movements of the bodies composing the Solar system, and the manner in which those movements are seen by the inhabitants of the earth, we are prepared to inquire in more detail, into the actual forms, dimensions, distances, rates of movement, and physical peculiarities of these bodies individually: and the Sun, as by far the largest, as well as the centre of the whole system, naturally claims our attention first.

The Sun.

590. The Sun is not only many times larger than any one of the bodies which revolve around him, but exceeds by many thousand times the united bulk of them all. By the ancients, he was very naturally supposed to be a great globe of fire; but this opinion has been greatly modified by the discoveries and speculations of modern science. His stupendous bulk may be judged of from his apparent size, when his distance is known to us. There is not much difference between the apparent diameters of the Sun and Moon; but whilst the latter is at a distance of only 237,000 miles from the Earth, the latter is 95 millions of miles off, and in order to appear of the same size must have more than 400 times the real dimensions. The actual diameter of the Sun is about 882,000 miles; it is therefore about 111½ times that of the Earth; and, as the bulks of spheres are to each other as the cubes of their diameters, the whole mass of the Sun is to that of the Earth as 1,384,472 to 1. The weights of th

two globes, however, (supposing it were possible to compare them) do not bear the same proportion; for the density of the Sun is much less than that of the Earth,—that is, any given bulk of his substance would weigh much less than the same bulk of the Earth's substance. It would be, in fact, very little more than one-fourth; so that, as the Earth weighs about $5\frac{2}{3}$ times as much as an equal mass of water (§. 101), the Sun would not weigh half as much more than his own bulk of that liquid. His weight is calculated to surpass that of the Earth, by 354,936 times; and his attraction for bodies on his surface will be proportionably great.

591. When the Sun is viewed with a telescope, through the medium of a darkened glass, which prevents the glare of light and the concentrated heat from being injurious to the eyes, his surface is seen to exhibit large opaque spots, which slowly change their places and forms. Many of them retain their forms, however, long enough to be recognised as the same after a considerable interval; and by these it has been ascertained, that the Sun revolves on his axis in 25 days. A part of the apparent change in form which these spots present, is due to the altered directions in which we view them. Thus, a spot which has a circular form, when we see it in the middle of the Sun's disc, and consequently look directly at it, will gradually become narrower and narrower, as it is made to approach the edge by the Sun's rotation, in consequence of our seeing it more and more in an oblique direction; until, at last, it disappears altogether. But the actual size and form of the spots is continually changing; old ones are gradually becoming smaller, as if they were cavities in process of being filled up; whilst new ones are making their appearance. Sometimes a single spot breaks into two or more. Their size is frequently enormous; so that they have been seen without the assistance of a telescope. There is a record of one whose diameter was a twentieth part of that of the Sun, or nearly 45,000 miles. The whole duration of such appearances is seldom more than six weeks; hence we must suppose the walls of such a space as that just mentioned to approach at the rate of 1000 miles a day. Even the part of the Sun's disk which is not occupied by spots,

is finely mottled with an appearance of minute dark points; and these also are found to be continually changing their state. In the neighbourhood of the large spots, again, the surface is often observed to be traversed by luminous streaks, curved and branching, amongst which spots frequently break out.

592. Several explanations respecting the nature of these spots have been proposed at different times. For a long period they were regarded as heaps of ashes or cinders, the refuse of the burnt fuel which had sustained the mighty solar conflagration. The continual changes in their appearance, however, and the great rapidity of these changes, seem to indicate that they are occasioned by the movements of fluid rather than of solid matter, and of matter in a gaseous state, rather than in a liquid form. There appears, therefore, considerable probability in the supposition, that the luminosity of the sun is due, not to the intense heat of his entire mass, but to a luminous atmosphere enveloping his globe, and occasionally permitting its surface to be discerned through gaps or rents occasioned by fluctuations in this medium. This luminous atmosphere is supposed by Sir W. Herschel, to rest upon another more like our own; on the top of which floats a layer of clouds. These clouds will reflect to us a considerable portion of the light of the luminous atmosphere above them; and by this reflection they will produce the *penumbra*, or shaded border, which the spots generally present. The luminous atmosphere appears to be in a state of constant commotion; and the causes which produce this disturbance probably originate in changes in the solid globe itself. When accumulated into waves, it will constitute the bright spots and ridges; and it is remarkable that one of these ridges always surrounds a spot, as if the luminous atmosphere were heaped up there, in consequence of some explosive force below which has made a rent or passage through it. Of the nature of this luminous atmosphere, we can at present only speculate; but it may be imagined to be, in a partially condensed form, that from which all matter originated, and which, until condensed into the liquid or solid state, retains its self-luminous properties.

Mercury.

593. Mercury is the smallest of all the primary planets, as well as the nearest to the sun; and from these two circumstances, we know less of his constitution than we do in regard to most of the others. Owing to his orbit being far within that of the earth, we never see him at any considerable distance from the sun (§. 550); so that he is almost always lost in the superior brilliancy of that luminary. When at the period of his greatest elongation eastwards, he is an evening star, which is distinguishable a short time after sunset, as a small but very brilliant disc. In the course of a few weeks, however, it changes its place so as to remain constantly near the sun; and in a short time afterwards it attains its greatest elongation westwards, so as to rise before the sun in the morning, when it is visible for a short time, until lost in the brightness of the opening day. Little more can be discovered with the telescope respecting the appearance of Mercury, than that is round, and exhibits phases during its revolution round the sun. It is very seldom that any spots can be discerned on its surface; and these are not permanent, like those of the moon, but rather resemble those of the sun, or the belts of Jupiter, in their changeable character. From observation of these, and of a peculiar projection which is seen at one end of the crescent when the planet is horned, it has been concluded that Mercury rotates around his axis in about $24^h\ 5^m$. This axis appears considerably inclined to the plane of the orbit; so that there is probably a still greater variety of seasons in Mercury, than in our earth.

594. The mean distance of Mercury from the sun is a little more than 37 million miles; but his orbit is more elliptical (or oval) than that of most of the other planets; and its eccentricity (or the distance between the centre and the focus of the *ellipse*, §. 565) amounts to as much as one-fifth of the mean distance. Through this orbit he moves in somewhat less than 88 days, with a velocity of 110,000 miles an hour. This extraordinary rate of motion is necessary, to prevent the planet from being drawn towards the sun, into which he would fall, by the power-

ful attraction of that enormous mass, which (in consequence of the diminished distance) is far stronger than that which acts upon the earth. The transit of Mercury, or his passage across the sun's disc, when he is in conjunction with the earth, has been already noticed (§. 561); the appearance then presented by him, which is that of a minute black spot, sufficiently proves that he shines entirely by the light reflected from the central luminary. That light has been calculated to be seven times more intense than the proportion which we receive; and the heat which Mercury derives from the sun must exceed, in a corresponding degree, that which the earth obtains from the same source. Hence, if Mercury be peopled with living beings, its inhabitants must be very differently constituted from those of our globe. The *density* of Mercury is about $2\frac{3}{4}$ that of the earth; or about $15\frac{1}{2}$ times that of water (§. 101); hence his weight is greater than that of a globe of quicksilver, of the same size. But as his diameter is only about 3136 miles, and his bulk only 6-100ths that of the earth, the quantity of matter he contains is little more than one-sixth that of our globe.

Venus.

595. Venus is the most beautiful of all the planets; and it was doubtless from this circumstance that she received from the ancients the name of the Goddess of Beauty. Her diameter is much greater than that of Mercury, being about 7800 miles, or nearly that of the earth; and as she receives a considerable proportion of light from the sun, she is seen by us as not only a large but a brilliant star. Her apparent size differs considerably, according to the part of her orbit in which she is. It is remarkable, however, that although her disc is so large, when seen through the telescope, it cannot be made out so definitely as that of the more distant planets. The intense lustre of its illuminated part dazzles the sight, and exaggerates every imperfection of the telescope. Like Mercury, it exhibits no permanent spots, and rarely any even of a transient nature; hence it may be surmised (from the probable nature of the belts and spots of Jupiter and Saturn, §. 616), that we do not see the real surface of these planets, but an atmosphere loaded with clouds, capable of reflect-

ing a large portion of the light that falls upon it, and serving perhaps to mitigate the otherwise intense glare of their sunshine, changing it into a bright diffused light, resembling that produced by a ground glass globe over the flame of a solar lamp. Certain irregularities can be seen, however, upon her edge, which show that mountains exist upon her surface; and by the return of these, her period of rotation on her axis is known to be 23½ hours.

596. The distance of Venus from the sun is about 70 millions of miles; and her revolution is performed in about 224⅔ days. Her orbit is inclined about 3½ degrees to the ecliptic, and it is very nearly circular. As the whole of her orbit is within that of the earth, she is never seen by us on the side of the heavens opposite to that of the sun; but she is not restricted to a range of distance from him so narrow as that of Mercury. She is called a morning or evening star, according as she rises before the sun, or sets after him. Some days after she has passed between the earth and the sun, (at which time her illuminated side is turned entirely away from us,) she is seen in the morning at a little distance from him on the west. Her light is then faint; and her form at that time is easily made out with a telescope to be that of a crescent, the concave edge of which is turned towards the sun. She continues to move westwards, increasing her distance from the sun, and at the same time becoming brighter and brighter, in consequence of presenting to us more and more of her illuminated face. At last she arrives at her point of greatest elongation, where she seems to remain stationary for a time; by which period, her crescent has enlarged to a semicircle. She then commences to move towards the east; and her motion is gradually accelerated, until she comes into the same line with the sun. During this time, we see more and more of her illuminated face, but her brightness diminishes, as she approaches the sun; and when she comes into conjunction with him, we lose sight of her altogether in the blaze of his light, even if she be a little above or below him, and be not hidden behind him. She then continues her motion towards the east, and becomes visible for a short time after sunset; her disc is then quite round, but apparently very small, in consequence of

her increased distance in this part of her orbit. As she continues her course eastward, she increases her distance from the sun, and is consequently seen for a longer time after his setting; at the same time she becomes larger and more brilliant; but her disc is gradually narrowed, so that, at the time of her greatest elongation, her form is again that of a semicircle. Lastly, as she enters upon that part of her orbit which passes between the earth and the sun, she again takes a westerly direction, and approaches him, until she comes into conjunction with him; during this period, her illuminated face is being withdrawn from us, and the semicircle is gradually narrowed to a crescent, which diminishes until we lose it altogether. When Venus crosses the sun's disc, she can be distinctly seen with the naked eye, as a well-defined dark spot. These transits are very rare; and they are of the highest importance to astronomers, as affording the best means of measuring the distance of the sun from the earth; on which measurement the calculation of all the other distances is based (§. 513).

597. Although almost as large as the earth, Venus moves with greater rapidity, in order to compensate for the more powerful attraction of the sun. Her rate of movement is about 80,000 miles per hour, or 23 miles per second;—a velocity of which we can scarcely form a distinct idea. The axis round which Venus revolves, is inclined 75 degrees towards her orbit, so that the poles are, in fact, but little elevated above it. As these poles are always directed towards the same part of the heavens, they are alternately pointed towards the sun, and turned away from him (§. 661). Owing to the very great inclination of the axis, the sun will be shining directly, during one part of the annual revolution, upon a circle only 15 degrees from the north pole; and in the opposite part of the orbit, upon a circle only 15 degrees from the south pole. These circles will correspond to our tropics; and when the sun is shining upon them, the equatorial regions will receive so little of his rays, that a winter almost as severe as that of our arctic zone will reign there. The sun crosses the equator twice in every annual revolution; and at each time it will bring with it the hottest summer. Hence, as ther

is winter at the Equator, whether the sun is shining on the northern or the southern pole, all the portion of the globe that is moderately distant from it, will experience the greatest heat of a vertical sun, as well as the almost complete withdrawal of that source of light and warmth, twice in every annual revolution of the planet; whilst not only at the poles themselves (as in the earth), but within a circle of considerable extent around them, will the sun continue above the horizon, or on the other hand, remain completely invisible, during alternate periods, each occupying half her revolution in her orbit.

598. Numerous attempts have been made to ascertain whether Mercury and Venus are attended by satellites; but none have been discovered, nor is it probable that they possess any.

Tellus.

599. It seems desirable to introduce here, for the sake of comparison with the other planets, the chief particulars of the Earth's physical condition, its diurnal and annual movements, and its relations to other members of the solar system. We may form an idea of the appearance which the earth would probably exhibit, when seen from the distance of 40 or 50 millions of miles, from that which Venus presents to us when at the time of her greatest brilliancy. The light of Tellus to Venus will be fainter than that which Venus reflects upon us; but, on the other hand, the disc of our planet is larger, and will be seen at the full when the two are at their nearest point, on the same side of the sun. At this period, their distance will not be more than about 25 millions of miles,—the mean distance of the earth from the sun being 95, and that of Venus 70 millions. When, however, the two planets are on opposite sides of the sun, their distance will be increased to 165 millions of miles; hence the apparent size of Tellus, as seen from Venus, will be more than 6½ times as great in the second case as in the first. It is when she is on the other side of the sun, that the illuminated side of Venus is most fully turned towards us; and it is, therefore, when she is approaching that state, but before her light is rendered faint by being overpowered by that of the sun, that her beauty is the

greatest. On the other hand, as the orbit of Tellus is entirely beyond that of Venus, a part at least of the illuminated disc of the former will be turned towards the inhabitants of the latter, in every portion of its orbit; and the whole disc will be so at both the periods just mentioned. At the former epoch, as Venus is then between the earth and the sun, Tellus will be seen as a large and brilliant star, almost resembling a small moon, rising just as the sun sets, and giving light during the whole night. At the latter period, however, her light will be lost to the inhabitants of Venus, as that of Venus is to us, in consesequence of her being then seen in the same direction with the sun.

600. The difference of the polar and equatorial diameters of the earth is quite sufficient to cause her disc to appear flattened at the poles, though by no means in the same degree with Jupiter. The polar diameter, according to the latest calculations, is 7900 miles; and the equatorial 7926 miles; the difference, therefore, 26 miles, is about 1-300th part of the whole diameter. The inequalities upon the earth's surface must be considerable enough to give an irregular edge to its disc, like that which Venus presents to us; and from these its rotation round its axis might be determined. This rotation is really completed in 23 h. 56 min.; the additional four minutes being required, as already explained, to bring any point to the same position in regard to the sun. The axis of rotation is inclined about 23½ degrees to the ecliptic or plane of the orbit; and from this results that variety in the seasons, to which the constitution of the living inhabitants that people the various parts of this globe, is so beautifully adapted. The annual revolution of Tellus round the sun is completed in 365¼ days; and her rate of movement is about 68,000 miles per hour. The eccentricity of her orbit is about 16 parts in 1000; but this makes a difference in her greatest and least distance from the sun, of nearly three million miles. The density of the earth is about 5⅔ that of water; so that its whole mass would weigh about the same with a globe of arsenic (the lightest of the ordinary metals) of equal bulk.

601. The planet Tellus is attended by one satellite, the

Moon. Her large apparent size is entirely due to her proximity to us; for she is smaller than any of the heavenly bodies we have yet considered. Her real diameter is about 2160 miles; and her bulk only about 1-49th that of the earth. Her density is so much less, that her actual weight is probably no more than 1-77th that of the earth. The mean distance of the moon from the earth is about 237,000 miles; which distance, vast as it is, is but little more than one-fourth of the diameter of the sun's body; so that, supposing the sun to occupy the place of the earth, his surface would be twice as far from his centre, as the orbit of the moon is distant from the centre of the earth. The orbit of the moon is much more elliptical than that of the earth, the eccentricity amounting to 5½ parts in 100; so that she is 26,000 miles nearer to him at one time than at another,—a difference which produces the contrast between a *total* and an *annular* eclipse (§. 677). The orbit of the Moon is inclined somewhat more than five degrees to that of the earth; and from this inclination it happens, that the sun is not eclipsed by the passage of the Moon between his disc and the earth, at every conjunction; and that the Moon is not eclipsed by passing into the earth's shadow at every opposition. During her revolutions round the earth, one of which is completed every 29½ days, she exhibits to us a series of *phases*, produced by the varying degree, in which the side of her globe that is illuminated by the sun, is turned towards us. Very nearly the same part of her globe is always presented to the earth; but each part is successively turned towards the sun during one of her revolutions. This is in consequence of her turning once round upon her own axis, during each of her monthly revolutions round the earth (§. 674). The same thing is true of all the satellites of Jupiter; and probably of those of Saturn and Uranus also.

602. This will occasion a very curious effect, as to the appearance of the primary to the inhabitants (if there be any) of its satellites. Thus the Earth will be seen, by the residents in our Moon, as a luminary of enormous size, immoveably fixed in the sky, presenting a different aspect in each part of its diurnal rotation, and exhibiting a series of monthly phases correspond-

ing with those which the moon presents to us, but occurring at different times. Thus, when the Moon is at full to us, the dark side of the earth is presented to her; whilst, at our new moon, her inhabitants will see the whole illuminated face of the earth; and, when she passes between the sun and the earth, in such a manner as to produce a solar eclipse, her inhabitants will see her shadow traversing the earth's disc. From one entire half of the moon, the earth will never be visible. Our disc will probably appear covered with variable spots, resulting from the cloudiness of our atmosphere; and these will be arranged, in the equatorial regions, into zones or belts, by the action of the trade-winds.

603. In consequence of the mutual attraction of the earth and moon, they would fall towards each other, if each were influenced by no other force. The proportional rate at which each would move, and the point at which they would meet, is determined by the proportion between their masses. Their attraction for one another will be proportional to their respective weights (§. 89); that is, as the weight of the earth is 77 times that of the moon, the attraction of the Earth for the moon will be 77 times that of the Moon for the earth. Consequently the moon will move 77 times as fast as the earth; and if the whole space were divided into 78 parts, the Moon would move through 77 of these parts, whilst the Earth moves through only one; and the spot where they would meet (provided the whole mass of each could be compressed into one point) which is their common centre of gravity (§. 119), is at a distance of 1-78th the whole length, from the centre of the earth, and therefore actually beneath its present surface.

Mars.

604. This planet is the first of those, which, as their orbits include that of the earth, are termed the superior planets. It is at once distinguished by its dark red hue; and it was from the resemblance of this to blood, that the ancients gave the name of the God of War to this planet. When seen through a telescope, Mars exhibits a rounded disc; and as this does not present any well-marked indentations or projections, it is probable that there

are no lofty mountains upon his surface. But very distinct and constant peculiarities of hue are seen in different parts of his disc; and the outlines of these are so strong, that they may be well supposed to be the boundaries of continents and seas. The accompanying figure represents the appearance of Mars, as seen through Sir J. Herschel's 20-feet reflecting telescope. The supposed continents are distinguished by reflecting the red and fiery hue which characterizes the light of this planet; and this is supposed by Sir J. Herschel to be owing to a reddish tinge in the soil, which may resemble that of the ochreous and red sandstone districts on the surface of our own planet. Contrasted with this (according to the law of complementary colours, which will be explained in the volume on Optics), the supposed seas appear greenish. The red hue of Mars is commonly explained by supposing that he is surrounded by a dense and extensive atmosphere, which may produce the same effect on his light, as a winter's fog gives to the light of our morning sun; but for the existence of such an atmosphere, there are, in the opinion of Sir J. Herschel, no sufficient or even plausible arguments. It has been remarked that these peculiar appearances on the surface of Mars are not always seen with equal distinctness; although, when well seen, they have always precisely the same aspect. Hence it may be surmised, that the planet is not entirely destitute of atmosphere and clouds; and this idea is strengthened by the appearance of brilliant white spots at the poles, which have been supposed, with much probability, to be snow, since they disappear when they have been long exposed to the sun, and are most strongly marked when they have just emerged from the long night of a polar winter.

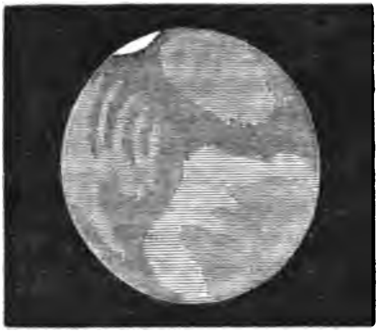


FIG. 163.—TELESCOPIC APPEARANCE OF MARS.

605. The apparent diameter of Mars varies, of course, with his distance from us; which is more than four times as great when he is in opposition, as when he is in conjunction. His real diameter is about 4100 miles, or rather more than half that of the earth; and his volume will therefore be about 1-7th. His density is rather less than that of the earth; and the actual weight of his globe will therefore be somewhat less than 1-8th that of ours. By continued observation of the spots upon his disc, it has been found that Mars turns upon an axis inclined about 32 degrees to the plane of his orbit; and that this diurnal rotation is accomplished in about 24½ hours. From the inclined position of his axis, there will be greater variety of seasons on the surface of Mars, than on that of our own globe. The polar winters will be longer and more severe; whilst the summers will be hotter,—the poles being then turned more directly towards the sun. In consequence of his increased distance from the Sun, however, the whole proportion of light and heat received by him from that source is much less than that which we enjoy; that of Mars being only 43-100ths of ours. The orbit of Mars is very elliptical; his mean distance from the sun is 146 millions of miles; but his excentricity amounts to nearly one-tenth of this. Consequently there is a great variation in the rapidity of his motion, in different parts of his orbit; and it was from the study of this variation that Kepler was led to the discovery of the important law regulating the motions of the planets in their elliptical orbits. The annual revolution of Mars round the sun occupies nearly 687 days, or nearly double our year. Since his orbit is entirely beyond that of our planet, his place in the heavens is much more variable than that of the two inferior planets, which are never seen at any great distance from the sun; for though he sometimes appears near the sun, he is often quite in the opposite part of the heavens, setting when the sun rises, and rising when he sets. According to his position in his orbit, a larger or smaller proportion of his disc will be seen; but he will never be totally obscured, nor will he present the crescentic appearance which we see in Venus and Mercury. To the inhabitants of Mars, th

earth will present appearances very closely corresponding to those which Venus exhibits to us; our light, however, will be less brilliant, and our disc (in consequence of the great interval between the orbits of the earth and Mars) will be smaller.*

Vesta, Juno, Ceres, and Pallas.

606. Until the commencement of the present century, no planet was known to exist between Mars and Jupiter. The existence of such a planet, however, was suspected by Astronomers; chiefly because the interval is much greater than that which might be anticipated in that part of the solar system, if the same proportion holds good throughout, as exists in the case of the nearer and remoter planets. This proportion (first pointed out by the late Professor Bode of Berlin) is a very simple one; it is, that the *interval* between each orbit † and the next goes on doubling, as we pass from the centre to the circumference of the system. Thus the interval between the orbits of Mercury and Venus is about half of that between the orbits of Venus and the Earth; this interval, again is about half of that between the orbits of the Earth and Mars. Now the space between the orbit of Mars and that of Jupiter greatly exceeds this proportion; so greatly, in fact, that if we were to suppose the existence of a planet, between whose orbit and that of Mars there should be an interval equal to twice that between the orbits of Mars and the Earth, an interval would remain between *its* orbit and that of Jupiter in which the same proportion would be followed; and this proportion would then extend itself regularly to the orbits of Saturn and Uranus. No reason for this proportion can be given from theory; and it is not as strictly accurate as the laws discovered by Kepler: but there was enough probability in the idea, to fix the attention of Astronomers; and they were rewarded by discovering, not one only, but *four* planets, moving in orbits which correspond pretty closely with the expected situation; the small size of which had been the cause of their having previously escaped notice.

---

* No Satellite has yet been seen to attend this planet.

† By this is meant, not the distance of the planet, but the *space* or area between the orbits.

607. When these four small planets, commonly known as the *Asteroids*, were first discovered, it was conjectured that they were the fragments of some greater planet, which formerly revolved in the orbit where it was expected, and which was blown to pieces by some internal explosive force, or shattered by collision with a comet. "This," says Sir J. Herschel, "may serve as a specimen of the dreams in which astronomers, like other speculators, occasionally and harmlessly indulge." If we speculate at all on the subject, we shall probably find a much better explanation, in the general theory of the formation of the solar system, which will be given in the last chapter. Their minute size has prevented many circumstances of their condition from being ascertained. They agree, however, in these;—that their mean distances from the Sun, and their period of revolution around him, are not very dissimilar; and that, although the *forms* of their orbits are very different, so that they cross each other, there is one point through which they all pass.

608. *Vesta* is the nearest to the sun, and has the shortest period. She was, however, the last discovered, having remained unknown till 1807, when she was first seen and recognised as a planet, by a pupil of Olbers of Bremen—the discoverer of Pallas. Of her dimensions, nothing can be certainly stated; for, when observed by Herschel, with a telescope of great magnifying power, she did not present the appearance of a disc, but only that of a brilliant point. Consequently we know nothing as to her rotation on an axis, nor the inclination of that axis. Her mean distance from the sun is about 225 millions of miles. Her orbit seems to have about the same degree of excentricity as that of Mars; but it appears to be very irregular, probably in consequence of the perturbations produced by the attracting influence of the larger planets upon her small mass. Her orbit is inclined to the ecliptic rather more than 7 degrees; and her period of revolution round the sun is 1325$\frac{3}{4}$ days, or about 3$\frac{2}{3}$ years. In regard to her distance from the Sun, and her period of revolution, she departs more from the general average than does either of the three other asteroids.

609. *Juno* was discovered by Harding of Lilienthal in 180

Her diameter has been estimated at 1320 miles; but the truth of this estimate is very uncertain. Her mean distance from the sun is about 256 millions of miles; but the excentricity of her orbit is enormous, amounting to more than one-fourth of her mean distance; consequently her orbit is very elliptical, and her distance from the sun is far greater at some times than at others. Her orbit is also remarkable for its great inclination to that of the earth's; the angle between them being 13 degrees, or nearly twice as great as that of the orbit of Mercury. Her period of revolution round the sun is 1592½ days, or about 4⅓ years.

610. *Ceres* was the first discovered of the asteroids; having been observed, by Piazzi of Naples, in 1801. Her appearance is that of a nebulous star, surrounded by variable mists; which induced Herschel to suppose this planet possessed of an atmosphere. This, together with her small size, produces a great uncertainty respecting her real diameter; which has been estimated by Schroeter at 1320 miles, and by Herschel at no more than 140. Her mean distance from the sun is about 264 millions of miles; and the excentricity of her orbit is rather less than that of Vesta. Its inclination to the ecliptic is about 10½ degrees. Her period of revolution is 1681⅓ days, or about 4⅔ years.

611. *Pallas*, like Ceres, presents a very indistinct appearance, when viewed with a very powerful instrument; and her real diameter is equally uncertain. By Schroeter it has been stated at 1950 miles; whilst Herschel estimated it at no more than 140. The mean distance of Pallas from the sun is about 267 millions of miles; but her orbit is extremely elliptical, its excentricity being nearly the same with that of Juno. Its inclination to the ecliptic is far greater than that of any other planet; being 30½ degrees. Her period of revolution is 1686½ days, or about 4⅔ years.

612. It is remarkable that, of two out of these four asteroids, the orbits should be so extremely elliptical; whilst those of the other two are but moderately so. Each of the elliptical orbits crosses all the rest. There is in many other respects a correspondence between Vesta and Ceres on the one hand, and Juno and Pallas on the other.

Jupiter.

613. Jupiter is by far the largest of the planets; and, next to Venus, is the most brilliant. It is owing to his great distance from us and from the sun, that his appearance is not more striking. Were he at the distance of Venus, his apparent diameter would be 12 times as great as hers; and (since the surfaces or areas of circles are as the squares of their diameters) the quantity of light that his disc would reflect to us from the sun would be 144 times that which we receive from Venus. His real diameter is estimated at something less than 87,000 miles; but there is a considerable difference between the polar and equatorial diameters, which is even discoverable by the eye (when assisted by the telescope) without any instrument of measurement. This results from a flattening of the poles, to the extent of about 1-15th of the whole diameter; so that his form bears a strong resemblance to that of an orange. Here, then, we observe the influence of centrifugal force, carried to a much greater extent than we can trace in the form of the Earth; and we should consequently expect to find that the rotation of the planet upon his axis is much more rapid. This is actually the case; for the whole of his immense mass turns round once in a little less than ten hours. The axis round which he turns is nearly perpendicular to the plane of his orbit; consequently the sun always shines nearly upon his equator; and there can be but little variation in the seasons, nor in the length of the days and nights in different parts of his globe, and at different periods of his year. Moreover, the proportion of light and heat which he receives from the sun, is only about 1-27th part of that which comes to us. Hence we must believe that, if this planet is peopled with animated beings, their conformation must be very different from that of the inhabitants of this globe.

614. The bulk of this planet is about 1300 times that of our earth; but his weight (supposing we could compare them in a balance) would not be found nearly as great. For it has been ascertained that his *density* is only about a quarter that of the Earth, being nearly the same with that of the Sun; hence if the

average density of the earth be estimated at 5⅔ that of water (§. 101), the density of Jupiter will be less than 1½, or about the same as that of *coal*, which is one of the lightest of minerals. If he could be weighed against the earth, therefore, he would be found to be not more than 325 times as heavy, notwithstanding the enormous disproportion of his bulk.

615. The revolution of Jupiter round the sun occupies 4332½ of *our* days, or nearly 12 years; consequently during a whole revolution of the earth, Jupiter has only moved through one-twelfth part of his orbit; thus changing his place in regard to the sun to the same degree only that the earth does in a month. Now as Jupiter's rotation on his axis is accomplished in less than 10 hours, the number of days and nights which his inhabitants will witness during one of his years will be (4332½ × 24 ÷ 10) about 10,398. His mean distance from the sun is about 493 millions of miles. The excentricity of his orbit is about 48 parts in 1000, or three times that of the earth; and its inclination to the ecliptic is very small, being only 1° 18′ 52″.

616. When Jupiter is examined with a good telescope, his surface is seen to be crossed by a number of zones or bands, of a browner hue than the rest of his disc; these are commonly termed his belts. They are by no means uniform in their appearance; sometimes there is only one seen; sometimes as many as eight; and they have been occasionally, but rarely, seen to be broken up and distributed over the whole surface of the planet. Branches running out from them, and dark spots, are by no means uncommon; and it is from the attentive observation of these, that the period of his rotation on his axis has been determined. The belts are always parallel to

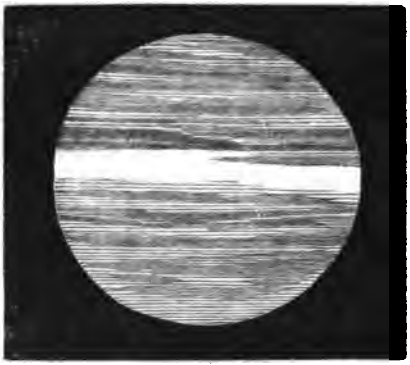


FIG. 164.—TELESCOPIC APPEARANCE OF JUPITER.

the equator; that is, they correspond exactly with the direction of the movement of the surface; and from this fact, when taken in connexion with the continual changes which they are undergoing (new appearances being sometimes witnessed in an hour or two), it has been supposed, with considerable probability, that they are produced by changes in the atmosphere of the planet, determined by currents that resemble our trade-winds. These currents must be very much stronger than they are with us; for each point on the equator of Jupiter has to move, during the rotation of that planet, through a circle 11 times greater than that through which any point on the earth's equator revolves; and as the whole circle is completed in 5-12ths of the time, the actual velocity of movement is about 26 times as great. The brownish bands and spots are regarded as the body of the planet, and the luminous portions as clouds.

617. Jupiter is attended by four moons or satellites, which are large and brilliant enough to be seen with a telescope of very moderate power. The discovery of these was, in fact, one of the first results of the invention of the telescope, at the commencement of the 17th century; and the existence of this miniature system was employed by Galileo as a strong argument against the absurd notions, which were upheld by the authority of the church, as well as by the prejudices of men, respecting the motion of the sun round the earth. So bigoted were those whom he attempted to convince, that many of them even refused to look through his telescopes, affirming that the system which they were to reveal was an optical deception, or an invention of the devil! Such are the absurdities to which some men will commit themselves, rather than give up a cherished prejudice.

618. The satellites of Jupiter are known, according to their distances from him, as the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th. They move in orbits which are nearly circular, and which are almost in the same plane with that of the planet; consequently, as this is but little inclined to that of the earth, we see their orbits edgeways; and instead of a circular movement, they present to us only a kind of vibration in straight lines, from one side of the

planet to the other. This would be easily made intelligible by a very simple experiment. Suppose that a lamp were placed at some distance from us, and that a candle were made to move around it in a horizontal circle; if we were not near enough to distinguish when the candle is nearer us, and when more distant, we should only see it apparently moving from one side of the lamp to the other. If four candles were made to move, in the same manner, through circles of different sizes, we should see corresponding appearances presented by all of them; and that which revolves in the largest circle would seem to move the furthest from the planet. When the moons pass in front of the planet, they can be distinctly seen upon his disc, on which they throw shadows that look like small ink-spots. And when they pass behind him, they are themselves eclipsed in his shadow. As this shadow is thrown by the sun, and the line in which it is seen from the earth may be very different, the satellite may enter the shadow of Jupiter, long before it appears to us to approach its disc.

619. These eclipses of Jupiter's satellites happen very frequently; for neither of the first three can ever escape passing into the shadow of the planet, each time that it traverses the part of its orbit most distant from the sun, on account of the great size of Jupiter, and the small inclination of their orbits. The fourth, having a more inclined orbit, and being at a greater distance, escapes being eclipsed during about a third part of Jupiter's year. Moreover, the times of the revolution of the satellites are very brief. The first makes its whole circuit in about $1^d\ 18\frac{1}{2}^h$; the second in $3^d\ 13\frac{1}{4}^h$; the third in $7^d\ 3\frac{3}{4}^h$; and the fourth in $16^d\ 16\frac{1}{2}^h$. The size of the first, second, and fourth, are nearly the same with that of our moon; the first being rather smaller, and the others larger. The third is the largest, being a little larger than Mercury. By observation of their discs with a telescope of the greatest power, Herschel found that each satellite rotates on its own axis in precisely the same time that it occupies in revolving round its primary; so that the same face is always turned towards Jupiter. Hence, there is a remarkable conformity in the nature of their movement,

with that of our Moon; and the same result will happen,—that, whilst they constantly present the same face to Jupiter, all sides are presented successively to the Sun (§. 674).

620. Again, supposing these satellites to be the residence of living beings, the planet Jupiter would be seen by the inhabitants of those sides which are turned towards it, as an enormous but faintly illuminated moon, going through the same phases or changes of appearance, which our moon exhibits to us, and which *we* present to *her* inhabitants. The distance of the first satellite from Jupiter is rather greater than that of the moon from the earth. Supposing it to be the same, the apparent size of Jupiter to an inhabitant of that satellite, would be as much greater than the apparent size of the moon to an inhabitant of the earth, as Jupiter's diameter exceeds that of the moon. This is in the proportion of about 40 to 1; and the whole surface of Jupiter (being as the square of the diameter) would be about 1600 times that of the moon as she appears to us. The quantity of light reflected by it would not, however, be proportionally great; since any portion of Jupiter's surface, equal in size to that of the moon, will only receive and reflect 1-25th part of the same solar light; consequently the whole quantity reflected will be (1600÷25) 64 times that which the moon affords to us.

621. From the frequency of the eclipses of the satellites of Jupiter, and the length of time they last (being about 2¼, 2¾, 3½, and 4¼ hours, for the four satellites respectively) it may be expected that they are not often to be all four seen at once. It is not uncommon for only two to be visible for a short time together; occasionally only one is seen; and there is an observation on record (probably the only one of the kind) that on the 2nd of November, 1681, Jupiter was seen without any satellites. There is a curious relation between the movements of the first three satellites; from which it happens that, when we know the situations of either of the two, we can fix that of the third; and also that they cannot all be eclipsed together,—since, when either two are on one side of the planet, the third will be on the opposite.

622. It was by the observation of the eclipses of Jupiter'

satellites, that the fact was first discovered (by Roemer, a Danish astronomer, in 1675) that light does not travel instantaneously, but has a certain definite velocity. This was ascertained by comparing together a series of observations upon the eclipses, which had been collected during successive years; for it was then found that the eclipses which took place, when the Earth was between Jupiter and the Sun (and consequently at the nearest possible point to Jupiter), were observed about 8 minutes sooner than the time when they might be expected by calculating the average of the observations; and that, on the other hand, the eclipses that took place when the Earth and Jupiter were on opposite sides of the Sun, were observed about 8 minutes later than the usual time. Hence it was inferred by Roemer, that the light of Jupiter requires 16 minutes to pass from the nearest to the farthest point in the earth's orbit; and as the distance of these two points is about 190 millions of miles, he estimated the velocity of the transmission of light at about 11¾ millions of miles per minute, or at about 192,000 miles per second.

623. This idea, startling as it seems at first, has been completely confirmed by the discovery of Bradley, respecting the aberration of light in the case of the Fixed Stars. By the term *aberration of light*, we understand a certain variation in the apparent places of the heavenly bodies, which is the combined result of the annual movement of the earth, and of the *progressive* (not immediate) transmission of light. This variation was discovered by Bradley, when he was attempting to ascertain the parallax of the fixed stars.—If a person stands still in a shower of rain, of which the drops are descending vertically, they will fall upon the top of his head; but if he run forwards, they will strike his face, in the same manner as if he were still, and they were driven towards him by the wind. Hence if he were carried forwards in such a manner as not to be conscious of his own motion, the striking of the drops upon his face would lead him to suppose, that the rain, whilst descending, was being brought by the wind from a point in advance of him, so that it does not come from the part

of the sky just above his head (as it would seem to do, if he were at rest), but from that towards which he is looking.—This illustration will account for the aberration of light, better than a longer explanation. The rays of light proceeding from any star, do not reach the earth in an instant, but require a very appreciable time to travel thither (§. 515); and during the whole of this period, the earth is moving onwards in its annual revolution. If the earth remained at rest, all the heavenly bodies would appear in their true positions, since their rays would strike it in the direction in which they left it. But as the earth moves onwards, the rays will fall on the face (as it were) of the observer; and he will consequently see each star a little in advance of its true place. If the direction and rate of our movement were always the same, we should always see the same difference between the apparent and real places of the stars; and we should thus be ignorant of its existence. But as we do in fact revolve in an orbit which is nearly circular, the stars appear to move in very small orbits, whose forms correspond with the perspective representation of our orbit to them. Those which are directly above the plane of our ecliptic, and which would see the earth (could they discern it) moving in a circular path, appear to describe very small circles. Those stars, on the other hand, which are on or near the plane of the ecliptic,—from which, therefore, our orbit would be seen edgeways, and the earth vibrating backwards and forwards along it,—perform a similar backward and forward movement. And those which have an intermediate position, so that the earth's orbit would be seen from them as a long narrow ellipse, perform similar long narrow ellipses. It is necessary, of course, to make allowance for this aberration, in all accurate observations on the position of the stars.

Saturn.

624. Though the planet Saturn has not the pre-eminence among the rest, which Jupiter possesses on account of his enormous size, it is distinguished by a beautiful appendage, which is quite unique,—namely, the *ring;* this is not visible, however,

to the naked eye. Although not much inferior to Jupiter in size (his diameter being about 79,000 miles), his greater distance from us makes his apparent dimensions much less, whilst his distance from the Sun reduces the proportion of light which he receives and reflects; consequently to the naked eye Saturn presents the aspect of a nebulous star of a dull leaden hue; and as his motion is very slow, he may be easily mistaken for a fixed star. With a telescope of very ordinary power, however, his extraordinary ring may be seen; but the exact appearance of this, and its separation into two or more, can only be well seen by a telescope of first-rate character.

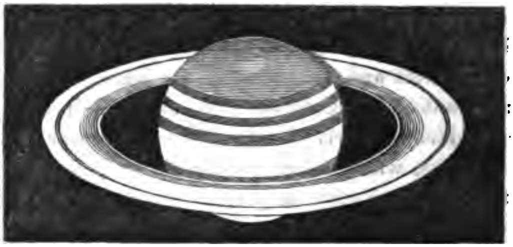


FIG. 165.—TELESCOPIC APPEARANCE OF SATURN.

625. The diameter of Saturn, being nearly 10 times that of the earth, his bulk is about 995 times greater; but his density is most remarkably low, being but a little more than an eighth of that of the earth, or about the same as that of light wood. Like Jupiter, he turns rapidly on his axis; his day being about 10h. 29m.; and his poles are flattened in nearly the same proportion. The axis of rotation is considerably inclined, however, to the plane of its orbit; so that there must be in Saturn the same kind of variety of seasons as in our globe. But as the light and heat received by Saturn from the central luminary, are not above 1-90th part as strong as that which we derive from it, the character of these seasons, and consequently of the living inhabitants (if there be any) of the planet, must be quite different from any of which we can form an idea. Indeed the constitu-

tion of the planet itself must be very unlike that of our earth. No water could exist on its surface; since, being heavier than the planet itself, every solid would float upon it. But there is probably *some* fluid; since the disc of the planet is crossed by the same belts as those which traverse the face of Jupiter; and if, as is probable, these belts are due to the existence of clouds, there must be a liquid, by the conversion of which into vapour, these clouds are produced.

626. The distance of Saturn from the sun is about 915 millions of miles; and the time of his revolution is proportionally long, being 10,759 days, or rather less than 29½ years. The excentricity of his orbit is rather more than that of Jupiter, being about 56 parts in 1000; and the inclination is also rather greater, being still, however, but 2½ degrees.

627. The *ring* of Saturn is a circular plane, completely surrounding the equator of the planet, but nowhere touching it. From the variation of our position in regard to that of Saturn, and from the circumstance that the axis of Saturn (like that of the earth) is always parallel to itself, we obtain many different views of this extraordinary appendage. Sometimes we see it exactly edgewise, in which case it is said to disappear, being invisible to all but the best telescopes, on account of its extreme thinness. It then appears merely as a thin bright line, crossing the disk of the planet, and projecting on each side. More commonly, however, we see it as an oval of greater or less breadth, according to the direction in which we view it. We could never see the whole circle at once, unless we were to look down upon it from a point beyond one of its poles. That the ring is a solid opaque substance, is shown by its throwing a distinct shadow upon the body of the planet; and from its exhibiting, on the side remote from the sun, a corresponding shadow thrown upon it by the planet. When viewed with a telescope of sufficient power, the surface of the ring is seen to exhibit several black lines; but one of these, near the outer margin, is conspicuous, and seems to divide the ring into two, the separation of which was first noticed by Dr. Herschel. The following are

the dimensions of the rings and of the body of Saturn, as calculated by Sir J. Herschel from Prof. Struve's measurements:

	MILES.
External diameter of outside ring	176418
Internal ditto	155272
Breadth of external ring, therefore	10573
External diameter of inside ring	151690
Internal ditto	117339
Breadth of internal ring, therefore	17175
Space between inner and outer rings	1791
Equatorial diameter of the planet	79160
Space between the planet and inner ring	19090
Thickness of the rings not exceeding	100

628. By means of certain spots upon the ring, Dr. Herschel was enabled to ascertain, that it rotates about an axis which corresponds to that of Saturn, in 10h. 19m. 161sec.; or in a period somewhat less than 10 minutes shorter than that of the planet itself. It has been calculated that this period is exactly that which a satellite would possess, if made to revolve in an orbit corresponding with the middle of the breadth of the ring. The centre of rotation of these rings is not perfectly fixed, but itself describes a small orbit. That it should do so was shown, by the celebrated mathematician Laplace, to be essential to the stability of the system, before the fact was ascertained by observation. This necessity may easily be understood, by referring to the laws formerly explained in regard to the rotation of bodies round an axis. (Chap. VII.) It is obvious that, if the ring be perfectly circular, and of equal density in every part, and if the body of the planet be a perfect spheroid, (that is, if every point on its equator, and on the circles parallel to it, be equally distant from the axis,) and the centre of the rings correspond exactly with its own, the attraction of the planet would never disturb the rings, since it would draw all parts of them equally towards its centre. But if any other force were to produce the slightest change,—so that one portion of the ring were made to approach the planet, and another portion were moved to a greater distance from it,—the attraction of the planet would operate with increased force

upon the part thus brought nearer, and less strongly upon the farther portion; and thus the displacement would continually increase, until, at last, the inner edge of the ring would be drawn into contact with the planet itself. To produce this disturbance, the attraction of the satellites alone would have been sufficient. Now it was shown by Laplace, that this instability would be prevented, by giving to the centres of the rings a slight motion round that of the planet; and recent observations have shown that such a motion actually exists. Sir J. Herschel compares this constant struggle between the preserving and destructive powers, to the mode in which a practised hand will sustain a long pole, resting on the finger, in a perpendicular direction, by a continual and most imperceptible variation of the point of support. Both these forces are extremely feeble; but they so antagonize one another, as to prevent the stability of the system from ever being so far disturbed that a catastrophe would result. It is beautiful to observe how these powers are thus balanced against each other; the disturbance that would arise from the direct attraction of the satellites for the ring, being prevented by a trifling peculiarity in the motion of the ring, which is itself but the result of another operation of the same force of universal attraction.

629. "The rings of Saturn," it is remarked by Sir J. Herschel, "must present a magnificent spectacle from those regions of the planet which lie above their enlightened sides, as vast arches spanning the sky from horizon to horizon, and holding an invariable situation among the stars. On the other hand, in the regions beneath the dark side, a solar eclipse of fifteen years in duration, under their shadow, must afford (to our ideas) an inhospitable asylum to animated beings, ill compensated by the faint light of the satellites. But we shall do wrong to judge of the fitness or unfitness of their condition from what we see around us; when, perhaps, the very combinations which convey to our minds only images of horror, may be, in reality, theatres of the most striking and glorious displays of beneficent contrivance."

630. Saturn is accompanied by no fewer than seven satellites, of which the most distant is nearly as large as Ma

With the exception of this last, the orbits of the satellites are so nearly in the same plane with the equator of the planet, and therefore with the ring, that they seem (like those of Jupiter) merely to move from side to side of his disc. Indeed, the two inner ones, which just skirt the edge of the ring, and move exactly in its plane, had escaped observation until Sir W. Herschel directed his largest telescope towards them; and he then saw them like minute beads strung upon the very thin thread of light, to which the ring was at that time reduced. The three next also require powerful telescopes to see them; but the last but one, which was the earliest discovered (by Huyghens, in 1755), is tolerably conspicuous. The periods of revolution of these satellites vary from about 22½ hours, which is that of the first, to 79⅓ days, which is that of the largest and most distant. The law discovered by Kepler, respecting the proportion between the distances of the planets from the Sun, and the times of their revolution, holds good equally, on a miniature scale, in regard to the satellites of Saturn.

Uranus.

631. This planet is the most distant of those at present known to constitute the solar system. It is too minute to be visible to the naked eye; and consequently altogether escaped observation before the discovery of the telescope. There is reason to believe that it was frequently noticed by astronomers, but that it was mistaken for a fixed star. Its variable position was first attentively watched by Dr. Herschel, who recognised it as a planet in the year 1781. His own name was at first proposed for it; but he was himself desirous that it should receive the appellation of Georgium Sidus, in honour of the King, who had greatly aided him in his astronomical researches. It is now generally agreed, however, that as all the other planets have received names from the Greek and Roman deities, this ought not to be an exception; and the title *Uranus* seems very appropriate, being the continuation of the order in which the more distant of the principal planets have been named. For, in the heathen mythology, Jupiter was the father of Mars, and

Saturn the father of Jupiter; hence, a planet more distant still should receive the name of the father of Saturn.

632. The distance of Uranus from the Sun is about 1840 millions of miles, or more than twice that of Saturn; and he receives no more than 1-362nd part of the light and heat which we enjoy. Through this vast orbit, he revolves in a period of about 30,787 days, or 84 years; and consequently has not performed more than three-fourths of a revolution, since his planetary nature was first discovered. His immense distance from us prevents us from becoming fully acquainted with the details of his state. Thus his appearance, when viewed through the most powerful telescopes, is only that of a small round disc, uniformly but faintly illuminated, of a bluish white colour, and presenting neither rings, belts, nor discernible spots. Hence, the question of his rotation on an axis cannot be determined; but there can be little doubt, from the analogy of all the other planets, that he does so revolve, though the time is entirely uncertain. His diameter is about 35,000 miles, or between 4 and 5 times that of the Earth; and his bulk is consequently about 80 times as great. His density seems to be somewhat less than that of Jupiter, so that his actual weight would be about 17½ times greater than that of the earth.

633. This planet was stated by its discoverer to be attended by six satellites; of these, however, only two have been clearly proved to exist. Of these, which would be the 2nd and 4th, if all six are present, the times of revolution are about 8¾ days, and 13½ days, respectively. They present a most remarkable peculiarity, which was first noticed by Sir W. Herschel, and which has been since confirmed by his son;—that whilst the orbit of Uranus himself is but very little inclined to the ecliptic, their orbits are nearly perpendicular to it, being inclined almost 79°;—and that in these orbits their motions are retrograde, their revolution round their primary being from east to west, instead of from west to east, as is the case with every other planet and satellite. It is generally found that the direction of the orbits of satellites, is nearly the same with that of the equator of the primary; and it will be shown hereafter (Chap. XXII.) that there is probably

a connexion between their revolution round it, and its own rotation on its axis. If this be the case, the axis of Uranus must be almost parallel with the ecliptic, so that his poles will almost be in its plane. The effect of such an arrangement upon his seasons (provided that his axis, like that of the Earth, always retains its parallelism to itself, §. 661) would be most extraordinary. As at the poles of our earth, the days and nights last half a year, in consequence of the moderate inclination of its axis to the ecliptic, so in Uranus not only the poles, but a very large proportion of his globe, will be alternately exposed to the sun and removed from it, during the half of *his* year of 30,687 days.

634. How different must be the constitution of any living beings that are adapted for such a residence, from that of which we can form any idea! and yet how limited would be our conception of the Creator's power, if we were to imagine, even for a moment, that there is any impossibility, or even an improbability, in the existence of such beings? It may be that they are destined to a life so long, that the days and nights of 42 years' length are to them but as the 24 hours' change between rest and activity, to the human race. The nations that inhabit our torrid zone can scarcely conceive of the nature of cold; nor could they suppose that either man, beast, or plant, could exist, in situations where the genial rays of the sun are received but for a few weeks in every year. And yet experience proves their error; for even where the sun is completely hid during four months out of every twelve, can man enjoy life, and wonder that any should desire a different climate. In like manner, the inhabitant of the frigid zone does not readily give credit to the accounts he hears of the perpetual summer that reigns within the tropics; and wonders how any human beings can live where there is no blubber or seal's flesh! Narrow and restricted as such notions appear to us, they are not less the result of experience, than those which we form respecting the condition of other worlds; and whilst we laugh at the ignorance of the Hindoo or Esquimaux, we should be careful lest we fall into the same error. Of course we have no means of even guessing the conformation of

living beings that are to inhabit what would be to us the intolerable and destructive heat of Mercury, or the dreary cold and darkness of Uranus; and it would be useless, therefore, to speculate on the subject. These are, perhaps, among the subjects on which our knowledge will be extended, in that state in which the intellect of man will be continually undergoing elevation towards the perfection of his Maker,—where all darkness shall be enlightened, all difficulties and obstructions shall be removed, and where, in learning more and more of the wonderful works of the Creator, we shall receive higher and yet higher motives to humble adoration of His infinite perfections.

635. The following illustration, proposed by Sir J. Herschel, is well adapted to convey to the mind an idea of the relative magnitudes and distances of the parts of our system. "Choose any well-levelled field or bowling-green. On it place a globe two feet in diameter; this will represent the sun; Mercury will be represented by a grain of mustard-seed, on the circumference of a circle 164 feet in diameter for its orbit; Venus a pea, on a circle 284 feet in diameter; the earth also a pea, on a circle of 430 feet; Mars a rather large pin's head, on a circle of 654 feet; Juno, Ceres, Vesta, and Pallas, grains of sand, in orbits of from 1000 to 1200 feet; Jupiter a moderate-sized orange, in a circle nearly half a mile across; Saturn a small orange, on a circle of four-fifths of a mile; and Uranus a full-sized cherry, or small plum, upon the circumference of a circle more than a mile and a half in diameter. To imitate the motions of the planets in these orbits, Mercury must pass through a space equal to its own diameter in 41 seconds; Venus in $4^m\ 14^s$; the earth, in 7^m; Mars, in $4^m\ 48^s$; Jupiter in $2^h\ 56^m$; Saturn in $3^h\ 13^m$; and Uranus, in $2^h\ 16^m$." It may be added, that such motions would actually take place, if the representatives of the planetary masses were set in motion by the required impulse (§. 171); provided that they were influenced by no other force than the attraction of the central globe, or representative of the Sun, and could move freely through space, without friction or resistance of the air. It may assist us in comparing this miniature representation with the reality, if we remember that the pigmy globe of two feet in

diameter must be expanded into a sphere of nearly 900,000 miles in diameter, or to 2,348¼ *million* times its size. What, then, must be the orbit of Uranus? And yet the whole of this vast system is but a point in the universe, no larger in the estimation of the inhabitants (if such there be) of the nearest of the fixed stars, than the smallest of the satellites of Saturn or Uranus appears to us.

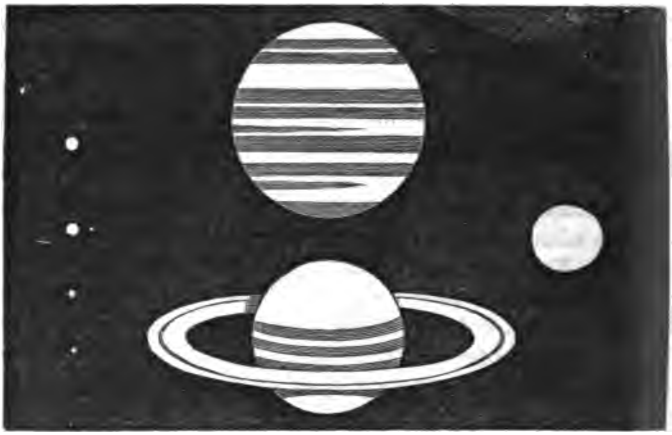


FIG. 166.—COMPARATIVE SIZES OF THE PLANETS. At the top, *Jupiter*; below, *Saturn*; on the right, *Uranus*; on the left, *Venus*, the *Earth* and *Moon*, *Mars*, and *Mercury*.

CHAPTER XIX.

OF COMETS.

636. We have seen that the name by which these bodies are known, was originally given to them on account of the peculiar luminous train or tail by which they are usually accompanied (§. 458); and for a long period this train was believed always to form a part of a cometary body. At the present time, however, astronomers are acquainted with comets which are destitute of tails; and can no longer, therefore, consider these as their distinctive characters. They regard as Comets those heavenly bodies of a luminous and nebulous appearance, which approach towards, and recede from, the Sun, after the manner of a planet in a single revolution. Some of these are known to revolve round the sun in regular elliptical orbits; and their appearance at particular times may be predicted with almost the same certainty as that of the planets. Others, again, seem to move in a curve which does not return into itself, and consequently do not reappear; as if, whilst moving in empty space, by a force which had previously impressed them, they had come within the sphere of the Sun's attraction, had been made for a time to revolve around him, and had again been launched into space, in a path that would carry them, perhaps, to the verge of some other system, to be attracted by *its* sun, and thus to perform a temporary revolution around it.

637. It was shown by Newton that one mass may move round another by the attraction of the latter, combined with its own proper force of motion, not only in an ellipse, but in either of the other two *conic sections*, the *parabola* and the *hyperbola*,—more generally, however, in the former of these two than in the

latter. Now the difference between the vertex of a parabola, and one of the ends of a very elongated ellipse, is so trifling, that it is very difficult to distinguish them; and as Comets only become visible to us, when they are going through this part of their curve, it is scarcely possible to calculate with certainty the nature or dimensions of their orbits, or the period of their return. The only instances in which this calculation can be accurately made, are those of comets having but moderately elliptical orbits, resembling those of the more excentric planets, such as Juno and Pallas (§. 609); for in these the form of the curve described by the comet, as it approaches the sun and becomes visible, is sufficiently unlike the parabola, to be readily distinguished from it.

638. The first attempt to predict the return of a comet, and thus to include this class of bodies within the control of the laws governing the system in general, was made by Dr. Halley, the contemporary of Newton. A remarkable comet having appeared in the year 1682, Dr. Halley calculated the elements of its orbit, —or in other words, laid down its path, from the observations of Flamsteed and others. The same methods of calculation applied to the observations of Kepler in 1607, upon a comet having a similar appearance, gave results,—in regard to the inclination of its orbit, the place of its nodes, the situation of its perihelion, and the *retrograde* direction of its movement,—so closely conformable to these, that little doubt could be entertained in regard to the bodies being the same. Between these two periods, there was an interval of 75 years; and reckoning backwards from 1607 to the same amount, Dr. H. searched in astronomical records for an account of a similar comet in 1531 or 1532. Such a one he found to have been observed; and by applying the same method of calculation to the recorded observations of its progress through the constellations, he deduced results almost precisely identical. Going still further back, he found that a similar comet had appeared in 1456; but its elements he could not determine, from the want of sufficient observations. This comet had a tail which spread over 60° of the heavens, and excited great consternation in Europe; its appearance being regarded

as connected with the most serious event in that age,—the menacing success of the Mahomedan armies. A remarkable comet is recorded as having been observed also in 1305,—or two periods of 75 years previously,—and also in 1230; and the correspondence of the times is so striking, that it may be reasonably supposed to have been the same; and it is not difficult to account for the absence of any notice of its appearance in 1380 or 1381, since no regular astronomical records were kept at that period.

639. Having shown the identity of the comet of 1682 with that of 1607 and of 1531,—to say nothing of the earlier appearances,—Halley seemed fully justified in predicting that the comet would re-appear in 1758 or the beginning of 1759,—its period being about 75½ years. He left the precise time in some degree of uncertainty, having perceived that the interval had not been exactly the same in previous instances, and being disposed to think that the attracting influence of the planets might occasion a considerable disturbance in its course. His prediction was given confidently, and with a full sense of its importance; he desired that it should be remembered that its author was an Englishman. Several astronomers took up the subject; but it was not until 1757,—a year before the expected return of the comet,—that any one ventured to grapple with the very difficult question of the perturbations produced by the planets. It was then taken up by Clairaut, a French mathematician, who found that the return of the comet would be retarded to the amount of 518 days by the action of Jupiter, and 100 days by that of Saturn; so that it should pass its perihelion by the middle of April, 1759. He gave notice, however, at the same time, that, having been hurried in his calculations, he had neglected small quantities, which in 76 years might amount to about 30 days *more or less*. The predictions of Halley and Clairaut were fully justified by the event; for the comet re-appeared at the end of 1758, and passed its perihelion on the 12th of March, 1759, or just within the limit assigned by Clairaut. Its brightness, however, was much less than on former occasions, partly in consequence of the different position of the earth; and it does not seem to have been readily visible to the naked eye.

640. Numerous and accurate observations were made of its progress in the heavens; but no complete calculations were made as to its orbit, and the perturbations of the planets, until near the time of its expected re-appearance in 1835. The computation was again undertaken by two French mathematicians; and they fixed the period of its perhelion passage for the month of November, 1835; the one predicting it for the 4th, and the other for the 7th,—the difference being due to a different estimate of the quantity of matter in the perturbing planets. The actual passage took place, however, on the 15th of November, the comet having been first seen on the 5th of August, and remaining visible to the naked eye through the ensuing winter. This error of 8 days only, in a period of 76 years, cannot be regarded as surprising, when it is considered for how short a portion of its orbit the comet is visible; and how much a very small error in determining the form of one of its extremities will affect the estimate of its length;—when it is remembered, also, how much it suffers from the perturbing influence of the planets, and how difficult it must be—with our very imperfect knowledge of the structure of the comet and the quantity of matter it contains—to estimate this aright. In fact, this degree of accuracy must be regarded as a wonderful proof of the completeness of our knowledge of the laws, that govern the movements of bodies even so erratic as these. During the whole time of its appearance in 1835, its movements were very attentively watched by various able observers, both British and continental; and a body of observations has been collected, which will probably afford, to any calculator who shall undertake to compute from them the time of its re-appearance in 1911, the means of doing so with still greater accuracy. It is not probable, however, that this will be accomplished until the time approaches; since the fame to be acquired by this laborious investigation, and its correspondence with the actual result, is the only reward which it is likely to receive; and most men would prefer acquiring it whilst living, to leaving it to add fresh lustre to their memories after their death.

641. This comet, whose periodicity was the first discovered, long remained the only one whose character in this respect was

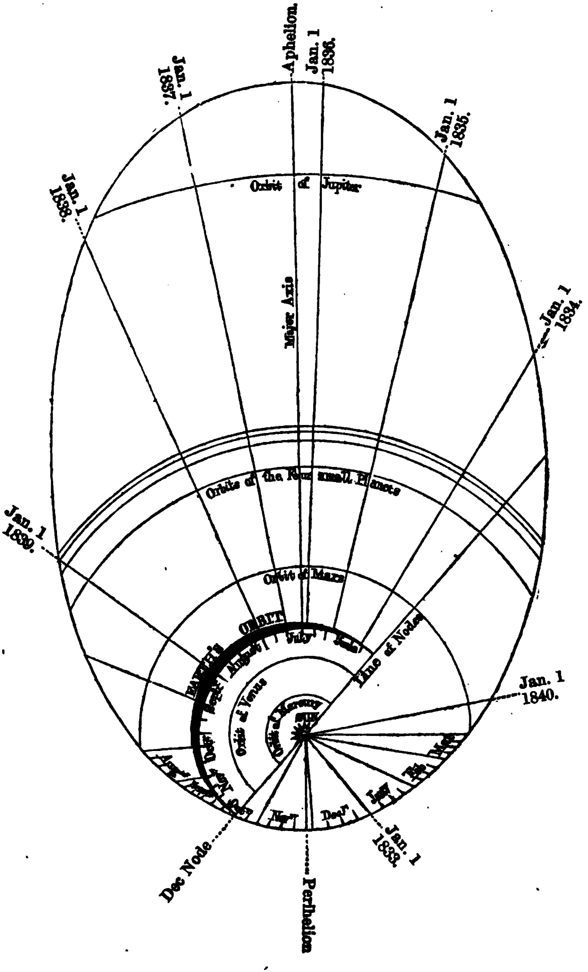
known. In 1818, however, a small comet was discovered, the elements of whose orbit so closely corresponded with those of a comet which had been seen in 1805, that there could be little doubt of their being the same. From these elements M. Encke calculated its period, and found that its orbit is elliptical, and that it only required about 1200 days, or $3\frac{3}{10}$ years, to travel through its whole path; so that between 1805 and 1808 it must have re-appeared three times without having been noticed. This might easily be imagined; since the comet is very small and its light very weak, so that it is imperceptible to the naked eye. Still, as the heavens are now being continually and attentively surveyed by a large number of astronomers, the total absence of any record of it is remarkable. On examining older records, however, it was found that the appearance of a comet, whose orbit corresponded closely with that of 1818, had been recorded in 1786 and in 1795; and that these dates corresponded with those in which this body might be calculated to have performed its revolution. Although, therefore, the period was found to be so much shorter than might have been expected, M. Encke's determination of it was fully justified by past observations; and his prediction of its re-appearance in June, 1822, was completely borne out by the result.

642. Since that time it has regularly made its appearance, very nearly at the places and in the times predicted by calculation. But there is a regular diminution of its period of revolution, and a gradual approach of its orbit towards the sun, for which mathematicians and astronomers do not feel able to account, otherwise than by supposing that all space is filled with a resisting medium, so thin or *rare* in its character, that it has not offered the least perceptible impediment to the earth or planets in their movement round the sun, but quite enough to operate sensibly upon a little "whiff of vapour," such as this comet is believed to be. It might be supposed that the effect of such a resisting medium would be to retard its movement, and thus to *increase*, instead of diminishing, the time of its revolution; but by referring to the explanation of the nature of curvilinear motion formerly given (§. 172), it will be seen that the effect

of such resistance will be to diminish the force with which the body is moving onwards, and thus to allow the central attraction to draw it nearer, by which the revolution will be rendered more rapid, and its period consequently shortened. The ultimate result must be, that the comet will be drawn into the sun, unless it be first dissipated altogether;—a result which will be presently shown (§. 652) to be by no means impossible. The nature of this resisting medium will be hereafter considered (Chap. XXII.).

643. The only other comet at present known to have a regular period, was observed in 1826 by M. Biela, an officer then residing at Prague. On a calculation of the elements of its orbit, and a comparison of these with the results of similar observations on preceding comets, they were found to correspond with those of a comet which had appeared in 1805 and also in 1772; and the periodical return of this body seemed therefore probable. On this supposition, its orbit must be regarded as an ellipse, and not as a parabola; and when its path was thus laid down from the ascertained elements, it was found that its revolution would take place in 2460 days, or about 6¾ years, and that its re-appearance might be expected, therefore, in 1832. In order to ascertain the precise period of its return, it was of course necessary to study the perturbing influence of the planets; and when their places were ascertained, and compared with its course, the curious result was obtained, that it would cross the orbit of the Earth, only about a month before the arrival of the latter at the point of intersection. This announcement excited much curiosity, and amongst timid persons a good deal of excitement, amounting even to alarm. It was quite destitute of foundation, however; and might have been completely removed by tracing the history of this comet a little further back; for in 1805 it must have passed within 5 millions of miles from the earth, whilst in 1832, it was never within 60 millions. The comet did actually appear in September, 1832, according to prediction, and in the part of the heavens where it was expected. It is a small insignificant comet, looking like a collection of nebulous matter, and not having either a tail, or any appearance

of a solid nucleus. It appeared again in the latter part of 1838; and will again present itself in 1845. The accompanying


Aphelion.
Jan. 1 1836.
Jan. 1 1837.
Jan. 1 1835.
Jan. 1 1838.
Orbit of Jupiter
Major Axis
Jan. 1 1834.
Orbits of the Four small Planets
Jan. 1 1839.
Orbit of Mars
EARTH'S ORBIT
July
June
August
Sept
Octr
Novr
Orbit of Venus
Orbit of Mercury
SUN
Line of Nodes
Jan. 1 1840.
March
Feby
Jany
Decr
Novr
Octr
Septr
Augt
Jan. 1 1833.
Dec Node
Perihelion

Representation of the Orbit of the Comet of 1832, with the relative position the Orbit of the Earth.

diagram represents the orbit of this comet, compared with that of the earth; and marks the point where they intersect, which happens to be very near the descending node. The time at which the comet reached its perihelion in 1832 is seen to be in the middle of November; it crossed the earth's orbit on the 29th of October; but the earth did not reach the same point until the 30th of November. When the revolutions of this comet shall have been observed with the same frequency and accuracy as those of Encke's comet have been, it will be of great importance to ascertain if it exhibits a similar acceleration in its period of revolution; since, unless it does so, the doctrine of the resisting medium can scarcely be true.

644. Now, in contrast with these facts, which show the regularity with which some Comets perform their revolutions, others may be mentioned, which show that, by the operation of the very same causes, their movements may be rendered altogether irregular. Yet are they still under the dominion of the same laws; and if we are acquainted with *all* the causes that are in operation, the result may be predicted with equal certainty. One of the most remarkable of these cases is that of a comet which appeared in June, 1770. As soon as a sufficient number of observations had been made upon its movements, astronomers set to work to calculate the elements of its orbit. These were not found to correspond with the elements of any comet previously known; and yet, after very numerous and careful observations, it was satisfactorily determined that its orbit could not be a parabola,—that it must return into itself, forming an ellipse,—and that the comet must, therefore, have a regular periodic revolution round the sun, the time of which would be about 5½ years. It was shown that all the observed positions of the comet corresponded most exactly with an elliptical orbit, whose long diameter was only three times that of the Earth's orbit. Having so rapid a revolution, and being of tolerable size and brightness, it might be supposed that some record of former appearances of this comet could be discovered; but the most careful research did not throw any light upon it, for no such record could be found. And what was for some time a source of

the greatest perplexity to astronomers, and a frequent subject of a variety of small sarcasms amongst those who affect to laugh at star-gazers as unprofitable wasters of time,—this Comet has never since shown itself.

645. But by simply comparing its course with that of the planet Jupiter, the whole mystery was explained. For it was ascertained that in its subsequent revolution, it would approach so near to Jupiter, that his attractive force would be 200 times greater than that of the Sun; and that the form of the orbit of the Comet would be thus so completely changed, that its revolution would require 20 years, and that its least distance from the sun would become 393 millions of miles, so that it would not be visible from the earth. Reasoning *backwards* in the same manner, it was found that, on its approach to the Sun in 1767, it must have encountered Jupiter; but that his influence must have been then exerted in an opposite direction, so as to change a long ellipse—whose shortest distance from the sun was 597 millions of miles, and the period of its revolution which was 50 years—into the smaller orbit, in which it performed two revolutions. Thus the *novelty* of the appearance of this comet in 1770, and its subsequent complete disappearance, are fully accounted for: and the very fact which led some to doubt the universality of the Newtonian principle, has become a striking confirmation of it. In order to meet Jupiter a second time in the part of his orbit where the change was produced, this comet must have crossed its perihelion in 1776; and its having escaped observation is to be accounted for, by its having come to this point during the day.

646. Although these are the only Comets, whose periodical return to the neighbourhood of the Sun has been ascertained with anything like certainty, the number that have at different times been visible from the earth is very much greater; and it is probable that these constitute but a very small proportion of the total number that visit our system. Of this number, varying estimates have been formed; but all agree in regarding it as enormous. The two following will give an idea of the principles upon which they are computed. It is stated by Sir J. Herschel,*

---

* Preliminary Discourse, p. 62.

that 140 comets have appeared within the earth's orbit, during the last century, which have not been again seen. If we allow 1000 years as the average period of these, then we might expect to see as many new ones in another century, and so on until we have seen them all *once;* and at this rate about 1400 must have their range within the Earth's orbit. But the orbits of the comets are so extensive, that even the perihelion distance of many whose existence has been ascertained, is beyond the orbit of Mars; and as we have a right to suppose that they are distributed with some degree of uniformity, the number ranging within the boundaries of the orbit of Uranus may be computed from that ranging within the Earth's orbit, by comparing the dimensions of the two. Now, as Uranus is at about twenty times the Earth's distance from the Sun, the amount of space included within a sphere of the diameter of his orbit is $(20 \times 20 \times 20 =)$ 8000 times that which would be included by a corresponding sphere of the diameter of the Earth's orbit; and multiplying this number by 1400, we obtain 11,200,000 as the whole number of comets, which may be supposed with probability to come within the range of the planetary system.—M. Arago has formed a similar estimate, from the number which are known to have their perihelion distance within the orbit of Mercury; and on this foundation he computes the whole number at about 3½ millions. But he considers that this number may be doubled, in consequence of various causes which may intercept from our view the comets which approach so near to the sun;—so that the total number may be estimated at not less than 7 millions.—There is sufficient agreement between these two estimates, to cause us to regard the probable number of comets occasionally visiting our system as certainly not less than *five millions.*

647. Comets are not, like most of the planets, restricted to a zone of the heavens that does not extend much on either side of the ecliptic; for their paths have every possible inclination to that of the earth; and they may therefore be seen in almost any part of the sky.—Moreover, they differ from the planets remarkably in this,—that the motions of about one-half of them are *retrograde,* that is, from east to west. They are only visible to

us when near their perihelion points; and as they then travel with great rapidity, they can seldom be watched for any long time. Their light is principally, if not entirely, derived from that of the sun; and their brilliancy must increase, therefore, in proportion as they approach him. The celebrated comet of 1680 seems to have had its perihelion point at a shorter distance from the sun, than any on which observations have been made; this being only about 590,000 miles from his centre, or 147,000 miles from his surface. It was calculated to move at the rate of 880,000 miles an hour, when in that part of its orbit; and to have gone from one side of the sun to the other in about 10½ hours. If its enormous centrifugal force had ceased, when it passed the perihelion, it would have fallen into the sun in about 3 minutes. At its nearest approach to the sun, it would have received from him a heat 27,500 times greater than that which comes to us; and it is probable that a heat of such intensity would be sufficient to convert into vapour every terrestrial substance with which we are acquainted. The sun's apparent diameter, at that distance, would be 70 degrees; and to an observer situated in the comet, it would, therefore, extend nearly from the zenith to the horizon. The period of this comet is supposed to be about 575 years; and, if this be the case, its orbit must be so long, that, at its greatest distance from the sun, his apparent diameter would be no more than 14 seconds, which is not half as great as the apparent diameter of Mars when nearest to us. At that distance, his heat could not have been perceptible; and the comet must therefore have been exposed to the temperature of the space that intervenes between our different systems, which is estimated at 580 below the zero or 0° of Fahrenheit's thermometer.

648. Comets are usually described as consisting of a *head* and a *tail*. The head is a large but ill-defined nebulous spot, which is usually much brighter towards the centre, where there is a very brilliant spot, often resembling the body of a planet, or a star,—termed the *nucleus*. The tail (where it exists, for it is not universally present) consists of a stream of light proceeding from the head, and *always directed towards the side most remote*

from the sun; it is often slightly curved, however; bending towards the region which the comet has left. It commonly

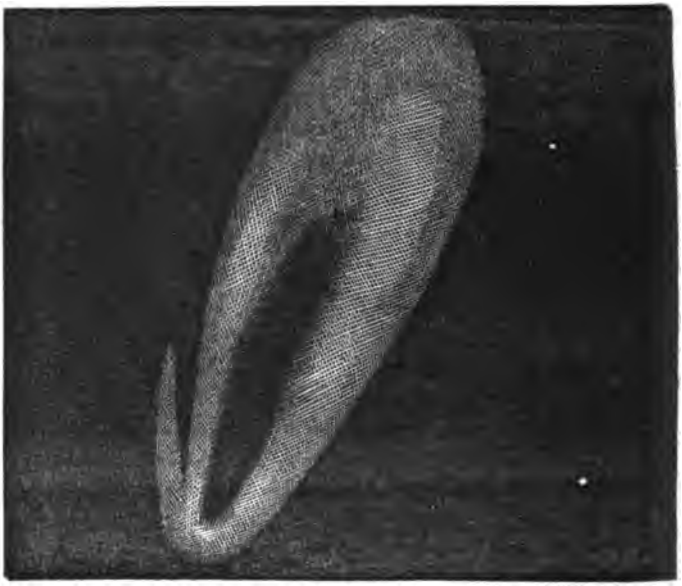


FIG. 167.—SECOND COMET OF 1825.

seems formed by the union of two distinct streams, which close together a little behind the head; sometimes these remain distinct along their whole course; and occasionally they branch out into five or six divisions, as was the case with that of the comet of 1744. The tail has generally very much the appearance of the luminous trains left by some bright meteors, or of the fiery track of the sky-rocket—only that it has no sparks or perceptible motion. This magnificent appendage has sometimes an immense apparent as well as real length. The comet of 1618 is stated to have been attended by a train no less than 104° in length; so that if the body had been upon the southern point of the horizon, and the tail had shot up vertically into the sky, it would have passed through the zenith, and nearly reached the

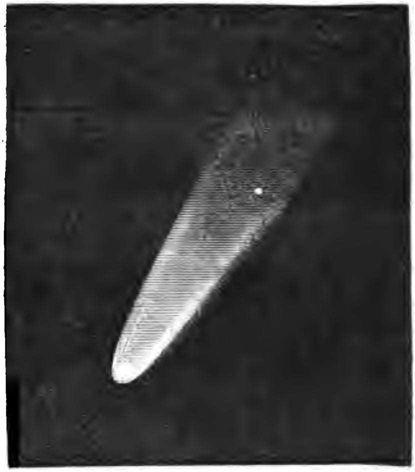


FIG. 168.—COMET OF 1819.

pole-star on the northern side. The comet of 1680, with a head no larger than a star of the second magnitude, had a tail which covered from 70° to 90° of the heavens; and its actual greatest length was calculated at about 123 millions of miles; so that, if the comet had been in the sun, its tail would have extended nearly 30 millions of miles beyond the earth's orbit. The length of the tail of the celebrated comet of 1811 was about 108 millions of miles; and the diameter of the transparent space between the head and the commencement of the tail, was about half a million of miles. On the other hand, there are several comets, especially those which are only visible with the assistance of a telescope, that do not possess tails; such were the comets which appeared in the years 1585, 1682, and 1763, although that of 1682 is recorded to have been as bright as Jupiter; and such also are the comets of Encke and Biela.

649. With regard to the amount of solid matter contained in these remarkable bodies, and the mode in which this is arranged, there has been considerable difference of opinion; and the variation is probably to be accounted for by an actual diversity in the constitution of different comets. Thus, there are some which appear like collections of vapour, more dense towards the centre, but exhibiting no distinct nucleus, and therefore not entitled to be considered as having the least solidity. Stars of the smallest magnitudes remain distinctly visible, though covered by what appears to be the densest portion of their substance; although the same stars would be completely obscured by a moderate

extending only a few yards from the surface of the earth. But, in other instances, when the nuclei are viewed with powerful telescopes, they have appeared to contain a solid centre; which seemed in one instance about 3250 miles in diameter. The best proof, however, of the very small amount of matter contained in comets, is derived from the complete absence of any perceptible influence produced by them on the movements of the planets; whilst they are themselves affected by these bodies in a very high degree. Thus, the comet of 1770 passed within about six times the moon's distance from the earth, without producing the least influence, even on our tides; yet the revolution of the comet itself is stated to have been retarded by it, to the amount of two days. Had the mass of this comet been equal to that of the earth, its passage so near it would have increased the length of the year by nearly three hours; but as we know that the length of the year was not actually increased by the fraction of a second, it may be proved that the mass of that comet could not have been equal to 1-5000th part of that of the earth. This same comet twice swept through Jupiter's system of moons, without in the least deranging their motions, though its own orbit was completely changed, in the manner and degree already stated (§. 645).

650. The absence of any changes of appearance resembling the *phases* of a planet, also indicates the vaporous nature of comets; for, if they had large solid nuclei, these would reflect the sun's light to us, or would present their dark faces towards us, according to the relative positions of the sun, the comet, and the earth. This is so far from being the case, that we always see the whole head illuminated;—a fact for which there is no other way of accounting, than upon the supposition that, either the comet is self-luminous, or that it is a great mass of thin vapour, susceptible of being penetrated through its whole substance by the sun-beams, and of reflecting these alike from its interior parts, and from its surface. That comets are not self-luminous, appears from the fact, that when they recede from us, they do not retain their brilliancy whilst their apparent size diminishes, as is the case with regard to the sun and stars; but

that they gradually become dimmer and dimmer as they increase their distance from the sun, and at last vanish, merely from the loss of his light, while they still retain a sensible diameter. The most brilliant comets have hitherto ceased to be visible, when about five times as far from the sun as we are; and most of those that have been seen from the earth have their perihelion within the orbit of Mars. It may, therefore, be concluded that comets shine by reflecting the sun's light; and from what has been stated of the extremely small amount of matter they contain, it is evident that "the most unsubstantial clouds which float in the highest regions of our atmosphere, and seem at sunset to be drenched in light, and to glow throughout their whole depth, as if in actual ignition, without any shadow or dark side, must be looked upon as dense and massive bodies, compared with the filmy and all but spiritual texture of a comet."

651. That the luminous part is something of the nature of a smoke, cloud, or fog suspended in a transparent atmosphere, appears from the fact already stated, respecting the transparent interval between the head itself and the portion of the tail that comes up and surrounds it; an appearance analogous to that which we frequently witness in our own sky, of one layer of clouds spreading over another, with a considerable clear space between them. This widely-dispersed condition of the solid matter seems due to the very small attraction which there will be towards the central point, from the absence of solidity there. "If the earth," remarks Sir J. Herschel, "retaining its present size, were reduced by any internal change (as by hollowing out its central parts) to one-thousandth part of its actual mass, its coercive power over the atmosphere would be diminished in the same proportion, and in consequence the latter would expand to a thousand times its actual bulk;—and indeed much more, owing to the still further diminution of gravity, by the recess of the upper parts from the centre." It has been observed that, in Encke's comet, which has no tail, there is a rapid contraction in the size of the nebulous disc as it approaches the sun, and an equally rapid increase as it recedes; and it has been suggested by Sir J. Herschel, that this change may be due to the conversion by the sun's he

of some of the materials of the comet, from the state of a visible cloud to that of an invisible gas, and a subsequent return to its previous condition when the heat is withdrawn,—just as we see the vapour of water diffused through the air in the state of mist or fog, rendered transparent by a slight increase of atmospheric temperature.

652. No satisfactory explanation has ever been offered, as to the nature of the luminous train or tail. The common idea is, that this consists of matter which has been left behind, as it were, by the comet during its rapid course, and which remains for some time in the same position, like the smoke from a steamer on a calm day. But this is quite inconsistent with the fact already stated respecting the direction of the tail; for after the comet has passed its perihelion, the tail rather projects before it, than is left behind. That the condition of the tail is in some degree connected with the effect of the sun's heat upon the matter of the comet, appears from the fact, that the size of the tail increases as it approaches him; and that it is much greater on the return of the comet from its perihelion passage, than it is on its approach towards it. Very frequently, comets make their first appearance with little or no train; and yet exhibit one of great length and brightness, whilst they are receding from the sun. That some of their own substance is thus driven off, and dispersed into space through the deficiency of sufficient attraction to draw it again towards the nucleus, further appears from this fact,—that the size and brilliancy of the comets whose return has been observed, are undergoing a sensible diminution with each re-appearance.

653. The want of density in these bodies is further proved by the effect produced on their movements by the resisting medium already mentioned (§. 642). For this medium has not density enough to have produced the slightest perceptible effect upon the movements of the planets; though an extremely trifling change, accumulating through many centuries, would now be recognised with certainty. Yet its resistance shortens the period of Encke's comet by as much as one day in 2500. Thus we may recognise the existence of this medium by its resistance to this

little "whiff of vapour;" just as we recognise the presence of our own atmosphere by its resistance to a feather, although a piece of lead falls through it without showing its effects. On this view of the constitution of comets, which every known circumstance appears to confirm, "we might as well attempt to ascertain how far a cloud which is driven against a mountain will tend to break off the top, as speculate upon any mechanical danger to the earth from contact with a comet. The effect of such a circumstance would be the mixture of its gaseous material with our atmosphere, causing a permanent rise in the mean height of the barometer (though there is no evidence that all the comets put together would have mass enough to produce a sensible effect of this kind); and, if the gaseous matter should condense sufficiently to descend to the lower regions of our atmosphere, some effect upon animal existence, as likely good as bad." Hence we may at once put aside the many speculations which have been offered respecting the operation of comets upon our own globe or upon that of others; and consider it almost certain, that a comet cannot have had any concern in the creation of our planet, and that nothing is to be feared respecting its injury or demolition from such a cause.

"Lo! from the dread immensity of space,
Returning with accelerated course,
The rushing comet on the sun descends,
And as he sinks below the shading earth,
The guilty nations tremble.
Th' enlighten'd few
Whose god-like minds philosophy exalts,
The glorious stranger hail; they feel a joy
Divinely great;—they in their powers exult;
That wondrous force of thought, which mounting spurns
The dusky spot, and measures all the sky;
While, from his far excursion through the wilds
Of barren ether, faithful to his time,
They see the blazing wonder rise anew
To work the will of all sustaining love."

THOMSON.

CHAPTER XX.

OF THE EARTH'S ANNUAL REVOLUTION.

654. It has been shown that, by admitting the earth to have an annual revolution round the sun, as well as a daily rotation on its own axis, we are able to explain all the observed movements of the heavenly bodies; and that on no other supposition could we account for them so simply and satisfactorily. It has also been pointed out, that the phenomenon of the aberration of light (§. 623) gives exactly that *proof* to the supposition, which was wanting to render it positively certain. It will now, therefore, be treated as an established fact in astronomy; and its consequences will be considered in more detail.

655. The orbit of the earth is an ellipse, of which the semi-axis, constituting the *mean* distance (§. 565) of the planet from the sun, is about 95 millions of miles; but when at its *perihelion* (or shortest distance from the sun), the earth is about 1½ million of miles nearer to the sun than this; and when at its *aphelion* (or greatest distance), it is about 1½ million of miles further off than the mean distance. The whole orbit is traversed by the earth in 365 days, 6 hours, 9 minutes, 9½ sec. solar time; that is, rather more than 365¼ *solar* days elapse, whilst the revolution is being completed, so far as respects the earth's position in regard to the *stars*. This period is termed the *sidereal* year; and it consists of about 366¼ *sidereal* days; since, as formerly explained (§. 454), in consequence of the apparent backward movement of the sun amongst the stars, they are about 4 minutes less than 24 hours in coming to the meridian after one diurnal revolution of the earth, and thus gain exactly a day upon the sun during each year. The same effect would be produced by a person's travel-

ling continually eastward, or in the direction of the earth's rotation. When he has completed his circuit of the globe, he will have moved round its axis once more than the earth itself has done; and consequently will have gained a day,—not, however, by the absolute creation of time, but by the shortening of all the other days to make up for it. On the other hand, a person who circumnavigates the globe in the contrary direction, loses a day; for by journeying with the sun, each day is prolonged; and when he has completed his circuit, he will have made one revolution less than the earth itself has done. Hence, supposing that two ships return from voyages of circumnavigation made in contrary directions, on a day which is Wednesday to those who have remained at home, that day will be reckoned as Tuesday by the ship which has sailed westwards, and Thursday by the one that has proceeded eastwards. The missionaries in some of the South Sea islands continue to keep different reckonings, corresponding with the different courses of the ships which conveyed them there.

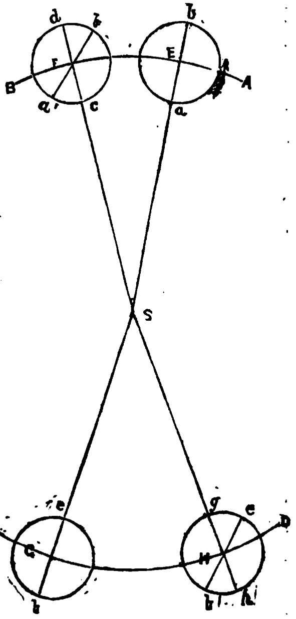


FIG. 169.

656. If the orbit of the earth were circular, the motion of our globe would be equable in every part of it, so that the length of each day (that is, of each interval between noon and noon) would be the same. But this is not the case; for the velocity of the earth's onward movement varies considerably in different parts of its orbit, whilst that of its diurnal revolution remains always precisely the same. The mode in which this will operate, is shown in the accompanying diagram. Let A B represent a portion of the earth's orbit at or near its aphelion, and C D a corresponding portion near its perihelion

then, from the varying rate of movement which is the result of the difference of distance, the earth will occupy the same time in moving from E to F, that it requires to move through the greater length G H. Now when the earth is at E, the sun is shining directly upon the point *a*; and it is consequently noon at that place. But in travelling towards F, the earth rotates on its axis, so that the point *a* is carried towards *b* in the direction of the arrow, and afterwards again into a position corresponding with *a*. But owing to the change in the earth's place in its orbit, it does not then come directly opposite to the sun; for although, when the line *a b* has returned to its original position in *a′ b′*, the earth has actually made one complete rotation on its axis, as is evinced by the direction of *b′* towards the same stars towards which *b* pointed, it is obliged to turn still further before the point *a′* can again be presented directly to the sun, which it does not do until it arrives at the position *c*. Hence the sidereal day, or the time which elapses between either of the points *a* or *b* quitting their first position, and returning to it again in *a′ b′*, is the real measure of the earth's rotation; but for obvious reasons, it is more convenient to adopt as our standard the solar day, or the time which intervenes between any point *a* quitting its first position, and returning to the same position as regards the sun, which it does not do until it reaches *c*.

657. Now in like manner, as the earth changes its position from G to H, it makes a corresponding rotation on its axis, so that the line *e f* comes into the position *e′ f′*, which is the same in regard to the stars; and for this movement precisely the same time is required as before. But before the point *e′* can again return to its original direction in regard to the sun, it must be carried by the earth's rotation, to *g*. Now it will be observed that, as C D is nearer than A B to S, the sun, the movement of the earth in the former part of the orbit will be faster than in the latter; and consequently a larger amount of it will be traversed in the same time. The result of this will evidently be, that, as the earth changes its place in reference to the sun, more between G and H than between E and F, the excess of the solar day over the sidereal will be greater in the second case than in the first;—

or in other words, the space between e' and g, which the earth has to fetch up (as it were) in order to bring e' again opposite to the sun, will be greater than the space a' c, which the earth has to move for the same purpose in this other part of its orbit. Consequently the interval between noon and noon will be longer than the average in the second case, and shorter in the first. Consequently, as the clock is made to go an *average* day, or in other words 1-365th part of the number of whole days in the year, the sun will sometimes cross the meridian before the noon of the clock, and sometimes after.

658. There are four days in the year in which the noon of the sun and the noon of the clock correspond, or very nearly so; these are the 15th of April, the 15th of June, the 1st of September, and the 25th of December. After Christmas day, the sun begins to be behind the clock (the earth being then in the most rapid motion), and the difference increases, until it amounts to about 14½ minutes; after which it progressively decreases, until the two correspond. Between April and June, the sun is before the clock; but the greatest difference is less than 4 minutes. Between June and September, the clock is before the sun again; but the greatest difference does not much exceed 6 minutes. And lastly, between September and Christmas, the sun is again before the clock, and this time to the extent of nearly 16¼ minutes. This difference, the extremes of which thus amount to nearly 31 minutes, is known as the *equation of time;* and its amount for every day in the year, is set down in most almanacs, so that in keeping a clock by the sun, the proper allowance should be made.

659. The hour of noon may be ascertained with a considerable degree of exactness, without a transit instrument, by erecting some fixed mark which shall throw a pointed shadow; if a line be drawn from it through the point of the shadow at the exact time of noon, as fixed by a good clock (the proper allowance being made for the equation, if any) the point of the shadow will always fall in some part of that line at noon, and will thus enable the clock to be regulated much better than by an ordinary sun-dial. The more distant the point of the index is from the surface on which its shadow falls, the quicker its

shadow will move; and consequently, the more accurately may the time of the sun's passing the meridian line be noted. Such an index may be very well constructed in any ordinary room having a southern aspect, by fixing a narrow slip of card or other opaque material on the window, and drawing the meridian line on the floor; or, which is still better, making the index to consist of a piece of thin metal, having a slit in its middle, through which a narrow beam of light may pass; the metal will throw a deep shadow, and the beam which issues from the midst of it will play over the index-line, in such a manner that the time of the sun's passing the meridian may be noted, to within a few seconds of the truth,—a degree of exactness quite sufficient for all ordinary purposes. In some cathedrals, such a line has been marked along the floor, by marble of a different colour from the pavement, inlaid, so as not to be effaced; and the beam of light has been admitted through a narrow chink in the wall at a great height.

Of the Seasons.

660. If a globe like the earth receive light from a large luminary, such as the sun, it is evident that the light will fall upon half of its surface at once, and that the other half is in the dark. This may be easily proved by the simple experiment of holding a small globe, an orange, a ball of worsted, or anything that has a globular form, near a lamp or candle, no other light being allowed to fall upon it at the same time.—But the part of the globe which will be illumined, will depend upon the manner in which it is held. Thus, suppose in the first instance that it be held on a level with the lamp,—the light will then fall directly on its equator, and the illuminated hemisphere will just extend to each pole. Now if the globe be made to turn round, as by suspending it from a string passing through its poles, it will be seen that every part of the globe is turned towards the light during exactly half its revolution; and if we carry our globe in a circuit round the lamp, causing it to continue rotating at the same time, the same will occur in every part of its revolution. But if we hold the globe rather *above* the lamp, the under

part of it will receive more light, and the upper less; and on making it revolve, we shall see that the south pole and the parts surrounding it, are continually enlightened, whilst the north pole and its neighbourhood are in constant shadow. On the other hand, if we lower our globe a little, so that the light falls more upon the upper part of it, and then make it revolve, the north pole and the parts near it remain constantly in the illumined hemisphere, whilst the corresponding parts about the opposite pole remain in continual shadow.

661. Hence we see that, if the axis of the earth were so directed, that, during the whole of its annual revolution, the rays of the sun fell directly upon its side, the illumined hemisphere would extend to each pole alike, and the length of the days and nights would be constantly the same: and a like quantity of the light and warmth of the sun would fall upon any point of the earth's surface, during the whole of its annual revolution, so that there would be no variety of seasons. Of all the changes which are sources of so much benefit and happiness to the living creatures that people our globe, there would be none, if the earth's axis were perpendicular to the plane of its orbit round the sun. Its simple inclination to the amount of about 23½ degrees, and its continuance in the same direction during the whole of the earth's circuit round the sun, is enough to convert the uniform monotony of an unvarying state, into the pleasing variety of spring, summer, autumn, and winter. For it will easily be perceived to be immaterial whether, keeping the axis upright—as in the experiment just referred to—we cause the orbit to rise above the level and sink below it, alternately; or whether, keeping the orbit level, we slope or incline the axis towards it, so as to turn, sometimes the north pole, sometimes the south, and sometimes both equally, towards it. In Fig. 170 it is shown

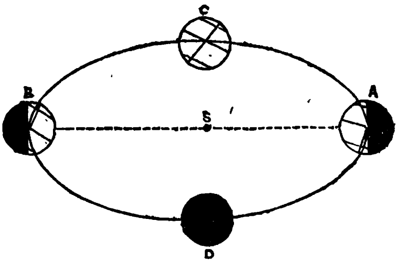


FIG. 170.

how the change in the seasons, and in the length of the day and night, is thus produced. This figure represents the orbit of the earth, and the earth itself, as seen in perspective in four different positions. The axis, terminated by the two poles, is shown to point, in all, in the same direction; and in all, the illuminated portion of the earth is shown, as it would appear to a spectator looking from the nearest side. Thus at A and B, exactly half of the illuminated face is seen; whilst at C, the whole of it is turned towards the observer, and at D it is entirely turned away.

662. Now, from the inclined position of the earth's axis, it is seen, that in the position A, the sun does not shine directly upon the equator, but upon a point below it; and this point is at just the same distance from the equator, as the poles are from the vertical line, namely 23° 28′. As the earth rotates, every point at that distance from the equator successively passes beneath the sun, which, to the inhabitants living on this circle (termed the Tropic of Capricorn) appears directly above their heads at noon-day. Again, it is seen that the south pole, and the whole surface included within a circle drawn at a distance of 23½ degrees from it (termed the Antarctic circle) is in the enlightened hemisphere; and consequently, the earth's rotation produces no night to them, but the sun remains above the horizon during the whole 24 hours; and mid-day is not to be distinguished from mid-night, except by the greater height to which he rises in the sky, and by the part of the horizon above which he is seen. On the other hand, the north pole, and the space included within the corresponding (or Arctic) circle, remain, during the whole daily rotation, in the unenlightened hemisphere; and the inhabitants of these regions lose sight of the sun for many days and weeks together. At all parts of the earth which are to the north of the Tropic of Capricorn, the sun will rise 23½ degrees lower in the sky at noon-day, than he does when shining on the equator; whilst to all who are on the south of it, he appears to rise higher by the same amount. It will also be plain that, as by far the larger portion of the southern hemisphere is in the illuminated half, the days will be long;

whilst in the northern hemisphere they will be short, a large proportion of it being on the darkened side. The shortness of the days, and the low elevation which the sun attains in the sky, together prevent him from exerting his genial influence upon the northern hemisphere; whilst it is fully bestowed upon the southern. Hence in this position of the earth, it is summer in the southern hemisphere, and winter in the northern.

663. At B, however, it is just the reverse; for the sun is now shining directly upon the Tropic of Cancer, a circle 23½ degrees north of the equator; consequently, the north pole is exposed to his continued influence, whilst the south pole is withdrawn from it. The days are longer in the northern hemisphere; and in all parts of it the sun rises 23½ degrees higher in the sky, than when he is shining on the equator; so that it is summer in the northern hemisphere, and winter in the southern. But, in the positions C and D, the earth's axis is neither turned away from the sun nor directed towards him; so that the poles are at an equal distance from him, and the illuminated face divides each hemisphere equally. At these periods, the days and nights are equal all over the globe, and they are termed the *equinoxes;*[*] whilst the extreme summer and winter positions A and B are called the *solstices.*[†] The days and nights are always equal on the equator; since this line is always divided equally by the boundary between the illuminated and unilluminated halves; which can be said of no other circle that can be drawn upon the earth's surface.

664. Owing to the fact, that in our winter, the earth is in the part of its orbit nearest to the sun, and its motion therefore more rapid than in the summer, the interval between the *autumnal* and *vernal* equinoxes, which occur on the 21st of September and 21st of March, is nearly 8 days shorter than that which elapses between the vernal and autumnal. Hence it is that our month of February is so much shortened; and that there are only three months of 31 days in the former period, whilst there are four in the latter.

---

[*] Meaning *equal nights.*

[†] Meaning that the sun appears to be stationary at these points, neither rising higher nor sinking lower, in any considerable degree, for a few days.

665. The points of the earth's orbit at which the equinoxes occur (namely, the nodes at which a plane passing through the equator would cut that of the ecliptic) do not always remain the same; but are in fact themselves undergoing a regular revolution, in a direction contrary to that of the earth's motion in its orbit, which will require a period of 25,868 years for its completion. Hence the equinoctial points come, as it were, to meet the earth; and as our year is measured, not by a sidereal revolution of the earth (§. 655), but by the re-commencement of the same series of seasons, which must take their date from the equinoxes and solstices, our ordinary or *tropical* year (as it is scientifically termed) is shorter than the sidereal year by 20 min. 20 sec.; and thus it is reduced to 365 days, 5 hours, 48 min., and about 49½ sec. This curious phenomenon is called the *precession of the equinoxes*; and it may be regarded as resulting from a kind of very slow conical revolution made by the earth's axis itself, much resembling that which the spindle of a top or tetotum makes when just beginning to be unsteady. This revolution, which occupies the immense period just mentioned, gives to the equator a sort of tilting motion, such as the flat surface of a tetotum has in the case just alluded to; and this will manifestly produce a continual change in the position of the points at which it cuts the plane of the ecliptic.

666. This change may be reckoned among those *perturbations* already referred to (§. 582), which, although never ceasing to take place, do not increase, but keep within a certain limit. Its cause is the attraction of the sun for the mass of matter which is about the earth's equator; and its effect is to occasion a gradual change of apparent place in all the heavenly bodies, as reckoned from that point of the ecliptic at which the vernal equinox occurs. When the place of the stars was first compared with that of the sun, it was observed that the vernal equinox took place as the sun enters the constellation Aries; but it now occurs when the sun has reached a point in the Zodiac thirty degrees to the west of Aries, though, for the sake of convenience, astronomers still speak of that point as the commencement of Aries. One of the most remarkable changes in the apparent place of the stars, is that of the bright star in the Lesser Bear,

which, being nearly in the place towards which the axis of the earth is at present directed, we call the Pole-Star. At the time of the construction of the earliest catalogues, however, this star was 12° from the pole; it is now within 1½° of the real pole of the starry sphere, and it will approach to within half a degree; after this it will again recede, and others will come into its place. When about 12,000 years shall have elapsed, the star α Lyræ, the brightest in the northern hemisphere, will come nearly into the position at present occupied by the Pole-Star.

The Calendar.

667. The regular successive change in the seasons, appears to have suggested, at a very early period, the establishment of that division of time which we call a *year;* and the ancient Egyptians fixed 365 days as its length. It is said that they were led to this, by observing the periods at which the shadows thrown by their obelisks at mid-day, were at their greatest and least lengths. The greatest length of the shadow at noon would of course occur, when the Sun attains the least height in the sky, which is also the period of the shortest day; while the shortest shadow will be thrown, when the Sun's height is the greatest, which is at the time of the longest day. Hence, by marking the points of either the longest or shortest shadows, and observing the number of days which elapsed between the times when they recurred, the length of the year might be determined; and it is recorded that they fixed it, by a series of such observations,* at 365 days. This year they regarded as consisting of 12 months, each composed of 30 days; and the 5 remaining days were added at the end of these. The Romans, however, appear to have taken the Moon's revolution as their standard; and made the year to consist of 13 lunar months, or 355 days, adding other days as they seemed to be wanted to bring up the year to the standard of the seasons. In the time of Julius Cæsar, the error had amounted to as much as 90 days; and when he undertook the reformation of the Calendar, he was obliged to make

---

* Any *single* observation would be liable to error; since the sun's declination alters very little for two or three days together, at the time of the solstices (§. 663).

the year 46 B. C. consist of 455 days, that the next might commence properly. At that time it was known, that the length of the solar year is about 365¼ days; and it is to him that we are indebted for the neat contrivance, of introducing an *intercalary* day every fourth year, so that the whole number of days in four years is not 1460, but 1461—which would correspond exactly with the reality, if the excess of each year above 365 days were precisely a quarter of a day.' It was Julius Cæsar, also, who adopted the plan of commencing the year with the 1st of January. Before this reformation, it had dated from the vernal equinox; and he seems to have fixed the 1st of January as the commencement of the year 46 B. C., merely because it was the day of the first new moon after the preceding winter solstice. This mode of reckoning is termed the Julian Calendar.

668. It is evident that, as the year adopted for the standard of the Julian rule was 1-4th of a day above 365 days, and the real year is not so long by about 11^{m} 10^{s} (§. 665), the intercalation of a day in every four years was an *over* correction; and it was perceived, after the lapse of nearly 1500 years, that the equinoxes no longer corresponded with the days on which they ought to have invariably occurred, but took place several days before the proper time,—the real year being thus in advance of the Calendar year. From this it was evident, that the Julian rule must be in some degree altered; and the reformation was made by Pope Gregory XIII. in the year 1582. In order to bring the calendar and the sun together, it was then necessary to omit 11 days (which was the number that had been wrongly inserted); and a rule was made for its future regulation, which will serve to prevent any similar error for many ages to come. This rule will be immediately explained. The Gregorian Calendar was immediately adopted in Catholic countries; but in Britain, the error was suffered to continue and increase, until the middle of the last century, when it amounted to 11 days, which were struck out of the month of September, 1752. It was not until this period, that the year was made to date from the 1st of January; and the two alterations together constitute the difference between the old style and the new style. The

date we should assign to any previous event, which happened in the months of January, February, or March (up to the 21st), depends upon the *style* we adopt. Thus the beheading of Charles I., which took place on the 29th of January, was in the year 1648 old style, since that year did not close until March 21; but it would be in the year 1649 new style, and as such it is usually reckoned. Russia is now the only country in Europe in which the old style is still adhered to; and the difference between the European and Russian dates now amounts to 12 days.

669. The Gregorian rule for the insertion of the intercalary day consists of three distinct parts. This day is (1) to be added, as by the Julian rule, to every fourth year; except (2) when that year is the commencement of a century; but (3) if the number of that century is divisible by 4, the addition is still to take place.—This rule works thus. We ascertain the *leap-year* (1) by dividing the number of the year (or, which is the same thing, the two last figures of it) by 4; if there is no remainder, it is a leap-year; but if there be a remainder, it shows the number of years that have elapsed since the last leap-year. For instance, when the number of the present year, 1843, is divided by 4, the remainder 3 is left; by which we know that 3 years have elapsed since the last leap-year. The next year, 1844, will be a leap-year, that number being divisible by 4 without a remainder.—But as this correction is too great (2), the first year of the century is *not* made a leap-year, so that there are only 24 years of 366 days in the century, instead of 25.—But this correction is a little too great the other way, reducing the number of leap-years too low; and therefore (3) every fourth *secular* year* receives the additional day. Thus, although the years 1700, 1800, and 1900 would not be leap-years, as by the Julian rule they would have been, the year 2000 will be, since the number of its century (20) is divisible by 4. By following this simple rule, a vast period must elapse before the calendar can be again disturbed. For it is easily calculated that 10,000 Gregorian years will consist of 3,652,425 days; whilst 10,000

---

* That is, a period of a century, from the Latin *sæculum*, an age.

real years will consist of something less than 3,652,422½ days; so that the difference between the two periods is very little more than 2½ days, which is almost exactly equivalent to one day in 4000 years. Even this might be corrected, if it ever became necessary, by omitting, every 4000th year, the intercalary day which by the Gregorian rule is inserted every 400th year; but the rule, as it stands at present, will be probably sufficient for all human purposes.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE MOON.

670. The shortness of the distance between the Earth and the Moon, as compared with the vast distances of all the other heavenly bodies from our globe, is a sufficient reason why she should appear to us to cover the largest surface of the sky, although she is really the smallest of all the luminaries which we can discern with the unaided eye. And for the same reason, we are better acquainted with her constitution, than we are with

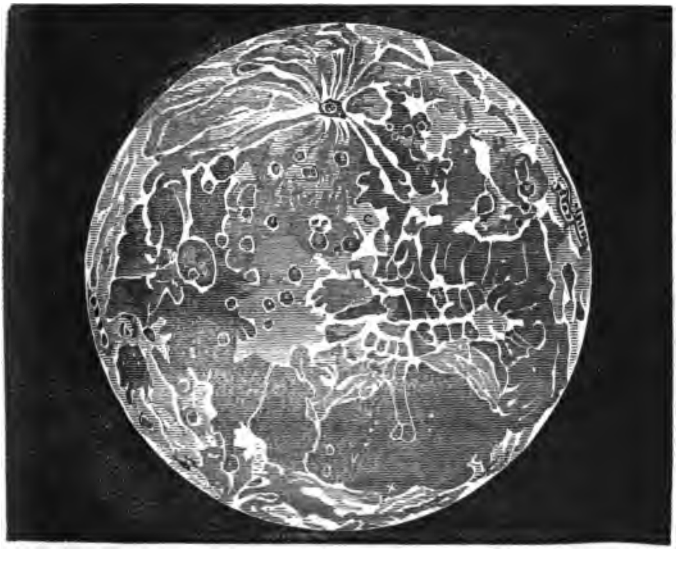


FIG. 171.—APPEARANCE OF THE MOON, AS SEEN THROUGH A TELESCOPE.

that of any other of the heavenly bodies. A well-constructed telescope, magnifying a thousand times (and there are instruments of higher power than this), enables us to see the surface of the Moon, as if we were situated at no more than 237 miles above it. With an instrument of much inferior power, it can be plainly seen that the surface is extremely unequal,—that there are, in fact, high mountains and deep valleys in the moon,—and that many of the mountains are so *volcanic* in their aspect, that it is difficult to believe them to be anything else. These mountains are best distinguished, by observing the border of the moon which is turned away from the sun, and which, during the time of the moon's increase, is gradually receiving the sun's light; this border is not smooth, like the other, but presents a number of little islets of light, separated from the remainder of the luminous surface by a dark interval; but as the illuminated surface extends, they gradually become united with it, the dark interval disappearing. Now, this interesting phenomenon can be nothing else than the illumination of the tops of the mountains by the sun's rays, whilst the valleys and level ground between them remain in shadow; and it corresponds exactly with the appearances which we may witness on the surface of our own earth, by watching a sunrise in a hilly country.

671. As long as they remain near the illuminated edge, these mountains cast distinct shadows, owing to the obliquity with which the sun's light then falls upon them; but at the time of full moon, when the sun's light falls directly upon the whole of the face which is turned towards us, these shadows are no longer to be seen. By measurement of the length of these shadows, it has been calculated that the height of some of the mountains in the moon is about 1¾ miles; which bears a greater proportion to the diameter of the moon (2160 miles), than the height of the loftiest mountains upon our own globe does to *its* diameter. There are several large tracts, which are perfectly level, and which would seem, therefore, to have an *alluvial** character;

---

* This is the geological term for those deposits which have evidently, from the flatness of their surface, been formed by the action of water.—See TREATISE ON GEOLOGY.

but nothing like an extensive surface of water has ever been discovered. The absence of any large collection of water is also proved, by the absence of anything like clouds floating over the surface of the moon; and by the perfect sharpness and clearness of her edge. If an atmosphere existed round the moon, some manifestations of it could not fail to be discovered, when her disc passes over the sun or the stars. Now the day and night, at any spot of the moon's surface, are each (as will be presently explained) of a little more than a fortnight's duration; and consequently, there will be an uninterrupted sunshine for the whole of that period, succeeded by night of equal length, cheered only by the brilliant *moonlight* which will be reflected with like constancy from the surface of our Earth. The *day* will be fiercely hot; whilst the *night* will be chillingly cold; and the constitution of living beings, whether plants or animals, adapted to such a climate, must be very different from ours.

672. The Moon revolves round the Earth in an elliptical orbit, at a mean distance of about 237,000 miles; and the excentricity of this orbit is such, that she is about 26,000 miles nearer to the earth at one time than at another. When at her nearest point, she is said to be in *perigee* (from two Greek words meaning *near the earth*); and when at her greatest distance from it, she is said to be in *apogee* (from two Greek words meaning *from the earth*). The line joining the extreme points of her orbit does not constantly point to the same part of the heavens, as is the case with the similar line passing through either of the orbits of the planets; but it is continually varying (§. 680). The moon's orbit is inclined to that of the earth 5° 8′ 47″; and the line joining the nodes also has a regular movement, instead of constantly pointing in one direction,—a circumstance which has great influence over the succession of eclipses (§. 680). These variations are among the *perturbations* resulting from the Earth's attraction.—Although the Moon is said to revolve about the Earth in an elliptical orbit, yet this would be strictly true only if the earth were at rest, and her actual path is very different; for, as the earth is at the same time travelling round the sun, and as she is carried with him by the same forces, her line of

movement is made up, as it were, of *his* large ellipse and her small one combined; and it would be represented by drawing a wavy line along the earth's orbit, sometimes passing to a short distance on one side of it, then crossing it, and bending as much the other way.

673. The Moon completes her revolution round the Earth,—that is, she returns to the same place among the stars,—in about 27 days, $7\frac{3}{4}$ hours; but the interval between new moon and new moon, or between full moon and full moon, is about 29 days, $12\frac{3}{4}$ hours. The reason of this difference is, that the times of new and full moon depend upon the position of the moon in regard to the sun; the former happens at her *conjunction*, the latter at her *opposition*. Now supposing the sun and moon to have been in conjunction at a given time in a particular part of the heavens, *she* will return to the same point in about $27\frac{1}{3}$ days, but *he* will have left this situation in the mean time, and will have performed about 1-13th of his annual circuit amongst the stars (§. 547). The moon, therefore, must pass through this space, and rather more, before she can overtake him and come into conjunction again; and to do this, occupies about 2 days, 5 hours. This may be familiarly illustrated by the movement of the hands of a clock or watch, of which the minute-hand may be compared with the moon, and the hour-hand with the sun. They are together, or in conjunction, at 12 o'clock; and, by 1 o'clock, the minute-hand has performed a complete revolution; but it does not again come into conjunction with the hour-hand until $5\frac{5}{11}$ minutes past 1, at which time the two are together as before. The length of the actual revolution of the moon round the earth is called its sidereal period, or that of its *periodic* revolution; whilst the interval between two new or full moons, is termed that of its *synodic* revolution.

674. During each revolution round the earth, the moon turns exactly once round on her own axis; the consequence of which is, that the same face is always presented to *us*, whilst different sides are successively turned towards the *sun*. It is not easy to understand, how a single rotation of the moon on her axis will produce this effect; but the fact is easily proved by a

simple experiment. Take any object, a book, a box, or an inkstand, and carry it in a circle round that other; it will be found that, if no twisting motion be given to it by the hand, different sides of it will be progressively turned towards the central body; and that it will be necessary, in order to keep *the same* side towards that body, to give it a kind of twist, as it is moved round, which will in fact turn it once round upon its own axis during each revolution. It will also be observed, that this same twist has the effect of turning *different* sides towards any body at a distance. If the moon had no such rotary movement, her different sides would be turned, one after another, to the earth; but the same face would be constantly presented to the sun; so that only the inhabitants of that hemisphere would enjoy his light and warmth; whilst those of the other side would exist in perpetual darkness, unless when faintly illumined by the light reflected by our earth. Though it has been said that we always see the same face of the moon, this is not strictly correct; for we sometimes have one side a little more turned towards us, sometimes the other, in consequence of the varying rate of the moon's motion in her orbit, which does not always correspond with that of her rotation on her axis; whilst we sometimes see a little further over her upper edge, sometimes a little further over her lower, in consequence of the inclination of her orbit to the ecliptic, which causes her to be either raised above or sunk below its plane, during each revolution. This slight apparent movement of the moon, giving rise to a change in her aspect, is termed her *libration*.*

Eclipses.

675. Eclipses, like comets, were formerly objects of popular terror; and they still are so among savage and half-civilized nations; but it is now universally known, among all those to whom the light of science has extended itself in even a very faint degree, that these phenomena are but the necessary conse-

---

* The term *libration* means *balancing*; and the idea which it was intended to express, was that of a kind of oscillation to one side and the other, like that made by a balance when coming to rest.

quences of the laws of nature, and that they can be predicted with as much accuracy as the return of day and night. This was effected even by the Chaldeans of old, as it has since been by the Chinese; in both there was an equal ignorance of the *cause* of eclipses; but attentive observation, prolonged through a great number of years, was sufficient to enable them to foretell eclipses with tolerable accuracy, since (as we shall presently see) the same *set* of eclipses recurs, with little variation, every eighteen years and a half.

676. When the Moon, in her monthly revolution, passes directly between the earth and the sun, she necessarily hides from us a part of the sun's light, being an opaque body through which it cannot pass. Familiar observation teaches us, that a very small body may completely obscure a very large one, provided that the former be close enough to the eye. Thus, with a sixpence held near the eye, we may cover the whole disc of the sun or moon. Hence the moon, though so extremely small in comparison with the sun, as not to bear the proportion of a moderate pin's head to a globe two feet in diameter, is able to obscure the whole of his light, if situated at her point of least distance from the earth, directly between the sun and any spot on its surface. On either side of this spot, a portion only of the sun's disc will be obscured; and as we proceed further and further from it, the obscuration is less and less, until it ceases altogether. This will appear from the accompanying diagram, in which S represents the sun, L the moon, and E the earth. If we draw lines from the edge of the sun's disc so as to touch the corresponding edges of the moon's, we shall find that they will meet in a point a little within the earth's surface; these lines will be the borders of the deep shadow produced by the moon; for in all the space which they include, the sun will be totally obscured. But if we draw lines

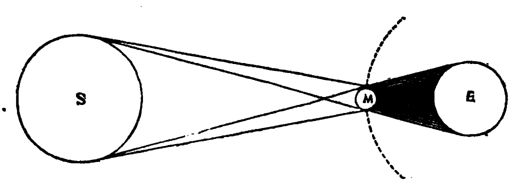


FIG. 172.—ECLIPSE OF THE SUN.

from each margin of the sun's disc, along the opposite edges of the moon's, we shall find that these include a much larger space, which is that where a fainter shadow will fall, in consequence of the partial obscuration of the sun. The deep shadow is termed the *umbra;* and wherever it falls, there will be a *total* eclipse of the sun. The fainter shadow is termed the *penumbra;* and wherever *it* falls, there will be a *partial* eclipse of the sun; more of his disc being hidden from those who are near the borders of the umbra, and less from those who are near the edges of the penumbra. Hence no eclipse of the sun is *total* over more than a small spot on the earth's surface; but it is *partial* over a much larger extent.

677. As the moon passes every month through that part of her orbit which lies directly between the earth and the sun, the question naturally arises, why a solar eclipse does not take place at every new moon. The answer to this is very simple. If the moon's orbit were on the same plane with that of the earth, this *would* occur; but it is inclined at an angle of rather more than 5°; consequently, when she is at any considerable distance from the nodes, her position at the time of conjunction is not exactly in a line joining the earth and moon, but either above or below it; and a solar eclipse can only take place when she is at or near one of her nodes, in this part of her revolution (§. 561). If she be *at* or *very near* her node, her centre will be in a line joining that of the sun and some spot on the earth's surface; and consequently her *umbra* will fall upon it, and the eclipse will be total at that point. But it more frequently happens, that she is at such a distance from her node, that the point of her umbra falls either a little above or a little below the earth; and hence the eclipse is nowhere more than partial. Moreover, if the moon should happen to be at her greatest distance from the earth, under circumstances at which a total eclipse would have otherwise occurred, the point of her umbra will not reach the earth; and consequently she will not completely cover the sun's disc, but will leave a ring of light around, thus producing what is termed an *annular* eclipse.

678. A solar eclipse is, of course, only visible on that side

of the earth at which the sun himself is seen; hence of all the solar eclipses which actually occur, those that are visible to some of the inhabitants of one hemisphere will be probably about half; whilst those that are witnessed by the inhabitants of a particular spot on either hemisphere will be comparatively few. Consequently, although there are seldom less than two solar eclipses in every year, they seem to be rare phenomena; and it is still rarer for an eclipse to be either total or annular, on account of the number of different conditions which must concur to produce these interesting spectacles. The apparent diameter of the moon, when the greatest in consequence of her proximity to the earth, only exceeds that of the sun by about 1½ minute of a degree; consequently, a total eclipse cannot last a longer time at any place, than is requisite for the moon to travel through this space, which is equivalent to about 3¼ minutes of time. This period is sufficiently long, however, to produce a very striking effect upon the animated creation; birds, cattle, horses, and even men, experience a sensation of horror which can scarcely be accounted for; and the return of light gives a positive feeling of relief.

679. The Earth, like the moon, projects a shadow behind it; and the umbra of this shadow, in consequence of the earth's greater size, is a much larger cone, the point of which extends to 800,000 miles beyond the earth, and thus reaches far beyond the orbit of the moon. In the accompanying diagram, the limits of the earth's umbra and penumbra are laid down, precisely as in the case of the moon in the last Figure; and it is obvious that, when the moon is in opposition, if she be at the same time at or near one of her nodes, she will pass into the earth's shadow,

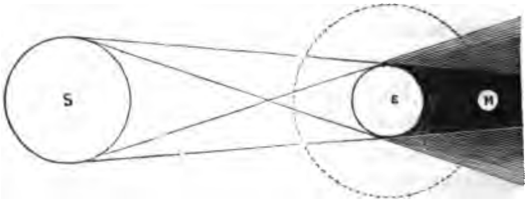


FIG. 173.—ECLIPSE OF THE MOON.

and will thus be eclipsed by the interruption of the sun's light. As the earth's shadow is so much larger than the moon's, it might be supposed that the moon will be eclipsed by the earth much more frequently than the sun by the moon; and this, to an inhabitant of the moon, must be the case. But viewing the moon as we do from a distance, we only see her eclipsed, when she enters the earth's *umbra;* for, so long as she is only in the *penumbra*, she suffers a general diminution of light, without any portion of her disk being completely cut off from the sun's rays, which only happens when it is within the umbra. The moon is totally eclipsed, when she passes completely into the earth's dark shadow; and at that time, the sun would be completely eclipsed to an observer upon any part of the moon's surface,—the earth's umbra being sufficient to cover it all, instead of being confined to a mere spot, as is that of the moon upon our globe. Indeed it requires two hours for the moon to move through the broadest part of the earth's shadow; and she may, therefore, remain totally eclipsed for that period. Her disc is seldom, however, completely obscured; for some of the solar light generally reaches it, through the refracting influence of our own atmosphere.

680. It has been mentioned, that the line joining the nodes of the moon's orbit does not continue to point in the same direction; but that it moves backwards (or in direction contrary to the moon's revolution) every year; and consequently, when the moon has travelled once round the sun in attendance upon the earth, her orbit has passed its first position; and, if its node was originally opposite the sun at the moon's conjunction or opposition, it will not be so again, when the earth and moon have returned to a position in their respective orbits which is otherwise the same. The series of eclipses becomes, therefore, different for each year, during a considerable period; but the same series recurs, with little variation, after an interval of 6585 days, or 18 years and 10 days. For in that period there are exactly 19 synodic revolutions of the line of the nodes;—that is, each node has passed between the earth and the sun 19 times. And in the same period, there are exactly 223 synodic revolutions of

the moon, or lunations; so that the moon returns, after that interval, into the same place with regard to the sun, the earth, and the nodes of her orbit, that she had at first; and the same series of eclipses will recur with extremely little variation. The line of the greatest and least distance of the moon from the earth (which is called the line of the *apsides*) also revolves once in about 9 years, or twice in this cycle of 18 years, so that the moon returns to the same position with respect to her distance from the earth, as well as with regard to the conditions just mentioned.

Tides.

681. The ocean covers more than half the globe of the Earth; and this large body of water is in continual motion. With a few exceptions, arising from local peculiarities, the surface of the water at any point rises and falls twice within each $24\frac{3}{4}$ hours; and this alternate rise and fall occasions an almost incessant current, which is more powerful, however, in narrow channels than in the open sea. These phenomena are easily explained upon the general principle of mutual attraction. Neither the Sun nor the Moon can act upon the solid parts of our globe, so as to change their place, in any other way than by moving the entire mass. But they can draw up the water towards themselves; and in this manner they produce a considerable change in its level. Notwithstanding the enormous size and attractive force of the sun, as compared with that of the moon, his influence over the ocean is reduced by his distance to not more than a third of hers; and therefore the rise of water occasioned by the moon's attraction, is that which we have chiefly to consider as the cause of the tides. The manner in which this operates is shown in the accompanying diagram. Let *a b c d* represent the earth; and let *e* represent the moon. Then as the attraction of the moon for the water at *d* is greater than for the water at the more distant parts *a* and *c*, and greater also than for the mass of the earth itself (since the attraction may be esti-

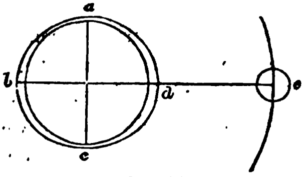


FIG. 174.

mated as operating upon the earth's centre), the water will be drawn up into a heap at *d*, producing a high tide there. As the earth revolves in 24 hours, every part of it would be thus exposed once to the influence of the moon, in the course of a day and night; but in the mean time, the moon has changed her position by travelling onwards in her orbit; so that the period which elapses between the times, when each part of the earth passes directly beneath the moon and again becomes opposite to her, exceeds 24 hours by about 50 minutes.

682. We can easily understand, then, why *one* high tide should occur on every part of the Earth's surface, at intervals of $24^h\ 50^m$; but it remains to be explained why there should be *two* during the same period. The moon's attraction for the water at *d*, exceeds its attraction for the mass of the earth, on account of the difference in their distance from *e* of the point *d* and of the earth's centre; but just in the same proportion, does the attraction of the moon for the mass of the earth, as exercised upon its centre, exceed that which it has for the water at *b*; consequently the earth is drawn away from it (as it were), or, in other words, the water is left behind, and rises into a heap, just as it does at *d*. Hence in whatever part of the earth there is a high tide, there is a corresponding high tide on the opposite side; whilst there will be a drawing off of the water from the points *a* and *c*, producing low tide there. Hence as the earth makes its daily revolution, every portion of its surface passes under two points of high tide, and two of low tide; but its tides are about 50 minutes later each day, for the reason already specified.

683. Now it is when the Sun's influence is joined to that of the Moon, that the tides are raised to their greatest height, and that their ebb is proportionally low; they are then called *spring* tides. This occurs at new and full moon; for in either of these positions the sun, moon, and earth have their centres nearly in the same line; and consequently the sun and moon are both acting to produce high water in the same points. But when the moon is in her quarters, she will be causing high water, where the sun's tide would be producing low water; consequently her

influence will be partly neutralized by that of the sun. The tides will then neither rise so high, nor fall so low; and they are called *neap* tides. The sun's attraction is capable of raising the level of the water about 2 inches for every 5 inches that it is raised by the moon's influence; and consequently the rise, when both are acting together, as at spring tide, will be to the rise at neap tide, when they are acting in contrary directions, as 7 to 3.

684. The highest tide does not take place at any point, however, exactly when the moon is on the meridian of that point, but at least three hours afterwards. This is occasioned by the friction and inertia of the water itself, and by the various obstructions it meets with; by which the wave is prevented from travelling round the earth nearly so soon as it would do, if the moon's attraction were not thus opposed. Hence, though the tide-waves follow one another at regular intervals of $12^h\ 25^m$, each individual tide-wave may be several days in travelling through all the parts over which it extends itself. Thus it is said that in the river Amazon there are at the same time 7 high and 7 low tides succeeding each other. If we trace the tide-wave that comes to Britain from the German Ocean, we shall find that, if it produces high water at Dover at 12 o'clock, it will not arrive at London-bridge until 51 minutes past 2, though it will have reached Brighton at 36 minutes past 12. It will occupy more than 3 hours more to arrive at Falmouth; and 2 hours more still to reach Bristol; so that the travelling of the tide-wave from Dover to Bristol really occupies just 8 hours.

685. The height to which the water rises in any place, depends, like the time, upon local circumstances. Thus in lakes there are no tides, because their surface is so small that it is all equally attracted by the moon. Neither are there perceptible tides in the Mediterranean, nor in the Baltic; because these inland seas are in the condition of great lakes; the openings by which they communicate with the open ocean being so narrow, that they cannot receive from it, in so short a time, a quantity of water sufficient to make any great alteration in their level. On the other hand, in the Bristol Channel, which has a wide mouth

like that of a funnel, the tides are remarkably high; the difference in the level of high and low water at spring-tides being often 50 feet perpendicular; and at Annapolis, in the Bay of Fundy, the tide is said to rise 120 feet.

Phases of the Moon.

686. Although the Moon, during her monthly revolution round the Earth, always presents the same face towards us, yet that face undergoes a series of remarkable changes in the degree of illumination which it exhibits at different parts of the circuit. Thus, when the Moon is in conjunction,—or in a line with the Sun, as seen from the Earth,—the face turned towards us is entirely dark; whilst this same face is brightly illumined, when she is in opposition,—or at the point in her orbit most remote from the Sun; and various degrees of this surface are dark or luminous, as she moves from one of these points to the other. This fact so plainly indicates that she does not shine by her own light, but by light reflected from the Sun, that many of the ancient astronomers had formed this opinion, in spite of their erroneous ideas respecting their relative motions. The cause of her various *phases*, or changing appearances, is very easily understood. Let *s*, in the accompanying diagram, represent the Sun, and *r* the Earth; the outer circle, *abcdefgh*, around the latter represents the phases of the Moon, as they appear to us; whilst the inner circle, *i k l m n o p q*, shows her actual state in different parts of her orbit. By this it will be seen, that, whilst that half of the Moon's globe which is turned towards the Sun is always illuminated by him, the portion of the illuminated face presented to the Earth, is continually varying. For, at the conjunction, as seen at *k*, her illuminated side is entirely turned away from us; and consequently, he face is entirely dark, as shown at *a*. But when she has mo

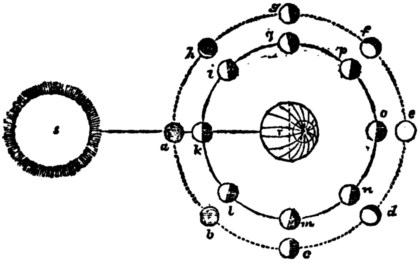


FIG. 175.

to *l*, the edge of her enlightened side is turned towards the Earth, and thus we see the beautiful appearance, shown at *b*, which we term the *new* or *horned* moon,—

> "Dian's bright crescent, like a silver bow
> New strung in heaven."

687. When she has advanced to *m*, half of her illuminated face is then presented to the Earth; and we therefore see her in the state in which she is termed *half* moon, represented at *c*. As she proceeds to *n*, her enlightened face is still more turned towards the Earth; and she gradually becomes *gibbous*, as represented at *d*. And when she has advanced to her opposition, as seen at *o*, the whole of her illuminated face is presented to the Earth, and she is then seen at the *full*, as shown at *e*. During the period of the *waxing*, or increase, of the enlightened surface, the Moon is seen on the east of the Sun, and gradually increases her distance from him, until, at the time of opposition, she rises about the time that he sets, and comes on the meridian about 12 hours after him. The edge over which the illumination is extending, is at this time directed away *from* the sun. The same series of phases is presented to us during the Moon's *waning*, or decrease; but in a contrary order, as shown at *f g h*, until the illuminated face is completely withdrawn. The Moon is then to the west of the Sun, and gradually approaches him, until at last her narrowing crescent disappears in his brightness; its points are then directed *towards* him. When it re-appears on the other side, the whole unillumined face may sometimes be distinguished by its faint copper-coloured light;—an appearance commonly known as "the old Moon in the young moon's arms." This light is reflected from the Earth, which serves as a large and splendid moon to our satellite, and goes through a corresponding series of phases;—with this difference, however, that when the Moon is at full to us, we are invisible to the inhabitants of the Moon, in consequence of our enlightened side being turned entirely away from them; and in like manner, at our new moon, the Earth is at *full* to the inhabitants of our satellite. By a little consideration, it will be seen that all the Earth's phases must be, to the inhabitants of the Moon, just what her's are to us, in the opposite part of her orbit.

CHAPTER XXII.

OF THE NEBULAR HYPOTHESIS.

688. THE question has been already started, whether the peculiar arrangements of our solar system (§. 585), and those of the starry universe in general (Chap. XV.), can be attributed to any one simple principle; or, in other words, whether we can, with a fair degree of probability, assign a common origin to these and trace their subsequent history. The observations of the Astronomer and the reasonings of the Mathematician *do* seem to point to such an explanation; and a brief account of it will be a not inappropriate conclusion to the present volume. But it must be clearly understood that it is at present no more than a probable *hypothesis,*—that is, a theory which serves to explain the phenomena with which we are at present acquainted; but which remains to be confirmed or set aside by the results of further inquiries. We may thus illustrate its nature.—Suppose a person who had never seen or heard of living vegetation, to be placed for a day in the midst of a forest or plantation, and to employ himself in the observation of what he saw around him, and in reasoning from his observations. He would not fail to notice that the objects around him, though manifestly of the same kind, are of different sizes and of various degrees of development; and he might discover all the stages intermediate between the sprouting seed and the majestic tree. Hence he might not be improbably led to the idea of *progressive change;* even though his period of observation were so short, that he could *perceive* none: and he might reasonably arrive at the conclusion, that the objects around him were of a common nature, and that the smaller and humbler would gradually expand themselves into those of larger and more commanding size.

689. Now it has been mentioned (§. 539), that the Astronomer discovers among the almost infinite number of the stars which he surveys, a variety of different appearances; some presenting themselves as points of intense brilliancy; others possessing, round a luminous nucleus, a slight halo of more diffused brightness; others again having this halo more extensive, and the bright nucleus less distinct;—and a regular series being discernible between these, and those patches of diffused luminous matter, in which there is no appearance of any nucleus or tendency to concentration. It has also been mentioned (§. 542) that our own Sun is really accompanied by a luminous atmosphere; although its extent is not sufficient to allow it to be visible from the nearest fixed star; so that we have no right to suppose that even the stars which appear most clearly defined, are really destitute of it. The idea, therefore, cannot be regarded as improbable, that all these masses had their origin in the diffused nebulous matter, some portions of which still remain visible to us; and that their definite form is gradually acquired by the progressive condensation of this, first into a fluid, and then into a solid. Such condensation would be the natural result of the mutual attraction of its particles, and of their common tendency towards the centre of the mass. Now, let it be supposed that this is the real origin of all the solid bodies in the universe, and let the imagination be united with the reasoning powers, in the attempt to ascertain the probable changes, through which any such collection of particles would pass, in their progress towards consolidation;—the actual counterpart or representation of *every one* of these will be found in the sky.

690. It is impossible to imagine a stronger probability, short of absolute proof, than the hypothesis derives from this fact. It cannot be regarded as *proved*, until the observations of astronomers upon the condition of these nebulæ or nebulous stars, shall have shown that a change really takes place. But even though this proof should never be obtained, the hypothesis is not the less probable; for what is the length of man's life—what the duration of all his generations since the commencement of his race, compared with those vast periods of time, which Astronomy

leads us to consider? "Time and change," it has been well remarked, "are great only with reference to the faculties of the beings which note them. The insect of an hour, which flutters during its transient existence in an atmosphere of perfume, would attribute unchanging duration to the beautiful flowers of the cistus, whose petals cover the dewy grass but a few hours after it has received the lifeless body of the gnat. These flowers, could they reflect, might contrast their transitory lives with the prolonged existence of their greener neighbours. The leaves themselves, counting their brief span by the lapse of a few moons, might regard as almost indefinitely extended the duration of the common parent of both leaf and flower. The lives of individual trees are lost in the continued destruction and renovation which take place in forest masses. Forests themselves, starved by the exhaustion of the soil, or consumed by fire, succeed each other in slow gradation. These periods again merge into other and still longer cycles of geological change, which occasions the submersion of the forest, the conversion of its living trunks into their stony resemblances, and the subsequent upheaving of these as portions of the continents and islands of a new surface." In the same manner, "when the birth, the progress, and the history of sidereal systems are considered, we require some other unit of time than even that comprehensive one which astronomy has unfolded to our view. Minute and almost infinitesimal as is the time which comprises the history of our race, compared with that which records the history of our system, the space even of this latter period forms too limited a standard wherewith to measure the footmarks of eternity."*

691. But does this hypothesis, however applicable to the formation of the stars, give an equally satisfactory account of the origin of the planetary system? We do not here see the various stages of the formation still going on; for we know of no planetary system but our own, and its production has been long complete. But the hypothesis, when pursued into its consequences, *does* afford so complete a solution of those peculiarities in the arrange-

---

* Babbage, in Ninth Bridgwater Treatise.

ment of our own system, which no other known principle will account for, that we can scarcely hesitate in recognising it as giving us—if not its actual history—at least something very close to it.

692. The first question is,—how a mass of nebulous matter would acquire a rotatory movement. Supposing that it had originally a precisely globular form, all its particles would be attracted towards its centre; and, as they became condensed, their movement would be in straight lines, which would meet from all sides in that one point, so that they would thus all neutralize each others' impulses. But if the mass were of irregular form, its particles would not be all attracted towards the centre with the same force; they would therefore rush towards it with unequal velocities; those on one side would predominate over those of the other; and by the difference, a rotatory movement would be given to the mass,—just as a whirlpool or eddy is produced when two streams of water meet and intermingle. That the flow of matter from all sides should be so nicely balanced, in any case, that the opposite momenta should neutralize each other, and produce a condition of *central rest*, is, in the very nature of things, but a bare possibility. The *probability* that a rotatory movement will necessarily be given to the nebulous mass, in the very commencement of its consolidation, is *almost infinitely greater*. Thus simply do we account for the first great phenomenon of our planetary system,—rotation around a centre.

693. But as the process of condensation goes on, the rotation will become more rapid. This may be understood from the simple consideration, that the particles, which were at first passing through a large circle, are gradually brought, by their nearer approach to the centre, to pass through a smaller one, without any considerable change in their own actual velocity; and that their revolution must therefore be executed in a shorter time. With this increase in rapidity, the centrifugal force will be also augmented; and as there is very little cohesion between the particles of the mass, the centrifugal force of its outer and more rapidly-moving portion, may soon become quite strong enough to overcome this, as well as to surpass the force of attraction towards the centre of the mass. Hence the outer ring

or belt will be thrown off; just as the outer portion of the grindstone separates from the inner, when it acquires a certain velocity (§. 221). As the condensation proceeds, and the rotation of the mass becomes still more rapid, another belt may be detached in like manner; and thus a series of concentric rings may be formed around the central nucleus, each retaining the velocity which the whole mass possessed at the time of its separation, and continuing to revolve about the common centre.

694. Now these rings will themselves share in the tendency to consolidation, by the mutual attraction of the particles of nebulous matter of which they are composed. If they should be precisely equal in thickness in every part, the solid into which they become condensed would retain the form of the ring; but this is a very unlikely occurrence. If one part should be thicker than the rest, *its* centre will be the point towards which all the matter would be attracted; and as they are gradually drawn towards it, their forces, being unequally balanced, will produce a rotatory motion of the mass into which they become condensed, just as in the case first supposed. This mass may itself throw off one or more rings, during its consolidation; and these, on the same principles, may either remain as rings, or may be condensed into globular masses. Further, it is possible that, instead of one predominant centre of attraction, which draws the whole matter of the ring towards it, there may be two, three, or more such centres, having an equal tendency; and thus the ring may become consolidated, not into one globular mass, but into two, three, or more. Whatever ultimate form the ring assumes, the solid mass into which it is converted will continue to revolve around its original centre, with the velocity which it possessed at the time of its separation from the primary mass.

695. Now upon glancing through our own planetary system, we see the precise realisation of these supposed results. For in almost every case, the nebulous ring, thrown off from the primary mass, has consolidated, as might have been predicted, into a single globular mass; and this, during its consolidation, has (in the case of the four largest planets, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and the Earth) thrown off one or more rings, which have become separate

masses, having a motion of their own. The only exception, in the case of the primary planets, is that of the four small bodies revolving between Mars and Jupiter; which, from their near resemblance in size and in distance from the sun, may be considered, with great probability, as having been formed by the breaking up of one ring into four distinct portions, owing to the cause already mentioned. In the same manner, the rings which have been thrown off from the planetary masses during their consolidation, have gradually become condensed into globular bodies, the satellites, which have a revolution round the primaries, as the latter have round the Sun; and these solid masses, from the action of similar causes during their condensation, have a movement of rotation on their own centres. One exception only exists, and this exception is of the highest interest;—the ring of Saturn. We have here an instance of the exact realisation of the most improbable of the three cases supposed in the preceding paragraph. Thus, out of 27 nebulous rings, which (on this hypothesis) have been thrown off from different centres during the formation of our planetary system,—8 of these rings having been thrown off from the primary mass, and 19 from the secondary,—we have *one* instance of the most improbable case, the formation of a solid ring, in the case of a secondary planet; and *one* instance of the case which is but little more probable, the separation of the ring into several distinct masses, occurring in the case of the primary mass; in all other instances, the matter composing the ring has become gradually condensed into a mass of nearly globular form, exactly as theory would predict.

696. There is thus a high probability, that the Sun, together with all the Planets and their Satellites that revolve around him, have had a common origin in a patch of nebulous matter, similar to those which the telescope renders visible to us in the heavens. By such an explanation we can account for the revolution of the planets and their satellites in the same direction, in orbits nearly circular, and having but little inclination to each other,—the conditions necessary to the general stability of the system (§. 585); and also for the rotation of the sun and of the planets on their own axes. It now remains to be inquired, how

far it accounts for their respective *times* of revolution round the centre. The answer to this question has been given, not long since, by a French mathematician; who calculated, from the known period of rotation of the sun upon his axis, and his known dimensions, what would have been his period, if he had been expanded into a mass extending to the orbit of Mercury; a similar computation was made, for his rate of rotation, supposing his mass to extend to the orbit of Venus;—and so on, for the varying sizes which the nebulous mass must have possessed, at the time that the different rings were thrown off, which have been since themselves consolidated into the planetary bodies. He found that there is a correspondence so very close, between the period in which each planet actually revolves round the sun, and that in which the whole nebular mass was thus estimated to have revolved, at the time when the planetary ring was thrown off, that it is difficult to suppose their motions to have originated in any other way; and a most interesting confirmation was thus given to the general doctrine. Indeed it does not appear that any higher confirmation can be looked for.

697. The nebular hypothesis, then, supposes that there was a time when matter existed in no other form, than that of the diffused self-luminous vapour, of whose existence at the present time we have sufficient evidence; and that, from the simple property of mutual attraction which the particles of this matter possess, its gradual concentration into solid masses commenced; whilst the mode in which this concentration would take place, produce the separation of each into smaller masses, having independent motions of their own. The particular size, number, and movements, of the solid bodies produced in each individual case, must depend upon the size and form of the nebulous mass in which they originated. In our own system, this consolidation must have long been almost complete; we perceive no indications that it is still going on; but it is probable that the luminous atmosphere already described (§. 542) is gradually becoming condensed upon the Sun, and that it is even drawing into itself the comets which revolve around it. The same obstruction which causes them to approach him more nearly in every revolution

must act also upon the larger masses of our system; and must cause them, in a period of almost infinite length, to be drawn into his sphere,—thus forming a part of the same mass at the period of their greatest condensation, as they did when their particles were most widely diffused.

698. The idea of the nebular hypothesis appears to have been taken up and prosecuted, at nearly the same time, by Sir W. Herschel and by Laplace;—the former, one of the greatest astronomical observers, and the latter one of the most profound mathematicians, that the world has ever seen. In the estimation of the former, it derived its evidence from the various appearances which the heavens revealed to his penetrating gaze, indicating progressive change and formation; whilst in the mind of the latter, it was the result of a train of reasoning of the very highest kind, and would probably have been *to him* little less satisfactory, if no evidence of change and progress had been obtained, provided the complete results accorded, which they have been shown to do. By many persons the nebular hypothesis is looked upon with suspicion, as substituting the idea of a self-existent matter for that of the Great First Cause; and Laplace has been stigmatised as an atheist for the manner (perhaps too unguarded) in which he spoke of the influence of the Deity. But the same charge was brought against Newton, when he developed the application of the great law of gravitation, to explain the movements of the heavenly bodies; and, as we have seen, without the least foundation (§. 576). For, after all, the question arises, —whence the nebulous matter itself—and how did its particles become endowed with the property of mutual attraction? The very fact, that, as we look backwards and forwards, there is still *progressive change*, leads us to perceive, that the present order of things has not existed from all eternity, and that it is not destined to endure for ever. "If we establish by physical proofs, that the first fact which can be traced in the history of the world, is, 'that there was light,' we shall still be led, even by our natural reason, to suppose that, before this could occur, 'God said, Let there be light.'"

699. These views seem to lead towards a generalization much

higher, because more comprehensive, than the principle of gravitation; including with it those other fundamental properties of matter, the actions of which produce the phenomena which we term electrical and chemical, as well as those relating to light and heat. A corresponding simplification is taking place in the science of physiology, or that which embraces the actions of the living beings which people our globe, and which we may reasonably believe to be distributed through every portion of the universe, with such modifications as their circumstances may require; and the progress of science leads to the belief that its upward aims will terminate, in referring *all* the phenomena of the material universe to one simple and universal principle,—the direct expression of the will of the Creator.

700. "If, then, we can conceive that the same Almighty *fiat* which created matter out of nothing, impressed upon it one simple law, which should regulate the association of its masses into systems of almost illimitable extent, controlling their movements, fixing the times of the commencement and cessation of each world, and balancing against each other the perturbing influences to which its own actions give rise,—should be the cause, not only of the general uniformity, but of the particular variety of their conditions, governing the changes in the form and structure of each individual globe, protracted through an existence of countless centuries, and adjusting the alternation of 'seasons and times, and months and years,'—should people all these worlds with living beings of endless diversity of nature, providing for their support, their happiness, their mutual reliance; ordaining their constant decay and succession, not merely as individuals but as races, and adapting them in every minute particular to the conditions of their dwelling,—and should harmonize and blend together all the innumerable multitude of these actions, making their very perturbations sources of new powers; —when our knowledge is sufficiently advanced to comprehend these things, then shall we be led to a far higher and nobler conception of the Divine mind, than we have at present the means of forming. But, even then, how infinitely short of the reality will be any view that our limited comprehension can

attain! seeing, as we ever must in this life, 'as through a glass, darkly;'—how much will remain to be revealed to us in that glorious future, when the light of Truth shall burst upon us in unclouded lustre, but when our mortal vision shall be purified and strengthened, so as to sustain its dazzling brilliancy!" *

701. Of the destiny of Man, in that nobler state of existence to which reason and revelation alike point, we *know* nothing, but have abundant field for most delightful speculation. It is well that every one is left to form his own conception of it; and however elevated that conception, however exalted his imagination, we know that the reality will far transcend it, being such as "eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, nor hath it entered into the heart of man to conceive." As the purest intellectual pleasure of which the mind of man is susceptible in this state of being, is derived from the contemplation of the power and wisdom displayed in the Creator's works,—and as his purest moral happiness is derived from the contemplation of that goodness which is manifested with equal universality and perfection,—we cannot be wrong in the belief that a great part, at least, of the happiness of a future life, shall consist in the more extended survey, which our nobler faculties and our purified feelings will permit us to take, of the grand scheme of Creation, and in the gradual approach towards the perfections of the Creator, which we shall thus be enabled to make. Things which at present appear devoid of expression, shall speak to us of Him; those which we now look upon through the mists of doubt and ignorance, or the darkness of error, shall then present themselves in the effulgence of His glorious brightness; and those which have led our finite understandings to some faint comprehension of His infinite greatness, or which have caused our hearts to expand in the contemplation of His perfect goodness, shall then be regarded by us with a yet deeper and higher interest, as the instruments by which the Creator deigned to lead our minds towards Himself,—the forms in which he clothed those attributes, that our present gross apprehension cannot otherwise receive,—the material types of that spirituality, which, however apparently various

---

* Principles of General and Comparative Physiology, §. 745.

in its operations, is One in its essence, and One in its design. To the inspired bard, in ages long gone by, did "the heavens declare the glory of God, and the firmament show forth His handiwork." How much more do they *now* reveal it to the philosopher, who, by the study of their laws, has learned something of His infinite wisdom. How much more *will* they reveal it, when all the barriers that now obstruct the progress of the mind of man shall be removed, and when, instead of a limited existence of "threescore years and ten," *Eternity* shall be the scope of his researches!

——— Open your lips, ye wonderful and fair!
Speak, speak! the mysteries of those living worlds
Unfold!—No language? Everlasting light,
And everlasting silence?—Yet the eye
May read and understand. The hand of GOD
Has written legibly what man may know,
THE GLORY OF THE MAKER. There it shines,
Ineffable, unchangeable; and Man,
Bound to the surface of this pigmy globe,
May know and ask no more. In other days,
When death shall give th' encumbered spirit wings,
Its range shall be extended; it shall roam,
Perchance, among those vast mysterious spheres
Shall pass from orb to orb, and dwell in each,
Familiar with its children,—learn their laws,
And share their state, and study and adore
The infinite varieties of bliss
And beauty, by the hand Divine,
Lavished on all its works. Eternity
Shall thus roll on with ever fresh delight;
No pause of pleasure or improvement; world
On world still opening to the instructed mind,
An unexhausted universe, and time
But adding to its glories. While the soul,
Advancing ever to the source of light
And all perfection, lives, adores, and reigns
In cloudless knowledge, purity, and bliss.
REV. H. WARE.

INDEX.

N. B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

ABERRATION of light, 623
Abutments, 137
Accelerated motion, 156, 239
Action and reaction, 176
Adhesion, 24-43
Air, adhesion of to liquids, 36, 37; resistance of, 98, 141, 143; to falling bodies, 253; to pendulum, 274
Alfred the Great, 396
Alum, crystalline structure of, 23
Ammonia, absorbed by charcoal, 34; by water, 39
Andromeda, nebula in, 538
Animalcules, minute size of, 46; fossil, 47, 48
Annealing of glass, 71, 72
Apsides, line of, 680
Arch, principles of the, 132-139
Archimedes, 294, 295
— screw, 368
Arctic and Antarctic circles, 662
Aries, sign of, 666
Arm, leverage of, 289, 292
Asteroids, 606-612; probable origin of the, 695
Attitudes of men and animals, 112, 113
Attraction, of cohesion, 15-23
— capillary, 26-30
— of gravitation.—See *Gravitation.*
— mutual, of all bodies, 99-101; law of, 89-91; operates between their centres, 92
— of Earth, for bodies on its surface, 92-98; of Sun for Earth, 92; of Earth for Moon, 572, 575; of Sun for Moon, 582; of Planets for the Sun, 581; of Planets for each other, 581
Attributes of the Creator, 546
Axes, principal, 226
Axis, rotation round an, 225-231
Axis of the earth, uniform direction of, 661
Axle, wheel and.—See *Wheel and Axle.*

BABBAGE, Mr. referred to, 690
Baily, Mr., his repetition of Cavendish's experiment, 101
Balance, principles of, 309, 310; action of, in weighing, 311; sensibility of, 314; best form of, 315; most perfect, 316, 317,
Balance, false, 312; weighing truly with, 313
— bent-lever, 319
Balance, of watch, 402; isochronism of, 403; compensation, 430-432
Balance-spring, 403
Balance-wheel, 404
Balance of torsion, 62
Balearic islands, slingers of, 210
Ballistic pendulum, 235
Balloon, ascent of, 97, 98
Bands, connection of wheel and axle by, 330-332
Barometer, construction of, 31
Barrel of watch, 400
Battering-ram, 177
Beams, wooden, strength of, 78, 80-84; iron, best form of, 85-87
Belts of Jupiter, 616; of Saturn, 625
Bent-lever, 300; applications of, 301-306
— balance, 319
Bessel, Prof., his determination of parallax of fixed stars, 515
Biela's Comet, 643
Billiards, principles of the game, 196
— ball, peculiar motion of, 231
Binary stars, 526-531
Bismuth, crystallization of, 17
Blood-discs, size of, 45
Blocks, 348
Bode, Prof., his formula for the distances of the planets, 606
Boiling, 9, 12
Bones, hollow form of, 83; arrangement of to prevent jarring, 204
Bradley, Dr., his discovery of aberration of light, 623
Breast-wheel, 327
Bridges, wooden, 78, 125
— suspension, 129; of rope, 130
Bushing, of spindles, 381

CALENDAR, Julian, 667; Gregorian, 668
Cannon-ball, force of, 177
Capillary attraction, 26-30; force of, 30
Carbonic acid, solidification of, 13; absorption of, by charcoal, 34; by water, 38; formation and removal of, 53-55
Carriages, construction of, 388
Cast iron, 21; strength of, 77
Catenary curve, 127-131

N. B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Cavendish's experiment, 100, 101
Centering of bridges, 125
Centre, influences proceeding from a, 91
Centre of the earth, attraction of bodies to, 92-96
Centre of gravity, 102-120; mode of finding, 103-106; of solid masses, 103-113; of hollow bodies, 114, 115; of compound systems, 119, 120
Centre of gyration, 232, 233
— oscillation, 270; determination of, 281
— suspension, 277, 280, 281
Centrifugal force, 211; action of, 212-224
— pump, 218
— railway, 222
Centripetal force, 211
Ceres, 610
Chain-cables, advantages of, 128
Chain-shot, 230
Chinese wheel and axle, 325, 326, 351
Chronometers, 397, 433-438; invention of, 435; uses of, 436, 437, 492, 493
Circle, motion in, 171, 208, 209
Clarifying process, 43
Cleavage of crystals, 43
Clepsydra, 394, 395
Clock, 397; application of pendulum to, 275, 276, 398; regulation of, 267: early form of, 405; general arrangement of, 415; train of, 416; escapements of, 417-421
Clock-work, general purpose of, 398
Clusters of stars, 533-537; probable form of our own, 511
Cohesive attraction, 15, 16, 21, 24, 207
Coining, 69
Cold, effects of, on bodies, 9-16
Coloured stars, 530, 531
Columbian press, 305
Comets, 458, 636-653; nature of their orbits, 636, 637; Halley's, 638-640; Encke's, 641, 642; Biela's, 643; of 1770, 644, 645; probable number of, 646; variety and rapidity of motions of, 647; constitution of, 648-653; tails of, 648, 652; ultimate destination of, 697
Compensation balance, 430-432
— pendulum, 269, 422-425
— compound lever, 296
Composition of forces, 161-163
Compressibility of solids, 6; of liquids, 7; of elastic fluids, 8
Compression, resistance to, 77
Condensation of nebulous matter, 542, 689-697
Congelation, of mercury, 10; of water, 11; of liquid carbonic acid, 13
Copernicus, 496, 550, 554, 563
Copper, solution of, in water, 50; hardening and softening of, 75
Corkscrew, action of, 378
Coulomb's experiments, 64
Crank, action of, 306-308
CREATOR, His attributes, 546; His moral government, 557-559; His mode of operating on the universe, 576-578, 698
Cricket-bat, use of, 233
Crown-wheel, 341
— escapement, 406
Crystallization, 17-19; forms of, peculiar to different substances, 20; produced in iron, by vibration of particles, 22
Ctesebius, 394
Curves, motions of bodies in, 168-173
— descent of bodies along, 262, 264
Cycloid, descent of bodies along, 263, 264
— application of, to pendulum, 265, 266
Cylinders, solid and hollow, strength of, 83

DAY, sidereal, 454
— solar, 454; difference in length of, according to season, 661, 662
Dead-beat escapement, 418-421
Declination, 472, 473
Degree, 466; measurement of, by quadrant, 474, 475
— of latitude on earth's surface, 476-479
— of longitude, 494
Descent of falling bodies.—See *Falling Bodies*
Detached escapement (Earnshaw's), 429
Detached lever escapement, 428
Diagonal framing, 123-125
Dies for stamping metals, 69, 70
Diffusion, mutual, of gases, 40; law of, 41
Direction, line of, 108, 109
Distillation, 43
Diving-spider, 34
Divisibility of matter, 44-52
Domes, construction of, 126
Double-headed shot, 230
Double stars, 524-531
Drags, of carriages, 152, 383
Ductility of metals, 52, 65
Duplex escapement, 427

EARNSHAW's escapement, 429
Earth, globular form of, 459; dimensions of, 95, 480; density of, 101; influence of centrifugal force on form of, 214, 215, 221, 476; length of degrees on different parts of, 476-479
Earth, attraction of, for other bodies, 92-99; centre of, the point towards which they tend, 93; attraction of, modified by centrifugal force; 221; motion of, towards falling body, 238; attraction of, for the moon, 572, 575, 603
Earth, probable appearance of to inhabitants of the Moon, 602; to those of Venus, 599

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Earth, rotation and orbital revolution of, 231; daily rotation of, 496-499, 656, 657; axis of, 167; constant direction of towards same point, 661; annual revolution of, 600; unequal motion of in orbit, 656
Eclipses, 675; cycle of, 680
— of the Sun, 676-678
— of the Moon, 679
— of Jupiter's Satellites, 490, 618-622
Ecliptic, 547
Elastic bodies, impact of, 190-206
Elastic fluids, 5; compressibility of, 8
Elasticity, of gases, 8, 57; of liquids, 58; of solids, 59-64; of strings, 187-189
— of torsion, 61
— combination of, with other properties, 207
Ellipse, motion in, 172, 173; motion of planets in, 564, 567
Encke's Comet, 641, 642
Endless screw, 374
Endosmose, 28
Engravings, multiplication of, 70
Equator, 463
Equation of time, 486, 657-659
Equilibrium, 116; stable and unstable, 116; neutral, 117; of balance, 309-314, 319
Equinoxes, 663; precession of the, 665, 666
Escapement, 275, 398; ordinary verge, 404
— of Clock, anchor-recoil, 417, 418; dead-beat, 419-421
— of watch, 426; duplex, 427; detached lever, 428; Earnshaw's, 429
Evaporation, 9, 43
Expansion of bodies by heat, 9-12; of gases, 9; of water in freezing, 11; of liquids in vaporization, 12
Extension, resistance to, 77
Extrados of arch, 132, 136

FALL of bodies towards Earth's centre, 93, 238
Falling bodies, laws of, 240, 244
Fast and loose pulley, 333
Fibres, minute, size of, 44
Films, thinness of, 50
Filtration, 29
Fixed Stars.—See *Stars*
Fluids, elastic and non-elastic, 5
Force, not capable of being created, 285
Forces, composition of, 161-163
— resolution of, 174
Fracture of bodies by impact, 200-203
Framework, stability of, 123-126
Freezing, of water, 11; of mercury, 10
Fribourg, Suspension Bridge at, 66
Friction, 32, 141, 142, 152, 360; less between different metals, 381; influence of, on wedge, 364; laws of, 384-386; influence of oil, &c. on, 387
Friction-rollers, 389
Friction-wheel, 390
Fulcrum of lever, 286
Fusee, 400, 401

GALILEO, 253, 257, 405, 498
Gases, 6, 13; compressibility of, 8; elasticity of, 8, 57; expansion of, by heat, 9; attracted by solids, 33-35; by liquids, 36-39; by other gases, 40, 41
Girders, iron, best form of, 85-87
Glass, attraction of, for water, 24; repulsion of, for mercury, 31; cohesion of pieces of, 32; hardening of, 71; annealing of, 72
Governor of steam-engine, 223
Graham, 419, 423
Gravitation, law of, 89-91; discovery of by Newton, 572, 575; different at poles and equator, 95; universality of, 586, 587; effect of, on falling bodies, 240-244
Gravity, centre of.—See *Centre of Gravity*
Greenwich time, 490-495
Gregorian Calendar, 668, 669
Gridiron pendulum, 424
Grindstones, description of, 221
Guinea and Feather experiment, 253
Gyration, centre of, 232, 233; radius of, 232

HAIR, size of, 44; attraction of, for moisture, 35
Hammer, power of, 206
Hardening of Steel, 73
Harrison, 424, 435
Hartley referred to, 557-559
Heat, effects of on bodies, 9-14; repulsive force of, 15, 16; influence of, on clocks, 422; on watches, 430
Herschel, Sir William, referred to, 505, 507, 508, 511, 526, 538, 541, 592, 698
Herschel, Sir John, referred to, 451, 514, 516, 531, 535, 540, 541, 588, 635, 651
Herschel, the planet.—See *Uranus*
Heterogeneous attraction, 24
Hodgkinson, Mr., his form of iron beams, 85-87
Hollow cylinders, strength of, 83
Homogeneous attraction, 24
Hooke, Dr., 407
Horizon, 453; extent of, visible from any place, 460; astronomical, 467, 468
Horsemanship, feats of, explained, 166, 224
Hunter's Screw, 375, 376
Hunting cog, 340
Huyghens, 276, 280, 405, 407
Hydrogen, diffusion of, 40, 41
Hygrometer, 35

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

IMPACT, 176; laws of, for non-elastic bodies, 182, 183; for elastic bodies, 190-193
— of elastic bodies, curious effect of, 198, 199
— general results of, 206; power of the wedge due to, 365
Inclination of orbits of planets, 560
Inclined plane, descent of bodies down, 259-261
— as mechanical power, 353-362; law of action of, 353, 354; application of, 361, 362; conversion of into screw, 368, 369.
Indestructibility of matter, 53-56
Inertia of matter, 147; illustrations of, 148-155, 159
Intercalary days, 667-669
Intrados of arch, 132, 136
Iron, cast, crystalline structure of, 21; resisting power of, 77, 178; malleable, fibrous texture of, 22; change of texture in, 22
— cutting of steel by, 179
— filings, buoyed up by water, 33
— beams, form of greatest strength, 85-87
Iron-ochre, animalcules of, 48
Isochronism of pendulum, 257, 266
— balance, 403
Ivory, elasticity of, 196

JAMMING of bodies, 204-206, 386
Jaw, muscle of, 292
Julian Calendar, 667, 668
Juno, 609
Jupiter, form of, 215, 613; combined rotation and revolution of, 231; dimensions, constitution, and motions of, 613-616
— satellites of, 617-622; eclipses of, 490, 618, 619, 622.

KATER, Capt., his experiments on the length of the pendulum, 280
Kepler, his laws of planetary motion, 563-569; first law, 564, 565; second law, 566, 567; third law, 568

LADDER, action of raising, 293
Lagrange, 584
Laplace, 584, 585, 698
Latitude, 472; determination of, by pole-star, 471; by sun, 472, 473; measurement of, 474, 475; length of degree of, 476-479; parallel of, 481
Laws, of descent along inclined planes, 262
— of falling bodies, 240-244
— of friction, 384, 386
— of impact, 182-193
— of inclined plane, 353, 354
— of lever-action, 287
Laws, of motion, first, 147; second, 160; third, 175; applied to the planetary movements, 570, 571
Laws of mutual attraction, 89
— of nature, explained, 562, 576-578
— of pendulum, 257, 268
— of planetary motions, 563-569
— of reflexion of bodies from surfaces, 194, 195
— of screw, 370; of double screw, 375
— of wheel and axle, 323, 325
Lead, elasticity of, 69; tenacity of, 65
Leaves of metal, thinness of, 51
Lever, three kinds of, 286; general law of, 287, 288; first order, examples of, 289; second order, examples of, 290; third order, examples of, 292; compound, power of, 296; bearing of weights by, 297, 298; action of, when power applied obliquely, 299
— application of, to balance, 309-321
— bent, 300; applications of, 301-305
— application of, in crank, 306
Light, time required for transmission of, 515, 622, 623
— aberration of, 623
Light bodies, ascent of, 97, 98, 253
Liquefaction of solids, 9; of gases, 13
Liquids, 5, 14,; compressibility of, 7; attraction of, for gases, 36-39; elasticity of, 58; attraction of, by the earth, 94; curved surface of, 94, 459
Longitude, 481; determination of, 488-493; length of degree of, 494
Lunar observations, 492

MAELSTROM, 219
Magellanic clouds, 535, 543
Magnitudes, apparent, of stars, 508, 509
— real, of stars, 516
Mainspring of watch, 389
Maintaining power, 401
Malleability of metals, 68-75
Malleable iron, change of texture in, 22
Mallet, action of, 233
Marriotte's law of elasticity of gases, 57
Mars, apparent motions of, 552; dimensions, constitution, and motions of, 604, 605
Materials, strength of, 76-87
Matter, general ideas of, 2-4; different forms of, 5-14
Mean time, 432, 433
Measure, standard of, 278; French, 279; English, 280, 283
Mechanical powers, 285*
Menai bridge, 129
Mercury, apparent motions of, 550, 551; transits of, 513, 561; appearances and dimensions of, 593, 594

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Mercury, congelation of, 10; repulsion of glass by, 31
Mercurial pendulum, 269, 423
Meridian, 456, 476, 481
Metals, elasticity of, 59-64; ductility of, 65-67; malleability of, 68-70; tempering of, 71-75
Micrometer-screw, 377
Milky-way, 507, 508, 511, 515
Mill-stones, centrifugal force of, 220
Moirée metallique, 23
Momentum, 177-179
Monads, 46
Moon, size of, 601; telescopic appearance of, 670, 671; rotation of, 674; distance from the Earth of, 601; apparent motion of, 455, 456; revolution round the Earth, 672, 673; attraction of, by the Earth, 572, 575; disturbance of motion, by Sun's attraction, 583; attraction for the Earth, 603; eclipses of, 679; eclipse of Sun by, 676, 678; influence of, on tides, 681-685; phases of, 686, 687
Moons.—See *Satellites*.
Moore's pulley, 351, 352
Motion, continuance of, 140; in straight line, 158; in curved lines, 168-173
  — laws of, first, 147; second, 160; third, 175
  — in straight line, 158; in curved lines, 168-173
  — rate of, uniform, 156; accelerated, 156; retarded, 157
Mould, vegetable, spread of, 49

Nails, tenacity of, 364
Navigation, practice of, 493
Neap-tides, 683
Nebulæ, 534-538, 540, 541
Nebulous matter, 539; consolidation of, 692, 697
Nebulous stars, 542, 689
Nebular hypothesis, 688-701
Neutral line, of wooden beams, 80; of cylinders, 13; of iron beams, 85
Newton, Sir J., his explanation of the planetary movements, 570, 571; discovery of gravitation, 572-575
Nodes, of the Planets' orbits, 561
  — the Moon's, revolutions of, 680
Noon, how ascertained, 486, 659
Nut of screw, 370, 371

Oil, diminution of friction by, 387
Oil-mill, use of wedges in, 367
Orion, constellation, 501; nebula in, 538
Oscillation, centre of, 270-273, 280, 281
Overshot wheel, 327, 328

Pallas, 612
Parallax, 512; of the planets, 513; of the stars, 514, 515
Parallel of latitude, 481
Pendulum, action of, 254-256; law of, 257; cycloidal, 265, 266; isochronism of, 257, 266; proportion of time to length, 267, 268; application of, to clocks, 275, 276, 398
  — seconds, length of, 277, 283
  — compensation, 269, 422-425
  — ballistic, 235
Penumbra, 676
Percussion, centre of, 235, 236
Periodic revolution of the Moon, 673
Periodical stars, 517-522
Permanence of motion, 145, 146
Perturbations, 570-585, 666, 672
Peter the Great, pedestal of statue of, 389
Phases of the Moon, 686, 687
  — of Venus, 553, 554
Pinion, 336; combination of with wheels, 338, 339
Pipe-clay, elasticity of, 62
Plane, inclined.—See *Inclined Plane*.
Planets, 457; inferior and superior, 549; apparent motions of, 549-556; direct and retrograde motions, 550; attraction of, for the Sun, 583; for each other, 581; comparative sizes of, 635
Platinum, attraction of for mercury, 24, 31
Pole star, 453; determination of latitude by, 461, 471; changed position of, 666
Press, printing, 301; Stanhope, 302, 303
  — Columbian, 305
  — inclined plane, 362
  — screw, 371-373
Puff-ball, number and minuteness of its germs, 49
Pulley, 342; movable, 343; Moore's, 351, 352
Pulleys, systems of, 345; with interrupted rope, 346, 347; with continuous rope, 348-350
Pulley, fast and loose, 333

Quadrant, 474, 475

Radius of gyration, 232
Railway, centrifugal, 222
Railway-train, motion of, 148-152, 200, 201
Ratchet-wheel, 401
Recoil of fire-arms, 185
Recoil-escapement, 417, 418
Refraction, influence of, on apparent place of heavenly bodies, 470
Regulation of clocks, 267; of watches, 404, 413
Repulsive power of heat, 15, 16
Resistance, sense of, produced by all forms of matter, 3
  — of air, 98, 141, 143
  — of soft bodies, 190

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Resistance to extension, 65, 78; to compression, 77, 78
Resisting medium, 642, 653, 697
Resolution of forces, 174
Resultant, 162, 163
Retarded motion, 157, 250
Rice-mill, 308
Ring, centre of gravity of, 115; rotation of, 227
— Saturn's, 626-629; probable origin of, 695
Roofs, suspension, 131
Rope-dancer, balancing of, 118
Rotation, round axis, principles of, 225-331
— of the Earth, 496-499; of the Sun and planets in general, 499; probable cause of, 692-695
— axis of spontaneous, 234
Rupert's drops, 72

SATELLITES, attraction of, by the Sun, 582
— of Jupiter, 617-622
— of Saturn, 630
— of Uranus, 633
Saturn, 624-630; his ring, 627-629; his satellites, 630
Screw, derived from inclined plane, 368, 369; its principle of action, 370; application of, to presses, 371-373; endless, 374; double, 375, 376; micrometer, 377; other applications of, 378, 379
Seasons, explanation of, 660-664
Seconds pendulum, length of, 277-283
Set of particles, 62, 64
Settlement, 79
Ship, raised by wedges, 366; launching of, 386
Sidereal day, 454
— year, 654
Siliceous covering of animalcules, 47, 48
Silkworm's thread, 44
Sirius, size of, 516; changed aspect of, 530
Sizes, comparative, of the planets, 635
Sling, action of the, 210
Soap-bubbles, thickness of, 50
Solar day, 454; variation of, 656, 657
Solid bodies, incompressibility of, 6; liquefaction of, 9; expansion of, by heat, 9; attraction of, for liquids, 24-32; for solids, 33-35; elasticity of, 58-64
Solidification of liquids, 10; of carbonic acid, 13
Solstices, 663
Solution, 25
Span of timber bridges, 79; of iron bridges, 78; of suspension bridges, 129
Spider, formation of thread, 44
— diving, 34
Sponge, attraction of, for moisture, 35
Spontaneous rotation, axis of, 434
Spots on the Sun, 591
Spring, main, of watch, 399; equalisation of its power, 400
— balance, of watch, 403
Spring-tides, 683
Stability of equilibrium, 107-114; of framework, 123-126; of arches, 132-139
— of solar system, 584, 585
Stamping of coins, &c., 69
Stanhope press, 302, 303
Stars, apparent motion of, 453; change of place in, by change of position of the Earth, 461-465; arrangement of, into constellations, 500-502; real proximity of, not to be inferred from apparent neighbourhood, 503, 504; arrangement of, in our cluster, 510, 511
Stars, have no apparent diameter, 505; number of, 506, 507; magnitudes of, 508, 509; parallax of, 514, 515; least distances of, 515; actual sizes of, 516
Stars, double, 524-531; binary, 526-531; motions of, 526-528; colours of, 530, 531; triple, 532; motions of, dependent on gravitation, 586, 587
Stars, periodical and occasional, 517-522
Stars, aggregation of, in clusters, 534-537; proper motion of, 533
Steel, cutting of, by soft iron, 179; tempering of, 74
Steel-yard, 318
Stone, resisting power of, 77, 79
Strains, effect of, 67, 79
Strength of materials, 76-87
— form of greatest, for wooden beams, 80-82, 84; for cylinders, 83; for iron beams, 85-87
Striking-train, of clocks, 415, 439-446; of watches, 447-449
String, elasticity of, 187-189
Struve, Prof., his catalogue of binary stars, 529; his discovery of triple stars, 532
Sulphur, crystallisation of, 17
Sun, apparent motion of, 455, 456, 547, 548; determination of latitude by, 472, 473; changes of place of, 583; dimensions of, 590; spots on, 591; probable constitution of, 592
Suspension of particles in fluids, 42
— centre of, 270, 277, 280, 281
— bridges, 129, 130
— roofs, 131
Synodic revolution of the Moon, 672
Systems of pulleys—See *Pulley*.

TAFF, bridge over the, 138
Teeth of wheels, 334, 335
Tellus.—See *Earth*
Tempering of steel, 74

N.B.—The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Tenacity of wires, 65, 66; of materials, 77, 78
Threads of gold and silver, 52
Thrust, of arch, 137
Tides, 681-685; comparative influence of Sun and Moon on, 683; peculiarities of, 684, 685
Tide-wave, progress of, 684
Tilt-hammer, 237
Timber, strength of, 77, 78
— bridges, 78, 125, 367
Time, early division of, 391-393; first instruments for measuring, 394-396; determination of, by transit-instrument, 483-486; by sun-dial, 659
— change of, by change of place on the Earth's surface, 465, 481, 482
— equation of, 486, 657-659
— idea of, on what founded, 690
Tools, fixing of, in handles, 155
Torsion, 60; elasticity of, 61
Torsion-balance, 63
Train of wheels and pinions, 338, 339; of watchwork, 411, 412; of clock, 416; striking, 439
Transit of Mercury and Venus, 513, 561
Transit-instrument, 483-486
Triple stars, 532
Tripoli, 47
Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, 662, 663
Tropical year, 665
Tycho Brahe, 519, 555

UNDER-SHOT wheel, 327, 328
Uranus, 631-634; his satellites, 633

VAPORIZATION, 9
Vapours, 6, 18
Velocity acquired by falling bodies, 240-245
— by descent along inclined planes and curves, 259, 262
Venus, apparent motions of, 550, 551; phases of, 553, 554; transits of, 513, 561; appearance and constitution of, 595-598
Verge escapement, 406
Vessel, motion of, 175; momentum of, 186
Vesta, 608
Voussoirs of arch, 132, 136

WARE, Rev. H., quoted from, 516, 522, 546, 701
Watch, 397; vertical, 406; general arrangement of, 409-414; train of, 411; regulation of, 404, 413; escapements of, 426-429
Water, raising of, by centrifugal force, 217, 218; eddies in, 219, 692
Water-wheels, 327, 328
Wearing away of solid bodies, 56
Wedge, principle of the, 363; influence of friction on, 364; effects of impact on, 365; applications of, 366, 367
Weighing.—See *Balance*
Weighing-machine, 320, 321
Weight or downward pressure, 88, 92
— of the atmosphere, 97
Weight of bodies, different at poles and equator, 96
Weights, carrying of, on lever, 297, 298
Wetting of solids with liquids, 24, 31
Wheel and axle, 322, 323; various forms of, 324; Chinese, 325, 326
Wheels and axles, succession of, 330-332
Wheels, toothed, 334, 335; combination of with pinions, 336, 340
— bevelled and crown, 341
Whirling table, 213
Whirlpools, 219
White's system of pulleys, 350
Wings of insects, thickness of, 50
Wire rope, 66
Wires, fineness of, 52; tenacity of, 65, 66
Wood, strength of as material, 77, 78
Wooden bridges, 78, 125, 367

YEAR, sidereal, length of, 655
— tropical, length of, 665; division of into months, 666

ZENITH, 470, 471
Zinc, malleability of, 68
Zodiac, signs of, 547
Zodiacal light, 542

THE END.

LONDON:
BRADBURY AND EVANS, PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

CARPENTER AND WESTLEY,

Opticians,

24, REGENT STREET, LONDON.

CARPENTER AND WESTLEY'S IMPROVED PHANTASMAGORIA LANTERN.

THIS Lantern has been so much improved, and is used with such increased facility, that it may be recommended with the greatest confidence, as being the best that is made, giving a perfectly-defined figure, with a brilliant and well-illuminated field of view, from 6 to 14 feet in diameter. Combined with the copper-plate Sliders, it presents a novel and delightful mode of instruction and amusement. To INFANT SCHOOLS, PUBLIC SEMINARIES, MECHANICS' INSTITUTES, &c., it offers peculiar advantages, and is extensively used by the Conductors of these institutions, in aiding the progress of Education. The Natural History and Astronomical Diagrams are painted in the very best style, and can be depended upon for accuracy and fidelity, and, with the DISSOLVING Views, are very popular.

		£	s.	d.
No. 1	Carpenter and Westley's improved Phantasmagoria Lantern, with Patent Argand Lamp and Spring Slider Holder, with Book in a Box (the Condensers 2⅜ in. Diameter)	2	12	6
No. 1 A.	Ditto as above, with addition of a Microscope and 6 Sliders, and an *Aquatic* Slider for exhibiting Transparent Objects in the same manner as the Hydro-Oxygen Microscope. The whole in a Box . .	4	4	0
No. 2	Carpenter and Westley's improved Phantasmagoria of larger Size than the above, with extra large Lenses, &c., (the Condensers 3⅛ in. Diameter)	4	4	0
No. 2 A.	Ditto as above, with a Microscope, same as No. 1 A.	5	15	6

N.B. *These No. 2 Lanterns are especially adapted for the Astronomical Diagrams, and the Dissolving Views; and are particularly recommended for these purposes.*

COPPER-PLATE SLIDERS FOR THE ABOVE LANTERNS.

A Set of NATURAL HISTORY comprised in 56 Sliders, as follows:—

					£	s.	d.
Mammalia,	in	24	Sliders	5s. each Slider, if less than a Dozen, or the whole in a Box . .	12	12	0
Birds,	in	7	ditto				
Fish,	in	5	ditto				
Reptiles,	in	4	ditto				
Insects,	in	8	ditto				
Vermes, &c.,	in	8	ditto				

	£	s.	d.
A Set of Ancient and Modern Costumes in 62 Sliders, 4s. 6d. each Slider, or the whole in a Box	14	0	0
* A Set of Superior Botanical Diagrams in 14 Sliders, packed in a Box, with Compendium	3	17	0
* A Set of Scriptural Illustrations from the Old and New Testament in 12 Sliders, in a Box	3	12	0
A Set of Humorous Subjects in 12 Sliders, 4s. 6d. each, or the whole . .	2	14	0
* A Set of Views of Public Buildings, &c., in 4 Sliders	1	0	0

N.B. The whole of the above are from Copper-plate Outlines.

	£	s.	d.
* An improved Set of Astronomical Diagrams in 11 Sliders (3 of which are movable), with Book, in a Box	2	6	0
* A Superior Set of ditto in Mahogany Sliders (4 of which are movable), with Book in a Box	3	6	0
A Set of Nine movable Astronomical Sliders, the motion produced by Rack-work, from 10s. to 18s. each, or the whole in a Box with a Lock .	5	10	0
* A Set of Constellations in 6 Sliders	1	7	0
Movable Views, with Shipping, &c., each from 10s. to	0	18	0
Circular Paintings for DISSOLVING Views, a great variety, each from 9s. to . .	0	18	0
Comic and amusing Movable Sliders, 150 Subjects, each from 4s. 6d. to .	0	10	0
Lever and Rackwork Comic Sliders, from 10s. to	0	16	0

N.B. Those Sets marked with an Asterisk are never separated.

DIAGRAMS, TO ILLUSTRATE ANY OTHER SUBJECT, PAINTED TO ORDER.

CARPENTER AND WESTLEY'S

LIST OF MOVABLE

ASTRONOMICAL DIAGRAMS,

THE MOTION PRODUCED BY RACKWORK.

No. 1.—The Solar System, shewing the Revolution of all the Planets, with their Satellites, round the Sun.

No. 2.—The Earth's Annual Motion round the Sun, shewing the Parallelism of its Axis, thereby producing the Seasons.

No. 3.—This Diagram illustrates the cause of Spring and Neap Tides, and shows the Moon's Phases, during its revolution.

No. 4.—This Diagram illustrates the Apparent Direct and Retrograde Motion of Venus or Mercury; and also its Stationary Appearance.

No. 5.—A Diagram to prove the Earth's Rotundity.

No. 6.—This Diagram illustrates the Eccentric Revolution of a Comet round the Sun, and shews the appearance of its Tail at different points of its Orbit.

No. 7.—The Diurnal Motion of the Earth, shewing the Rising and Setting of the Sun, illustrating the cause of Day and Night, by the Earth's Rotation upon its own Axis.

No. 8.—This Diagram illustrates the Annual Motion of the Earth round the Sun, with the Monthly Lunations of the Moon.

No. 9.—This Diagram shows the various Eclipses of the Sun, with the Transit of Venus.

The above are from 10s. *each to* 18s. *each; or the Set complete, in a Box, with Lock,* £5 10s.

A LIST OF DIAGRAMS

CONTAINED IN THE SET OF

ASTRONOMICAL SLIDERS.

No.

SLIDER I.

1. System of Ptolemy.
2. ———— Copernicus.
3. ———— Tycho Brahe.
4. ———— Newton.

SLIDER II.

5. Telescopic View of the Moon.
6. ———————— Jupiter.
7. ———————— Saturn.

SLIDER III.

8. Comparative sizes of the Planets.
9. Comparative distances of the Planets.
10. Orbit of a Comet.
11. The Comet of 1811.

SLIDER IV.

12. Signs of the Zodiac.
13. Inclination of the Planets' orbits.
14. Direct and Retrograde motion.

SLIDER V. *(movable.)*

15. Rotundity of the Earth.

No.

SLIDER VI.

16. The Seasons.
17. Phases of the Moon.
18. The Earth's Shadow.

SLIDER VII.

19. Cause of the Sun's eclipse.
20. ———— Moon's do.
21. Inclination of the Moon's orbit.

SLIDER VIII. *(movable.)*

22. Eclipse of the Sun.

SLIDER IX. *(movable.)*

23. Eclipse of the Moon.

SLIDER X.

24. Spring Tide at New Moon.
25. ———— Full Moon.
26. Neap Tide.

SLIDER XI.

27. The Constellation Orion.
28. ———— Ursa Major.
29. Various Nebulæ.
30. A Portion of the Milky Way.

Acme
Bookbinding Co., Inc.
100 Cambridge St.
Charlestown, MA 02129

3 2044 102 934 551